Foreword

Congratulations on choosing a SUBARU vehicle. This Owner's Manual has all the information necessary to keep your SUBARU in excellent condition and to properly maintain the emission control system for minimizing emission pollutants. We urge you to read this manual carefully so that you may understand your vehicle and its operation. For information not found in this Owner's Manual, such as details concerning repairs or adjustments, we recommend that you contact the SUBARU dealer from whom you purchased your SUBARU or the nearest SUBARU dealer.

The information, specifications and illustrations found in this manual are those in effect at the time of printing. FUJI HEAVY INDUSTRIES LTD. reserves the right to change specifications and designs at any time without prior notice and without incurring any obligation to make the same or similar changes on vehicles previously sold. This Owner's Manual applies to all models and covers all equipment, including factory installed options. Some explanations, therefore may be for equipment not installed in your vehicle.

Please leave this manual in the vehicle at the time of resale. The next owner will need the information found herein.

NOTE: "SUBARU dealer" means an authorized SUBARU dealer and/or repairer.

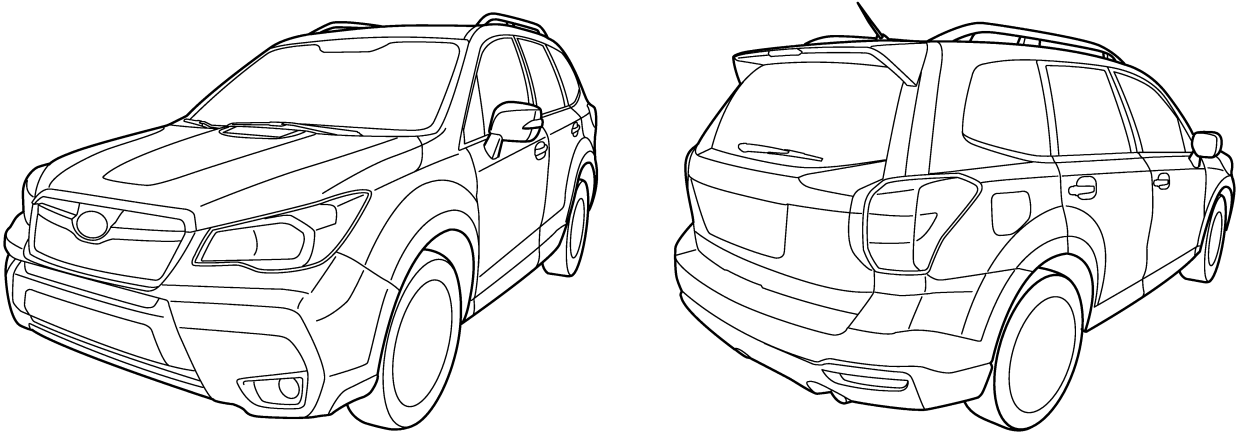
FUJI HEAVY INDUSTRIES LTD., TOKYO, JAPAN

SUBARU is a registered trademark of FUJI HEAVY INDUSTRIES LTD.

Ⓒ Copyright 2015 FUJI HEAVY INDUSTRIES LTD.

This manual uses recycled paper.

This manual describes the following vehicle types.



000849

Warranties

All warranty information, including details of coverage and exclusions, is in the "Warranty and Service Booklet". Please read these warranties carefully.

■ Models with HID headlights

⚠ CAUTION

High Intensity Discharge (HID) headlights contain mercury. For that reason, it is necessary to remove HID headlights before vehicle disposal. Once removed, please reuse, recycle or dispose of the HID headlights as hazardous waste.

How to use this Owner's Manual

■ Using your Owner's Manual

Before you operate your vehicle, carefully read this manual. To protect yourself and extend the service life of your vehicle, follow the instructions in this manual. Failure to observe these instructions may result in serious injury and damage to your vehicle.

This manual is composed of fourteen chapters. Each chapter begins with a brief table of contents, so you can usually tell at a glance if that chapter contains the information you want.

Chapter 1: Seat, seatbelt and SRS airbags

This chapter informs you how to use the seat and seatbelt and contains precautions for the SRS airbags.

Chapter 2: Keys and doors

This chapter informs you how to operate the keys, locks and windows.

Chapter 3: Instruments and controls

This chapter informs you about the operation of instrument panel indicators and how to use the instruments and other switches.

Chapter 4: Climate control

This chapter informs you how to operate the climate control.

Chapter 5: Audio

This chapter informs you how to operate your audio system.

Chapter 6: Interior equipment

This chapter informs you how to operate interior equipment.

Chapter 7: Starting and operating

This chapter informs you how to start and operate your SUBARU.

Chapter 8: Driving tips

This chapter informs you how to drive your SUBARU in various conditions and explains some safety tips on driving.

Chapter 9: In case of emergency

This chapter informs you what to do if you have a problem while driving, such as a flat tire or engine overheating.

Chapter 10: Appearance care

This chapter informs you how to keep your SUBARU looking good.

Chapter 11: Maintenance and service

This chapter informs you when you need to take your SUBARU to the dealer for scheduled maintenance and informs you how to keep your SUBARU running properly.

– CONTINUED –

Chapter 12: Specifications

This chapter informs you about dimension and capacities of your SUBARU.

Chapter 13: Supplement

This chapter informs you of supplementary information complied with some countries' requirements.

Chapter 14: Index

This is an alphabetical listing of all that's in this manual. You can use it to quickly find something you want to read.

■ Safety warnings

You will find a number of WARNINGs, CAUTIONs and NOTEs in this manual.

These safety warnings alert you to potential hazards that could result in injury to you or others.

Please read these safety warnings as well as all other portions of this manual carefully in order to gain a better understanding of how to use your SUBARU vehicle safely.

⚠ WARNING

A WARNING indicates a situation in which serious injury or death could result if the warning is ignored.

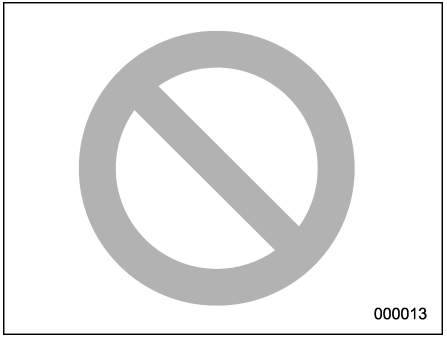
⚠ CAUTION

A CAUTION indicates a situation in which injury or damage to your vehicle, or both, could result if the caution is ignored.

NOTE

A NOTE gives information or suggestions how to make better use of your vehicle.

■ Safety symbol



You will find a circle with a slash through it in this manual. This symbol means "Do not", "Do not do this", or "Do not let this happen", depending upon the context.

■ Abbreviation list

You may find several abbreviations in this manual. The meanings of the abbreviations are shown in the following list.

Abbreviation	Meaning
A/C	Air conditioner
A/ELR	Automatic/Emergency locking retractor
ABS	Anti-lock brake system
ALR	Automatic locking retractor
AWD	All-wheel drive
CVT	Continuously variable transmission
CVTF	Continuously variable transmission fluid
EBD	Electronic brake force distribution
ELR	Emergency locking retractor
GPS	Global positioning system
HID	High intensity discharge
INT	Intermittent
LED	Light emitting diode
LHD	Left-hand drive
MPW	Maximum permissible weight
MT	Manual transmission
OBD	On-board diagnostics

Abbreviation	Meaning
Rear MPAW	Maximum permissible rear axle weight
RHD	Right-hand drive
RON	Research octane number
SI-DRIVE	SUBARU Intelligent Drive
SRS	Supplemental restraint system
TPMS	Tire pressure monitoring system

Vehicle symbols

There are some of the symbols you may see on your vehicle.

Mark	Name
	WARNING
	CAUTION
	Read these instructions carefully
	Wear eye protection
	Battery fluid contains sulfuric acid
	Keep children away
	Keep flames away
	Prevent explosions

Safety precautions when driving

■ Seatbelt and SRS airbag

⚠ WARNING

- **All persons in the vehicle should fasten their seatbelts BEFORE the vehicle starts to move. Otherwise, the possibility of serious injury becomes greater in the event of a sudden stop or accident.**
- **To obtain maximum protection in the event of an accident, the driver and all passengers in the vehicle should always wear seatbelts when the vehicle is moving. The SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) airbag does not do away with the need to fasten seatbelts. In combination with the seatbelts, it offers the best combined protection in case of a serious accident.**

  Not wearing a seatbelt increases the chance of severe injury or death in a crash even when the vehicle has the SRS airbag.
- **The SRS airbags deploy with**

– CONTINUED –

considerable speed and force. Occupants who are out of proper position when the SRS airbag deploys could suffer very serious injuries. Because the SRS airbag needs enough space for deployment, the driver should always sit upright and well back in the seat as far from the steering wheel as practical while still maintaining full vehicle control and the front passenger should move the seat as far back as possible and sit upright and well back in the seat.

For instructions and precautions, carefully read the following sections.

- For the seatbelt system, refer to "Seatbelts" ☞1-13.
- For the SRS airbag system, refer to "*SRS airbag (Supplemental Restraint System airbag)" ☞1-39.

■ Child safety

⚠ WARNING

- **Never hold a child on your lap or in your arms while the vehicle is moving. The passenger cannot protect the child from injury in a collision, because the child will be caught between the passenger and objects inside the vehicle.**
- **While riding in the vehicle, infants and small children should always be placed in the REAR seat in an infant or a child restraint system which is appropriate for the child's age, height and weight. If a child is too big for a child restraint system, the child should sit in the REAR seat and be restrained using the seatbelts. According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating positions. Never allow a child to stand up or kneel on the seat.**
- **Put children in the REAR seat properly restrained at all times in a child restraint device or in a seatbelt. The SRS airbag deploys with considerable speed and force and can injure or even kill children, especially if they are not restrained or improperly restrained. Because children are lighter and weaker than adults, their risk of being injured from deployment is greater.**

A) AIRBAG

WARNING

- **NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.**
- **Always turn the child safety locks to the "LOCK" position when children sit on the rear seat. Serious injury could result if a child accidentally opens the door and falls out. Refer to "Child safety locks" ☞2-24.**
- **Always lock the passengers' windows using the lock switch when children are riding in the vehicle. Failure to follow this procedure could result in injury to a child operating the power window. Refer to "Windows" ☞2-24.**
- **Never leave unattended children, adults or animals in the vehicle. They could accidentally injure themselves or others through inadvertent operation of the vehicle. Also, on hot or sunny days, the temperature in a closed vehicle could quickly become high enough to cause severe or possibly fatal injuries to them.**
- **When leaving the vehicle, close all windows and lock all doors.**
- **In models with power rear gate, when it operates, the rear gate moves with remarkable force. It is possible to be injured if anyone is caught in or hit by the rear gate so be sure to obey the following cautions.**
  - **Check that there are no children around the rear gate before operating the power rear gate.**
  - **Do not allow children to operate the power rear gate.**

For instructions and precautions, carefully read the following sections.

- For the seatbelt system, refer to "Seatbelts" ☞1-13.
- For the child restraint system, refer to "Child restraint systems" ☞1-23.
- For the SRS airbag system, refer to "*SRS airbag (Supplemental Restraint System airbag)" ☞1-39.

– CONTINUED –

■ Engine exhaust gas (carbon monoxide)

⚠ WARNING

- **Never inhale engine exhaust gas. Engine exhaust gas contains carbon monoxide, a colorless and odorless gas which is dangerous, or even lethal, if inhaled.**
- **Always properly maintain the engine exhaust system to prevent engine exhaust gas from entering the vehicle.**
- **Never run the engine in a closed space, such as a garage, except for the brief time needed to drive the vehicle in or out of it.**
- **Avoid remaining in a parked vehicle for a lengthy time while the engine is running. If that is unavoidable, then use the ventilation fan to force outside air into the vehicle.**
- **Always keep the front ventilator inlet grille free from snow, leaves or other obstructions to ensure that the ventilation system always works properly.**
- **If at any time you suspect that exhaust fumes are entering the vehicle, have the problem checked and corrected as soon as possible. If you must drive under these conditions, drive only with all windows fully open.**
- **Keep the rear gate closed while driving to prevent exhaust gas from entering the vehicle.**

■ Drinking and driving

⚠ WARNING

Drinking and then driving is very dangerous. Alcohol in the bloodstream delays your reaction and impairs your perception, judgment and attentiveness. If you drive after drinking – even if you drink just a little – it will increase the risk of being involved in a serious or fatal accident, injuring or killing yourself, your passengers and others. In addition, if you are injured in the accident, alcohol may increase the severity of that injury.

Please don't drink and drive.

Drunken driving is one of the most frequent causes of accidents. Since alcohol affects all people differently, you may have consumed too much alcohol to drive safely even if the level of alcohol in your blood is below the legal limit. The safest thing you can do is never drink and drive.

■ Drugs and driving

⚠ WARNING

There are some drugs (over the counter and prescription) that can delay your reaction time and impair your perception, judgment and attentiveness. If you drive after taking them, it may increase your, your passengers' and other persons' risk of being involved in a serious or fatal accident.

If you are taking any drugs, check with your doctor or pharmacist or read the literature that accompanies the medication to determine if the drug you are taking can impair your driving ability. Do not drive after taking any medications that can make you drowsy or otherwise affect your ability to safely operate a motor vehicle. If you have a medical condition that requires you to take drugs, please consult with your doctor.

Never drive if you are under the influence of any illicit mind-altering drugs. For your

own health and well-being, we urge you not to take illegal drugs in the first place and to seek treatment if you are addicted to those drugs.

■ Driving when tired or sleepy

⚠ WARNING

When you are tired or sleepy, your reaction will be delayed and your perception, judgment and attentiveness will be impaired. If you drive when tired or sleepy, your, your passengers' and other persons' chances of being involved in a serious accident may increase.

Please do not continue to drive but instead find a safe place to rest if you are tired or sleepy. On long trips, you should make periodic rest stops to refresh yourself before continuing on your journey. When possible, you should share the driving with others.

■ Modification of your vehicle

⚠ CAUTION

Your vehicle should not be modified. Modification could affect its performance, safety or durability, and may even violate governmental regulations. In addition, damage or performance problems resulting from modification may not be covered under warranties.

■ Car phone/cell phone and driving

⚠ CAUTION

Do not use a car phone/cell phone while driving; it may distract your attention from driving and can lead to an accident. If you use a car phone/cell phone, pull off the road and park in a safe place before using your phone. In some countries, only hands-free phones may legally be used while driving.

■ Driving vehicles equipped with navigation system

⚠ WARNING

Do not allow the monitor to distract your attention from driving. Also, do not operate the controls of the navigation system while driving. The loss of attention to driving could lead to an accident. If you wish to operate the controls of the navigation system, first take the vehicle off the road and stop it in a safe place.

■ Driving with pets

Unrestrained pets can interfere with your driving and distract your attention from driving. In a collision or sudden stop, unrestrained pets or cages can be thrown around inside the vehicle and hurt you or your passengers. Besides, the pets can be hurt under these situations. It is also for their own safety that pets should be properly restrained in your vehicle. Restrain a pet with a special traveling harness which can be secured to the rear seat with a seatbelt or use a pet carrier which can be secured to the rear seat by routing a seatbelt through the carrier's

– CONTINUED –

handle. Never restrain pets or pet carriers in the front passenger's seat. For further information, consult your veterinarian, local animal protection society or pet shop.

■ Tire pressures

Check and, if necessary, adjust the pressure of each tire (including the spare) at least once a month and before any long journey.

Check the tire pressure when the tires are cold. Use a pressure gauge to adjust the tire pressures to the values shown on the tire placard.

For detailed information, refer to "Tires and wheels" ☞11-33.

⚠ WARNING

Driving at high speeds with excessively low tire pressures can cause the tires to deform severely and to rapidly become hot. A sharp increase in temperature could cause tread separation, and destruction of the tires. The resulting loss of vehicle control could lead to an accident.

■ On-road and off-road driving

This vehicle is classified as a utility vehicle. Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles. Your vehicle has a higher ground clearance and higher center of gravity, making it more likely to roll over than ordinary passenger cars. It also handles and maneuvers differently from other passenger cars. For this reason, please read carefully the following section and follow the instructions and precautions in order to prevent serious injury or death due to loss of control, rollover and other accidents. Refer to "On-road and off-road driving" ☞8-10.

EU Battery directive 2006/66/EC

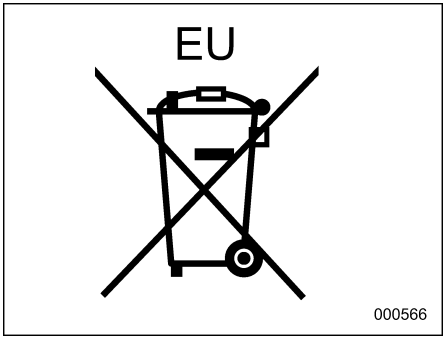
Followings are the symbol of EU Battery Directive 2006/66/EC.

This directive applies to the collection of batteries, recycling of disposed batteries and accumulators, and batteries not disposed of in landfills because they could be hazardous to the environment.

In your vehicle, there are some batteries that do not have the 2006/66/EC EU Battery directive symbol.

Please check and obey all local laws and regulations for the disposal of batteries or accumulations.

The following devices utilize batteries that do not have the symbol:



- Keys (if equipped): CR1620
- Access keys (if equipped): CR1632

General information

■ Gear shift indicator (Europe models)

⚠ CAUTION

The indication of the gear shift indicator is only a guideline for driving more fuel-efficiently. The indicator does not inform the driver about safe shift operation timing. The driver has the responsibility for suitable shift operation depending on the traffic conditions or driving conditions (e.g., overtaking or driving on an uphill slope).

This indicator supports the driver to drive more fuel-efficiently. The vehicle system determines the shift operation timing depending on the driving conditions, and informs the driver by the indicator on the combination meter. For details, refer to the following section.

- MT models: Refer to “Gear shift indicator (Europe models)” ☞7-15.
- CVT models: Refer to “Gear shift indicator (Europe models)” ☞7-22.

NOTE

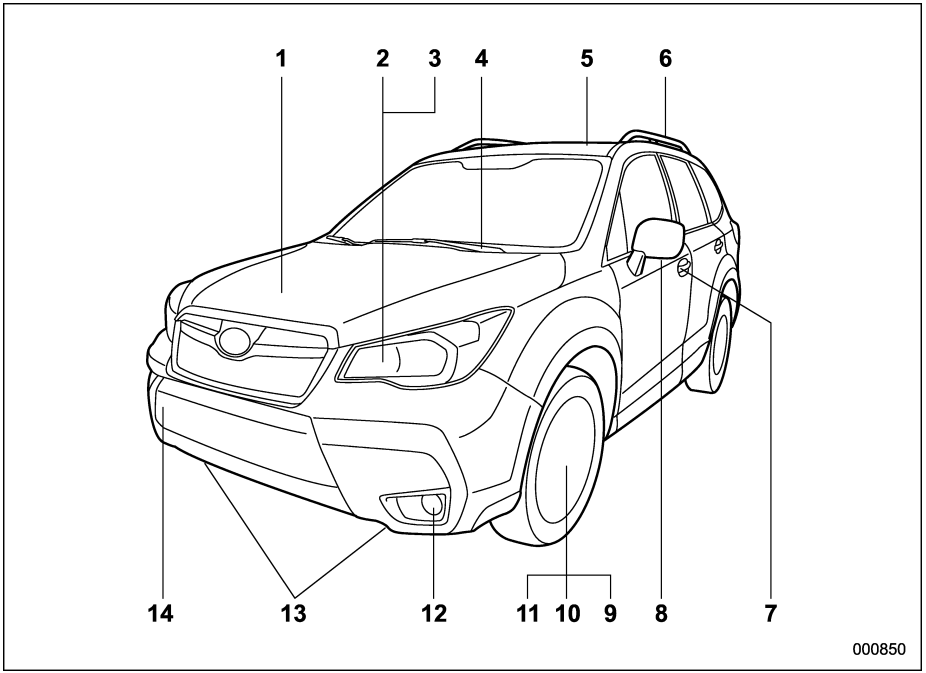
Usually, the gear shift indicator is guideline for driving more fuel-efficiency and it also may operate to prevent a possible engine stall at low engine speed.

Table of contents

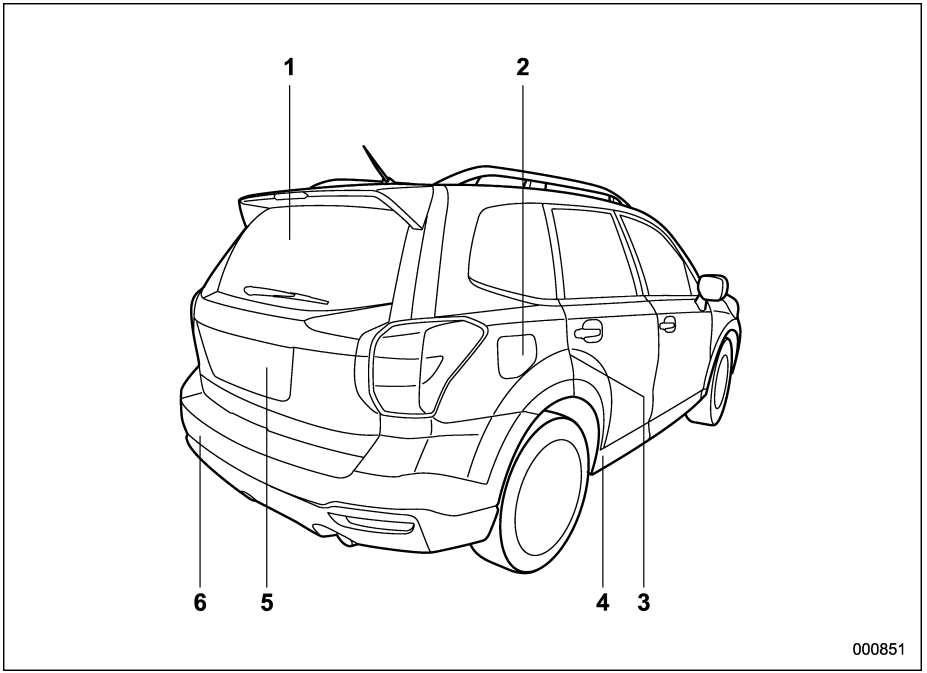
Seat, seatbelt and SRS airbags	*1*
Keys and doors	*2*
Instruments and controls	*3*
Climate control	*4*
Audio	*5*
Interior equipment	*6*
Starting and operating	*7*
Driving tips	*8*
In case of emergency	*9*
Appearance care	*10*
Maintenance and service	*11*
Specifications	*12*
Supplement	*13*
Index	*14*

Illustrated index

■ Exterior



1) Engine hood (page 11-11)
2) Headlight switch (page 3-90)
3) Replacing bulbs (page 11-50)
4) Wiper switch (page 3-101)
5) Sunroof (page 2-35)
6) Roof rails (page 8-18)
7) Door locks (page 2-4)
8) Outside mirror (page 3-106)
9) Tire pressure (page 11-35)
10) Flat tires (page 9-5)
11) Tire chains (page 8-15)
12) Fog light switch (page 3-97)
13) Tie-down hooks (page 9-14)
14) Towing hook (page 9-14)

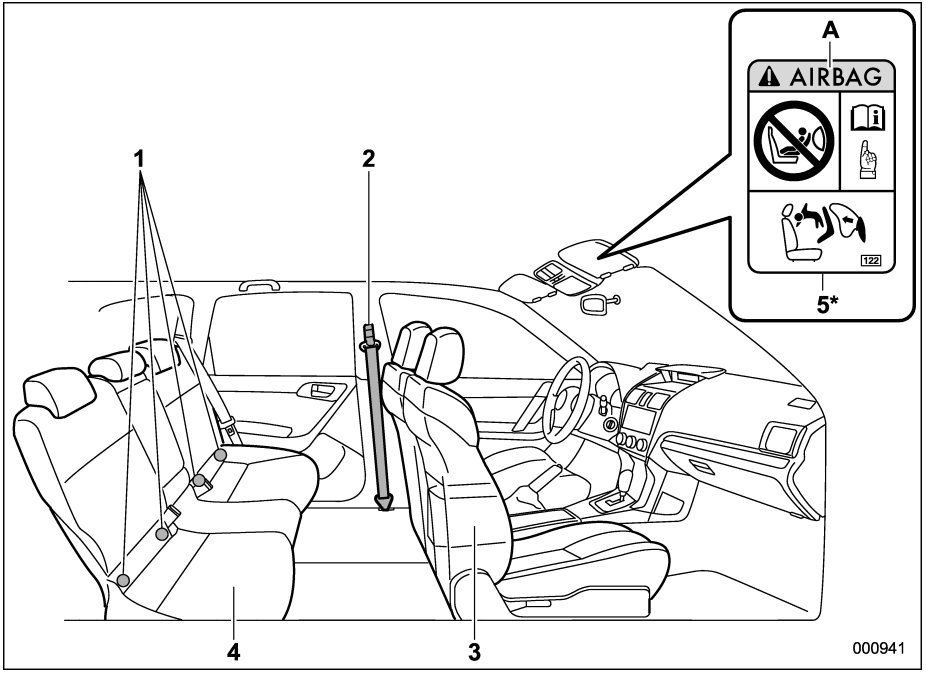


1) Rear window defogger (page 3-108)
2) Fuel filler lid and cap (page 7-4)
3) Child safety locks (page 2-24)
4) Tie-down hole (page 9-14)
5) Rear gate (page 2-28)
6) Towing hook (page 9-14)

– CONTINUED –

■ Interior

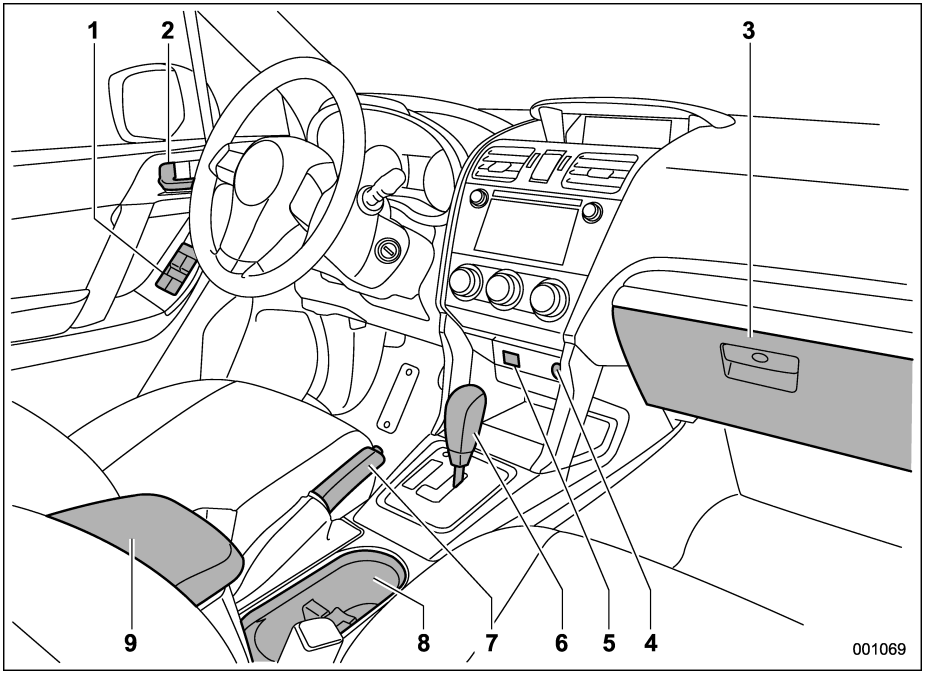
▼ Passenger compartment area



1) Anchor bars for ISOFIX child restraint system (page 1-36)
2) Seatbelt (page 1-13)
3) Front seat (page 1-2)
4) Rear seat (page 1-7)
5) Warning labels for child restraint system (page 1-26)

A) AIRBAG

*: NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

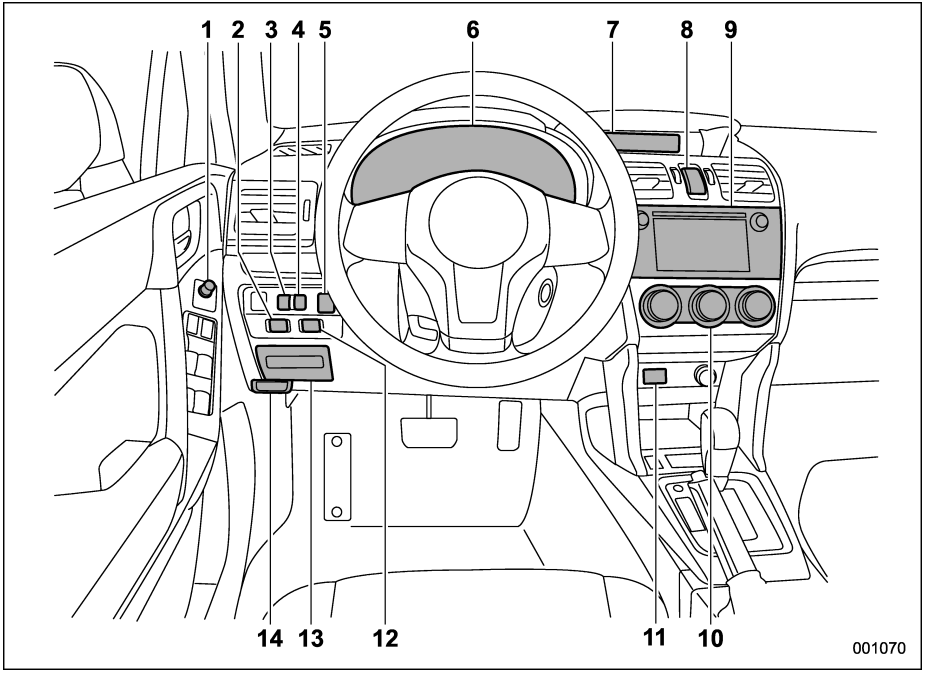


1) Power windows (page 2-24)
2) Door locks (page 2-4)
3) Glove box (page 6-5)
4) Front power supply socket (page 6-9)
5) TPMS set switch (page 7-39)
6) Shift lever (MT) (page 7-14)/Select lever (CVT) (page 7-18)
7) Parking brake lever (page 7-41)
8) Cup holder (page 6-7)
9) Center console (page 6-6)

– CONTINUED –

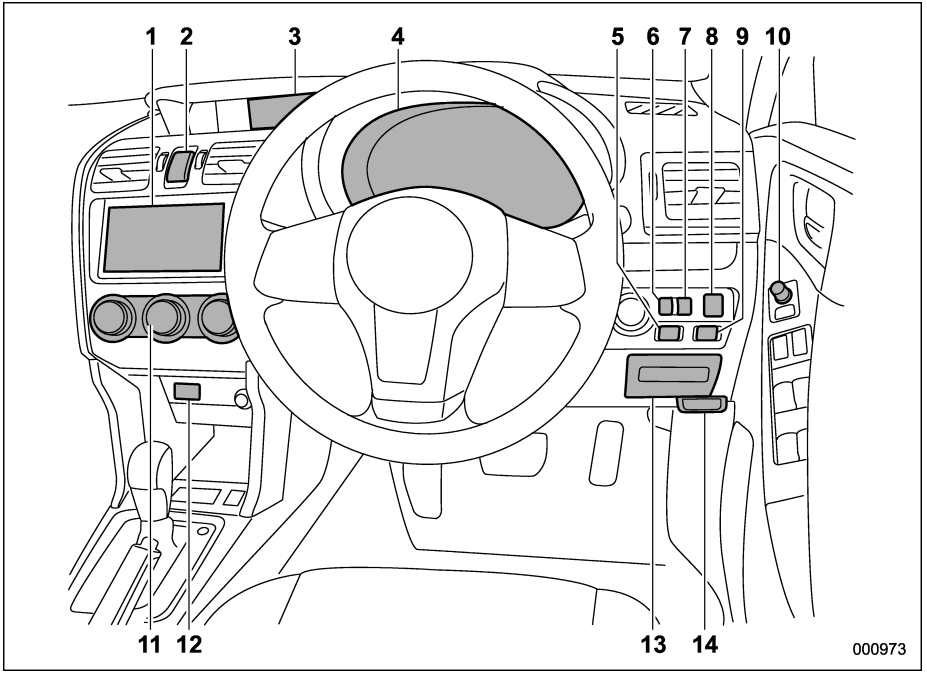
■ Instrument panel

▼ Left-hand drive models



1) Outside mirror switch (page 3-106)
2) Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF switch (models with power rear gate) (page 7-34)
3) Illumination brightness control (page 3-94)
4) Headlight beam leveler (page 3-95)
5) Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF switch (models without power rear gate) (page 7-34)/Memory switch (models with power rear gate) (page 2-33)
6) Combination meter (page 3-9)
7) Information display (page 3-37)/Multi function display (page 3-43)
8) Hazard warning flasher switch (page 3-8)
9) Audio (page 5-1)
10) Climate control (page 4-1)
11) TPMS set switch (page 7-39)
12) Power rear gate switch (page 2-29)
13) Fuse box (page 11-48)
14) Hood lock release (page 11-11)

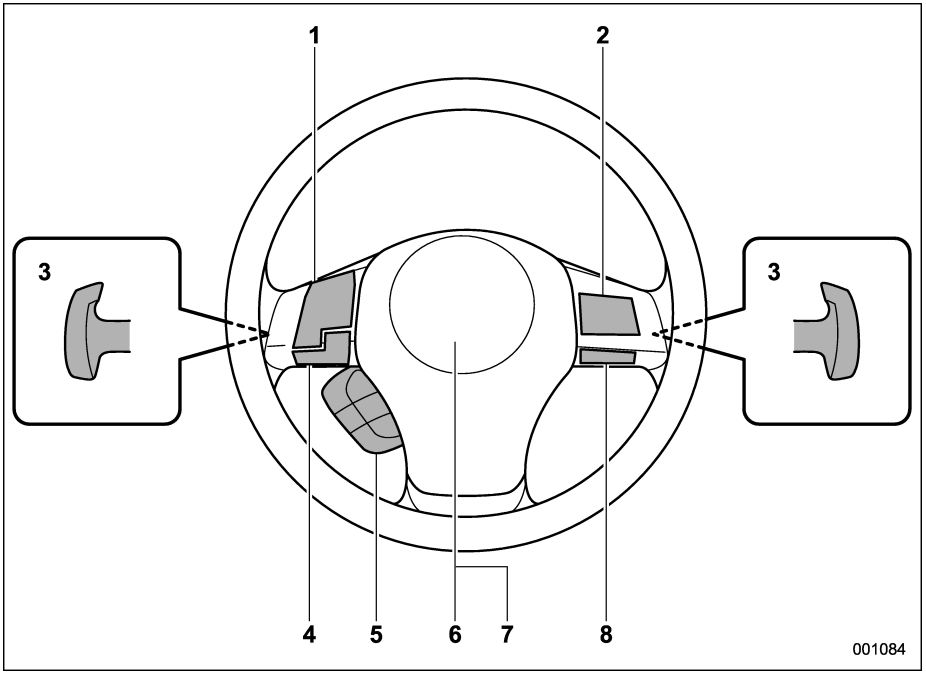
▼ **Right-hand drive models**



1) Audio (page 5-1)
2) Hazard warning flasher switch (page 3-8)
3) Information display (page 3-37)/Multi function display (page 3-43)
4) Combination meter (page 3-9)
5) Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF switch (models with power rear gate) (page 7-34)
6) Illumination brightness control (page 3-94)
7) Headlight beam leveler (page 3-95)
8) Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF switch (models without power rear gate) (page 7-34)/Memory switch (models with power rear gate) (page 2-33)
9) Power rear gate switch (page 2-29)
10) Outside mirror switch (page 3-106)
11) Climate control (page 4-1)
12) TPMS set switch (page 7-39)
13) Fuse box (page 11-48)
14) Hood lock release (page 11-11)

– CONTINUED –

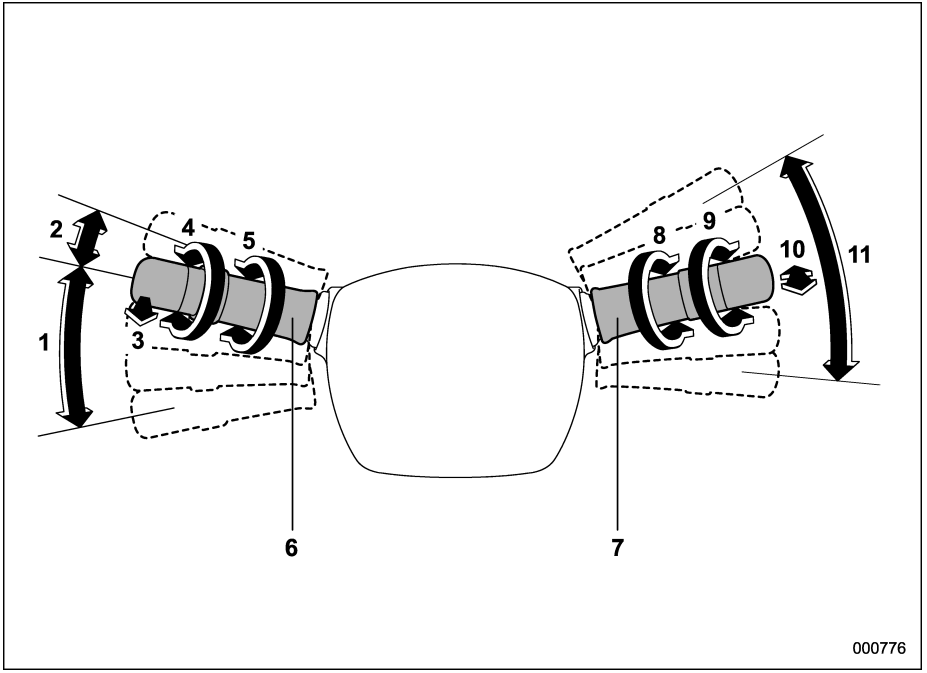
■ Steering wheel



1) Audio control switches (page 5-23)
2) Cruise control (page 7-45)
3) Shift paddle (page 7-20)
4) Hands-free switches (page 5-79, 5-101)
5) Multi function display control switches (page 3-43)
6) SRS airbag (page 1-39)
7) Horn (page 3-110)
8) SI-DRIVE switches (page 7-26)

■ Light control and wiper control levers/switches

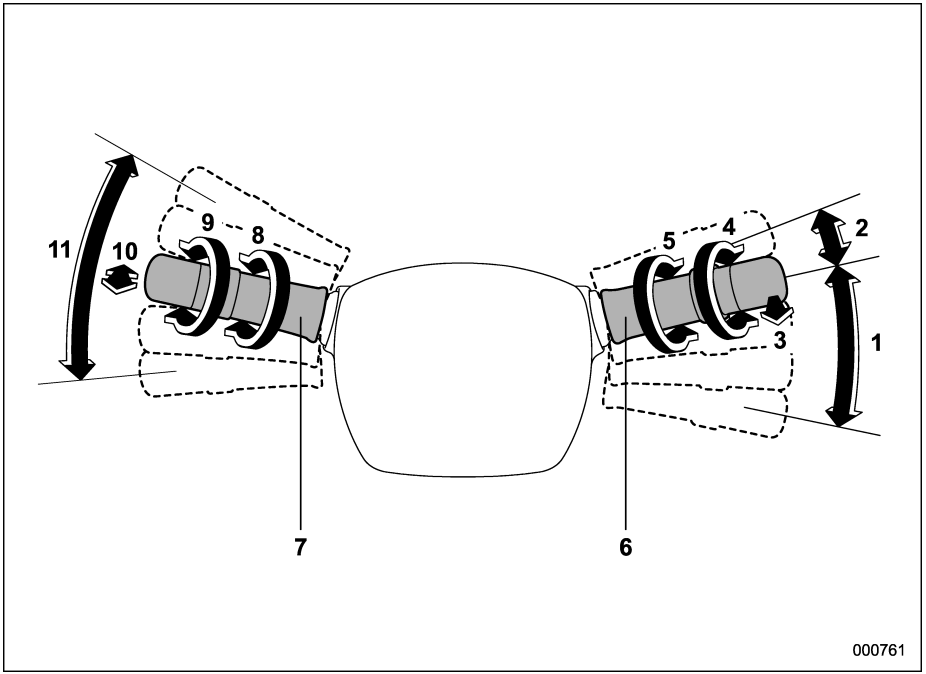
▼ Australia and South Africa models



1) Windshield wiper (page 3-101)
2) Mist (page 3-101)
3) Windshield washer (page 3-103)
4) Rear window wiper and washer switch (page 3-104)
5) Wiper intermittent time control switch (page 3-103)/Sensor sensitivity control (page 3-102)
6) Wiper control lever (page 3-99)
7) Light control switch (page 3-90)
8) Fog light switch (page 3-97)
9) Headlight ON/OFF/AUTO (page 3-90)
10) Headlight flasher High/Low beam change (page 3-92)
11) Turn signal (page 3-93)

– CONTINUED –

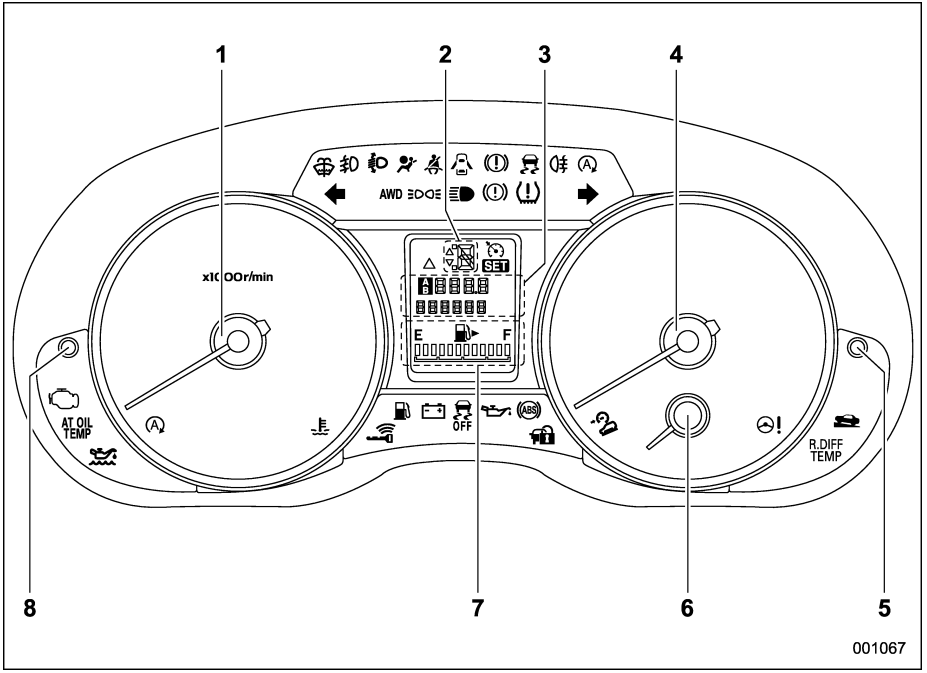
▼ Others



1) Windshield wiper (page 3-101)
2) Mist (page 3-101)
3) Windshield washer (page 3-103)
4) Rear window wiper and washer switch (page 3-104)
5) Wiper intermittent time control switch (page 3-103)/Sensor sensitivity control (page 3-102)
6) Wiper control lever (page 3-99)
7) Light control switch (page 3-90)
8) Fog light switch (page 3-97)
9) Headlight ON/OFF/AUTO (page 3-90)
10) Headlight flasher High/Low beam change (page 3-92)
11) Turn signal (page 3-93)

■ Combination meter

▼ Petrol engine models

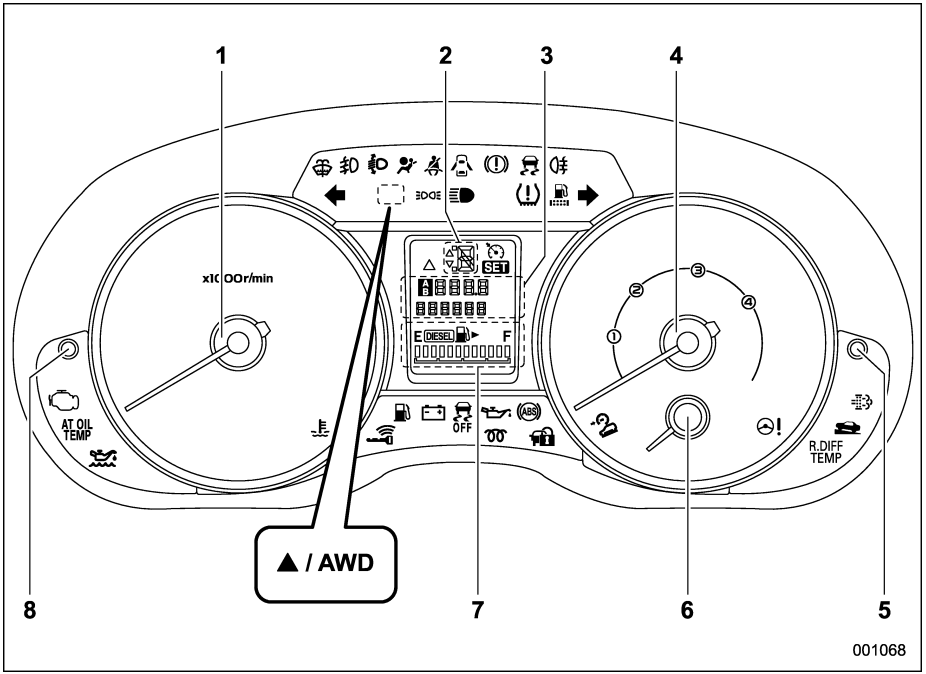


The illustration above is a typical example. For some models, the combination meter may be slightly different than that shown in the illustration.

1) Tachometer (page 3-11)
2) Select lever/gear position indicator (page 3-33)
3) Trip meter and odometer (page 3-10)
4) Speedometer (page 3-10)
5) Information display switching knob (left-hand drive models) (page 3-37)/Trip meter A/B selection and trip meter reset knob (right-hand drive models) (page 3-10)
6) ECO gauge (if equipped) (page 3-12)
7) Fuel gauge (page 3-11)
8) Trip meter A/B selection and trip meter reset knob (left-hand drive models) (page 3-10)/Information display switching knob (right-hand drive models) (page 3-37)

– CONTINUED –

▼ **Diesel engine models**



The illustration above is a typical example. For some models, the combination meter may be slightly different than that shown in the illustration.

1) Tachometer (page 3-11)
2) Select lever/gear position indicator (page 3-33)
3) Trip meter and odometer (page 3-10)
4) Speedometer (page 3-10)
5) Information display switching knob (left-hand drive models) (page 3-37)/Trip meter A/B selection and trip meter reset knob (right-hand drive models) (page 3-10)
6) ECO gauge (if equipped) (page 3-12)
7) Fuel gauge (page 3-11)
8) Trip meter A/B selection and trip meter reset knob (left-hand drive models) (page 3-10)/Information display switching knob (right-hand drive models) (page 3-37)

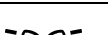
■ Warning and indicator lights

Mark	Name	Page
	Seatbelt warning light	3-14
	SRS airbag system warning light	3-16
	Front passenger's frontal airbag ON indicator (if equipped)	3-16
	Front passenger's frontal airbag OFF indicator (if equipped)	3-16
	Malfunction indicator light (Check Engine light)	3-17
	Coolant temperature low indicator light/ Coolant temperature high warning light	3-18
	Charge warning light	3-19
	Oil pressure warning light	3-19
	Engine oil level warning light	3-19

Mark	Name	Page
AT OIL TEMP	AT OIL TEMP warning light (CVT models)	3-20
R.DIFF TEMP	Rear differential oil temperature warning light (if equipped)	3-20
	ABS warning light	3-22
	Brake system warning light (red)	3-24
	Vacuum pump system warning light (yellow) (if equipped)	3-25
	Door open warning light	3-26
AWD	AWD warning light (CVT models)	3-26
	Power steering warning light (if equipped)	3-26
	Fuel filter warning light (diesel engine models)	3-35
	Preheating indicator light (diesel engine models)	3-35
	Diesel particulate filter warning light (diesel engine models)	3-35

Mark	Name	Page
	Hill start assist warning light/Hill start assist OFF indicator light	3-26
	Vehicle Dynamics Control warning light/ Vehicle Dynamics Control operation indicator light	3-23
	Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF indicator light	3-24
	Turn signal indicator lights	3-34
	High beam indicator light	3-34
	Automatic headlight beam leveler warning light (if equipped)	3-27
	Front fog light indicator light (if equipped)	3-34
	Rear fog light indicator light (if equipped)	3-34
	Access key warning light (if equipped)	3-27
	Immobilizer indicator light	3-32

– CONTINUED –

Mark	Name	Page
	Headlight indicator light (if equipped)	3-34
	Cruise control indicator light (if equipped)	3-34
	Cruise control set indicator light (if equipped)	3-34
	X mode indicator light (if equipped)	3-34
	Hill descent control indicator light (if equipped)	3-34
	Low fuel warning light	3-25
	Low tire pressure warning light (if equipped)	3-20
	Windshield washer fluid warning light	3-25
	Sport (S) mode indicator light (if equipped)	3-32
	Intelligent (I) mode indicator light (if equipped)	3-32
	Sport Sharp (S#) mode indicator light (if equipped)	3-32

Mark	Name	Page
	Shift-up indicator light (white or black) (MT models without gear shift indicator)	3-33
	Over-rev warning light (yellow) (MT diesel engine models)	3-36
	Auto Start Stop warning light/Auto Start Stop OFF indicator light (yellow) (if equipped)	3-36
	Auto Start Stop indicator light (green) (if equipped)	3-37

Function settings

A SUBARU dealer can change the settings of the functions shown in the following table to meet your personal requirements. We recommend that you contact the nearest SUBARU dealer for details. If your vehicle is equipped with a multi function display, the settings for some of these functions can be changed using the display. For details, refer to “Multi function display” ☞3-43.

Item	Function	Possible settings	Default setting
Keyless access[*1]	Automatic locking[*2]	Operation/Non-operation	Operation
	Automatic locking operation period[*2]	Can be set in range from 20s to 60s	30 seconds
	Door unlock selection function (driver’s door unlock)	Driver’s door only/All doors	All doors[*2]/Driver’s door only[*3]
	Door unlock selection function (rear gate unlock)	Rear gate only/All doors	All doors[*2]/Rear gate only[*3]
	Hazard warning flashers	Operation/Non-operation	Operation
	Volume level of the audible signal	Can be set in volume level from 5 to 7	Volume level 5
Remote keyless entry system	Automatic locking[*2]	Operation/Non-operation	Operation
	Automatic locking operation period[*2]	Can be set in range from 20s to 60s.	30 seconds
	Door unlock selection function (including models with keyless access function)[*2]	Operation/Non-operation	Non-operation
	Hazard warning flashers	Operation/Non-operation	Operation
Key lock-in prevention[*2]	Key lock-in prevention	Operation/Non-operation	Operation
Defogger and deicer system	Rear window defogger, outside mirror defogger and windshield wiper deicer	Operation for 15 minutes/ Continuous operation	Operation for 15 minutes
Dome light	Operation of dome light/map lights OFF delay timer	OFF/10s/20s/30s	30 seconds
Map lights			
Battery drainage prevention function	Battery drainage prevention function	Operation/Non-operation	Operation
Auto on/off headlights[*1]	Sensitivity of the operation of the auto on/off headlights	Low/Mid/High/Max	Mid

– CONTINUED –

Item	Function	Possible settings	Default setting
Automatic rain sensing windshield wiper[*1]	Automatic adjusting mode of wiper timing	Rain-sensing mode/ vehicle speed interlocking mode	Rain-sensing mode
Reverse gear interlocked rear wiper	Reverse gear interlocked rear wiper operation	Operation/Non-operation	Operation
One-touch lane changer	Operation of the one-touch lane changer	Operation/Non-operation	Operation
Headlight off delay setting	Operation of timer	OFF/30/60/90 seconds	30 seconds

[*1]: If equipped
[*2]: Applicable to models without double locking system
[*3]: Applicable to models with double locking system

Front seats 1-2
- Manual seat (if equipped) 1-4
- Power seat (if equipped) 1-5
- Head restraint adjustment 1-5

Seat heater (if equipped) 1-6

Rear seats 1-7
- Armrest (if equipped) 1-8
- Head restraint adjustment 1-8
- Folding down the rear seatback 1-10
- Reclining the seatback (if equipped) 1-12

Seatbelts 1-13
- Seatbelt safety tips 1-13
- Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR) 1-14
- Automatic/Emergency Locking Retractor (A/ELR) (if equipped) 1-14
- Seatbelt warning light and chime 1-14
- Fastening the seatbelt 1-15
- Seatbelt maintenance 1-21

Seatbelt pretensioners 1-21
- System monitors 1-22
- System servicing 1-22
- Precautions against vehicle modification 1-23

Child restraint systems 1-23
- Applications for Australia models 1-23
- Safety precautions 1-23
- Where to place a child restraint system 1-25
- Choosing a child restraint system 1-27
- Installing child restraint systems with seatbelt 1-29
- Installing a booster seat 1-35
- Installation of child restraint systems using ISOFIX anchor bars 1-36
- Top tether anchorages 1-38

***SRS airbag (Supplemental Restraint System airbag)** 1-39
- General precautions regarding SRS airbag system 1-40
- Components 1-46
- SRS airbag 1-49
- System operation 1-52
- SRS airbag system monitor 1-60
- SRS airbag system servicing 1-61
- Precautions against vehicle modification 1-62

Front seats

⚠ WARNING

- **Never adjust the seat while driving to avoid loss of vehicle control and personal injury.**
- **Before adjusting the seat, make sure that cargo and the hands and feet of rear seat passengers are clear of the adjusting mechanism.**
- **After adjusting the seat, push it slightly to make sure it is securely locked. If the seat is not securely locked, it may move or the seatbelt may not operate properly.**
- **Do not put objects under the front seats. They may interfere with front seat locking and cause an accident.**
- **Seatbelts provide maximum restraint when the occupant sits well back and upright in the seat. To reduce the risk of sliding under the seatbelt in a collision, the front seatbacks should be always used in the upright position while the vehicle is running. If the front seatbacks are not used in the upright position in a collision, the risk of sliding under the lap belt and of the lap belt sliding up over the abdomen will increase, and both can result in serious internal injury or death.**
- **The SRS airbags deploy with considerable speed and force. Occupants who are not in the proper position when the SRS airbag deploys could suffer very serious injuries. Because the SRS airbag needs enough space for deployment, the driver should always sit upright and well back in the seat as far from the steering wheel as practical while still maintaining full vehicle control and the front passenger should move the seat as far back as possible and sit upright and well back in the seat.**

100082

⚠ WARNING

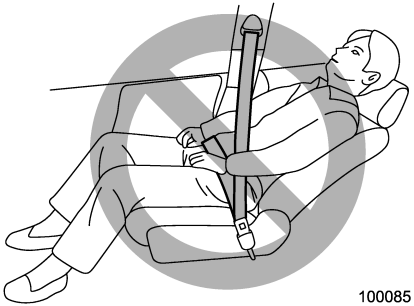
Put children in the REAR seat properly restrained at all times in a child restraint device or in a seatbelt, whichever is appropriate for the child's age, height and weight. The SRS airbag deploys with considerable speed and force and can injure or even kill children, especially if they are not restrained or improperly restrained. Because children are lighter and weaker than adults, their risk of being injured from deployment is greater.

Secure ALL types of child restraint devices (including forward facing child seats) in the REAR seats at

all times.

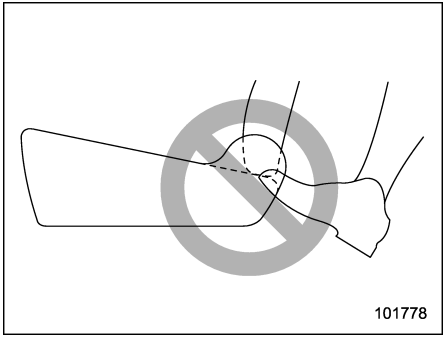
NEVER INSTALL A REARWARD FACING CHILD SEAT IN THE FRONT SEAT. DOING SO RISKS SERIOUS INJURY OR DEATH TO THE CHILD BY PLACING THE CHILD'S HEAD TOO CLOSE TO THE SRS AIRBAG.

According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating positions. For instructions and precautions concerning child restraint systems, refer to "Child restraint systems" ☞1-23.


100085

⚠ WARNING

To prevent the passenger from sliding under the seatbelt in the event of a collision, always put the seatback in the upright position while the vehicle is in motion. Also, do not place objects such as cushions between the passenger and the seatback. If you do so, the risk of sliding under the lap belt and of the lap belt sliding up over the abdomen will increase, and both can result in serious internal injury or death.


101778

⚠ WARNING

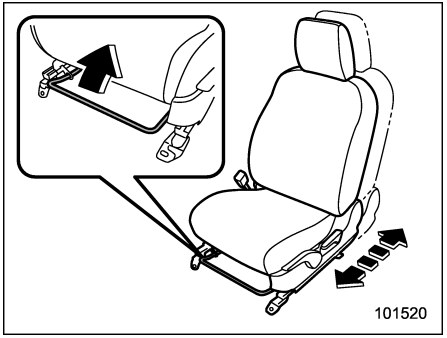
Do not let rear passengers rest their feet between the front seatback and seat cushion. Doing so may lead to defective operation of the following systems and could result in serious injury.

- **Occupant detection system (if equipped)**
- **SRS side airbag (if equipped)**
- **Seat heater (if equipped)**
- **Power seat (if equipped)**

– CONTINUED –

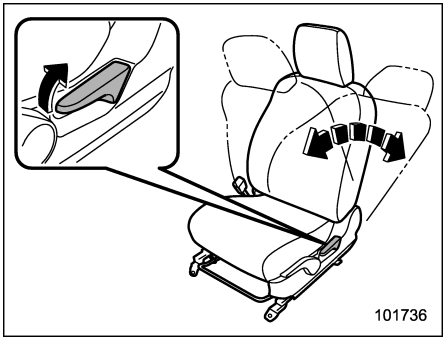
■ Manual seat (if equipped)

▼ Forward and backward adjustment



Pull the lever upward and slide the seat to the desired position. Then release the lever and try to move the seat back and forth to make sure that it is securely locked into place.

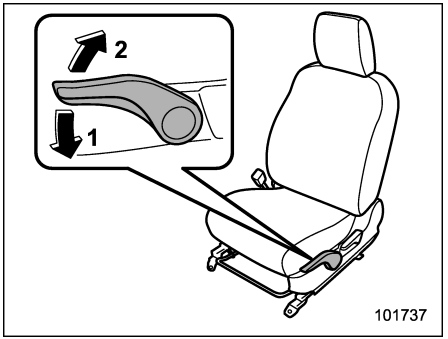
▼ Reclining the seatback



Pull the reclining lever up and adjust the seatback to the desired position. Then release the lever and make sure the seatback is securely locked into place.

The seatback placed in a reclined position can spring back upward with force when the lever is pulled. While operating the lever to return the seatback, hold the seatback lightly so that it may be raised back gradually.

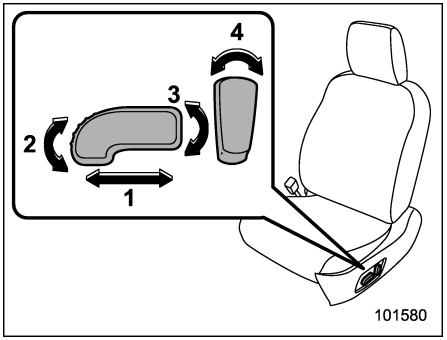
▼ Seat height adjustment (driver's seat)



1) When the lever is pushed down, the seat is lowered.
2) When the lever is pulled up, the seat rises.

The height of the seat can be adjusted by moving the seat adjustment lever up and down.

■ Power seat (if equipped)



1) **Seat position forward/backward control switch**
   To adjust the seat forward or backward, move the control switch forward or backward. During forward/backward adjustment of the seat, you cannot adjust the seat cushion angle or seat height.
2) **Seat cushion angle control switch**
   To adjust the seat cushion angle, pull up or push down the front end of the control switch.
3) **Seat height control switch**
   To adjust the seat height, pull up or push down the rear end of the control switch.
4) **Seatback angle (reclining) control switch**
   To adjust the angle of the seatback, move the control switch.

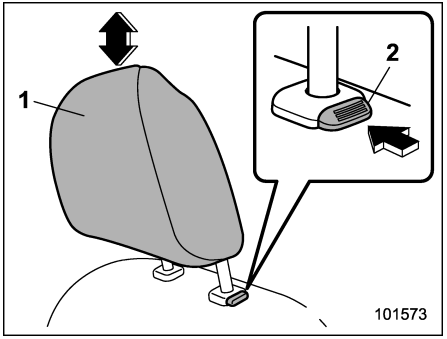
■ Head restraint adjustment

⚠ WARNING

- **Never drive the vehicle with the head restraints removed because they are designed to reduce the risk of serious neck injury in the event that the vehicle is struck from the rear. Also, never install the head restraints the opposite way round. Doing so will prevent the head restraints from functioning as intended. Therefore, when you remove the head restraints, you must reinstall all head restraints correctly to protect vehicle occupants.**
- **All occupants, including the driver, should not operate a vehicle or sit in a vehicle's seat until the head restraints are placed in their proper positions in order to minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash.**

The head restraints for the driver's seat and front passenger's seat are adjustable in the following ways.

▼ Head restraint height adjustment



1) Head restraint
2) Release button

Each head restraint should be adjusted so that the center of the head restraint is closest to the top of the occupant's ears.

To raise:

Pull the head restraint up.

To lower:

Push the head restraint down while pressing the release button on the top of the seatback.

To remove:

While pressing the release button, pull out the head restraint.

To install:

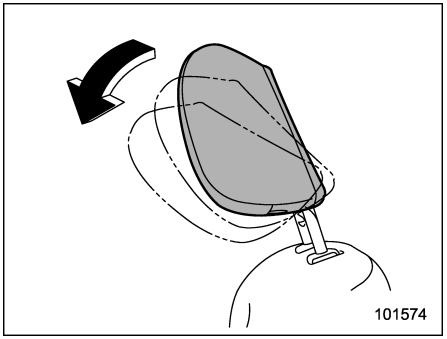
Install the head restraint into the holes that

– CONTINUED –

are located on the top of the seatback until the head restraint locks. Press and hold the release button to lower the head restraint.

▼ Head restraint angle adjustment

The angle of the head restraint can be adjusted in several steps. While maintaining a suitable driving posture, adjust the head restraint to a position where the back of your head is as close to the head restraint as possible.



To tilt:

Tilt the head restraint by hand to the preferred position. A click will be audible when the head restraint is locked.

To return:

Tilt the head restraint once as far forward as it can go. The head restraint will automatically return to the fully upright position. Then, adjust the head restraint again to the preferred angle.

Seat heater (if equipped)

The seat heater is equipped in the front seats.

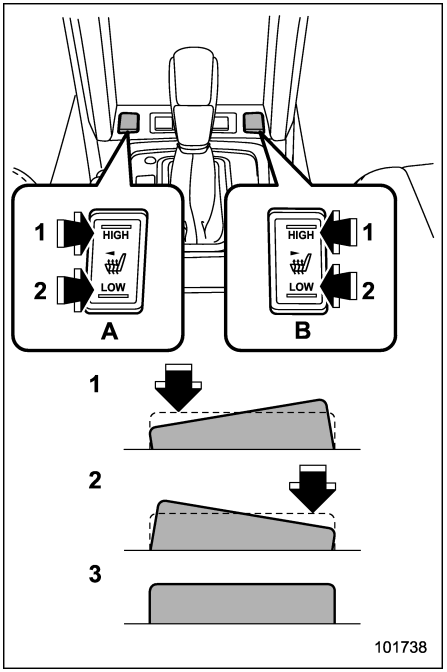
The seat heater operates when the ignition switch is either in the “ACC” or “ON” position.

⚠ CAUTION

- **There is a possibility that people with delicate skin may suffer slight burns even at low temperatures if they use the seat heater for a long period of time. When using the heater, always be sure to warn the persons concerned.**
- **Do not put anything on the seat which insulates against heat, such as a blanket, cushion, or similar items. This may cause the seat heater to overheat.**

NOTE

Use of the seat heater for a long period of time while the engine is not running can cause battery discharge.



1) **HIGH** – Rapid heating
2) **LOW** – Normal heating
3) Off
A) Left-hand side
B) Right-hand side

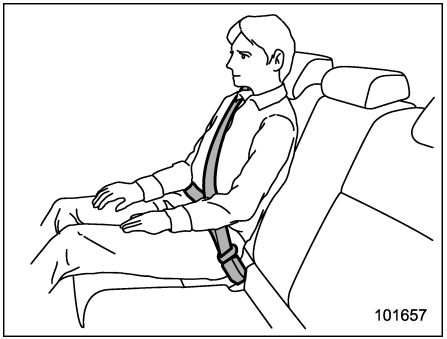
To turn on the seat heater, push the “LOW” or “HIGH” position on the switch, as desired, depending on the temperature.

Selecting the “HIGH” position will cause the seat to heat up quicker.

To turn off the seat heater, lightly press the opposite side of the current position.

The indicator located on the switch illuminates when the seat heater is in operation. When the vehicle’s interior is warmed enough or before you leave the vehicle, be sure to turn the switch off.

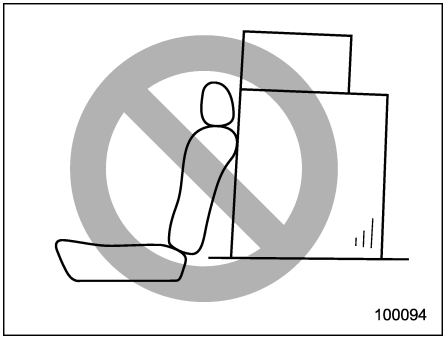
Rear seats



⚠ WARNING

Seatbelts provide maximum restraint when the occupant sits well back and upright in the seat. Do not put cushions or any other materials between occupants and seatbacks or seat cushions. If you do so, the risk of sliding under the lap belt and of the lap belt sliding up over the abdomen will increase, and both can result in serious internal injury or death.

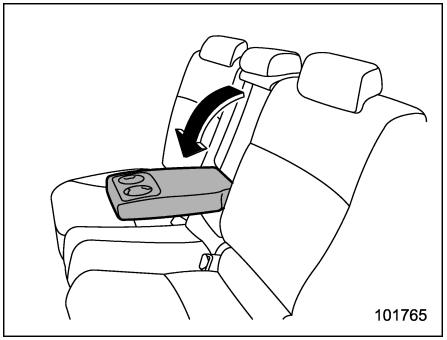
– CONTINUED –



⚠ WARNING

Never stack luggage or other cargo higher than the top of the seatback because it could tumble forward and injure passengers in the event of a sudden stop or accident.

■ Armrest (if equipped)



To lower the armrest, pull on the top edge of the armrest.

⚠ WARNING

To avoid serious injury, passengers must never be allowed to sit on the center armrest.

■ Head restraint adjustment

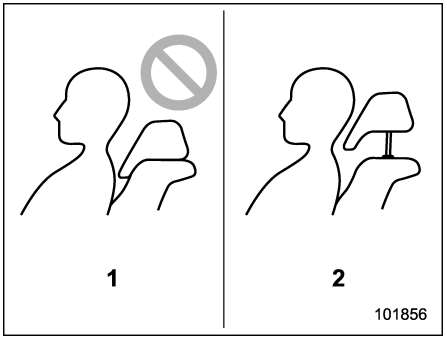
⚠ WARNING

- **Never drive the vehicle with the head restraints removed because they are designed to reduce the risk of serious neck injury in the event that the vehicle is struck from the rear. Therefore, when you have removed the head restraints, you must reinstall all head restraints to protect vehicle occupants.**
- **All occupants, including the driver, should not operate a vehicle or sit in a vehicle's seat until the head restraints are placed in their proper positions in order to minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash.**

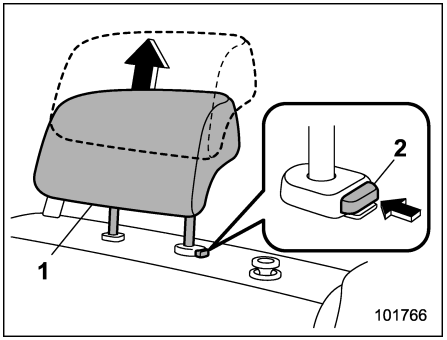
▼ Rear windows side seating position

⚠ CAUTION

The head restraint is not intended to be used in the retracted position. Before sitting on the seat, raise the head restraint to the extended position.



1) When not used (retracted position)
2) When used (extended position)



1) Head restraint
2) Release button

To raise:

Pull the head restraint up.

To lower:

Push the head restraint down while pressing the release button on the top of the seatback.

To remove:

While pressing the release button, pull out the head restraint.

To install:

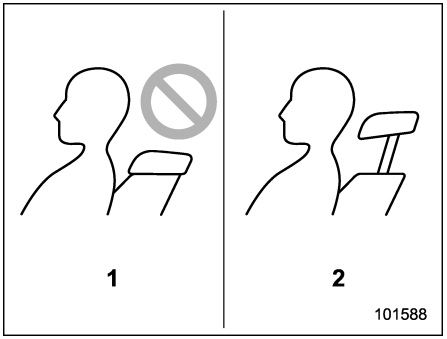
Install the head restraint into the holes that are located on the top of the seatback until the head restraint locks. Press and hold the release button to lower the head restraint.

When the seats are not occupied, lower the head restraints to improve rearward visibility.

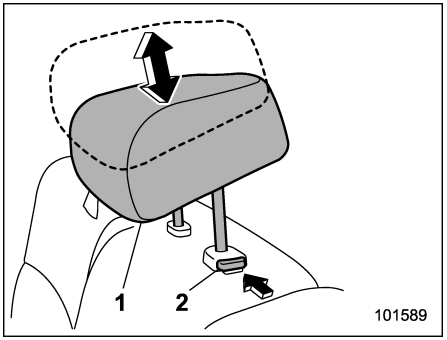
▼ **Rear center seating position**

⚠ CAUTION

The head restraint is not intended to be used in the retracted position. Before sitting on the seat, raise the head restraint to the extended position.



1) When not used (retracted position)
2) When used (extended position)



1) Head restraint
2) Release button

To raise:

Pull the head restraint up.

– CONTINUED –

To lower:

Push the head restraint down while pressing the release button on the top of the seatback.

To remove:

While pressing the release button, pull out the head restraint.

To install:

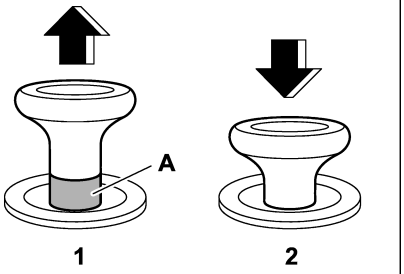
Install the head restraint into the holes that are located on the top of the seatback until the head restraint locks. Press and hold the release button to lower the head restraint.

When the rear center seating position is not occupied, lower the head restraint to improve rearward visibility.

■ Folding down the rear seatback

⚠ WARNING

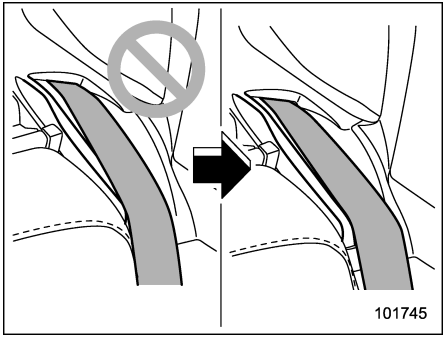
- **When you fold down the seatback, check that there are no passengers or objects on the rear seat. Not doing so creates a risk of injury or property damage if the seatback suddenly folds down.**
- **Never allow passengers to ride on the folded rear seatback or in the cargo area. Doing so may result in serious injury or death.**
- **Secure all objects and especially long items properly to prevent them from being thrown around inside the vehicle and causing serious injury during a sudden stop, a sudden steering maneuver or a rapid acceleration.**

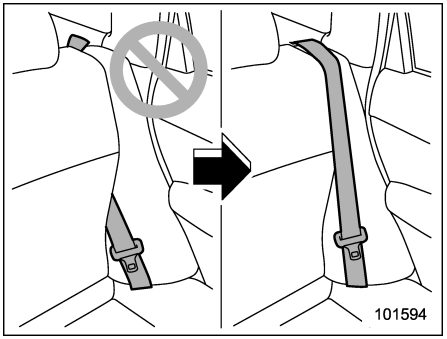


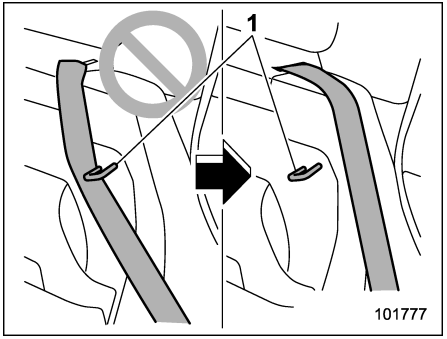
Lock release knob
1) Unlocked
2) Locked
A) Unlocking marker in red

⚠ WARNING

When you return the seatback to its original position, check that the unlocking marker on the lock release knob is not visible. Also, shake the seatback slightly to confirm that it is securely fixed in place. If the seatback is not securely fixed in place, the seatback may suddenly fold down in the event of sudden braking, or objects may move out from the cargo area, which could cause serious injury or death.







1) Securing hook

⚠ WARNING

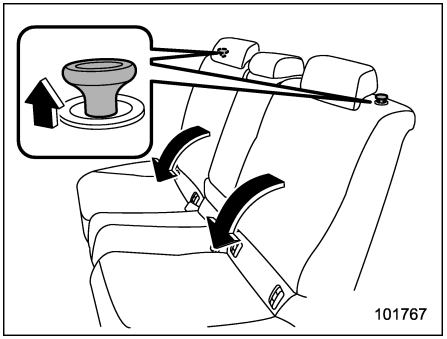
When the seatback is returned to its original position, observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may lead to serious injury or an accident because the operation efficiency of the seatbelt is inhibited.

- **Be careful to prevent the seat belt from running off the belt guide.**
- **The seatbelt should not be caught in the seatback and it should be fully visible.**
- **The seatbelt should not pass behind the securing hook for the seatback.**

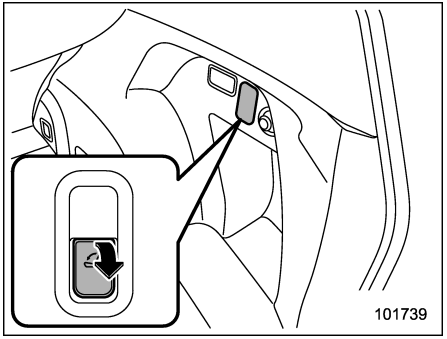
⚠ CAUTION

Do not hang luggage etc. on the securing hook. The possibility exists that the seatback may not be able to be fixed firmly in place. This could lead to unexpected accidents.

1. Lower the head restraints.



Release knob



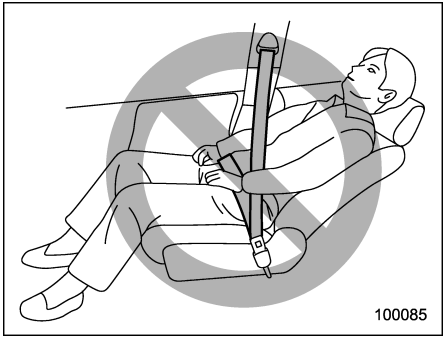
Release latch on both sides of the cargo area (if equipped)

2. Unlock the seatback by pulling the lock release knob or release latch (if equipped) and then fold the seatback down.

– CONTINUED –

To return the seatback to its original position, raise the seatback until it locks into place and make sure that the unlocking marker on the lock release knob is no longer visible.

■ Reclining the seatback (if equipped)



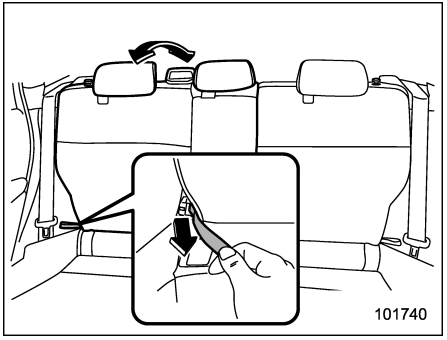
⚠ WARNING

To prevent the passenger from sliding under the seatbelt in the event of a collision, always put the seatback in the upright position while the vehicle is in motion. Also, do not place objects such as cushions between the passenger and the seatback. If you do so, the risk of sliding under the lap belt and of the lap belt sliding up over the abdomen will increase, and both can result in serious internal injury or death.

⚠ CAUTION

When using the cargo area cover, observe the following precautions.

- **Be careful not to pinch your hand between the head restraint and the cargo area cover when you recline the rear seat.**
- **Move the front cover of the cargo area cover backward so that the cover is not damaged by the reclined seatback. Refer to "Cargo area cover" ☞6-14.**



Pull the strap and adjust the seatback to the desired position.

Then release the strap and make sure the seatback is securely locked into place.

Seatbelts

■ Seatbelt safety tips

⚠ WARNING

- **All persons in the vehicle should fasten their seatbelts BEFORE the vehicle starts to move. Otherwise, the possibility of serious injury becomes greater in the event of a sudden stop or accident.**
- **All belts should fit snugly in order to provide full restraint. Loose fitting belts are not as effective in preventing or reducing injury.**
- **Each seatbelt is designed to support only one person. Never use a single belt for two or more persons – even children. Otherwise, in an accident, serious injury or death could result.**
- **Replace all seatbelt assemblies including retractors and attaching hardware worn by occupants of a vehicle that has been in a serious accident. Also, be sure to replace seatbelt assemblies that show signs of severe fraying or having been cut. The entire assembly should be replaced even if damage is not obvious.**
- **When wearing the seatbelt, insert the tongue plate into the correct buckle. Otherwise, in an accident, serious injury or death could result.**
- **Do not fasten your seatbelt with a child on your knees. Otherwise, in an accident, serious injury or death could result.**
- **Put children in the REAR seat properly restrained at all times in a child restraint device or in a seatbelt, whichever is appropriate for the child's age, height and weight. The SRS airbag deploys with considerable speed and force and can injure or even kill children, especially if they are not restrained or improperly restrained. Because children are lighter and weaker than adults, their risk of being injured from deployment is greater.**

  Secure ALL types of child restraint devices (including forward facing child seats) in the REAR seats at all times.

  NEVER INSTALL A REARWARD FACING CHILD SEAT IN THE FRONT SEAT. DOING SO RISKS SERIOUS INJURY OR DEATH TO THE CHILD BY PLACING THE CHILD'S HEAD TOO CLOSE TO THE SRS AIRBAG.

  According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating positions. For instructions and precautions concerning the child restraint system, refer to "Child restraint systems" ☞1-23.

▼ Infants or small children

Use a child restraint system that is suitable for your vehicle. Refer to "Child restraint systems" ☞1-23.

▼ Children

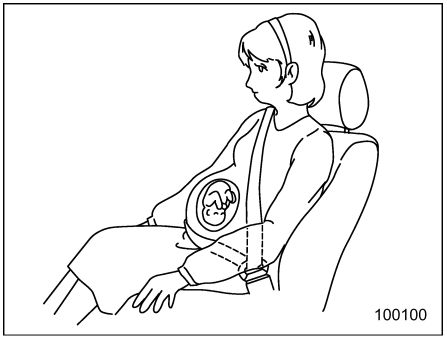
If a child is too big for a child restraint system, the child should sit in the rear seat and be restrained using the seatbelts. According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating positions. Never allow a child to stand up or kneel on the seat.

Seatbelts are designed under the assumption that adult-sized occupants will use them. If the shoulder portion of the belt crosses the face or neck, move the

– CONTINUED –

child closer to the belt buckle to help provide a good shoulder belt fit. Care must be taken to securely place the lap belt as low as possible on the hips and not on the child's waist. If the shoulder portion of the belt cannot be properly positioned, a child restraint system should be used. Never place the shoulder belt under the child's arm or behind the child's back.

▼ **Expectant mothers**



Expectant mothers also need to use the seatbelts. They should consult their doctor for specific recommendations. The lap belt should be worn securely and as low as possible over the hips, not over the waist.

■ Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR)

All seatbelts in the vehicle have an Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR).

The emergency locking retractor allows normal body movement but the retractor locks automatically during a sudden stop, impact or if you pull the belt very quickly out of the retractor.

■ Automatic/Emergency Locking Retractor (A/ELR) (if equipped)

For some models, each rear passenger's seatbelt has an Automatic/Emergency Locking Retractor (A/ELR). The Automatic/Emergency Locking Retractor normally functions as an Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR). The A/ELR has an additional locking mode, "Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) mode", intended to secure a child restraint system.

First check if the ALR mode is equipped for the seatbelts of the vehicle. If the ALR mode is equipped, the seatbelts function as follows.

When a seatbelt is once drawn out completely and is then retracted even slightly, the retractor locks the seatbelt in that position and the seatbelt cannot be extended. As the belt is rewinding, clicks will be heard which indicate the retractor functions as an ALR. When the seatbelt is retracted fully, the ALR mode is canceled and the ELR mode is restored.

For models with A/ELR seatbelts, when securing a child restraint system on the rear seats by using a seatbelt in the forward-facing direction, the seatbelt must be changed over to the Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) mode. For instructions on how to install the child restraint system using a seatbelt, refer to "Installing child restraint systems with seatbelt" ☞1-29.

When the child restraint system is removed, make sure that the retractor is restored to the Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR) mode by allowing the seatbelt to retract fully.

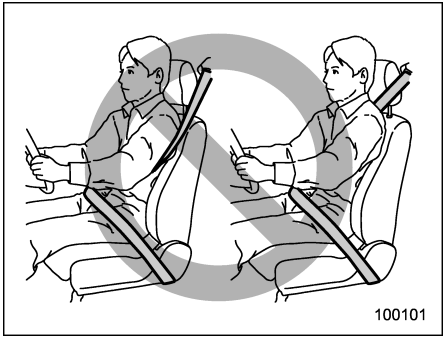
■ Seatbelt warning light and chime

Refer to "Seatbelt warning light and chime" ☞3-14.

■ Fastening the seatbelt

⚠ WARNING

- **Never use a belt that is twisted or reversed. In an accident, this can increase the risk or severity of injury.**
- **Keep the lap belt as low as possible on your hips. In a collision, this spreads the force of the lap belt over stronger hip bones instead of across the weaker abdomen.**
- **Seatbelts provide maximum restraint when the occupant sits well back and upright in the seat. To reduce the risk of sliding under the seatbelt in a collision, the front seatbacks should be always used in the upright position while the vehicle is running. If the front seatbacks are not used in the upright position in a collision, the risk of sliding under the lap belt and of the lap belt sliding up over the abdomen will increase, and both can result in serious internal injury or death.**
- **Do not put cushions or any other materials between occupants and seatbacks or seat cushions. If you do so, the risk of sliding under the lap belt and of the lap belt sliding up over the abdomen will increase, and both can result in serious internal injury or death.**



⚠ WARNING

Never place the shoulder belt under the arm or behind the back. If an accident occurs, this can increase the risk or severity of injury.

⚠ CAUTION

Metallic parts of the seatbelt can become very hot in a vehicle that has been closed up in sunny weather; they could burn an occupant. Do not touch such hot parts until they cool.

▼ Front seatbelts

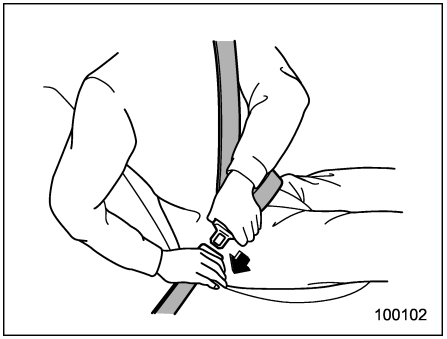
1. Adjust the seat position according to the following procedure.

Driver's seat: Adjust the seatback to the upright position. Move the seatback as far from the steering wheel as practical while still maintaining full vehicle control.

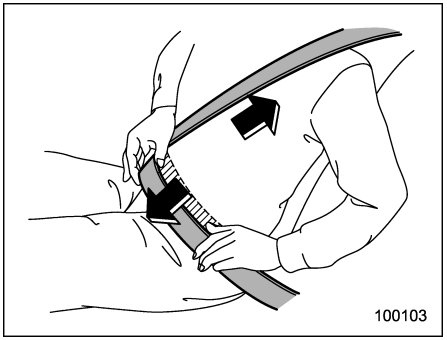
Front passenger's seat: Adjust the seatback to the upright position. Move the seat as far back as possible.

2. Sit well back in the seat.
3. Pick up the tongue plate and pull the belt out slowly. Do not let it get twisted. If the belt stops before reaching the buckle, return the belt slightly and pull it out more slowly. If the belt still cannot be unlocked, let the belt retract slightly after giving it a strong pull, then pull it out slowly again.

– CONTINUED –

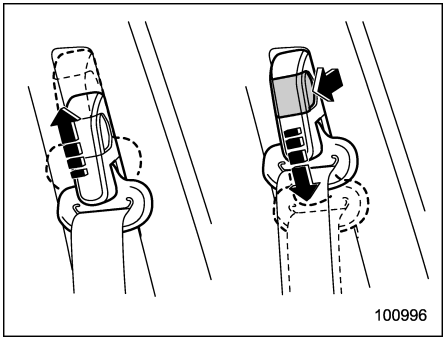


4. Insert the tongue plate into the buckle until you hear a click.



5. To make the lap part tight, pull up on the shoulder belt.
6. Place the lap belt as low as possible on your hips, not on your waist.

▽ Adjusting the front seat shoulder belt anchor height



The shoulder belt anchor height should be adjusted to the position best suited for the driver/front passenger. Always adjust the anchor height so that the shoulder belt passes over the middle of the shoulder without touching the neck.

To raise:

Slide the anchor up.

To lower:

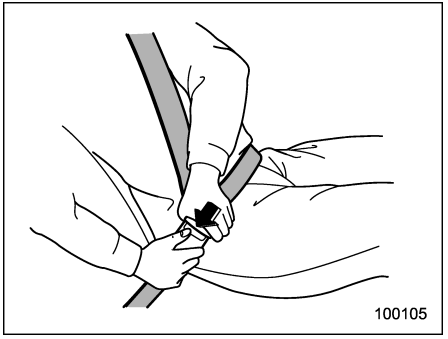
Pull the release knob and slide the anchor down.

Pull down on the anchor to make sure that it is locked in place.

⚠ WARNING

When wearing the seatbelts, make sure the shoulder portion of the webbing does not pass over your neck. If it does, adjust the seatbelt anchor to a lower position. Placing the shoulder belt over the neck may result in neck injury during sudden braking or in a collision.

▽ Unfastening the seatbelt

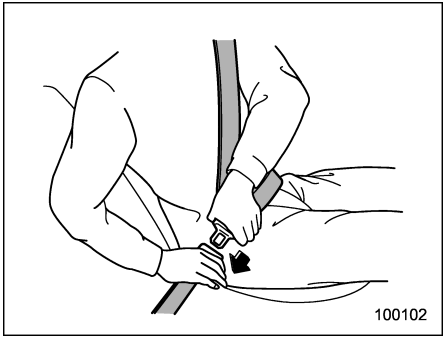


Push the button on the buckle.

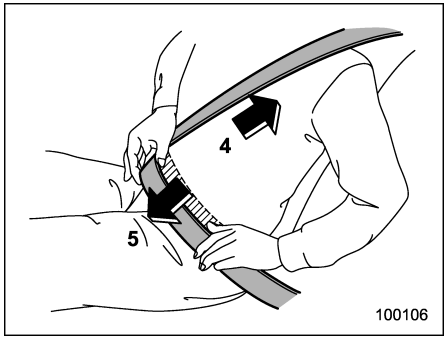
Before closing the door, make sure that the belts are retracted properly to avoid catching the belt webbing in the door.

▼ Rear seatbelts (except rear center seatbelt)

1. Sit well back in the seat.
2. Pick up the tongue plate and pull the belt out slowly. Do not let it get twisted. If the belt stops before reaching the buckle, return the belt slightly and pull it out more slowly. If the belt still cannot be unlocked, let the belt retract slightly after giving a strong pull on it, then pull it out slowly again.

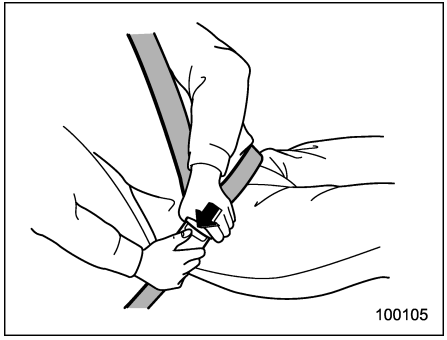


3. Insert the tongue plate into the buckle until you hear a click.



4. To make the lap part tight, pull up on the shoulder belt.
5. Place the lap belt as low as possible on your hips, not on your waist.

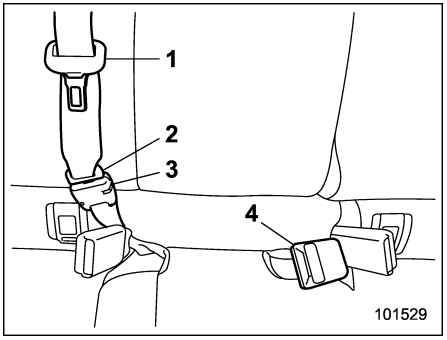
▽ Unfastening the seatbelt



Push the button on the buckle.

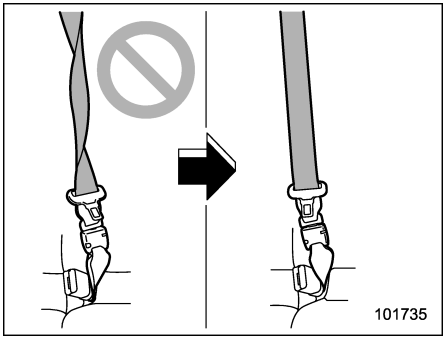
Before closing the door, make sure that the belts are retracted properly to avoid catching the belt webbing in the door.

▼ Rear center seatbelt



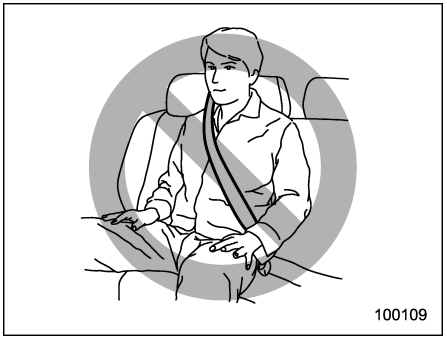
1) Center seatbelt tongue plate
2) Connector (tongue)
3) Connector (buckle)
4) Center seatbelt buckle

– CONTINUED –



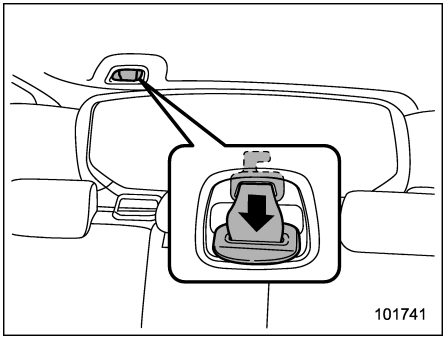
⚠ WARNING

Fastening the seatbelt with the webbing twisted can increase the risk or severity of injury in an accident. When fastening the belt after it is pulled out from the retractor, especially when inserting the connector's tongue plate into the mating buckle (on right-hand side), always check that the webbing is not twisted.



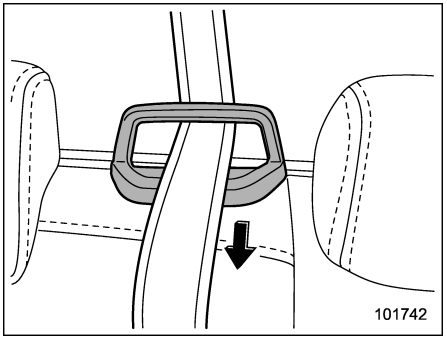
⚠ WARNING

- **Be sure to fasten both tongue plates to the respective buckles. If the seatbelt is used only as a shoulder belt (with the connector's tongue plate not fastened to the connector's buckle on the right-hand side), it cannot properly restrain the wearer in position in an accident, possibly resulting in serious injury or death.**
- **Before fastening the seatbelt, confirm that the seatbelt is routed through the belt guide. A seatbelt not routed through the belt guide can cause neck injuries during sudden braking or in a collision since it may slip up on your neck.**

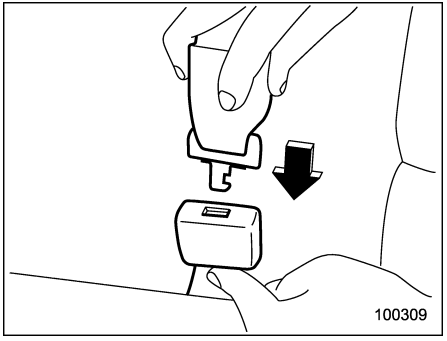


Rear center seatbelt is stowed in the recess of the ceiling above the cargo area.

1. Retrieve the connector (tongue) plate from the slot in the recess by pulling the connector (tongue) plate, then pull out the seatbelt slowly.

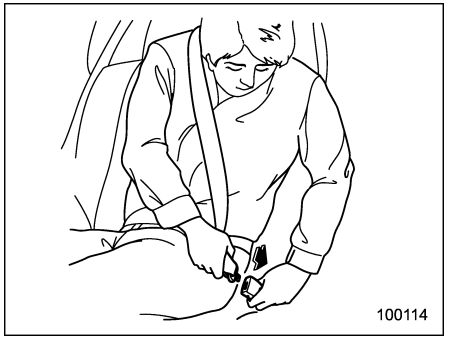


2. Pass the seatbelt through the belt guide.

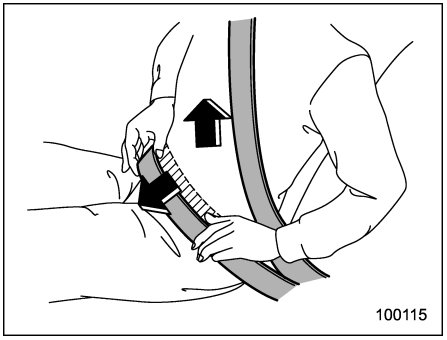


3. After confirming that the webbing is not twisted, insert the connector (tongue) attached at the webbing end into the buckle on the right-hand side until a click is heard.

If the belt stops before reaching the buckle, return the belt slightly and pull it out more slowly. If the belt still cannot be unlocked, let the belt retract slightly after giving it a strong pull, then pull it out slowly again.



4. Insert the center seatbelt tongue plate in the center seatbelt buckle marked “CENTER” on the left-hand side until it clicks.

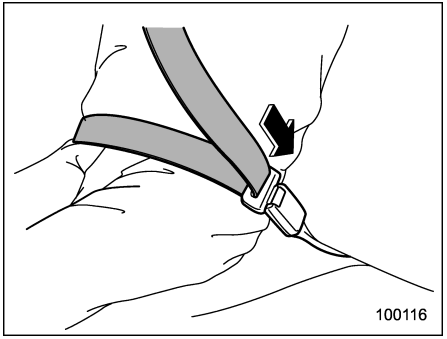


5. To make the lap part tight, pull up on the shoulder belt.

6. Place the lap belt as low as possible on your hips, not on your waist.

– CONTINUED –

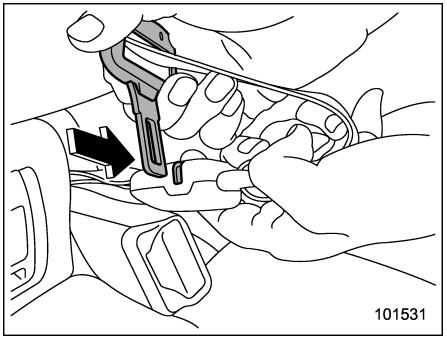
▽ **Unfastening the seatbelt**



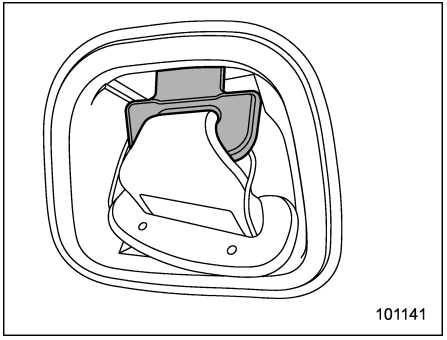
1. Push the release button of the center seatbelt buckle (on the left-hand side) to unfasten the seatbelt.

NOTE

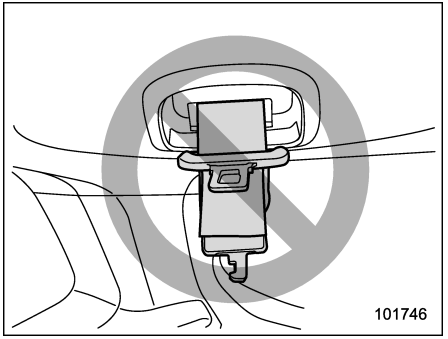
When the seatback is folded down for greater cargo area, it is necessary to disconnect the connector.



2. Insert a tongue plate or other hard pointed object into the slot in the connector (buckle) on the right-hand side and push it in. The connector (tongue) plate will then disconnect from the buckle.



3. Allow the retractor to roll up the belt. You should hold the webbing end and guide it back into the retractor while it is rolling up. Neatly store the tongue plate in the recess and then insert the connector (tongue) plate into the slot.



⚠ CAUTION

- **Do not allow the retractor to roll up the seatbelt too quickly. Otherwise, the metal tongue plates may hit against the trim, resulting in damaged trim.**

- **Have the seatbelt fully rolled up so that the tongue plates are neatly stored. A hanging tongue plate can swing and hit against the trim during driving, causing damage to the trim.**

■ Seatbelt maintenance

To clean the seatbelts, use a mild soap and lukewarm water. Never bleach or dye the belts because this could seriously affect their strength.

Inspect the seatbelts and attachments including the webbing and all hardware periodically for cracks, cuts, gashes, tears, damage, loose bolts or worn areas. Replace the seatbelts even if only minor damage is found.

⚠ CAUTION

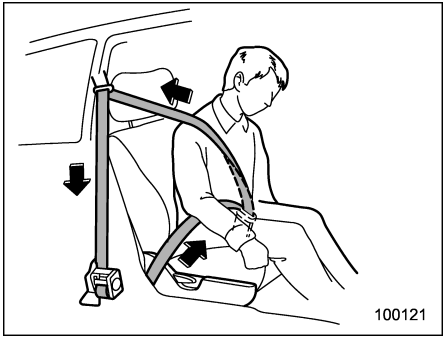
- **Keep the belts free of polishes, oils, chemicals and particularly battery acid.**
- **Never attempt to make modifications or changes that will prevent the seatbelt from operating properly.**

Seatbelt pretensioners

The following seatbelts have a seatbelt pretensioner.

- Driver's seatbelt
- Front passenger's seatbelt

The seatbelt pretensioners are designed to be activated in the event of an accident involving a moderate to severe frontal collision.



Front seatbelt pretensioner

If the frontal SRS airbag sensors detect a certain predetermined amount of force during a frontal collision, any seatbelt which has a seatbelt pretensioner is quickly drawn in by the pretensioner to take up the slack so that the belt more effectively restrains the seat occupant.

When a seatbelt pretensioner is activated, an operating noise will be heard and a small amount of smoke will be released. These occurrences are normal and not harmful. This smoke does not indicate a fire in the vehicle.

Once the seatbelt pretensioner has been activated, the seatbelt retractor remains locked. Consequently, the seatbelt cannot be pulled out and retracted and therefore must be replaced.

NOTE

- **Seatbelt pretensioners are not designed to be activated in minor frontal impacts, in side or rear impacts or in roll-over accidents.**
- **The seatbelt pretensioners and frontal SRS airbags operate simultaneously. In models with front passenger's occupant detection system, even if the front passenger's frontal SRS airbag does not operate as the front passenger's seat is not occupied, the seatbelt pretensioner for the front passenger's seat will operate in combination with the driver's frontal SRS airbag/seatbelt pretensioner.**
- **Pretensioners are designed to function on a one-time-only basis. In the event that a pretensioner is activated, we recommend that you have the**

– CONTINUED –

seatbelt retractor assemblies, which are equipped with seatbelt pretensioners, replaced with genuine SUBARU parts by your authorized SUBARU dealer. When using a seatbelt equipped with a load limiter, it is installed in the front seating position.

- **If a seatbelt which has a seatbelt pretensioner does not retract or cannot be pulled out due to a malfunction or activation of the pretensioner, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.**
- **If the seatbelt retractor assembly or surrounding area has been damaged, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.**
- **When you sell your vehicle, we urge you to explain to the buyer that it has seatbelt pretensioners by alerting the buyer to the contents of this section.**

⚠ WARNING

- **To obtain maximum protection, the occupants should sit in an upright position with their seatbelts properly fastened. Refer to "Seatbelts" ☞1-13.**
- **Do not modify, remove or strike the seatbelt retractor assemblies equipped with seatbelt pretensioners or the surrounding area. This could result in accidental activation of the seatbelt pretensioners or could make the system inoperative, possibly resulting in serious injury. Seatbelt pretensioners have no user-serviceable parts. For required servicing of seatbelt retractors equipped with seatbelt pretensioners, we recommend that you consult your nearest SUBARU dealer.**
- **When discarding seatbelt retractor assemblies equipped with seatbelt pretensioners or scrapping the entire vehicle due to collision damage or for other reasons, we recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer.**

■ System monitors

A diagnostic system continually monitors the readiness of the seatbelt pretensioner while the vehicle is being driven. The seatbelt pretensioners share the control module with the SRS airbag system. Therefore, if any malfunction occurs in a seatbelt pretensioner, the SRS airbag system warning light will illuminate. For details, refer to "SRS airbag system monitor" ☞1-60.

■ System servicing

⚠ WARNING

- **When discarding a seatbelt retractor assembly or scrapping the entire vehicle damaged by a collision, we recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer.**
- **Tampering with or disconnecting the system's wiring could result in accidental activation of the seatbelt pretensioner and/or SRS airbag or could make the system inoperative, which may result in serious injury. Do not use electrical test equipment on any circuit related to the seatbelt pretensioner and SRS airbag systems. For required servicing of the seatbelt pretensioner, we recommend that you consult your nearest SUBARU dealer.**

⚠ CAUTION

The front sub sensors are located on both the right and left sides at the

front of the vehicle, and the SRS airbag control module including the impact sensors is located under the center console. If you need service or repair in those areas or near the seatbelt pretensioner, we recommend that you have the work performed by your authorized SUBARU dealer.

NOTE

If the front part of the vehicle is damaged in an accident to the extent that the seatbelt pretensioner does not operate, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.

■ Precautions against vehicle modification

We recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer if you want to install any accessory parts to your vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not perform any of the following modifications. Such modifications can interfere with proper operation of the seatbelt pretensioners.

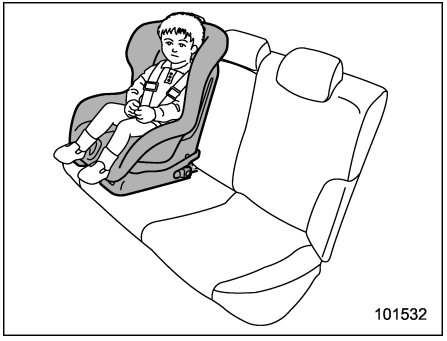
- **Attachment of any equipment (bush bar, bullbar, winches, snow plow, skid/sump plate, etc.) to the front end other than genuine SUBARU accessory parts or parts that match the quality of genuine SUBARU accessory parts.**
- **Modification of the suspension system or front end structure.**
- **Installation of a tire of different size and construction from the tires specified on the vehicle placard attached to the driver's door pillar or specified for individual vehicle models in this Owner's Manual.**

Child restraint systems

■ Applications for Australia models

Refer to the Owner's Manual supplement for the instructions of the child restraint system.

■ Safety precautions



Infants and small children should always be placed in an infant or child restraint system while riding in the vehicle. You should use an infant or child restraint system that is appropriate for the child's age and size. All child restraint systems are designed to be secured in the vehicle seats.

Children could be endangered in an

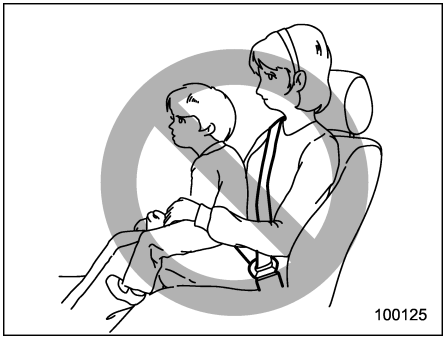
– CONTINUED –

accident if their child restraints are not properly secured in the vehicle. When installing the child restraint system, carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions.

According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating positions.

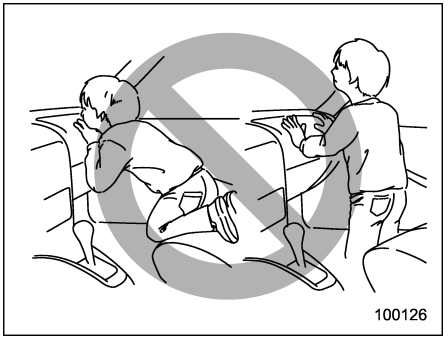
⚠ WARNING

Before installing a child restraint system, check that the unlocking marker on the seatback lock release knob cannot be seen to confirm that the rear seatback is securely locked in position. If the rear seatback is not locked securely, serious injury may result.



⚠ WARNING

Never let a passenger hold a child on his or her lap or in his or her arms while the vehicle is moving. The passenger cannot protect the child from injury in a collision, because the child will be caught between the passenger and objects inside the vehicle.

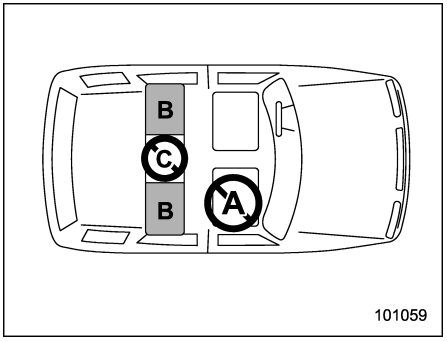


⚠ WARNING

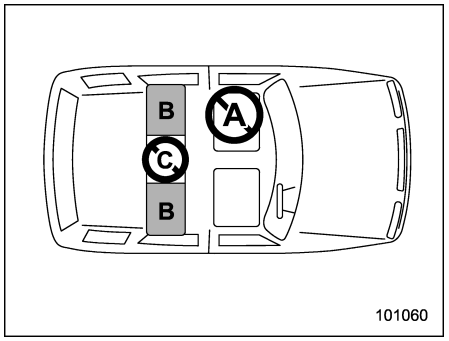
- **Children should be properly restrained at all times. Never allow a child to stand up, or to kneel on any seat. Unrestrained children will be thrown forward during sudden stop or in an accident and can be injured seriously.**
- **Never allow a child to stand up, or to kneel on the front passenger's seat, or never hold a child on your lap or in your arms. The SRS airbag deploys with considerable force and can injure or even kill the child.**

■ Where to place a child restraint system

The following are SUBARU's recommendations on where to place a child restraint system in your vehicle.



Left-hand drive models



Right-hand drive models

A: Front passenger's seat

Do not install a child restraint system (including a booster cushion) due to the hazard to children posed by the passenger's airbag.

B: Rear seat, window-side seating positions

Recommended positions for all types of child restraint systems.

In these positions, the following equipment is provided for installing a child restraint system.

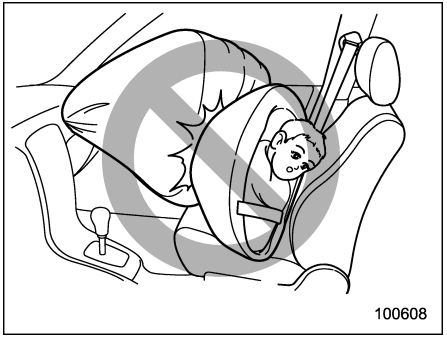
- Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR) seatbelts
- Automatic/Emergency Locking Retractor (A/ELR) seatbelts (if equipped)
- ISOFIX anchor bars
- Top tether anchorages

Some types of child restraints might not be able to be secured firmly due to projection of the seat cushion.

In this seating position, you should use only a child restraint system that has a bottom base that fits snugly against the contours of the seat cushion and can be securely retained using the seatbelt.

C: Rear seat, center seating position

Do not install a child restraint system (including a booster seat).



⚠ WARNING

- **Secure ALL types of child restraint devices (including forward facing child seats) in the**

– CONTINUED –

REAR seats at all times. The SRS airbag deploys with considerable speed and force and can injure or even kill children, especially if they are not restrained or improperly restrained. Because children are lighter and weaker than adults, their risk of being injured from deployment is greater. According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating positions.

- **Never install a child restraint system in the front passenger's seat. The force of the rapid deployment of the front passenger's SRS frontal airbag can cause death or serious injury to the child in the event of an accident.**

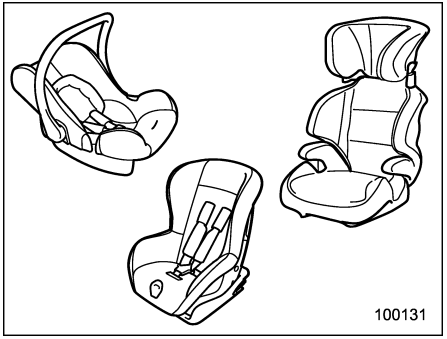
▼ **Warning label**

⚠ WARNING

- **Warning labels are located on both sides of the front passenger's sun visor. The warning label indicates that it is forbidden to install a rearward facing child restraint system in the front passenger's seat.**
- **NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.**

A) AIRBAG

■ Choosing a child restraint system



Choose a child restraint system that is appropriate for the child's size and age to provide the child with proper protection.

Also it is important that the child restraint system meets safety standards applicable to your country.

In most European countries, child restraint systems must meet the requirement of ECE regulation No. 44. It can be identified by looking for the approval label on the child restraint system or the manufacturer's statement of compliance on the box and the system.

According to the ECE regulation No. 44, child restraint systems are classified into the following five "mass groups".

Group 0: for children of a mass less than 10 kg

Group 0+: for children of a mass less than 13 kg

Group I: for children of mass from 9 to 18 kg

Group II: for children of mass from 15 to 25 kg

Group III: for children of mass from 22 to 36 kg

For European countries, refer to the following table for the recommended child restraint system.

– CONTINUED –

Child restraint suitability for each seating position (Europe)
Front seating position:

Mass group	Suitability
0 – up to 10 kg	×
0^+ – up to 13 kg	×
I – 9 to 18 kg	×
II – 15 to 25 kg	×
III – 22 to 36 kg	×

×: Not suitable for child restraint system.

Child restraint suitability for each seating position (Europe)
Rear seating position:

Mass group	Suitability	
	Outboard	Center
0 – up to 10 kg	L_1 or U	×
0^+ – up to 13 kg	L_1 or U	×
I – 9 to 18 kg	L_2 or UF	×
II – 15 to 25 kg	L_3, L_4 or UF	×
III – 22 to 36 kg	L_3, L_4 or UF	×

U: Suitable for universal category child restraint system.
UF: Suitable for forward-facing “universal” category restraints approved for use in this mass group.
×: Not suitable for child restraint system.
L_1: Childseat SUBARU Baby Safe Plus
L_2: Childseat SUBARU Duo plus
L_3: Childseat SUBARU Kid Plus
L_4: Childseat SUBARU Kidfix

Child restraint suitability for each seating position (Europe)

Mass group	Size class	Fixture	Vehicle ISOFIX positions		
			Front Passenger	Rear Outboard	Rear Center
Carrycot	F	ISO/L1	NA	×	NA
	G	ISO/L2	NA	×	NA
0 – up to 10 kg	E	ISO/R1	NA	IL1	NA
0^+ – up to 13 kg	E	ISO/R1	NA	IL1	NA
	D	ISO/R2	NA	IL1	NA
	C	ISO/R3	NA	IL1	NA
I – 9 to 18 kg	D	ISO/R2	NA	IL1	NA
	C	ISO/R3	NA	IL1	NA
	B	ISO/F2	NA	IUF	NA
	B1	ISO/F2X	NA	IL2 or IUF	NA
	A	ISO/F3	NA	IUF	NA
II – 15 to 25 kg			NA	IL3	NA
III – 22 to 36 kg			NA	IL3	NA

IUF: Suitable for ISOFIX forward child restraints systems of universal category that are approved for use in the mass group.
×: ISOFIX position not suitable for ISOFIX child restraint systems in the mass group and/or this size class.
NA: There is no ISOFIX system.
IL1: Childseat G 0/1S ISOFIX and Childseat G 0/1S ISOFIX base
IL2: Childseat SUBARU Duo plus
IL3: Childseat SUBARU Kidfix

■ Installing child restraint systems with seatbelt

⚠ WARNING

- **Child restraint systems and seatbelts can become hot in a vehicle that has been closed up in sunny weather; they could burn a small child. Check the child restraint system before you place a child in it.**
- **Do not leave an unsecured child restraint system in your vehicle. Unsecured child restraint systems can be thrown around inside of the vehicle in a sudden stop, turn or accident; they can strike and injure vehicle occupants as well as result in serious injuries or death to the child.**

– CONTINUED –

• When you install a child restraint system, follow the manufacturer's instructions supplied with it. After installing the child restraint system, check to ensure that it is held securely in position. If it is not held tight and secure, the danger of your child or other passengers suffering personal injury in the event of an accident may be increased.

▼ Preparation for installing child restraint system

First check if the Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) is equipped for the seatbelts of the vehicle according to the following procedure.

1. For models with rear seat reclining mechanism, adjust the seatback to the upright position.
2. Draw out the seatbelt completely.
3. Retract the seatbelt even slightly and try to draw out the seatbelt again.
4. If the seatbelt is locked in that position and cannot be extended, it indicates that an ALR is equipped for the seatbelt.

When the seatbelt is retracted fully, the ALR mode is canceled and the Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR) mode is restored.

If the ALR is not equipped for the seatbelt, refer to "Models without ALR" ☞1-31.

If the ALR is equipped for the seatbelt, refer to "Models with ALR" ☞1-33.

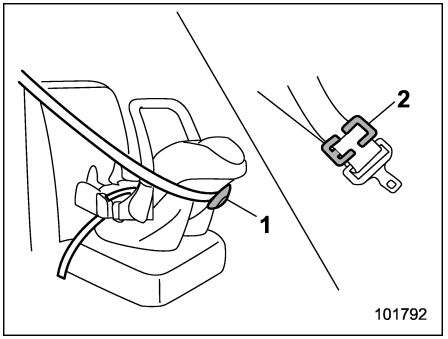
NOTE

• For details about the ELR, refer to "Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR)" ☞1-14.
• For details about the ALR, refer to "Automatic/Emergency Locking Retractor (A/ELR)" ☞1-14.

▼ Installing a rearward facing child restraint

NOTE

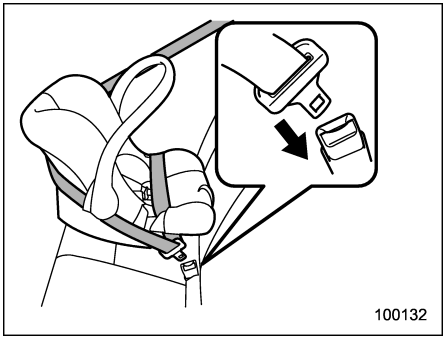
• For models with ALR:
If using ALR mode is recommended by the manufacturer's instructions supplied with the child restraint system, use ALR mode.



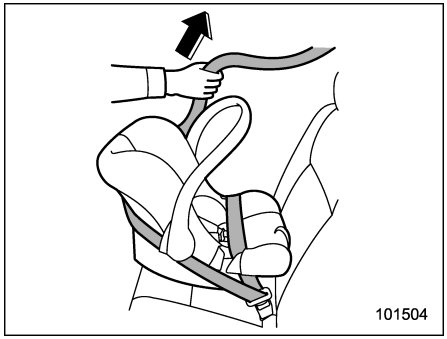
1) Lock-off device
2) Locking clip

• If using the lock-off device or the locking clip is recommended by the manufacturer's instructions supplied with the child restraint system, use the lock-off device or the locking clip to secure the child restraint system.

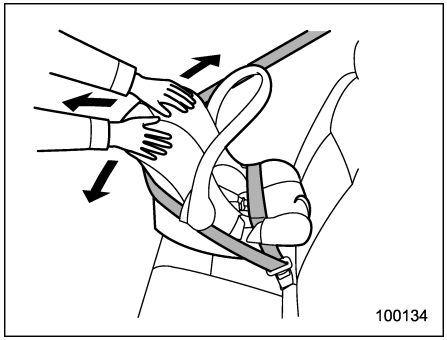
Through the following steps, the child restraint system is fastened with a seatbelt that is set to ELR mode.



1. Place the child restraint system in the rear seating position.
2. Run the lap and shoulder belt through or around the child restraint system following the instructions provided by its manufacturer.
3. Insert the tongue plate into the buckle until you hear a click.



4. Take up the slack in the lap belt.



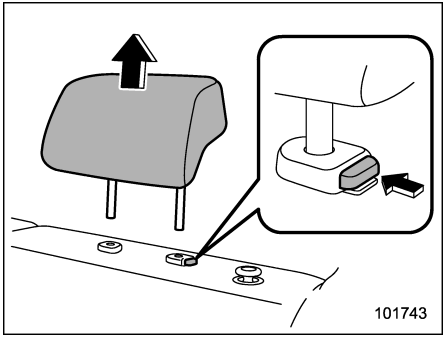
5. Push and pull the child restraint system forward and from side to side to check if it is firmly secured.
6. To remove the child restraint system, press the release button on the seatbelt buckle.

⚠ WARNING

NEVER INSTALL A REARWARD FACING CHILD SEAT IN THE FRONT PASSENGER'S SEAT. DOING SO RISKS SERIOUS INJURY OR DEATH TO THE CHILD BY PLACING THE CHILD'S HEAD TOO CLOSE TO THE SRS AIRBAG.

▼ Installing forward facing child restraint

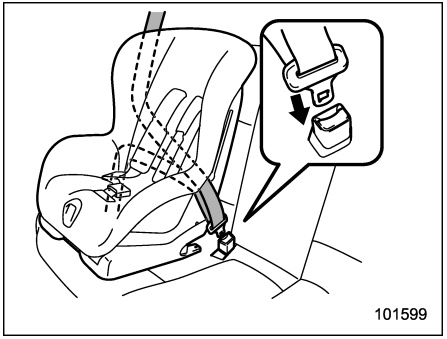
▽ Models without ALR



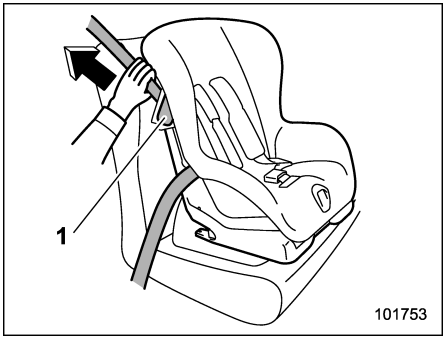
1. Remove the head restraint of the rear seating position where the child restraint system is to be installed.

– CONTINUED –

2. For models with rear seat reclining mechanism, adjust the seatback to the upright position.
3. Place the child restraint system on the seat.

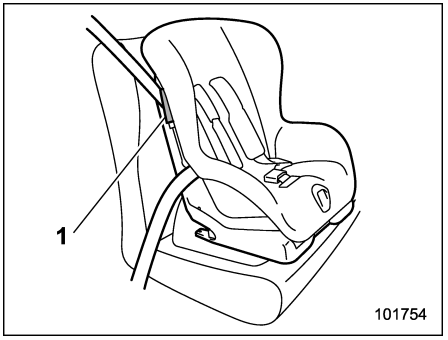


4. Run the lap and shoulder belt through or around the child restraint system following the instructions provided by its manufacturer.
5. Insert the tongue plate into the buckle until you hear a click.



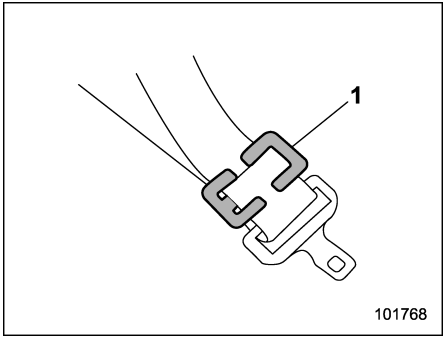
1) Lock-off lever

6. Release the child restraint system lock-off lever and pass the shoulder belt through the lock-off lever.
7. Take up the slack in the lap belt. At this time, to secure the child restraint system more firmly, apply your weight to push it down into the seat cushion as you tighten the seatbelt.



1) Lock-off lever

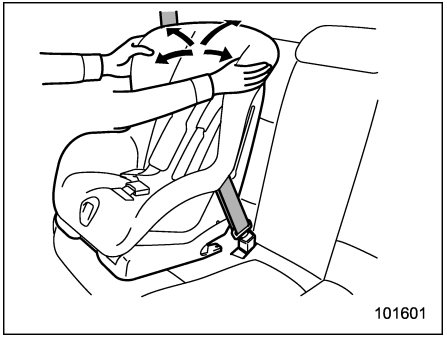
8. Lock the child restraint system lock-off lever to fix the shoulder belt.



1) Locking clip

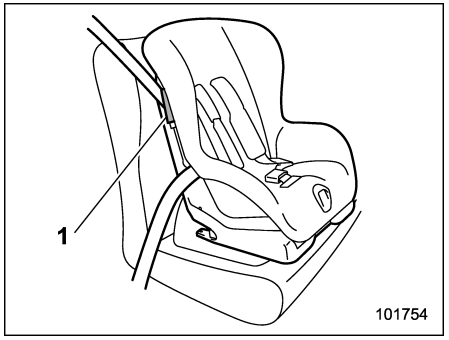
9. If your child restraint system is not

equipped with a lock-off (a seatbelt locking feature), secure the child restraint system using a locking clip.

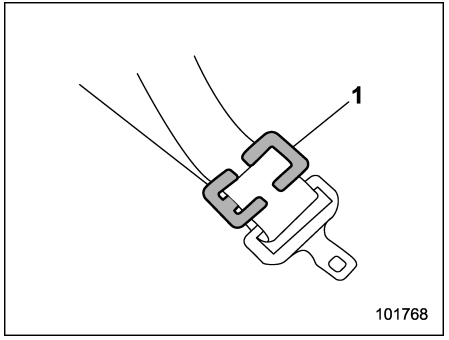


10. Before having a child sit in the child restraint system, try to move it back and forth and right and left to check if it is firmly secured. Sometimes a child restraint can be more firmly secured by pushing it down into the seat cushion and then tightening the seatbelt.

▽ **Models with ALR**



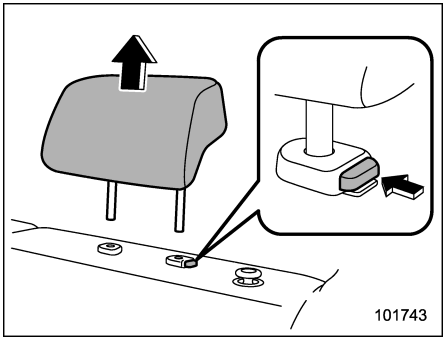
1) Lock-off lever



1) Locking clip

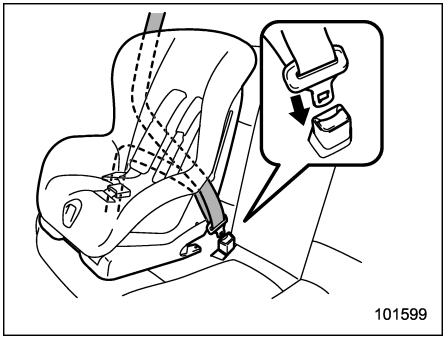
NOTE

If using ALR mode is not recommended by the manufacturer's instructions supplied with the child restraint system, use the lock-off lever or the locking clip instead of using ALR mode.

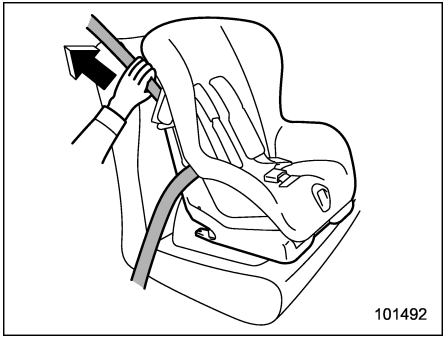


1. Remove the head restraint of the rear seating position where the child restraint system is to be installed.
2. For models with rear seat reclining mechanism, adjust the seatback to the upright position.
3. Place the child restraint system on the seat.

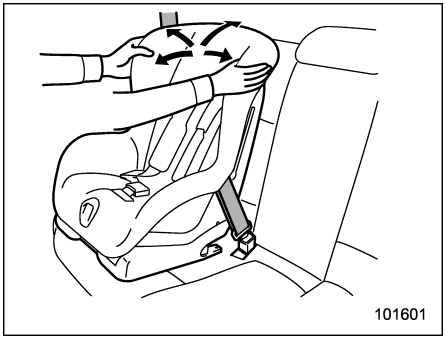
– CONTINUED –



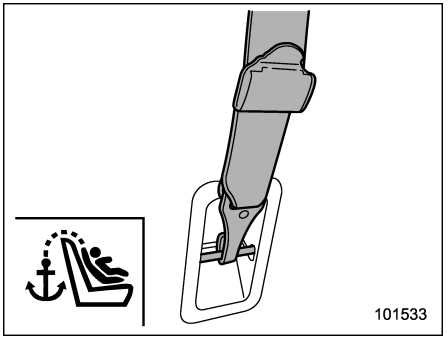
4. Run the lap and shoulder belt through or around the child restraint system following the instructions provided by its manufacturer.
5. Insert the tongue plate into the buckle until you hear a click.



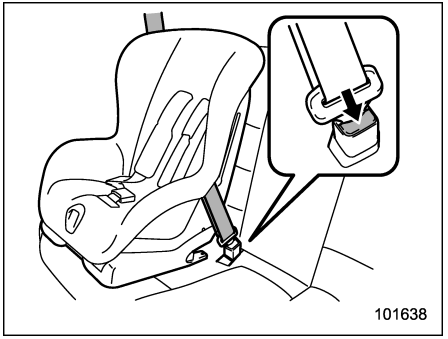
6. Take up the slack in the lap belt.
7. Pull out the seatbelt fully from the retractor to change the retractor over from the Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR) to the Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) function. Then, allow the belt to rewind into the retractor. As the belt is rewinding, clicks will be heard which indicate the retractor functions as ALR.



8. Before having a child sit in the child restraint system, try to move it back and forth and right and left to check that it is firmly secured. Sometimes a child restraint can be more firmly secured by pushing it down into the seat cushion and then tightening the seatbelt.
9. Pull at the shoulder portion of the belt to confirm that it cannot be pulled out (ALR properly functioning).



10. If the child restraint system requires a top tether, latch the hook onto the top tether anchorage and tighten the top tether. For additional instructions, refer to "Top tether anchorages" ☞1-38.



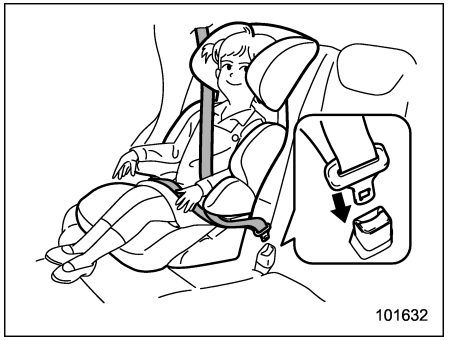
11. To remove the child restraint system,

press the release button on the seatbelt buckle and allow the belt to retract completely. The belt will return to the ELR mode.

NOTE

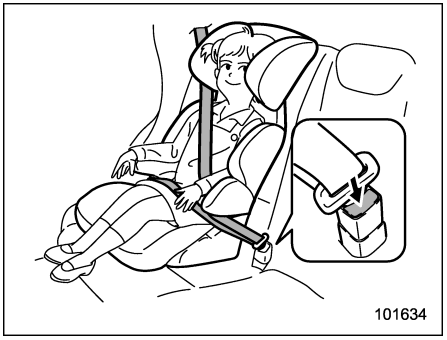
When the child restraint system is no longer in use, remove it and restore the ELR function of the retractor. That function is restored by allowing the seatbelt to retract fully.

■ Installing a booster seat



1. Place the booster seat in the rear seating position and sit the child on it. The child should sit well back on the booster seat.
2. Run the lap and shoulder belt through or around the booster seat and the child following the instructions provided by its manufacturer.
3. Insert the tongue plate into the buckle until you hear a click. Take care not to twist the seatbelt.

Make sure the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of child's shoulder and that the lap belt is positioned as low as possible on the child's hips.



4. To remove the booster seat, press the release button on the seatbelt buckle and allow the belt to retract.

⚠ WARNING

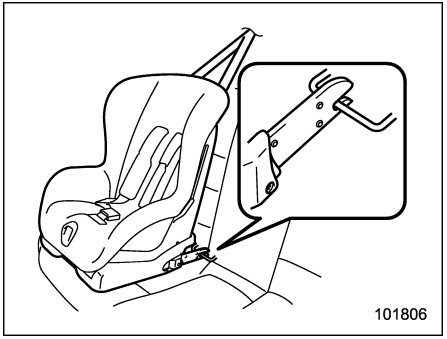
- **Never use a belt that is twisted or reversed. In an accident, this can increase the risk or severity of injury to the child.**
- **Never place the shoulder belt under the child's arm or behind the child's back. If an accident occurs, this can increase the risk or severity of injury to the child.**
- **The seatbelt should fit snugly in order to provide full restraint. Loose fitting belts are not as**

– CONTINUED –

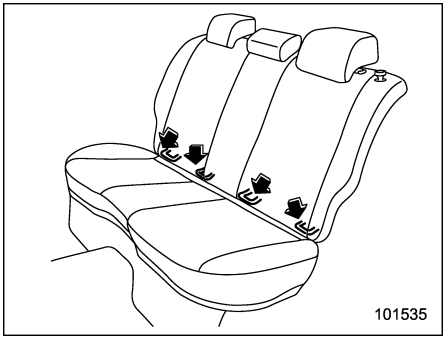
effective in preventing or reducing injury.

- **Place the lap belt as low as possible on the child's hips. High-positioned lap belt will increase the risk of sliding under the lap belt and of the lap belt sliding up over the abdomen, and both can result in serious internal injury or death.**
- **Make sure the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of child's shoulder. Placing the shoulder belt over the neck may result in neck injury during sudden braking or in a collision.**

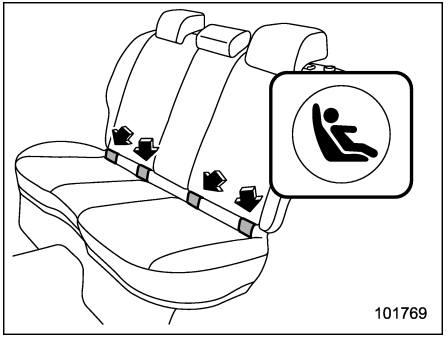
■ Installation of child restraint systems using ISOFIX anchor bars



Your vehicle is equipped with ISOFIX anchor bars that allow an approved ISOFIX child restraint system to be installed on the rear seat without use of a seatbelt.

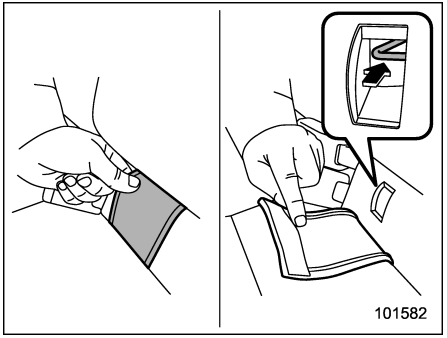


The ISOFIX anchor bars allow you to install a child restraint system only on the rear seat window-side seating positions. For each window-side seating position, two anchor bars are provided.

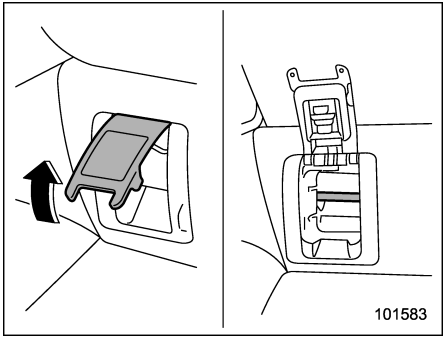


You will find the marks "" at the bottom of

the rear seat seatbacks. These marks indicate the positions of the ISOFIX anchor bars.

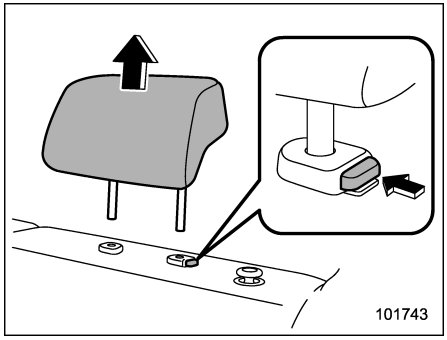


Type A

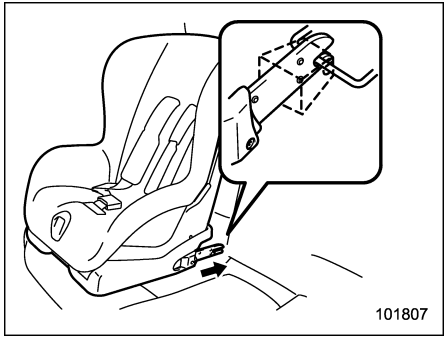


Type B

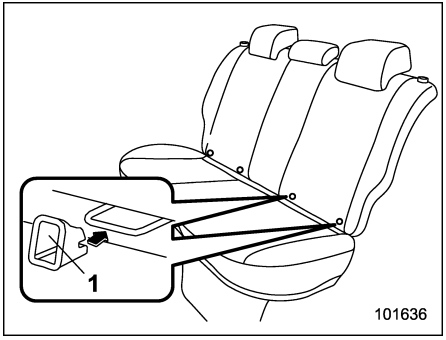
1. Open the covers.



2. Remove the head restraint of the rear seating position where the child restraint system is to be installed.
3. For models with rear seat reclining mechanism, adjust the seatback to the upright position.



4. While following the instructions supplied by the child restraint system manufacturer, connect the connectors of the child restraint system to the anchor bars. When the connectors are fastened, make sure that the adjacent seatbelts are not caught.



1) Inserting aid

NOTE

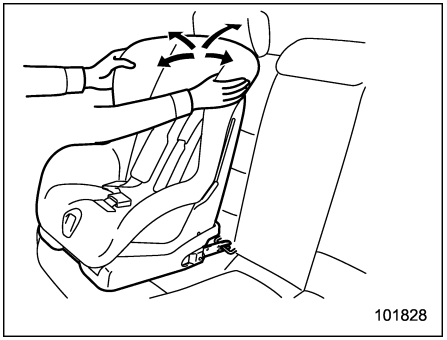
If your child restraint system is provided with inserting aids, clip them to the two ISOFIX anchor bars (or put them between seatback and seat cushion at the two ISOFIX fastening points) before connecting the child restraint system.

Position the two connectors just in front of the two inserting aids. Then

– CONTINUED –

insert the two connectors into the inserting aids to connect the connectors to the anchor bars.

The inserting aids make it easier to fit the child restraint system with ISOFIX and avoid damage to the seat.



5. Before seating a child in the child restraint system, try to move it back and forth and right and left to verify that it is held securely in position.

6. If the child restraint system requires a top tether, latch the hook onto the top tether anchorage and tighten the top tether. For additional instructions, refer to "Top tether anchorages" ☞1-38.

For further information, refer to the instruction manual supplied by the child restraint system manufacturer.

⚠ CAUTION

When you install a child restraint system, follow the manufacturer's instructions supplied with it. After installing the child restraint system, check to ensure that it is held securely in position. If it is not held tight and secure, the danger of your child suffering personal injury in the event of an accident may be increased.

NOTE

Before installing a child restraint system, ask the manufacturer of the system to confirm that it is one approved for your vehicle.

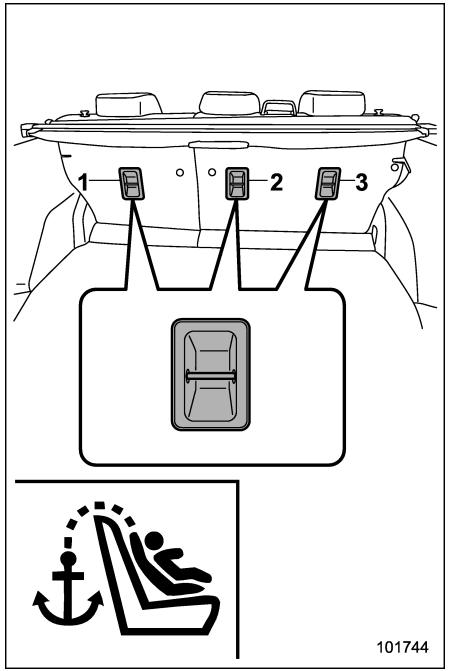
■ Top tether anchorages

Your vehicle is provided with two or three top tether anchorages so that a child restraint system having a top tether can be installed in the rear seat. When installing a child restraint system using top tether, proceed as follows, while observing the instructions by the child restraint system manufacturer.

Since a top tether can provide additional stability by offering another connection between a child restraint system and the vehicle, we recommend that you use a top tether whenever one is required or available.

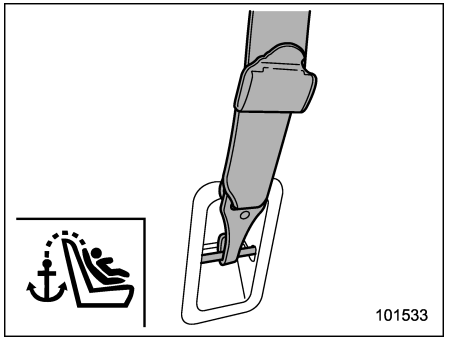
▼ **Anchorage location**

Anchorages are installed as shown in the following illustration.



1) For left seat
2) For center seat (if equipped)
3) For right seat

▼ **To hook the top tether**



1. Attach the top tether hook to the appropriate upper anchorage.
2. Tighten the top tether securely.

We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer if you have any question regarding the installation of a child restraint system.

*SRS airbag (Supplemental Restraint System airbag)

*SRS: This stands for supplemental restraint system. This name is used because the airbag system supplements the vehicle's seatbelts.

Your vehicle is equipped with a supplemental restraint system to supplement the seatbelts for the front seats and rear window-side seating positions.

The supplemental restraint system (SRS) consists of two to seven airbags. The configurations are as follows.

- **Frontal airbags** for driver and front passenger
- **Knee airbag** for driver (if equipped)
- **Side airbags** for driver and front passenger (if equipped)
- **Curtain airbags** for driver, front passenger and window-side rear passengers (if equipped)

These SRS airbags are designed only as a supplement to the primary protection provided by the seatbelt.

The system also controls seatbelt pretensioners. For operation instructions and precautions concerning the seatbelt pretensioner, refer to "Seatbelt pretensioners"

– CONTINUED –

☞1-21.

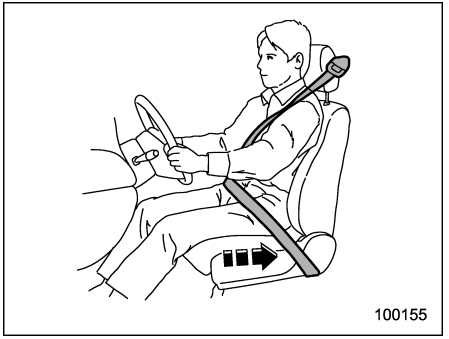
■ General precautions regarding SRS airbag system

⚠ WARNING

- **To obtain maximum protection in the event of an accident, the driver and all passengers in the vehicle should always wear seatbelts when the vehicle is moving. The SRS airbag is designed only to be a supplement to the primary protection provided by the seatbelt. It does not eliminate the need to fasten seatbelts. In combination with the seatbelts, it offers the best combined protection in case of a serious accident.**

  Not wearing a seatbelt increases the chance of severe injury or death in a crash even when the vehicle has the SRS airbag.

  For instructions and precautions concerning the seatbelt system, refer to "Seatbelts" ☞1-13.
- **For models with the SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag: The SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag are designed only to be a supplement to the primary protection provided by the seatbelt. They do not eliminate the need to fasten seatbelts. It is also important to wear your seatbelt to help avoid injuries that can result when an occupant is not seated in a proper upright position.**



⚠ WARNING

The SRS airbags deploy with considerable speed and force. Occupants who are out of proper position when the SRS airbag deploys could suffer very serious injuries. Because the SRS airbag needs enough space for deployment, the driver should always sit upright and well back in the seat as far from the steering wheel as practical while still maintaining full vehicle control and the front passenger should move the seat as far back as possible and sit upright and well back in the seat.

⚠ WARNING

- **For models with the SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag: Do not sit or lean unnecessarily close to either front door. The SRS side airbags are stored in both front seat seatbacks next to the door, and they provide protection by deploying rapidly (faster than the blink of an eye) in the**

event of a side impact collision. However, the force of SRS side airbag deployment may cause injuries if your head or other parts of the body are too close to the SRS side airbag.

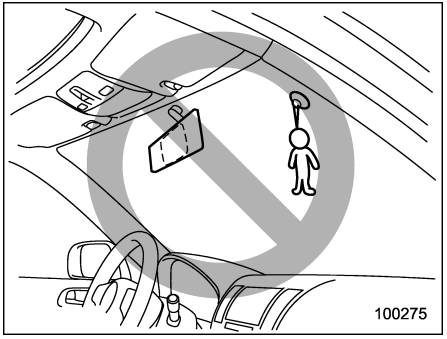
- **For models with SRS curtain airbags, do not sit or lean unnecessarily close to the front or rear door on either side. Also, do not put your head, arms or hands out of the window. The curtain airbags on both sides of the cabin are stored in the roof side (between the front pillar and a point over the rear seat), and they provide protection by deploying rapidly (faster than the blink of an eye) in the event of a side impact. However, the force of its deployment may cause injuries if your head is too close to it.**
- **Do not sit or lean unnecessarily close to the SRS airbag. Because the SRS airbag deploys with considerable speed – faster than the blink of an eye – and force to protect in high speed collisions, the force of an airbag can injure an occupant whose body is too close to SRS airbag.**

  It is also important to wear your seatbelt to help avoid injuries that can result when the SRS airbag contacts an occupant not in proper position such as one thrown forward during pre-accident braking.

  Even when properly positioned, there remains a possibility that an occupant may suffer minor injury such as abrasions and bruises to the face or arms because of the SRS airbag deployment force.

⚠ WARNING

- **For models with SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbags: Do not rest your arm on either front door or its internal trim. You could be injured in the event of SRS side airbag deployment.**
- **Do not place any objects over or near the SRS airbag cover or between you and the SRS airbag. If the SRS airbag deploys, those objects could interfere with its proper operation and could be propelled inside the vehicle and cause injury.**

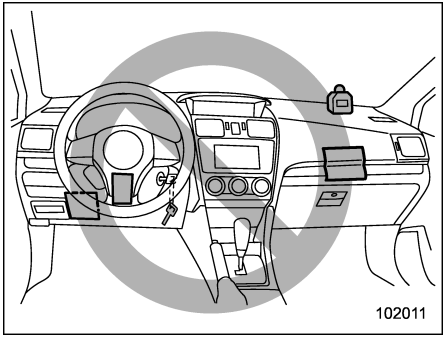


⚠ WARNING

Do not attach accessories to the windshield, or fit an extra-wide mirror over the inside mirror. If the SRS

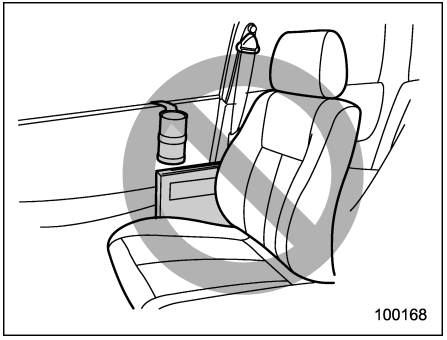
– CONTINUED –

airbag deploys, those objects could become projectiles that could seriously injure vehicle occupants.



⚠ WARNING

- **Do not put any objects over the steering wheel pad and dashboard. If the SRS frontal airbag deploys, these objects could interfere with its proper operation and could be propelled inside the vehicle, causing injury.**
- **For models with SRS knee airbag:**
  - **The key must not be attached to heavy, sharp or hard accessories, or another key. If the SRS knee airbag deploys, those objects could interfere with its proper operation and could be propelled inside the vehicle and cause injury.**
  - **Do not put any objects under the driver's side of the instrument panel. If the SRS knee airbag deploys, those objects could interfere with its proper operation and could be propelled inside the vehicle and cause injury.**

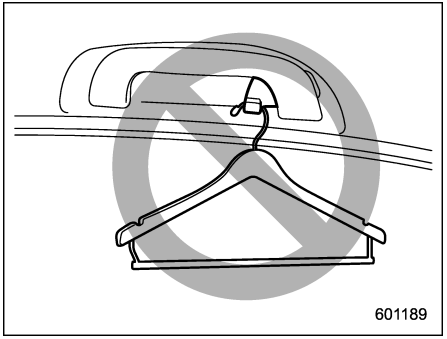


⚠ WARNING

For models with SRS side airbags and SRS curtain airbags:

- **Do not attach accessories to the door trim or near either SRS side airbags and do not place objects near the SRS side airbags. In the event of SRS side airbag deployment, they could be propelled dangerously toward the vehicle's occupants and cause injuries.**
- **Do not attach a hands-free microphone or any other accessory to a front pillar, a center pillar, a rear pillar, the windshield, a side window, an assist grip, or any other cabin surface that would be near a deploying SRS curtain airbag. A hands-free microphone or other accessory in such a location could be propelled through the cabin with great force by the curtain airbag, or it could prevent correct deployment of the curtain airbag. In either case, the result could be serious injuries.**
- **Never hang or place coat hangers or other hard or pointed objects near the side windows. If such items are present when the SRS**

curtain airbags deploy, they could be thrown through the passenger compartment and cause serious injuries. They could also prevent proper operation of the SRS curtain airbags.

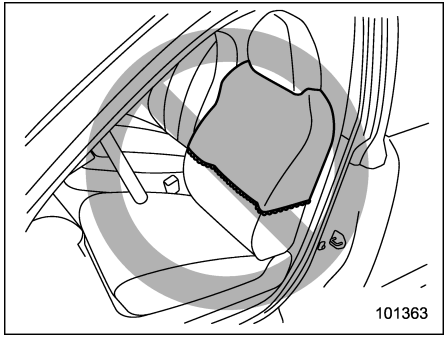


⚠ WARNING

For models with SRS curtain airbags:

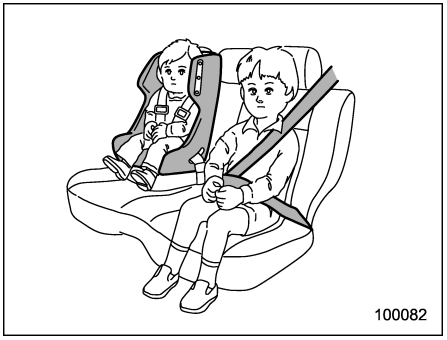
Do not hang coat hangers or other hard or pointed objects on the coat hooks. If such items are hanging on the coat hooks during deployment of the SRS curtain airbags, they could cause serious injuries by coming off the coat hooks and being thrown through the cabin or by preventing deployment of the curtain airbags.

Before hanging clothing on the coat hooks, make sure there are no sharp objects in the pockets. Hang clothing directly on the coat hooks without using hangers.



⚠ WARNING

For models with SRS side airbags, do not put any kind of cover or clothes or other objects over either front seatback and do not attach labels or stickers to the front seat surface on or near the SRS side airbag. They could prevent proper deployment of the SRS side airbag, reducing protection available to the front seat's occupant.



⚠ WARNING

- Put children in the REAR seat properly restrained at all times in a child restraint device or in a seatbelt, whichever is appropriate for the child's age, height and weight. The SRS airbag deploys with considerable speed and force and can injure or even kill children, especially if they are not restrained or improperly restrained. Because children are lighter and weaker than adults, their risk of being injured from

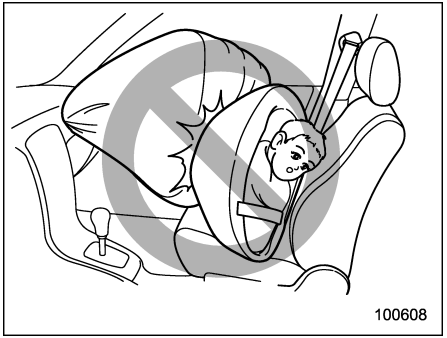
– CONTINUED –

deployment is greater.

Secure ALL types of child restraint devices (including forward facing child seats) in the REAR seats at all times.

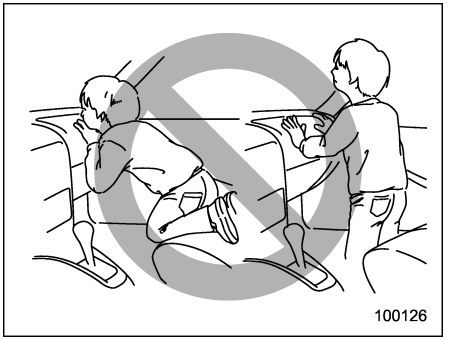
According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating positions.

For instructions and precautions concerning the child restraint system, refer to "Child restraint systems" ☞1-23.


100608

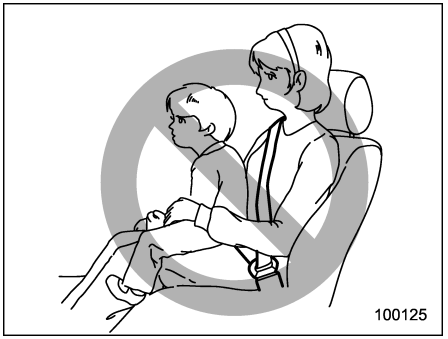
⚠ WARNING

NEVER INSTALL A REARWARD FACING CHILD SEAT IN THE FRONT SEAT. DOING SO RISKS SERIOUS INJURY OR DEATH TO THE CHILD BY PLACING THE CHILD'S HEAD TOO CLOSE TO THE SRS AIRBAG.


100126

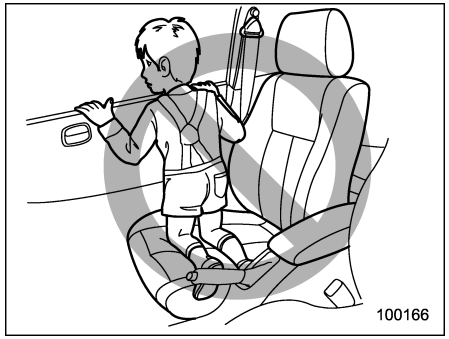
⚠ WARNING

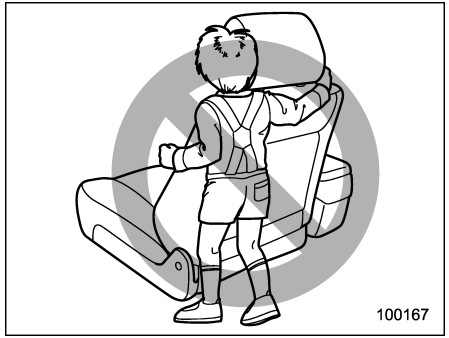
Never allow a child to stand up or kneel on the front passenger's seat. The SRS airbag deploys with considerable force and can injure or even kill the child.


100125

⚠ WARNING

Never hold a child on your lap or in your arms. The SRS airbag deploys with considerable force and can injure or even kill the child.


100166


100167

⚠ WARNING

- **For models with SRS side airbags and SRS curtain airbags, never allow a child to do the following.**
  - **Kneel on any passenger's seat facing the side window**
  - **Wrap his/her arms around the front seat seatback**
  - **Put his/her head, arms or other parts of the body out of the window**

  In the event of an accident, the force of SRS side airbag and/or SRS curtain airbag deployment could injure the child seriously because his/her head, arms or other parts of the body are too close to the SRS side airbag and/or SRS curtain airbag.
- **Since your vehicle is also equipped with a front passenger's SRS frontal airbag, children should be placed in the rear seat anyway and should be properly restrained at all times.**

⚠ CAUTION

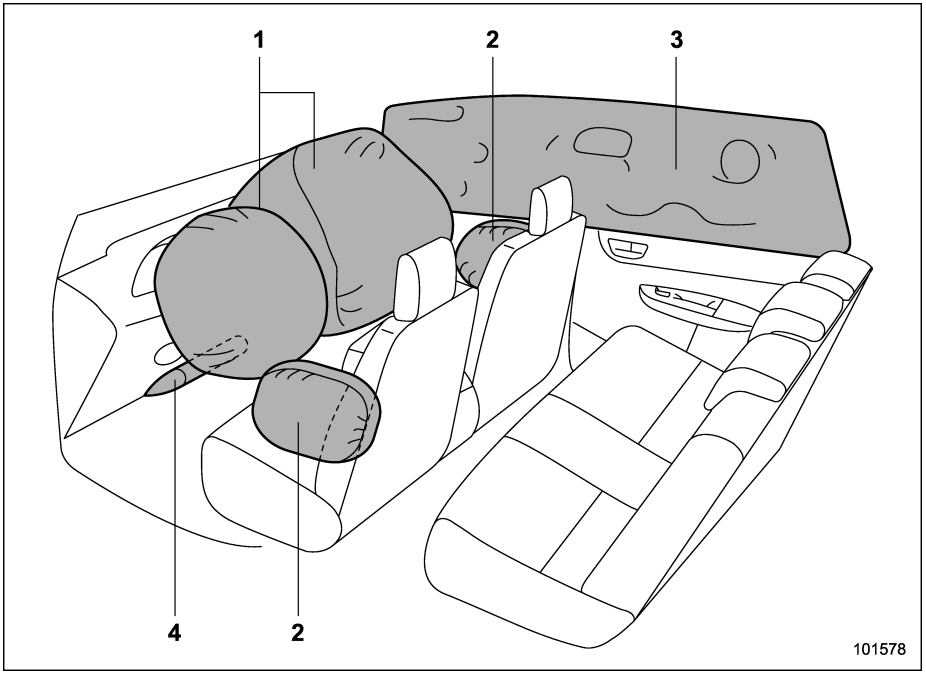
- **When the SRS airbag deploys, some smoke will be released. This smoke could cause breathing problems for people with a history of asthma or other breathing trouble. If you or your passengers have breathing problems after SRS airbag deploys, get fresh air promptly.**
- **A deploying SRS airbag releases hot gas. Occupants could get burned if they come into direct contact with the hot gas.**

NOTE

- **When you sell your vehicle, we urge you to explain to the buyer that it is equipped with SRS airbags by alerting the buyer to the applicable section in this Owner's Manual.**
- **If the SRS airbag deploys, fuel supply will be cut off to reduce the risk of fire caused by leaking fuel. For details about restarting of the engine, refer to "If your vehicle is involved in an accident" ☞9-23.**

– CONTINUED –

■ Components



1) SRS frontal airbag
2) SRS side airbag (if equipped)
3) SRS curtain airbag (if equipped)
4) SRS knee airbag (if equipped)

The SRS airbags are stowed in the following locations.

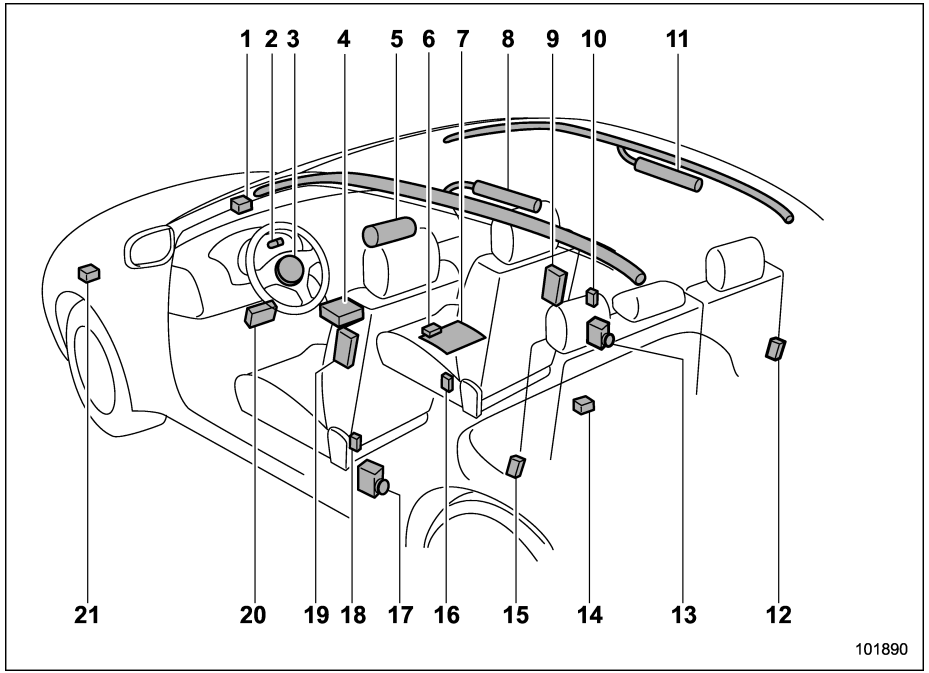
Driver's SRS frontal airbag: in the center portion of the steering wheel

Front passenger's SRS frontal airbag: near the top of the dashboard under an "SRS AIRBAG" mark

SRS side airbag (if equipped): in the door side of each front seat seatback which bears an "SRS AIRBAG" label

SRS curtain airbag (if equipped): in the roof side (between the front pillar and a point over the rear seat)
An "SRS AIRBAG" mark is located at the top of each center pillar.

SRS knee airbag (if equipped): under the steering column

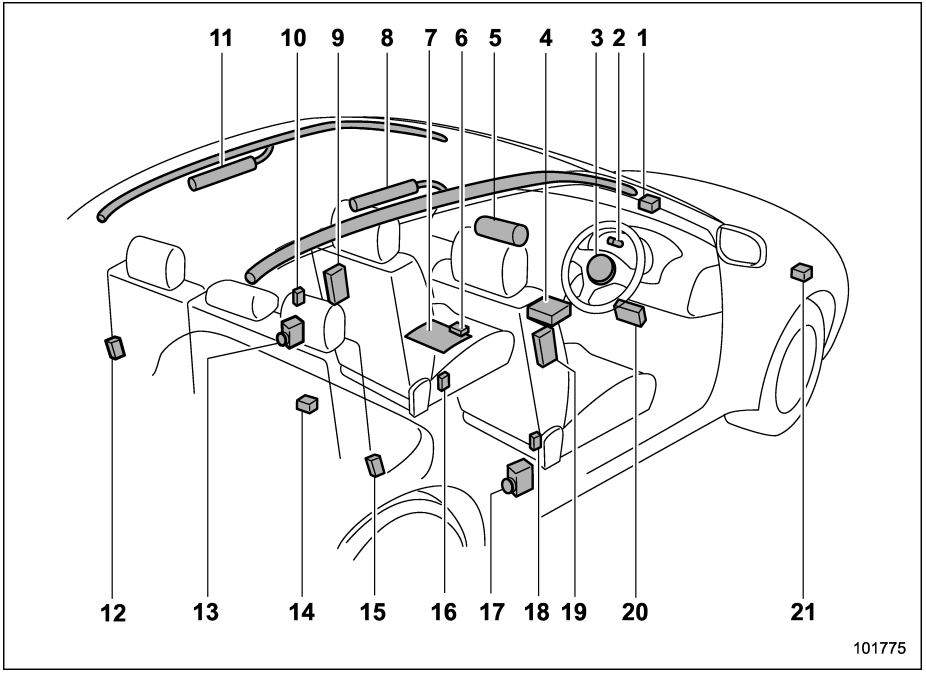


Left-hand drive models

1) Front sub sensor (right-hand side)
2) SRS airbag system warning light
3) Frontal airbag module (driver's side)
4) Airbag control module (including impact sensors)
5) Frontal airbag module (front passenger's side)
6) Front passenger's occupant detection control module*
7) Front passenger's occupant detection sensor*
8) Curtain airbag module (left-hand side)*
9) Side airbag module (front passenger's side)*
10) Side airbag sensor (center pillar right-hand side)*
11) Curtain airbag module (right-hand side)*
12) Curtain airbag sensor (rear wheel house right-hand side)*
13) Seatbelt pretensioner (front passenger's side)
14) Satellite safing sensor (under the rear center seat)*
15) Curtain airbag sensor (rear wheel house left-hand side)*
16) Seatbelt buckle switch (front passenger's side)*
17) Seatbelt pretensioner (driver's side)
18) Side airbag sensor (center pillar left-hand side)*
19) Side airbag module (driver's side)*
20) Knee airbag module (driver's side)*
21) Front sub sensor (left-hand side)

*: If equipped

– CONTINUED –



Right-hand drive models

1) Front sub sensor (left-hand side)
2) SRS airbag system warning light
3) Frontal airbag module (driver's side)
4) Airbag control module (including impact sensors)
5) Frontal airbag module (front passenger's side)
6) Front passenger's occupant detection control module*
7) Front passenger's occupant detection sensor*
8) Curtain airbag module (right-hand side)*
9) Side airbag module (front passenger's side)*
10) Side airbag sensor (center pillar left-hand side)*
11) Curtain airbag module (left-hand side)*
12) Curtain airbag sensor (rear wheel house left-hand side)*
13) Seatbelt pretensioner (front passenger's side)
14) Satellite safing sensor (under the rear center seat)*
15) Curtain airbag sensor (rear wheel house right-hand side)*
16) Seatbelt buckle switch (front passenger's side)*
17) Seatbelt pretensioner (driver's side)
18) Side airbag sensor (center pillar right-hand side)*
19) Side airbag module (driver's side)*
20) Knee airbag module (driver's side)*
21) Front sub sensor (right-hand side)

*: If equipped

■ SRS airbag

⚠ WARNING

Warning labels are located on both sides of the front passenger's sun visor. Carefully read the description in "Warning label" ☞1-26.

For the locations of the SRS airbags, refer to "Components" ☞1-46.

In a moderate to severe frontal collision, the driver's and front passenger's SRS frontal airbags deploy and supplement the seatbelts by reducing the impact on the driver's and front passenger's head and chest.

For models with SRS side airbag, in a moderate to severe side impact collision, the SRS side airbag on the impacted side of the vehicle deploys between the occupant and the door panel and supplements the seatbelt by reducing the impact to the occupant's chest and waist. The SRS side airbag operates only for front seat occupants.

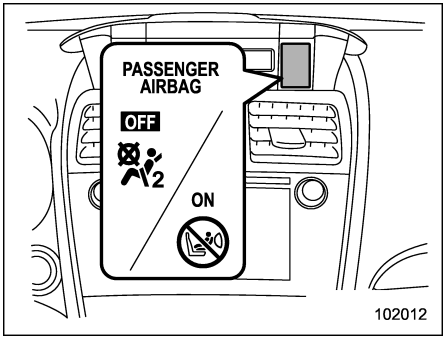
For models with SRS curtain airbag, in a moderate to severe side impact collision, the SRS curtain airbag on the impacted side of the vehicle deploys between the occupant and the side window and supplements the seatbelt by reducing the impact to the occupant's head.

For models with SRS knee airbag, in a moderate to severe frontal collision, the SRS knee airbag deploys in conjunction with the frontal airbag and supplements the seatbelt by reducing the impact on the driver's knees.

▼ Occupant detection system (if equipped)

The occupant detection system sensor is installed under the seat upholstery and monitors the physique and posture of the front passenger. Using this information, the occupant detection system determines whether the front passenger's SRS frontal airbag should be deployed or not.

If the front passenger's seat cushion is wet, this may adversely affect the ability of the system to determine deployment. If the seat cushion is wet, the front passenger should stop sitting on the front passenger's seat. Wipe off liquid from the seat immediately, let the seat dry naturally and then check that the front passenger's frontal airbag ON and OFF indicators work properly.



: Front passenger's frontal airbag ON indicator
: Front passenger's frontal airbag OFF indicator

If the front passenger's frontal airbag ON and OFF indicators do not work properly even when the front passenger's seat is dry, do not allow anyone to sit on the front passenger's seat. We recommend that you have the occupant detection system checked by your SUBARU dealer.

Also, if luggage or electronic devices are placed on the front passenger's seat, this may adversely affect the ability of the system to determine deployment. This may prevent the front passenger's frontal airbag ON and OFF indicators from working properly. Check that the indicators

– CONTINUED –

work properly.

When the OFF indicator turns off and the ON indicator illuminates, the front passenger's frontal airbag may deploy during a collision. Remove luggage and electronic devices from the front passenger's seat.

⚠ CAUTION

Electrical devices, such as cell phones, laptops, portable music players, or electronic games, especially when connected to the accessory power outlet and placed on the front passenger's seat or used by the person sitting in the front passenger's seat, may affect the operation of the occupant detection system. If either of the following situations occurs when using an electronic device in the vehicle, at first try to relocate that device to avoid it creating any interference.

- **The SRS airbag system warning light illuminates.**
- **The front passenger's frontal airbag ON and OFF indicators operate erratically.**

If the device continues to cause interference, the use of that device in the vehicle should be discontinued.

▼ Conditions in which front passenger's SRS frontal airbag is not activated

The front passenger's SRS frontal airbag will not be activated when any of the following conditions are met regarding the front passenger's seat:

- The seat is empty.
- The seat is equipped with an appropriate child restraint system and an infant is restrained in it. (See WARNING that follows.)
- The front passenger's occupant detection system is malfunctioning.

⚠ WARNING

NEVER INSTALL A REARWARD FACING CHILD SEAT IN THE FRONT PASSENGER'S SEAT EVEN IF THE FRONT PASSENGER'S SRS FRONTAL AIRBAG IS DEACTIVATED. Be sure to install it in the REAR seat in a correct manner. Also, it is strongly recommended that any forward facing child seat or booster seat be installed in the REAR seat, and that even children who have outgrown a child restraint system be also seated in the REAR seat. This is because children sitting in the front passenger's seat may be killed or severely injured should the front passenger's SRS frontal airbag deploy. REAR seats are the safest place for children.

⚠ CAUTION

When the front passenger's seat is occupied by an infant in an appropriate child restraint system, observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may interfere with the proper operation of the occupant detection system, activating the front passenger's SRS frontal airbag even though that seat is occupied by the infant in the child restraint system.

- **Do not place any article (including electronic devices) on the seat other than an infant in the child restraint system.**
- **Do not place more than one infant in the child restraint system.**

▽ **If the front passenger's frontal airbag ON indicator illuminates and the OFF indicator turns off even when an infant or a small child is in a child restraint system (including booster seat)**

1. Turn the ignition switch to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position.
2. Remove the child restraint system from the seat.
3. By referring to the child restraint manufacturer's recommendations as well as the child restraint system installation procedures in "Child restraint systems" ☞1-23, correctly install the child restraint system.
4. Turn the ignition switch to the "ON" position and make sure that the front passenger's frontal airbag ON indicator turns off and the OFF indicator illuminates.

If still the ON indicator remains illuminated while the OFF indicator turns off, take the following actions.

- Ensure that no article is placed on the seat other than the child restraint system and the child occupant.
- Ensure that the backward-forward position and seatback of front passenger's seat are locked into place securely by moving the seat back and forth (models with manual seat only).

If the ON indicator still remains illuminated while the OFF indicator turns off after taking relevant corrective actions described above, relocate the child restraint system to the rear seat. We recommend that you immediately contact your SUBARU dealer for an inspection.

NOTE

When a child who has outgrown a child restraint system or a small adult is seated in the front passenger's seat, the SRS frontal airbag system may or may not activate the front passenger's SRS frontal airbag depending on the occupant's seating posture. Children should always wear a seatbelt when sitting in the seat irrespective of whether the airbag is deactivated or activated. If the front passenger's SRS frontal airbag is activated (the ON indicator remains illuminated while the OFF indicator turns off), take the following actions.

- **Ensure that no article is placed on the seat other than the occupant.**

If the ON indicator still remains illuminated while the OFF indicator turns off despite the fact that the actions noted above have been taken, seat the child/small adult in the rear seat. We recommend that you immediately contact your SUBARU dealer for an inspection. Even if the system has passed the dealer inspection, it is recommended that on subsequent trips the child/small adult always take the rear seat.

Children who have outgrown a child restraint system should always wear the seatbelt irrespective of whether the airbag is deactivated or activated.

▼ **Conditions in which front passenger's SRS frontal airbag is activated (models with occupant detection system)**

The front passenger's SRS frontal airbag will be activated for deployment upon impact when any of the following conditions are met regarding the front passenger's seat.

- When the seat is occupied by an adult.
- When certain items (e.g. jug of water) are placed on the seat.

⚠ CAUTION

When the front passenger's seat is occupied by an adult, do not place anything (shoes, umbrella, etc.) under the front passenger's seat. Doing so may deactivate the front passenger's SRS frontal airbag despite the fact that the seat is occupied by an adult. This may result in

– CONTINUED –

personal injury.

▽ **If the passenger's frontal airbag OFF indicator illuminates and the ON indicator turns off even when the front passenger's seat is occupied by an adult**

This can be caused by the adult incorrectly sitting in the front passenger's seat.

1. Turn the ignition switch to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position.
2. Ask the front passenger to set the seatback to the upright position, sit up straight in the center of the seat cushion, correctly fasten the seatbelt, position his/her legs out forward, and adjust the seat to the rearmost position.
3. Turn the ignition switch to the "ON" position.

If the OFF indicator remains illuminated while the ON indicator remains off, take the following actions.

1. Turn the ignition switch to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position.
2. Make sure that the front passenger does not use a blanket, seat cushion, seat cover, seat heater or massager, etc.
3. If wearing excessive layers of clothing, the front passenger should remove any unnecessary items before sitting in the front passenger's seat, or should sit in a rear seat.
4. Turn the ignition switch to the "ON" position and wait 6 seconds to allow the system to complete self-checking. Following the system check, both indicators turn off for 2 seconds. Now, the ON indicator should illuminate while the OFF indicator remains off.

If the OFF indicator still remains illuminated while the ON indicator remains off, ask the occupant to move to the rear seat. We recommend that you immediately contact your SUBARU dealer for an inspection.

■ System operation

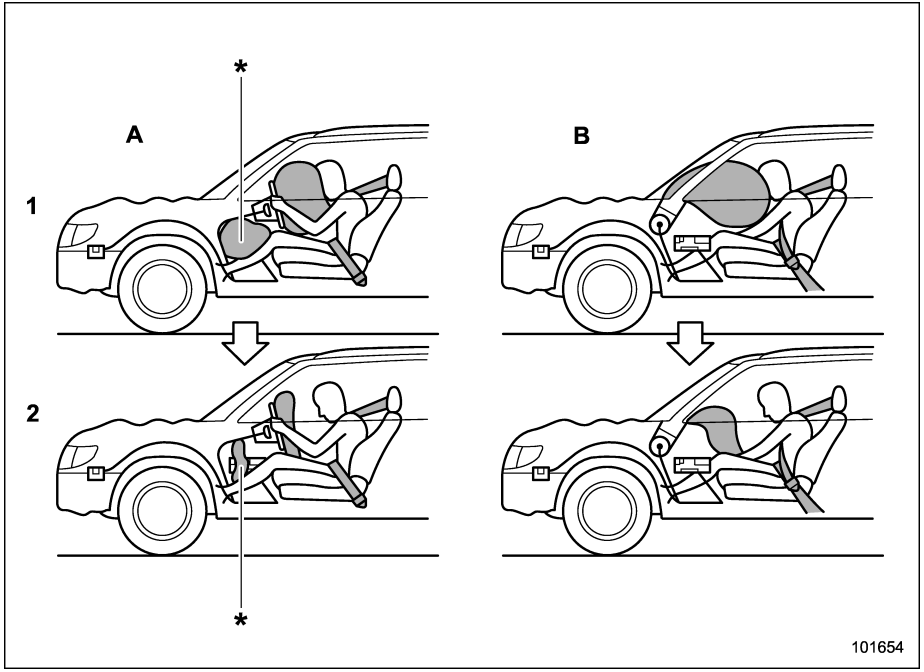
⚠ CAUTION

Do not touch the SRS airbag system components with bare hands right after deployment. Doing so can cause burns because the components can be very hot as a result of deployment.

The SRS airbags can function only when the ignition switch is in the "ON" position.

When the SRS airbag(s) deploy(s), a sudden, fairly loud inflation noise will be heard and some smoke will be released. These occurrences are a normal result of the deployment. This smoke does not indicate a fire in the vehicle.

▼ SRS frontal airbag operation



A) Driver's side
B) Passenger's side
1) SRS AIRBAGs deploy as soon as a collision occurs.
2) After deployment, SRS AIRBAGs start to deflate immediately so that the driver's vision is not obstructed.
*: Models with knee airbag

– CONTINUED –

If the front sub sensors located on both the right and left sides at the front of the vehicle and the impact sensors in the airbag control module detect a certain predetermined amount of force during a frontal collision, the control module sends signals to the frontal airbag modules instructing them to inflate the SRS frontal airbags. Then both airbag modules produce gas, which instantly inflates driver's and passenger's SRS frontal airbags. If the vehicle is equipped with a knee airbag, the knee airbag is also inflated in combination with the SRS frontal airbags.

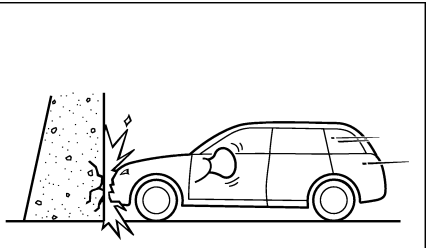
After deployment, the SRS airbags immediately start to deflate so that the driver's vision is not obstructed and the driver's ability to maintain control of the vehicle is not interfered. The time required from detecting impact to the deflation of the SRS airbag after deployment is shorter than the blink of an eye.

If the vehicle is equipped with the occupant detection system for the front passenger's seat, the SRS system detects whether the front passenger's seat is occupied by a passenger or not. If the seat is not occupied, the system does not inflate the front passenger's SRS airbag.

The SRS frontal airbag (and also the knee airbag) is designed to deploy in the event of an accident involving a moderate to severe frontal collision. It is not designed to deploy in most lesser frontal impacts because the necessary protection can be achieved by the seatbelt alone. Also, it is not designed to deploy in most side or rear impacts or in most roll-over accidents because deployment of the SRS frontal airbag would not help the occupant in those situations.
The SRS airbag is designed to function on a one-time-only basis.

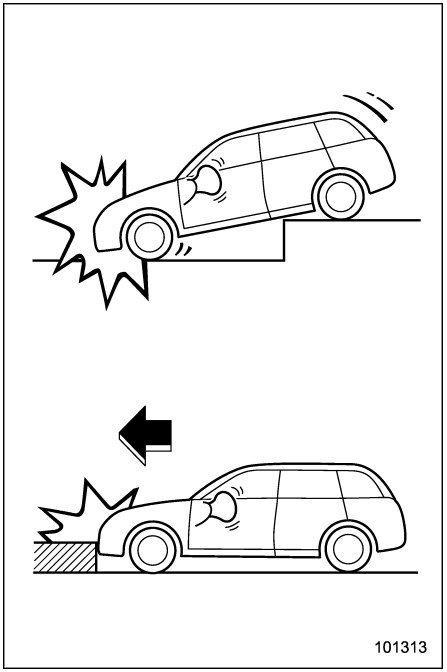
SRS airbag deployment depends on the level of force experienced in the passenger compartment during a collision. That level differs from one type of collision to another, and it may have no bearing on the visible damage done to the vehicle itself.

▽ When will the SRS frontal airbag most likely deploy?



A head-on collision against a thick concrete wall at a vehicle speed of 20 to 30 km/h (12 to 19 mph) or higher activates the SRS frontal airbag. The SRS frontal airbag will also be activated when the vehicle is exposed to a frontal impact similar in fashion and magnitude to the collision described above.

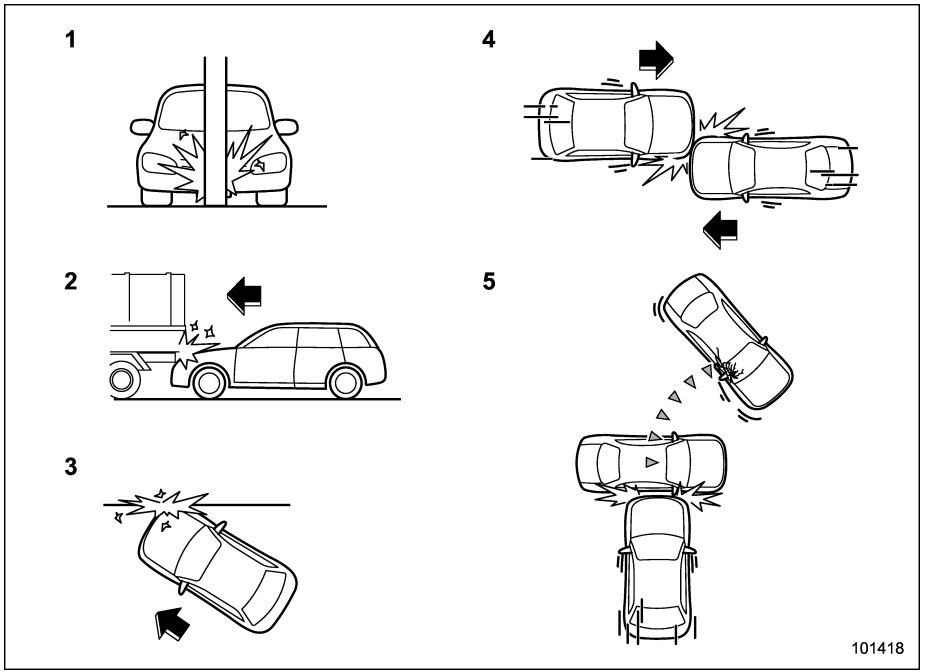
▽ **At what other times might the SRS frontal airbag deploy?**



The SRS frontal airbag may be activated when the vehicle sustains a hard impact in the undercarriage area from the road surface (such as when the vehicle plunges into a deep ditch, is severely impacted or knocked hard against an obstacle on the road such as a curb).

– CONTINUED –

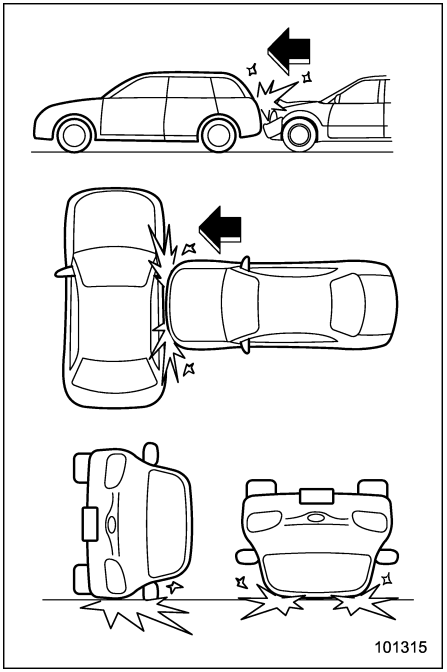
▽ **When is the SRS frontal airbag unlikely to deploy?**



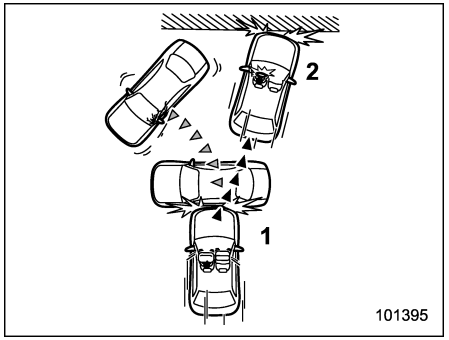
1) The vehicle strikes an object, such as a telephone pole or sign pole.
2) The vehicle slides under the load bed of a truck.
3) The vehicle sustains an oblique offset frontal impact.
4) The vehicle sustains an offset frontal collision.
5) The vehicle strikes an object that can move or deform, such as a parked vehicle.

There are many types of collisions which might not necessarily require SRS frontal airbag deployment. In the event of accidents like those illustrated, the SRS frontal airbag may not deploy depending on the level of accident forces involved.

▽ When will the SRS frontal airbag not deploy?



The SRS frontal airbag is not designed to deploy in most cases if the vehicle is struck from the side or from behind, or if it rolls onto its side or roof, or if it is involved in a low-speed frontal collision.

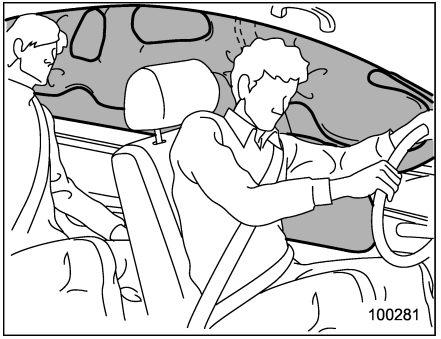


1) First impact
2) Second impact

In an accident where the vehicle is impacted more than once, the SRS frontal airbag deploys only once on the first impact.

Example: In the case of a double collision, first with another vehicle, then against a concrete wall in immediate succession, once the SRS frontal airbag is activated on the first impact, it will not be activated on the second.

▼ SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag operation (if equipped)



Models with SRS side airbags and SRS curtain airbags

The driver's and front passenger's SRS side airbags and SRS curtain airbags deploy independently of each other since each has its own impact sensor. Therefore, they may not both deploy in the same accident. Also, the SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag deploy independently of the driver's and front passenger's SRS frontal airbags in the steering wheel and instrument panel.

An impact sensor, which senses impact force, is located in each of the following locations.

- In the left and right center pillars

– CONTINUED –

- In the left and right rear wheel houses
- Under the rear center seat

If one of the center pillar impact sensors and the impact sensor that is located under the rear center seat together sense an impact force above a predetermined level in a side collision, the control module causes both the SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag on the impacted side to inflate regardless of whether the rear wheel house impact sensor on the same side senses an impact.

If one of the rear wheel house impact sensors and the impact sensor that is located under the rear center seat together sense an impact force above a predetermined level in a side collision, the control module causes only the SRS curtain airbag on the impacted side to inflate.

After the deployment, the SRS side airbag immediately starts to deflate. The time required from detection of an impact to deflation of an SRS side airbag after deployment is shorter than the blink of an eye. The SRS curtain airbag remains inflated for a while following deployment then slowly deflates.

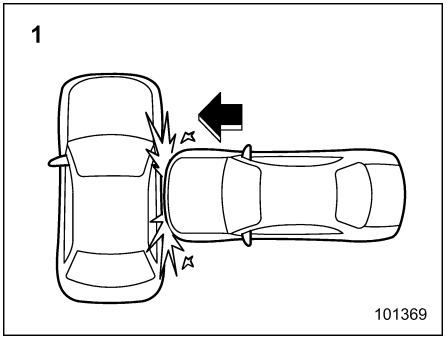
The SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag deploy even when no one occupies the seat on the side on which an impact is applied.

The SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag are designed to deploy in the event of an accident involving a moderate to severe side impact collision. They are not designed to deploy in most lesser side impact. Also, they are not designed to deploy in most frontal or most rear impacts because SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag deployment would not help the occupant in those situations.

Each SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag are designed to function on a one-time-only basis.

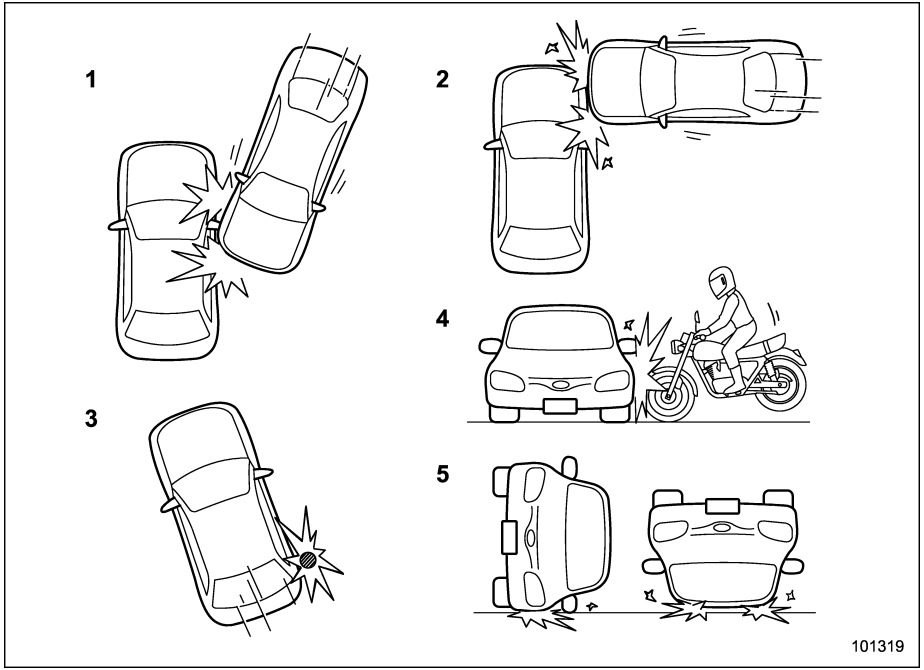
SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag deployment depend on the level of force experienced in the passenger compartment during a side impact collision. That level differs from one type of collision to another, and it may have no bearing on the visible damage done to the vehicle itself.

▽ When will the SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag most likely deploy?



A severe side impact near the front seat activates the SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag.

▽ **When are the SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag unlikely to deploy?**

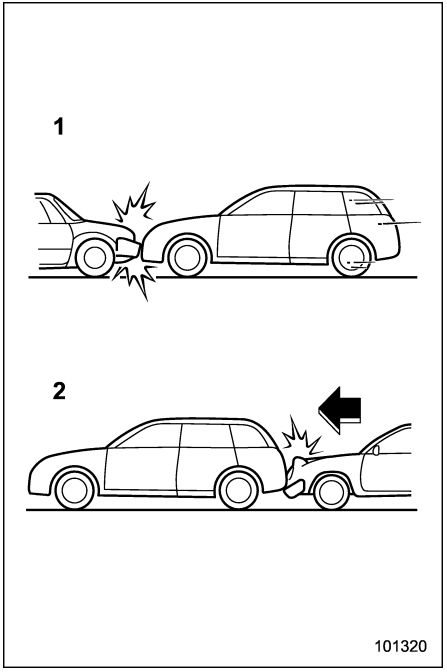


1) The vehicle is involved in an oblique side-on impact.
2) The vehicle is involved in a side-on impact in an area outside the vicinity of the passenger compartment.
3) The vehicle strikes a telephone pole or similar object.
4) The vehicle is involved in a side-on impact from a motorcycle.
5) The vehicle rolls onto its side or roof.

There are many types of collisions which might not necessarily require SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag deployment. In the event of accidents like those illustrated, the SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag may not deploy depending on the level of accident forces involved.

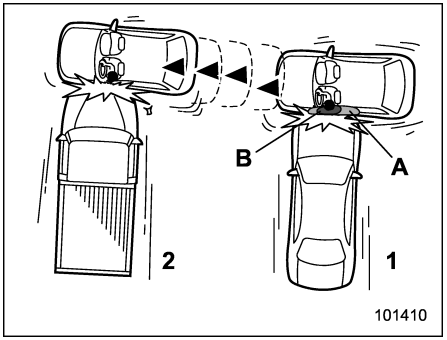
– CONTINUED –

▽ **When will the SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag not deploy?**



1) The vehicle is involved in frontal collision with another vehicle (moving or stationary).
2) The vehicle is struck from behind.

The SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag are not designed to deploy in most cases if the vehicle is involved in a frontal collision or is struck from behind. Examples of such accidents are illustrated.

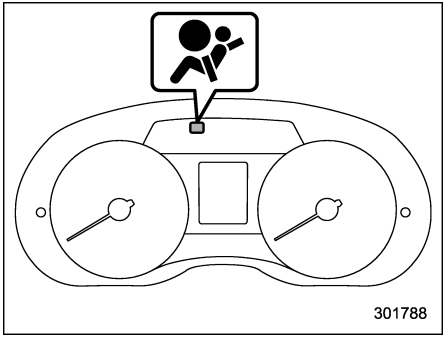


1) First impact
2) Second impact
A) SRS curtain airbag
B) SRS side airbag

In an accident where the vehicle is struck from the side more than once, the SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag deploy only once on the first impact.

Example: In the case of a double side impact collision, first with one vehicle and immediately followed by another from the same direction, once the SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag are activated on the first impact, they will not be activated on the second.

■ SRS airbag system monitor



SRS airbag system warning light

A diagnostic system continually monitors the readiness of the SRS airbag system (including seatbelt pretensioners) while the vehicle is being driven. The SRS airbag system warning light will show normal system operation by illuminating for approximately 6 seconds when the ignition switch is turned to the “ON” position.

The following components are monitored by the indicator.

- Front sub sensor
  - Right-hand side
  - Left-hand side

- Airbag control module (including impact sensor)
- Frontal airbag module
  - Driver's side
  - Front passenger's side
- Knee airbag module (driver's side – if equipped)
- Side airbag sensor (if equipped)
  - Center pillar right-hand side
  - Center pillar left-hand side
- Side airbag module (if equipped)
  - Driver's side
  - Front passenger's side
- Front passenger's occupant detection sensor (if equipped)
- Front passenger's occupant detection control module (if equipped)
- Seatbelt buckle switch (front passenger's side – if equipped)
- Curtain airbag sensor (if equipped)
  - Rear wheel house right-hand side
  - Rear wheel house left-hand side
- Curtain airbag module (if equipped)
  - Right-hand side
  - Left-hand side
- Satellite safing sensor (under the rear center seat – if equipped)
- Seatbelt pretensioner
  - Driver's side
  - Front passenger's side
- All related wiring

⚠ WARNING

If the warning light exhibits any of the following conditions, there may be a malfunction in the seatbelt pretensioners and/or SRS airbag system. We recommend that you have the system checked immediately by your nearest SUBARU dealer. Unless checked and properly repaired, the seatbelt pretensioners and/or SRS airbags will operate improperly (e.g. SRS airbags may inflate in a very minor collision or not inflate in a severe collision), which may increase the risk of injury.

- **Flashing or flickering of the warning light**
- **No illumination of the warning light when the ignition switch is first turned to the "ON" position**
- **Continuous illumination of the warning light**
- **Illumination of the warning light while driving**

■ SRS airbag system servicing

⚠ WARNING

- **When discarding an airbag module or scrapping the entire vehicle damaged by a collision, we recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer.**
- **The SRS airbag has no user-serviceable parts. Do not use electrical test equipment on any circuit related to the SRS airbag system. For required servicing of the SRS airbag, we recommend that you consult your nearest SUBARU dealer. Tampering with or disconnecting the system's wiring could result in accidental inflation of the SRS airbag or could make the system inoperative, which may result in serious injury.**

⚠ CAUTION

If you need service or repair in areas indicated in the following list, we recommend that you have the work performed by an authorized SUBARU dealer. The SRS airbag control module, impact sensors

– CONTINUED –

and airbag modules are stored in the following areas.

- Under the center console
- On both the right and left sides at the front of the vehicle
- Steering wheel and column and nearby areas
- Bottom of the steering column and nearby areas
- Top of the dashboard on front passenger's side and nearby areas
- Each front seat and nearby area (only for models with SRS side airbags)
- Inside each center pillar
- In each roof side (from the front pillar to a point over the rear seat) (only for models with SRS curtain airbags)
- Between the rear seat cushion and rear wheel house on each side
- Under the rear center seat (only for models with SRS side airbags and SRS curtain airbags)

In the event that the SRS airbag system is deployed, we recommend that you have the system replaced with genuine SUBARU parts at an authorized SUBARU dealer.

NOTE

In the following cases, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.

- The front part of the vehicle was involved in an accident in which the SRS frontal airbags did not deploy.
- The pad of the steering wheel, the cover over the front passenger's frontal airbag, or either roof side (from the front pillar to a point over the rear seat) is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.

In addition, if your vehicle is equipped with SRS side airbags and SRS curtain airbags, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer as soon as possible in the following cases.

- The center pillar, rear wheel house or rear sub frame, or an area near these parts, was involved in an accident in which the SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag did not deploy.
- The fabric or leather of either front seatback is cut, frayed, or otherwise damaged.
- The rear part of the vehicle was involved in an accident.

■ Precautions against vehicle modification

WARNING

To avoid accidental activation of the system or rendering the system inoperative, which may result in serious injury, no modifications should be made to any components or wiring of the SRS airbag system.

This includes the following modifications.

- Installation of custom steering wheels
- Attachment of additional trim materials to the dashboard
- Installation of custom seats*
- Replacement of seat fabric or leather*
- Installation of additional fabric or leather on the front seat*
- Attachment of a hands-free microphone or any other accessory to a front pillar, a center pillar, a rear pillar, the windshield, a side window, an assist grip, or any

other cabin surface that would be near a deploying SRS curtain airbag.

- **Installation of additional electrical/electronic equipment such as a mobile two-way radio on or near the SRS airbag system components and/or wiring is not advisable. This could interfere with proper operation of the SRS airbag system.**

***: Applies to models with SRS side airbags and models with occupant detection system**

⚠ CAUTION

Do not perform any of the following modifications. Such modifications can interfere with proper operation of the SRS airbag system.

- **Attachment of any equipment (bush bar, bullbar, winches, snow plow, skid/sump plate, etc.) to the front end other than genuine SUBARU accessory parts or parts that match the quality of genuine SUBARU accessory parts.**
- **Modification of the suspension system or front end structure.**
- **Installation of a tire of different size and construction from the tires specified on the vehicle placard attached to the driver's door pillar or specified for individual vehicle models in this Owner's Manual.**
- **Attachment of any equipment (side steps or side sill protectors, etc.) to the side body other than genuine SUBARU accessory parts specially designed for SRS side airbags, or parts that match the quality of genuine SUBARU accessory parts specially designed for SRS side airbags (only for models with side airbags).**

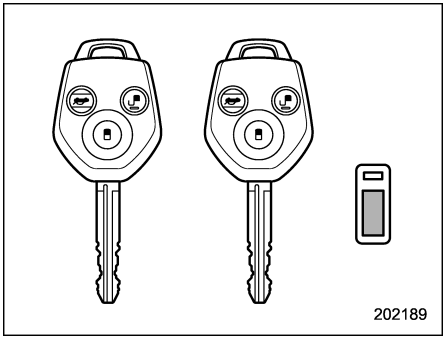
We recommend that you always consult your SUBARU dealer if you want to install any accessory parts on your vehicle.

Keys 2-2
Key number plate 2-2
Immobilizer 2-2
Immobilizer indicator light 2-3
Key replacement 2-3
Technical information for Europe models 2-3
Door locks 2-4
Locking and unlocking from the outside with key 2-4
Locking from the outside without key 2-4
Locking and unlocking from the inside 2-5
Battery drainage prevention function 2-5
Power door locking switch 2-6
Key lock-in prevention function (except models with double locking system) 2-6
Keyless access with push-button start system (if equipped) 2-7
Safety precautions 2-8
Locking and unlocking with “keyless access” entry function 2-11
Warning chimes and warning light 2-14
Disabling keyless access function 2-15
When access key does not operate properly 2-16
Replacing battery of access key 2-16
Technical information for Europe models 2-16
PIN Code Access (models with “keyless access with push-button start system”) 2-17
Registering a PIN code 2-17
Unlocking 2-18
Remote keyless entry system 2-18
Locking and unlocking doors 2-19
Unlocking/operating rear gate 2-21
Technical information 2-21
Double locking system (if equipped) 2-21
To set double locking system 2-22
To cancel double locking system 2-22
In an emergency 2-23
If a battery goes dead 2-23
To reset double locking system 2-23
Function disabling unlocking with the power door locking switch (Australia models) 2-23
Child safety locks 2-24
Windows 2-24
Power window operation by driver 2-25
Power window operation by passengers 2-27
Initialization of power window 2-28
Rear gate 2-28
Manual rear gate (if equipped) 2-28
Power rear gate (if equipped) 2-29
Sunroof (if equipped) 2-35
Sunroof switch 2-36
Anti-entrapment function 2-36
Sun shade 2-37

Keys

NOTE

For models with “keyless access with push-button start system”, refer to “Keyless access with push-button start system” ☞2-7.



Your vehicle has two or three keys and a key number plate.

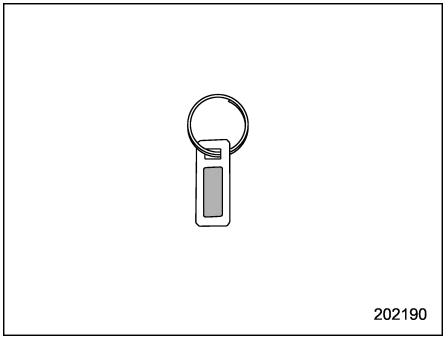
All keys provided for your vehicle fit all locks on your vehicle.

- Ignition switch
- Driver’s door

⚠ CAUTION

Do not attach a large key holder or key case to the key. If it bangs against your knees while you are driving, it could turn the ignition switch from the “ON” position to the “ACC” or “LOCK” position, thereby stopping the engine.

■ Key number plate



The key number is stamped on the key number plate attached to the key set. Write down the key number and keep it in another safe place, not in the vehicle. This number is needed to make a replacement key if you lose your key or lock it inside the vehicle.

For information on making replacement keys, refer to “Key replacement” ☞2-3.

Immobilizer

The immobilizer system is designed to prevent an unauthorized person from starting the engine. Only keys registered with your vehicle’s immobilizer system can be used to operate your vehicle. This system, however, is not a 100% anti-theft guarantee.

For models with “keyless access with push-button start system”:

When carrying an unregistered access key, if you press the push-button ignition switch, the switch will not turn to the “ON” position and the engine will not start.

For models without “keyless access with push-button start system”:

Even if an unregistered key fits into the ignition switch and can be turned to the “START” position, the engine will automatically stop after several seconds.

If the engine does not start, perform either of the following procedures.

- Perform the procedure described in “Starting engine” ☞9-18 (models with “keyless access with push-button start system”).
- Pull out the key once before trying again (models without “keyless access with push-button start system”). Refer to

"Ignition switch (models without push-button start system)" ☞3-4.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Do not place the key under direct sunlight or anywhere it may become hot.**
- **Do not get the key wet. If the key gets wet, wipe it dry with a cloth immediately.**
- **Do not modify or remove the system. If modified or removed, proper operation of the system cannot be guaranteed.**

NOTE

• To protect your vehicle from theft, please pay close attention to the following security precautions.

– Never leave your vehicle unattended with its keys inside.

– Before leaving your vehicle, close all windows and the sunroof, and lock the doors and rear gate.

– Do not leave spare keys or any record of your key number in the vehicle.

• The vehicle has a maintenance-free type immobilizer system.

■ Immobilizer indicator light

Refer to "Immobilizer indicator light" ☞3-32.

■ Key replacement

Your key number plate will be required if you ever need a replacement key made. Any new key must be registered for use with your vehicle's immobilizer system before it can be used. The maximum number of keys that can be registered for use with one vehicle is as follows.

- Four (models without "keyless access with push-button start system")
- Seven (models with "keyless access with push-button start system")

One key that has already been registered is required in order to register a new key.

If you lose a key, the lost key's ID code still remains in the memory of the vehicle's immobilizer system. For security reasons, the lost key's ID code should be erased from the memory. To erase the lost key's ID code, all keys that will be used are required.

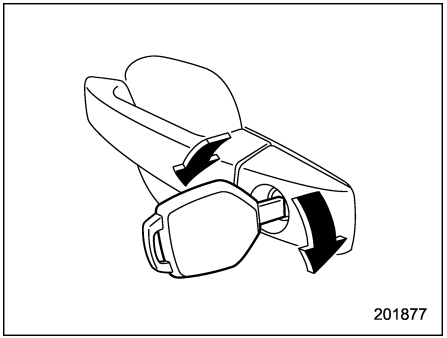
For details about new key registration and erasing the lost key's ID code, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.

■ Technical information for Europe models

This device complies with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of the Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 1999/5/EC. A copy of the original Declaration of Conformity and the CE marking are found in the chapter 13.

Door locks

■ Locking and unlocking from the outside with key



▼ Models without double locking system

To lock the driver's door from the outside with the key, turn the key toward the front. To unlock the door, turn the key toward the rear. Pull the outside door handle to open an unlocked door.

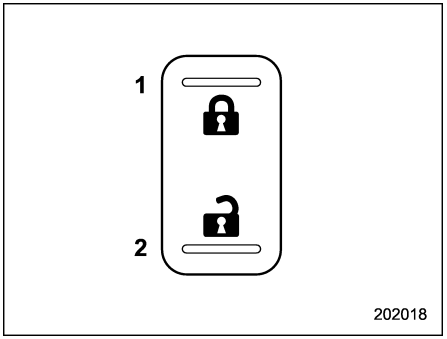
NOTE

Only the driver's door can be locked from the outside using the key.

To lock the doors including the rear gate, refer to the following procedure.

1. Remove the key from the ignition switch (models without keyless access with push-button start system) or turn off the ignition switch (models with keyless access with push-button start system).

2. Close the doors including the rear gate except for the driver's door.



1) Lock
2) Unlock

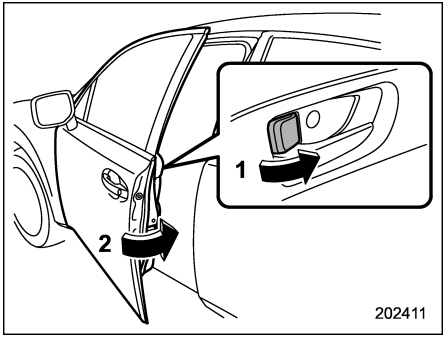
3. Push the lock side of the power door locking switch that is located on the driver's door.

4. Close the driver's door and insert the key. Turn the key forward to lock the driver's door.

▼ Models with double locking system

To lock the doors and the rear gate from the outside with the key, turn the key toward the front. To unlock the doors and the rear gate, turn the key toward the rear. Pull the outside door handle to open an unlocked door.

■ Locking from the outside without key



1) Rotate the lock lever forward.
2) Close the door while holding the handle pulled.

To lock the front door from the outside without the key, rotate the lock lever forward and hold the outside door handle pulled while closing the door.

To lock the rear door from the outside

without the key, rotate the lock lever forward and close the door.

Always make sure that all doors and the rear gate are locked before leaving your vehicle.

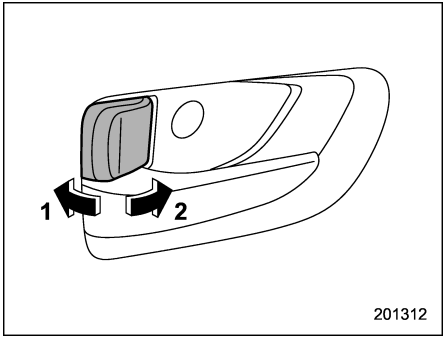
NOTE

Make sure that you do not leave the key inside the vehicle when locking the doors from the outside without the key.

▼ Models with double locking system

It is not possible to place the lock lever on the driver's door in the locking position while the driver's door is open. The door lock levers function only when the driver's door is securely closed and the double locking system is not set.

■ Locking and unlocking from the inside



1) Unlock
2) Lock

To lock the door from the inside, rotate the lock lever forward. To unlock the door from the inside, rotate the lock lever rearward.

The red mark on the lock lever appears when the door is unlocked.

Pull the inside door handle to open an unlocked door.

Always make sure that all doors and the rear gate are closed before starting to drive.

▼ Models with double locking system

If the double locking system is activated, the door will not be unlocked even when you move the door lock lever rearward.

■ Battery drainage prevention function

If a door or the rear gate is not completely closed, the interior lights will remain illuminated as a result. However, several lights will automatically be turned off by the battery drainage prevention function to prevent the battery from discharging. The following interior lights will be affected by this function.

Item	Switch position	Automatically turning off
Map lights	DOOR	Approximately 20 minutes later
Dome light	DOOR	Approximately 20 minutes later
Ignition switch light	—	Approximately 20 minutes later
Door step lights	—	None*
Cargo area light	DOOR	Approximately 20 minutes later

*: The door step lights are not affected by the battery drainage prevention function, so the lights will not turn off automatically. To turn off

– CONTINUED –

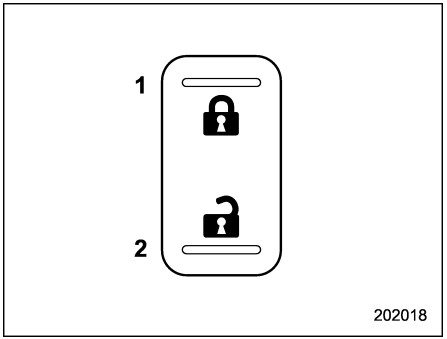
the lights, it is necessary that each door and the rear gate are completely closed.

The operational/non-operational setting of this function can be changed by a SUBARU dealer. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer to change the setting.

NOTE

• The factory setting (default setting) for this function is set as "operational".
• When leaving the vehicle, please make sure that all doors and the rear gate are completely closed.
• For models with the push-button ignition switch, the battery drainage prevention function does not operate while the ignition switch is in "ACC" or "ON" position.
• For models without the push-button ignition switch, the battery drainage prevention function does not operate while the key is in the ignition switch.

Power door locking switch



1) Lock
2) Unlock

All doors and the rear gate can be locked and unlocked by the power door locking switch located at the driver's side door.

To lock the doors including the rear gate, push the front side of the switch.
To unlock the doors including the rear gate, push the rear side of the switch.

NOTE

• With a vehicle that has a double locking system, pushing the unlocking position of the power door locking switch has no effect when the double locking system is activated.
• For Australia models, after locking all doors and the rear gate using the keyless access function or remote keyless entry system, pushing the unlock position of the power door locking switch has no effect.

■ Key lock-in prevention function (except models with double locking system)

This function prevents the doors from being locked under the following conditions.

• The key is still in the ignition switch (models without "keyless access with push-button start system")
• The ignition switch is in the "ON" position (models with "keyless access with push-button start system")

This function's operational/non-operational setting can be changed by a SUBARU dealer. We recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer for details.

NOTE

When leaving the vehicle, make sure that you are holding the key before locking the doors.

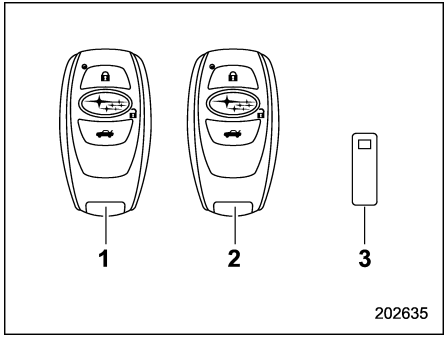
▼ **Behavior with key lock-in prevention function operational**

With the driver's door open, the doors are automatically kept unlocked even if the front side of the power door locking switch is pressed.

▼ **Behavior with key lock-in prevention function non-operational**

- If the lock lever is turned to the front (lock) position with the driver's door open and the driver's door is then closed, the driver's door is locked.
- If the spare key is used to lock the driver's door from the outside of the vehicle, the door is locked.

Keyless access with push-button start system (if equipped)



1) Access key (main)
2) Access key (sub)
3) Key number plate

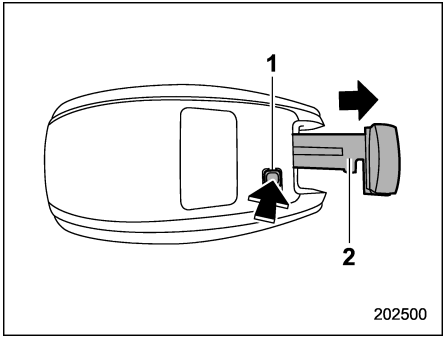
The vehicle has two or three access keys and a key number plate. For details about the key number plate, refer to "Key number plate" ☞2-2.

The keyless access with push-button start system allows you to perform the following functions when you are carrying the access key.

- Locking and unlocking of the doors and rear gate
- Starting and stopping the engine

Locking and unlocking by the remote keyless entry system can also be controlled with the buttons on the access key. For the engine starting procedure, refer to "Starting and stopping engine (models with push-button start system)" ☞7-11.

A mechanical key is attached to each access key. The mechanical key is used for locking and unlocking the driver's door.



1) Release button
2) Mechanical key

While pressing the release button of the access key, take out the mechanical key.

– CONTINUED –

■ Safety precautions

⚠ WARNING

If you wear an implanted pacemaker or an implanted defibrillator, stay at least 22 cm (8.7 in) away from the transmitting antennas installed on the vehicle.

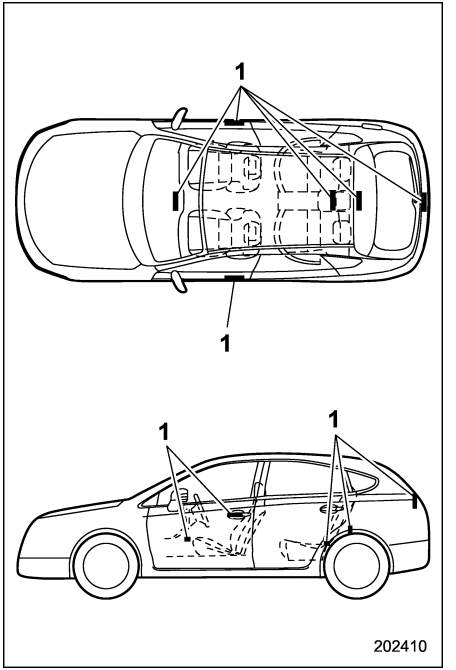
The radio waves from the transmitting antennas on the vehicle could adversely affect the operation of implanted pacemakers and implanted defibrillators.

If you wear electric medical equipment other than an implanted pacemaker or an implanted defibrillator, before using the keyless access with push-button start system, refer to "Radio waves used for the keyless access with push-button start system" mentioned later, and contact the electric medical equipment manufacturer for more information. The radio waves from the transmitting antennas on the vehicle could adversely affect the operation of the electric medical equipment.

"Radio waves used for the keyless access with push-button start system"

- **The keyless access with push-button start system uses radio waves of the following frequency* in addition to the radio waves used for the remote keyless entry system. The radio waves are periodically output from the antennas installed on the vehicle as shown in the following illustrations.**

  *** Radio frequency: 134.2 kHz**



1) Antenna

⚠ CAUTION

- Never leave or store the access key inside the vehicle (e.g., on the instrumental panel, inside the glove box, on the seat, in the door pocket or at the corner of the cargo area) or within 2 m (6.6 ft) around the vehicle (e.g., in the garage). The access key may be locked inside the vehicle, or the battery may discharge rapidly. Note that the push-button ignition switch may not turn on in some cases depending on the location of the access key.
- The access key contains electronic components. Observe the following precautions to prevent malfunctions.
  - Although you can replace the battery of the access key yourself, it is recommended that the battery be replaced by a SUBARU dealer to avoid the risk of damage at the time of replacement.
  - Do not get the access key wet. If the access key gets wet, wipe it off immediately and let it dry completely.
  - Do not allow strong impacts to the access key.
  - Keep the access key away from magnetic sources.
  - Never leave the access key in direct sunlight or anywhere that may become hot, such as on the dashboard. It may damage the battery or cause circuit malfunctions.
  - Do not wash the access key in an ultrasonic washer.
  - Do not leave the access key in humid or dusty locations. Doing so may cause malfunctions.
  - Do not leave the access key near personal computers or home electric appliances. Doing so may cause the access key to malfunction, resulting in battery discharge.
- If the access key is dropped, the integrated mechanical key inside may become loose. Be careful not to lose the mechanical key.
- When you carry the access key on an airplane, do not press the button of the access key while in the airplane. When any button of the access key is pressed, radio waves are sent and may affect the operation of the airplane. When you carry the access key in a bag on an airplane, take measures to prevent the buttons of the access key from being pressed.

NOTE

- The operational/non-operational setting for the keyless access function can be changed. For the setting procedure, refer to “Disabling keyless access function” ☞2-15. The setting can also be changed by a SUBARU dealer. For more details, we recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer.
- For detailed information about the operation method for the push-button ignition switch while the keyless access function is switched to the non-operational mode, refer to “Access key – if access key does not operate properly” ☞9-17.
- The keyless access with push-button start system uses weak radio waves. The status of the access key and environmental conditions may interfere with the communication between the access key and the vehicle under the following conditions, and it

– CONTINUED –

may not be possible to lock or unlock the doors or start the engine.

– When operating near a facility where strong radio waves are transmitted, such as a broadcast station and power transmission lines

– When products that transmit radio waves are used, such as an access key or a remote transmitter key of another vehicle

– When carrying more than one access key

– When the access key is placed near wireless communication equipment such as a cell phone

– When the access key is placed near a metallic object

– When metallic accessories are attached to the access key

– When carrying the access key with electronic appliances such as a laptop computer

– When the battery of the access key is discharged

- The access key is always communicating with the vehicle and is continuously using the battery. Although the life of the battery varies depending on the operating conditions, it is approximately 1 to 2 years. If the battery becomes fully discharged, replace it with a new one.
- If an access key is lost, it is recommended that the remaining access key be reregistered. For reregistration of an access key, we recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer.
- For a spare access key, we recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer.
- Up to 7 access keys can be registered for one vehicle.
- Carefully store the key number plate supplied with the access key. It is necessary for vehicle repair and additional registration of access keys.
- Do not leave the access key in the storage spaces inside the vehicle, such as the door pocket, dashboard and the corner of the cargo area. Vibrations may damage the key or turn on the switch, possibly resulting in a lockout.
- After the vehicle battery is discharged or replaced, initialization of the steering lock system may be required to start the engine. In this case, perform the following procedure to initialize the steering lock.

(1) Turn the push-button ignition switch to the “OFF” position. For details, refer to “Switching power” ☞3-7.

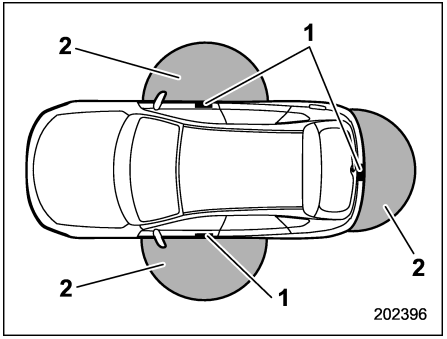
(2) Open and close the driver’s door.

(3) Wait for approximately 10 seconds.

When the steering is locked, the initialization is completed.

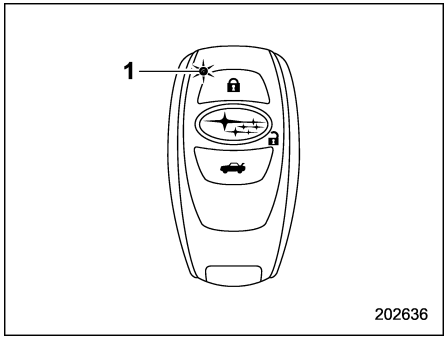
■ Locking and unlocking with “keyless access” entry function

▼ Operating ranges



1) Antenna
2) Operating range

The operating ranges of the door and rear gate locking/unlocking functions are approximately 40 to 80 cm (16 to 32 in) from the respective door handles and the rear gate ornament.



1) LED indicator

When the access key is within either of the operating ranges of the front doors, the LED indicator on the access key flashes. When the keyless access functions are disabled, the LED indicator does not flash unless a button on the access key is pressed.

▽ Operating range tips

- Locking by using the keyless access function can be operated only by the door lock sensor in the operating range in which the access key is detected.
- Unlocking by using the keyless access function can be operated only by the door handle in the operating range in which the access key is detected.
- If the access key is placed too close to the vehicle body, the keyless access function may not operate properly. If it does not operate properly, repeat the operation from further away.
- If the access key is placed near the ground or in an elevated location from the ground, even if it is in the indicated operating range, the keyless access function may not operate properly.
- When the access key is within the operating range, it is possible for anyone, even someone who is not carrying the access key, to operate the keyless access function. Note that locking and unlocking can be operated only by the door handle, door lock sensor, rear gate opener button or rear lock button in the operating range in which the access key is detected.
- It is not possible to lock the doors and rear gate using the keyless access function when the access key is inside the vehicle. However, depending on the status of the access key and the environmental conditions, the access key may be locked inside the vehicle. Before locking, make sure that you have the access key.
- When the battery of the access key is discharged, or when operating it in a location with strong radio waves or noise (e.g., near a radio tower, power plant, broadcast station or an area where wireless equipment is used), or while talking

– CONTINUED –

on a cell phone, the operating ranges may be reduced, or the keyless access function may not operate.
In such a case, perform the procedure described in “Locking and unlocking” ☞9-18.

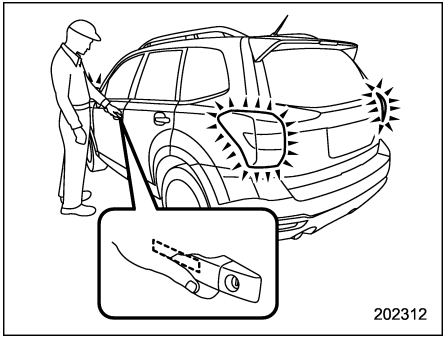
- When an access key is in the operating range, if the door handle becomes wet due to exposure to a significant amount of water when the vehicle is washed or during heavy rain, the doors may be locked or unlocked.
- The keyless access function may not operate properly depending on the status of the access key and the radio wave conditions around the vehicle. In such a case, perform the procedure described in “Locking and unlocking” ☞9-18.

▼ How to use keyless access functions

▽ Keyless access function tips

- When you lock the doors and rear gate using the keyless access function, turn the push-button ignition switch off. It is not possible to lock the doors and rear gate using the keyless access function when the push-button ignition switch is on the “ACC” or “ON” position. Refer to “Switching power” ☞3-7.
- If the door handle is gripped with a gloved hand, the door lock may not be released.
- When performing the locking procedure too quickly, locking may not have been completed. After locking the doors, it is recommended to pull the REAR door handles to confirm that the doors have been locked.
- It is not possible to lock the doors when one of the doors is open. Close all of the doors including the rear gate and lock the doors.
- Within 3 seconds after locking the doors and the rear gate by using the keyless access function, it is not possible to unlock the doors and/or the rear gate by using the keyless access function.
- If any of the doors or the rear gate is open, the doors and the rear gate cannot be locked.
- When locking, be sure to carry the access key to prevent locking the access key in the vehicle.
- The setting of the hazard warning flasher operation and the volume of the audible signal can be changed by your SUBARU dealer. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer for details.
- For models with multi function display, the setting of the hazard warning flasher operation can be changed by operating the multi function display. For details, refer to “Hazard warning flasher setting” ☞3-82.

▽ Unlocking



Carry the access key, and grip the door handle.

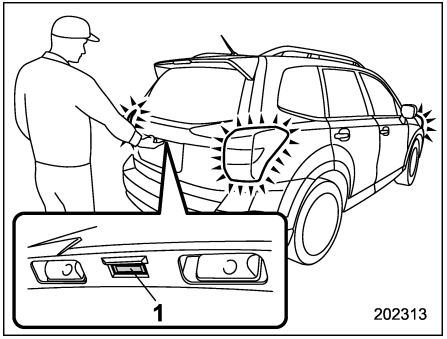
Models without double locking system:
All doors and the rear gate will be unlocked. Also, the hazard warning flashers will flash twice.

Models with double locking system:

- When gripping the driver’s door handle: Only the driver’s door will be unlocked.
- When gripping the front passenger’s door handle: All doors and the rear gate will be unlocked.

Also, the hazard warning flashers will flash twice.

▽ **Opening rear gate**



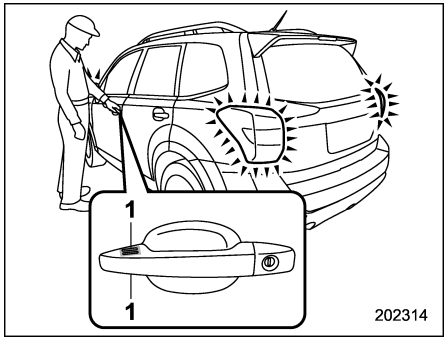
1) Rear gate opener button

Carry the access key, and press the rear gate opener button.

Models without double locking system:
The rear gate and all doors will be unlocked, and the rear gate will be opened. Also, the hazard warning flashers will flash twice.

Models with double locking system:
Only the rear gate will be unlocked and opened. Also, the hazard warning flashers will flash twice.

▽ **Locking with the door lock sensor**



1) Door lock sensor

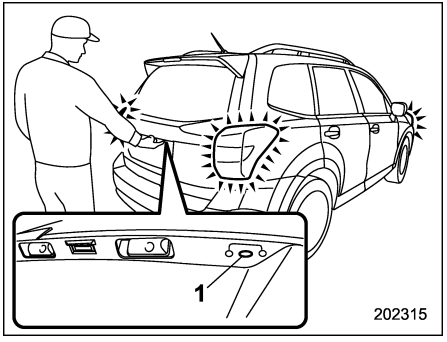
Carry the access key, close all doors including the rear gate and touch the door lock sensor on the door handle. All doors including the rear gate will be locked. Also, the hazard warning flashers will flash once.

NOTE

• After touching the door lock sensor to lock all of the doors (including the rear gate), if you touch the door lock sensor once more to attempt the lock operation without first unlocking the doors, nothing will happen, even if the door lock sensor is touched. In this case, perform the unlocking operation once first. You can then touch the door lock sensor to lock the doors.

• While any of the doors or the rear gate are open, even if you touch the door lock sensor, they cannot be locked. At this time, the hazard warning flashers operate 5 times to notify that any of them are open.

▽ **Locking with the rear lock button**



1) Rear lock button

Carry the access key, close all doors including the rear gate and press the rear lock button. The rear gate and all doors will be locked. Also, the hazard warning flashers will flash once.

– CONTINUED –

▼ **Door unlock selection function**

The door unlock selection function makes it possible to unlock the driver's door or the rear gate without unlocking any other doors. You can change the setting for the driver's door and for the rear gate independently.

The operational/non-operational setting for this function can be changed by a SUBARU dealer.

Operational: Only the driver's door or the rear gate will be unlocked.

Non-operational: All doors and the rear gate will be unlocked.

For the factory setting (default setting), refer to "Function settings" ☞25.

For further details, we recommend that you consult a SUBARU dealer.

▼ **Power saving function**

The keyless access function will be disabled in the following cases to protect the access key battery and the vehicle battery.

Case 1: When the keyless access function and the remote keyless entry system have not been used for 2 weeks or longer while the push-button ignition switch has been off

Case 2: When the access key has been left in the operating range for 10 minutes or longer while all doors are locked

▽ **Recovery from power saving mode**

When one of the following operations is performed, the keyless access function will be recovered.

Case 1:

- Lock the doors by touching the door lock sensor on the driver's door handle.
- Unlock the doors by gripping the driver's door handle.
- Lock or unlock the doors by the remote keyless entry system.
- Open a door and then close it, or close a door and then open it.
- Lock or unlock the doors by operating the power door locking switch that is located in the switch cluster on the driver's door.
- Turn the push-button ignition switch to the "ON" position.

Case 2:

- Unlock the doors by gripping the door handle.
- Unlock the doors by pressing the rear gate opener button.
- Lock the doors by touching the door lock sensor.
- Lock or unlock the doors using the remote keyless entry system.
- Lock or unlock the doors using the power door locking switch.
- Open either of the front doors.

▼ **Automatic locking (except models with double locking system)**

If any of the doors or the rear gate was not opened within 30 seconds after unlocking, they will be automatically locked again.

The function's operational/non-operational setting and the time until automatic locking takes place can be changed by a SUBARU dealer. For more details, we recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer.

For models with multi function display, the setting and the time can be changed by operating the multi function display. For details, refer to "Security Relocking" ☞3-84.

■ Warning chimes and warning light

The keyless access with push-button start system sounds a warning chime and flashes the access key warning light on the combination meter in order to minimize improper operations and help protect your

vehicle from theft.

For details, refer to “Warning chimes and warning light of the keyless access with push-button start system” ☞3-27.

■ Disabling keyless access function

⚠ WARNING

If you wear an implanted pacemaker or an implanted defibrillator, operate the driver’s door to disable the keyless access function. Otherwise, the operation of an implanted pacemaker or implanted defibrillator may be affected by the radio waves from the transmitter antenna.

When the vehicle is not going to be used for a long time, or when you choose not to use the keyless access function, the keyless access function can be disabled.

NOTE

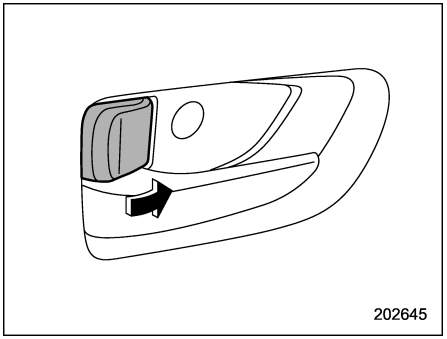
- **The locking and unlocking function by the remote keyless entry system is not disabled.**
- **The setting can also be changed at SUBARU dealers. For more details, we recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer.**
- **To start the engine while the functions are disabled, perform the procedure described in “Starting engine” ☞9-18.**
- **We recommend that you disable the keyless access functions under the following conditions.**
  - **– When the vehicle is not going to be used for an extended period of time**
  - **– When the keyless access functions are not going to be used**

▼ Disabling functions

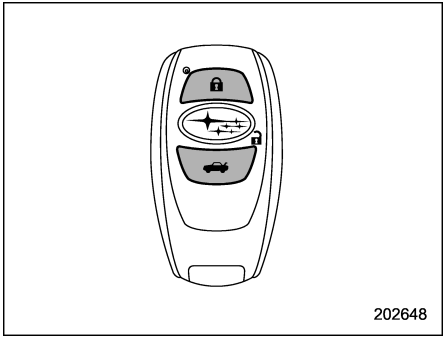
▽ By operating the access key

If you have registered a PIN code for PIN Code Access, you can disable the keyless access function by operating the access key. For details about registering a PIN code, refer to “Registering a PIN code” ☞2-17.

1. Open the driver’s door.



2. Rotate the lock lever forward.



3. Press and hold the “🔒” button and “🚗” button on the access key simultaneously for more than 5 seconds.

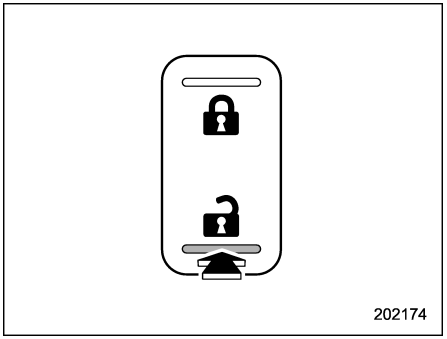
A chirp sound will be heard, and the

– CONTINUED –

function will be disabled.

▽ **By operating the driver's door**

1. Sit in the driver's seat, and close the door.



2. Push the rear side (unlock side) of the power door locking switch.
3. Within 5 seconds after step 2 is performed, open the driver's door.
4. Within 5 seconds after step 3 is performed, push the rear side (unlock side) of the power door locking switch twice while the door is open.
5. Within 10 seconds after step 4 is performed, close and open the driver's door twice.
6. Within 10 seconds after step 5 is performed, push the rear side (unlock side) of the power door locking switch twice while the door is open.
7. Within 10 seconds after step 6 is performed, close and open the driver's door once.
8. Within 5 seconds after step 7 is performed, close the door. A chirp sound will be heard, and the functions will be disabled.

NOTE

In steps 4 and 6, press the power door locking switch slowly. If the switch is pressed quickly, the functions may not be disabled.

▼ **Enabling functions**

When the procedure to disable the functions is performed again, a chirp sound will be heard, and the functions will be enabled.

NOTE

- **The keyless access function will be enabled only if you perform the procedure in the same manner you disabled the function (for example, when disabling by operating the driver's door, the function will not be enabled even if you operate the access key).**
- **Press the push-button ignition switch if you do not know the procedure in which the keyless access function was disabled.**
  - **When disabling by operating the driver's door: a chirp will not be heard**
  - **When disabling by operating the access key: a chirp will be heard**

■ When access key does not operate properly

Refer to "Access key – if access key does not operate properly" ☞9-17.

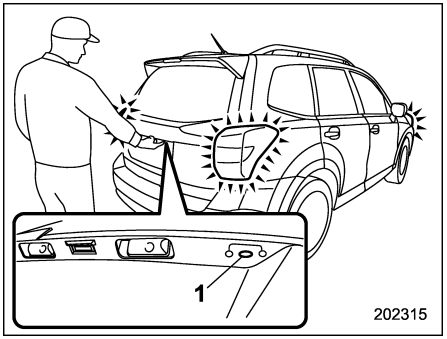
■ Replacing battery of access key

Refer to "Replacing battery of access key" ☞11-57.

■ Technical information for Europe models

- This device complies with the essential requirements of the Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 1999/5/EC. A copy of the original Declaration of Conformity and the CE marking are found in chapter 13.
- Hereby, DENSO CORPORATION declares that this 13CZY/14AHB is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

PIN Code Access (models with “keyless access with push-button start system”)



1) Rear lock button

When all doors and the rear gate are locked, you can unlock them without a key by operating the rear lock button.

You need to register a PIN code to your vehicle before using this function.

NOTE

PIN Code Access will be helpful if the key is accidentally left in the vehicle. It is recommended that a 5-digit security code (PIN code) is registered.

■ Registering a PIN code

▼ Preparation

1. Turn off the ignition switch.
2. Close all doors and the rear gate.
3. Press and hold the “🔒” button on the access key. Then all doors and the rear gate will be locked.
4. While pressing the “🔒” button, press and hold the rear lock button within 5 seconds after completing step 3.
5. Press and hold the above buttons for more than 5 seconds. Then a chirp will sound.
6. Release the “🔒” button and the rear lock button.
7. Press the “🔓” button on the access key while the chirp sounds. Then the chirp will stop and the preparation is complete.

NOTE

If you do not press the “🔓” button on the access key, the chirp will sound for 30 seconds. In this case, the preparation for registering a PIN code does not complete even if the chirp stops.

▼ Registration

For example, to register “32468” as the PIN code, perform the following procedure.

1. Press the rear lock button three times.
2. After a buzzer (ding) sounds once, press the rear lock button twice.
3. After a buzzer (ding) sounds once, press the rear lock button four times.
4. After a buzzer (ding) sounds once, press the rear lock button six times.
5. After a buzzer (ding) sounds once, press the rear lock button eight times.
6. Perform steps 1 to 5 again within approximately 30 seconds after the buzzer starts sounding intermittently.
7. All doors and the rear gate that has been unlocked will be locked. Then the PIN code will be registered.

NOTE

- **To register “0” as a PIN code, press the rear lock button on the rear gate ten times.**
- **Change the PIN code frequently to protect your vehicle from theft.**
- **If you have lent your vehicle to another person, confirm that the PIN code has not been changed or deleted. If the PIN code has been changed or**

– CONTINUED –

deleted, reregister a new PIN code.

• If you make an error during the registration procedure, press the "🔓" button on the access key. Then, start over from the procedure described in "Preparation".

• To protect your vehicle from theft, you cannot register a string of the same five numbers together, such as "00000", nor "12345" as a PIN code.

• Do not register your vehicle license plate number or simple numbers such as "11122" or "12121" as a PIN code. Doing so will increase the risk of vehicle theft.

• When you try to register "22222", the registered PIN code will be deleted. You cannot unlock the doors by PIN Code Access until a new code is registered.

• After registering a new PIN code, make sure that you can unlock the doors using the PIN code.

• The PIN code cannot be deleted while the keyless access function is disabled by operating the access key.

• Reregister the PIN code in the following case.

– when you forget the PIN code

– when you want to change the PIN code

■ Unlocking

Perform steps 1 to 5 described in "Registration".

NOTE

• You cannot unlock by PIN Code Access in the following cases.

– when the access key is within the operating ranges

– when the ignition switch is in the "ACC" or "ON" position

• If you make an operation error during the unlocking procedure, start over with the unlocking procedure after waiting for 5 seconds or longer.

• To protect your vehicle from theft, a buzzer will sound if incorrect PIN codes are entered five times continuously. If this occurs, you cannot unlock the doors by PIN Code Access for 5 minutes.

Remote keyless entry system

The remote transmitter can be used within a distance of approximately 1.0 m (3.2 ft) of the vehicle. It can be used to lock and unlock all of the doors and the rear gate. For models with power rear gate, it can be used to open or close the rear gate.

The system's operable distance will be shorter in areas near a facility or electronic equipment emitting strong radio waves such as a power plant, broadcast station, TV tower, or remote controller of home electronic appliances.

⚠ CAUTION

• When you carry the remote transmitter on an airplane, do not press the button of the remote transmitter while in the airplane. When any button of the remote transmitter is pressed, radio waves are sent and may affect the operation of the airplane. When you carry the remote transmitter in a bag on an airplane, take measures to prevent the buttons of the remote transmitter from being pressed.

• Do not expose the transmitter to

shocks.

- **Do not take the transmitter apart.**
- **Do not get the transmitter wet. If it gets wet, wipe it dry with a cloth immediately.**

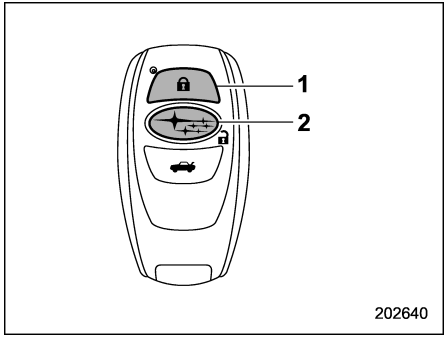
NOTE

• Before leaving the vehicle, make sure that the doors are locked.
• If any of the doors or the rear gate is open, this function does not operate.
• For models with "keyless access with push-button start system", when the lock button on the access key is pressed while the access key is placed too close to the vehicle body, unlocking by the keyless access functions may not work. In such a case, the functions will recover by unlocking using the remote keyless entry system.

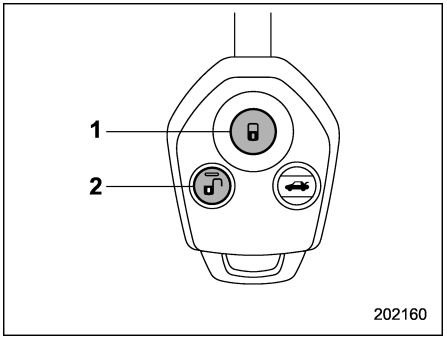
■ Locking and unlocking doors

NOTE

The setting of the hazard warning flasher operation can be changed by your SUBARU dealer. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer for details. Also, for models with multi function display, the setting of the hazard warning flasher operation can be changed by operating the multi function display. For details, refer to "Hazard warning flasher setting" ☞3-82.



Access key
1) Lock button
2) Unlock button



Remote transmitter
1) Lock button
2) Unlock button

▼ Unlocking

Press the unlock button on the access key/transmitter near the vehicle.

▽ Models without door unlock selection function

Models without double locking system:
All doors and the rear gate will be unlocked. Also, the hazard warning flashers will flash twice.

Models with double locking system:
1. Only the driver's door will be unlocked. Also, the hazard warning flashers will flash twice.
2. If you press the unlock button again

– CONTINUED –

within 5 seconds of unlocking the driver's door, all of the other doors and the rear gate will be unlocked.

▽ **Models with door unlock selection function**

NOTE

• For security reasons, confirm the setting is set as "operational" or "non-operational".
• For models with "keyless access with push-button start system", the door unlock selection function can be set for both the keyless access function and the remote keyless entry system. For the method of setting the door unlock selection function of the keyless access function, refer to "Door unlock selection function" ☞2-14.

The door unlock selection function makes it possible to unlock the driver's door without unlocking any other doors. The operational/non-operational setting for this function can be changed by a SUBARU dealer.

Operational: Only the driver's door will be unlocked. If you press the unlock button again within 5 seconds of unlocking the driver's door, all of the other doors and the rear gate will be unlocked.

Non-operational: All doors and the rear gate will be unlocked.

For further details, we recommend that you consult a SUBARU dealer.

▼ **Locking**

Pressing the lock button on the access key/transmitter locks all doors and the rear gate. When leaving the vehicle, pull the REAR door handle to make sure that the doors have been locked.

NOTE

• The remote keyless entry system does not operate when the key is inserted in the ignition switch or when any of the doors or the rear gate is not fully closed.
• If any of the doors or the rear gate are not fully closed, the hazard warning flashers will flash five times to alert you that any of them are not properly closed.
• For models with "keyless access with push-button start system", the front door will be unlocked if you grip the front door handle while an access key is in the operating range. Pull the REAR door handle to make sure that the doors have been locked.

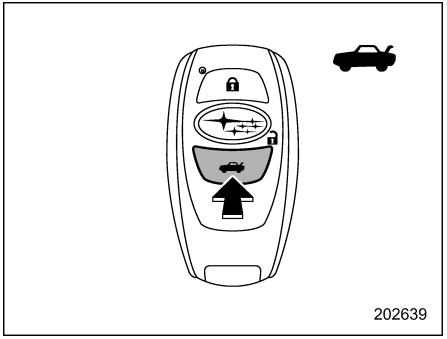
▼ **Automatic locking (models without double locking system)**

Even if the unlock button is pressed, all of the doors and the rear gate will be automatically locked 30 seconds later unless any one of the four doors or the rear gate is opened during that period.

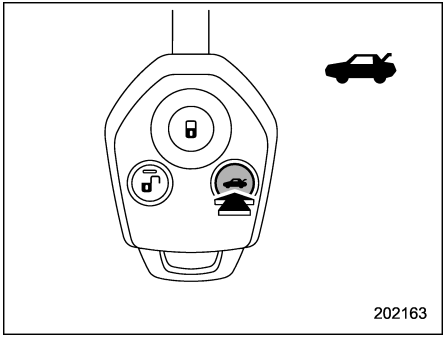
The automatic locking function's operational/non-operational setting and the setting for the locking time period (the time period after which locking takes place) can be changed by a SUBARU dealer. We recommend that you contact the nearest SUBARU dealer for details.

For models with multi function display, the setting and the time can be changed by operating the multi function display. For details, refer to "Security Relocking" ☞3-84.

■ Unlocking/operating rear gate



Access key



Remote transmitter

Press the "🚗" button to unlock the rear gate. At this time, the hazard warning lights flash twice.

For models with power rear gate, press and hold the "🚗" button to open/close the rear gate.

■ Technical information

The trade, model and supplier's names of this device are as follows.

- Equipment's trade name: SUBARU
- Equipment's model name: TF001
- Supplier's name: Calsonic Kansei

For Europe:

This device complies with the essential requirements of the Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 1999/5/EC. A copy of the original Declaration of Conformity and the CE marking are found in the chapter 13.

Double locking system (if equipped)

The double locking system is an anti-theft system. It operates when the doors are locked using the key or remote transmitter. While this system is operating, the power door locking switch and door lock levers inside the cabin cannot be used to unlock the doors.

⚠ WARNING

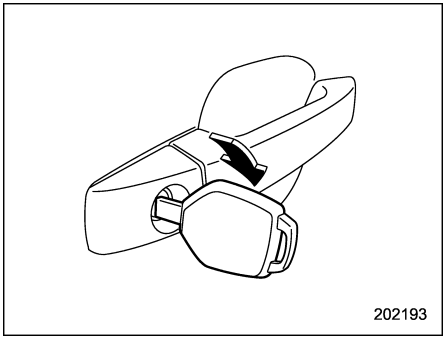
Never set the double locking system while passengers are inside the vehicle. With the system set, people in the vehicle would not be able to open the doors from the inside. The result could be serious injuries or death.

– CONTINUED –

■ To set double locking system

▼ Setting system using key

1. Remove the key from the ignition switch (models without “keyless access with push-button start system”)/turn the push-button ignition switch to the “OFF” position (models with “keyless access with push-button start system”) and have all occupants get out of the vehicle.
2. Close all of the doors and the rear gate securely.



3. Insert the key into the key cylinder of the driver’s door, then turn it in the locking direction to set the double locking system. All of the doors and the rear gate will be locked.

▼ Setting system using remote transmitter

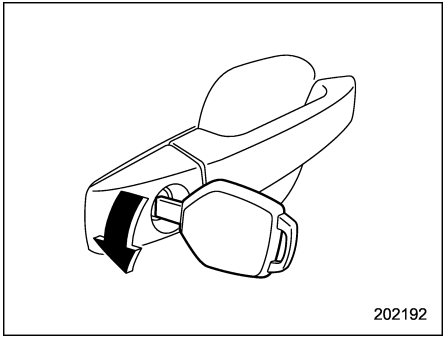
1. Remove the key from the ignition switch (models without “keyless access with push-button start system”)/turn the push-button ignition switch to the “OFF” position (models with “keyless access with push-button start system”) and have all occupants get out of the vehicle.
2. Close all of the doors and the rear gate securely.
3. Press the “🔒” button on the access key or “🔒” button on the transmitter. The hazard warning flashers will flash once and the double locking system will be set. All of the doors and the rear gate will be locked.

NOTE

For models with the keyless access function, it is possible to set the double locking system by touching the door lock sensor.

■ To cancel double locking system

▼ Canceling system using key



Insert the key into the key cylinder of the driver’s door, then turn it in the unlocking direction to cancel the double locking system. All of the doors and the rear gate will be unlocked.

▼ **Canceling system using remote transmitter**

Press the "🔓" button on the access key or "🔒" button on the transmitter. The hazard warning flashers will flash twice and the double locking system will be canceled. The driver's door will be unlocked.

NOTE

For models with the keyless access function, it is possible to cancel the double locking system by gripping the door handle.

■ In an emergency

If you become trapped inside the vehicle owing to an accident or some other unexpected circumstance, unlock the doors using one of the following methods.

- Remove the key from the ignition switch, then press the "🔒" button on the transmitter (models without keyless access function).
- Turn the push-button ignition switch off, then press the "🔓" button on the access key (models with keyless access function).
- Set the ignition switch to the "ON" position and open the driver's window. Insert the key into the key cylinder of the driver's door and turn it in the unlocking direction.
- Break one of the windows and climb out through the window opening.

■ If a battery goes dead

If the double locking system cannot be canceled because the vehicle battery or transmitter battery has gone dead or because of a blown fuse or other electrical problem, insert the key into the key cylinder of the driver's door and turn it in the unlocking direction.

■ To reset double locking system

The double locking system must be reset when the vehicle battery has been temporarily disconnected for replacement or charging. To reset the system, turn the key once in the unlocking direction or press the "🔓" button on the access key or "🔒" button on the transmitter. The double locking system will then operate normally.

NOTE

For models with the keyless access function, it is possible to reset the double locking system by gripping the door handle.

Function disabling unlocking with the power door locking switch (Australia models)

⚠ WARNING

Never lock the doors using the remote keyless entry system while passengers are inside the vehicle. Doing so activates the function that disables unlocking with the power door locking switch and so people in the vehicle would not be able to open the doors from the inside. This could result in serious injury or death.

Australia models are fitted with an anti-theft function that disables door unlocking with the power door locking switch. This function is activated in the following situations, disabling the doors from being unlocked using the power door locking switch.

- The doors are locked using the keyless access function (if equipped). Refer to "How to use keyless access functions" ☞2-12.
- The doors are locked using the remote keyless entry system. Refer to "Locking and unlocking doors" ☞2-19.

– CONTINUED –

● The automatic locking function is in operation. Refer to “Automatic locking (models without double locking system)” ☞2-20.

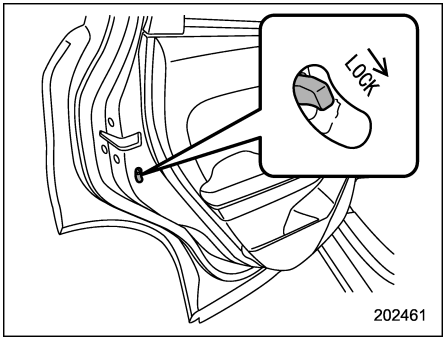
This function is canceled when the doors are unlocked using the remote keyless entry system or the ignition switch is turned to “ON”.

NOTE

● Even while this function is activated, doors can be unlocked using their lock levers, refer to “Locking and unlocking from the inside” ☞2-5.

● This function is not activated when the doors are locked using the key or power door locking switch.

Child safety locks



Each rear door has a child safety lock. When the child safety lock lever is in the “LOCK” position, the door cannot be opened from inside. The door can only be opened from the outside.

⚠ WARNING

Always turn the child safety locks to the “LOCK” position when children sit on the rear seat. Serious injury could result if a child accidentally opens the door and falls out.

Windows

⚠ WARNING

To avoid serious personal injury caused by entrapment, always conform to the following instructions without exception.

- **When operating the power windows, be extremely careful to prevent anyone’s fingers, arms, neck, head or other objects from being caught in the window.**
- **Always lock the passengers’ windows using the lock switch when children are riding in the vehicle.**
- **Always carry the key when you leave the vehicle for safety and never allow an unattended child to remain in the vehicle. Failure to follow this procedure could result in injury to a child operating the power window.**
- **The driver should be aware of and pay careful attention to his/her responsibilities.**

⚠ CAUTION

After fully opening or fully closing a window, do not continue to push the switch in the same direction. It may cause the power window to malfunction.

NOTE

• Due to the structure of the vehicle body, the rear seat window cannot be fully opened.

• When the following operations are performed, the power window breaker will operate and it may not be possible to open or close the window.

– After the driver's side window is fully closed or fully opened, the switch continues to be operated in the same direction for a few seconds.

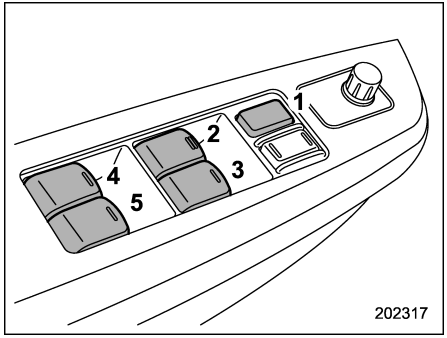
– After the windows for three or more seats are fully closed or fully opened, each switch continues to be operated in the same direction simultaneously for a few seconds.

• In this case, after the breaker recovers, be sure to initialize the power windows. If they are not initialized, the one-touch auto up/down function will not operate. Refer to "Initialization of power window" ☞2-28.

The power windows operate only when the ignition switch is in the "ON" position.

■ Power window operation by driver

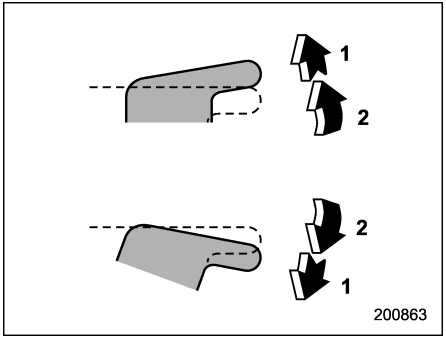
▼ Driver's side power window switches



1) Lock switch
2) For driver's window (with one-touch auto up and down feature)
3) For front passenger's window
4) For rear left window
5) For rear right window

All door windows can be controlled by the power window switch cluster at the driver side door.

▼ Operating the driver's window



1) Automatically open/close
2) Open/close

To open:

Push the switch down lightly and hold it. The window will open as long as the switch is held.

This switch also has a one-touch auto down feature that allows the window to be opened fully without holding the switch.

Push the switch down until it clicks and release it, and the window will fully open. To stop the window halfway, pull the switch up lightly.

To close:

Pull the switch up lightly and hold it. The window will close as long as the switch is held.

– CONTINUED –

This switch also has a one-touch auto up feature that allows the window to be closed fully without holding the switch.

Pull the switch up until it clicks and release it, and the window will fully close. To stop the window halfway, push the switch down lightly.

NOTE

If the vehicle's battery is disconnected due to situations such as battery or fuse replacement, the one-touch auto up/down function is deactivated. Initialize the power window to reactivate the one-touch auto up/down function. Refer to "Initialization of power window" ☞2-28.

▼ Anti-entrapment function

⚠ CAUTION

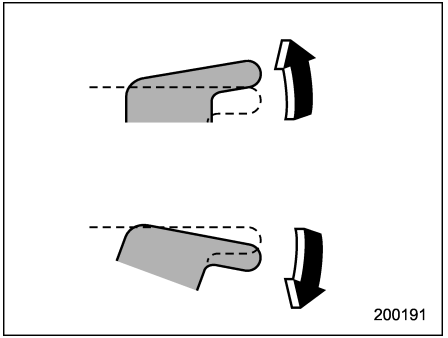
- **Never attempt to test this function using fingers, hands or other parts of your body.**
- **The anti-entrapment function may not operate properly if some object gets trapped just before the window fully closes.**

NOTE

- **If a window detects an impact similar to that caused by trapping an object (for example, when the vehicle encounters a deep pothole), the anti-entrapment function may operate.**
- **The window cannot be operated for a few seconds after the anti-entrapment function operates.**
- **If the vehicle's battery is disconnected due to situations such as battery or fuse replacement, the anti-entrapment function is deactivated. Initialize the power window to reactivate the anti-entrapment function. Refer to "Initialization of power window" ☞2-28.**

While closing the driver's window automatically, if the window senses a substantial enough object trapped between the window and the window frame, it automatically moves down slightly and stops.

▼ Operating the passengers' windows



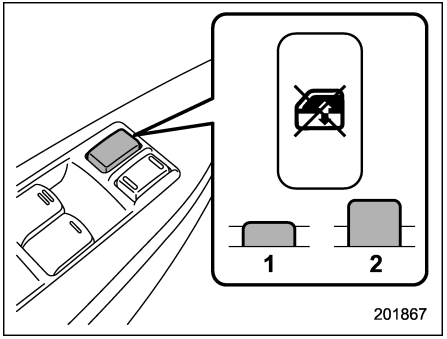
To open:

Push the appropriate switch down and hold it until the window reaches the desired position.

To close:

Pull the switch up and hold it until the window reaches the desired position.

▼ Locking the passengers' windows



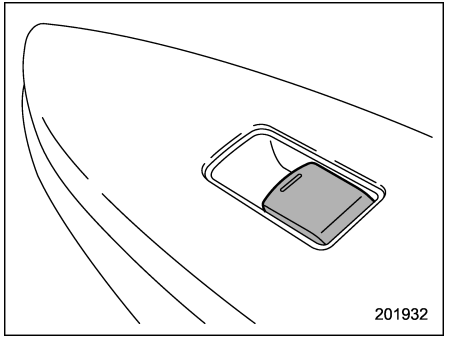
1) Lock
2) Unlock

To lock:
Press the lock switch. When the lock switch is in the lock position, the passengers' windows cannot be opened or closed.

To unlock:
Press the lock switch again.

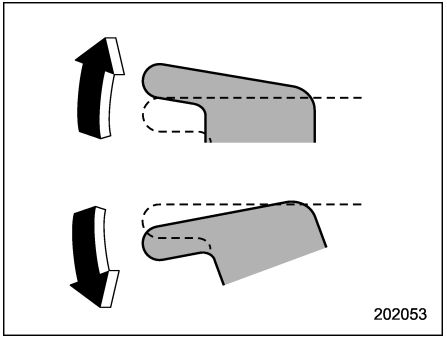
■ Power window operation by passengers

▼ Passenger's side power window switches



Each passenger window can be controlled by the power window switch located on the door.

▼ Operating the windows



To open:
Press the switch down and hold it until the window reaches the desired position.

To close:
Pull the switch up and hold it until the window reaches the desired position.

When the lock switch on the power window switch cluster, located on the driver's side door, is in the lock position, the passengers' windows cannot be operated with the passengers' switches.

– CONTINUED –

■ Initialization of power window

If the vehicle's battery is disconnected due to situations such as battery or fuse replacement, the following functions will be deactivated.

- One-touch auto up/down function
- Anti-entrapment function

Initialize the power window using the following procedure to reactivate these functions.

1. Close the driver's door.
2. Turn the ignition switch to the "ON" position.
3. Open the driver's side window halfway by pushing down the power window switch.
4. Pull up the power window switch and close the window completely. Continue pulling up the switch for approximately 1 second after the window is closed completely.
5. Push down the power window switch until it clicks to open the window completely.

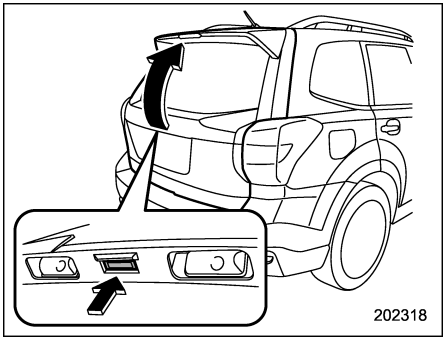
Rear gate

■ Manual rear gate (if equipped)

The rear gate can be locked and unlocked using any of the following systems.

- Power door locking switch: Refer to "Power door locking switch" ☞2-6.
- Keyless access with the push-button start system (if equipped): Refer to "Keyless access with push-button start system" ☞2-7.
- Remote keyless entry system: Refer to "Remote keyless entry system" ☞2-18.
- Locking and unlocking from the outside with the key (models with double locking system): Refer to "Locking and unlocking from the outside with key" ☞2-4.

To open:



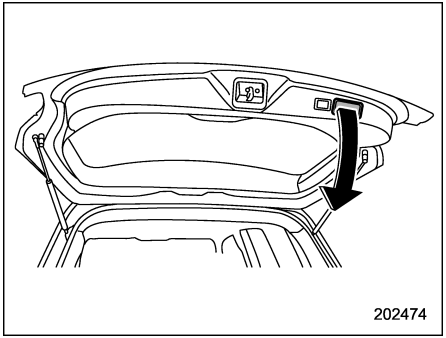
Rear gate opener button

1. Unlock the rear gate.
2. Press and hold the rear gate opener button. The rear gate will open slightly.
3. Hold the rear gate and lift it up slowly.

NOTE

If the rear gate cannot be unlocked due to a discharged vehicle battery, a malfunction in the door locking/unlocking system or other causes, you can unlock it by manually operating the rear gate lock release lever. For the procedure, refer to "Rear gate – if the rear gate cannot be opened" ☞9-19.

To close:



Lower the rear gate slowly and push down firmly until the latch engages.

The rear gate can be lowered easily if you pull it down holding the recessed grip.

⚠ WARNING

- **To prevent dangerous exhaust gas from entering the vehicle, always keep the rear gate closed while driving.**
- **Do not attempt to shut the rear gate while holding the recessed grip. Also avoid closing the rear gate by pulling on the recessed grip from inside the cargo space. There is a danger of your hand being caught and injured.**

⚠ CAUTION

- **Do not jam a plastic bag in or place cellophane tape on the rear gate stays or scratch the stays while loading or unloading cargo. That could cause leakage of gas from the stays, which may result in their inability to hold the rear gate open.**
- **Be careful not to hit your head or face on the rear gate when opening or closing the rear gate and when loading or unloading cargo.**

■ Power rear gate (if equipped)

⚠ WARNING

- **When opening the rear gate, make sure there are no people around it. If the rear gate, by any chance, should hit a part of the body, this may result in an injury.**
- **When closing the rear gate, be extremely careful to prevent anyone's fingers, arms, neck, head or other objects from being caught in the rear gate. Otherwise, serious personal injury may be caused by entrapment.**
- **If either of the operating conditions has not been satisfied while operating the power rear gate, an electronic chirp will sound and the power rear gate will be deactivated. In this case, the rear gate may open or close suddenly. Be careful to prevent anyone's body or any objects from being hit against the rear gate or being caught in the rear gate.**
- **After opening the rear gate on a slope by using the power rear gate feature, the rear gate may close. Make sure that the rear gate has stopped completely**

– CONTINUED –

after opening it.

- **Always carry the key when you leave the vehicle for safety and never allow an unattended child to remain in the vehicle. Failure to follow this procedure could result in injury to a child operating the power rear gate.**
- **The driver should be aware of and pay careful attention to his/her responsibilities.**
- **The power rear gate button should only be used to open and close the rear gate when the area around the rear gate is clearly visible and when you have checked that there is no danger of people being caught in the gate.**

⚠ CAUTION

When closing the rear gate after opening it by using the memory function, make sure to use the power rear gate. If you close the rear gate manually with extra force, the power rear gate may be damaged.

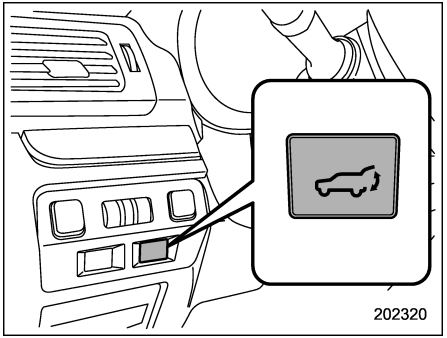
The power rear gate operates only when all of the following conditions are satisfied.

- The vehicle is stopped completely.
- The outside temperature is within a range from −30°C to 70°C (from −22°F to 158°F).
- The ignition switch is in the “LOCK”/“OFF” or “ACC” position. Or, the ignition switch is in the “ON” position and the parking brake is applied (MT models)/the select lever is in the “P” position (CVT models).

NOTE

- **If the button is pressed repeatedly while the power rear gate is operating, the system may ignore the button operation in order to avoid being damaged. Do not press the button unnecessarily.**
- **It is not possible to stop the rear gate temporarily while opening between the completely closed position and approximately 30 cm (12 in) open. If you press one of the power rear gate buttons briefly during this range, the rear gate will be closed.**
- **If the vehicle starts to move while the power rear gate is operating, the system sounds a buzzer and closes the rear gate automatically. At this time, if the system detects jamming, it will deactivate the power rear gate and the rear gate will not be closed. If this occurs, close the rear gate via regular procedures.**
- **If you try to open the rear gate using the power rear gate function immediately after closing the rear gate using the power rear gate function, an electronic chirp will sound and the rear gate will not open. Wait for a while before trying to open the rear gate via the power rear gate function. If you wish to open it right away, it can be opened manually.**

▼ **Operation by the button on the instrument panel**



Power rear gate button

To open the rear gate:

Press and hold the power rear gate button when the rear gate is closed. The hazard warning flashers will flash twice and the rear gate will open automatically.

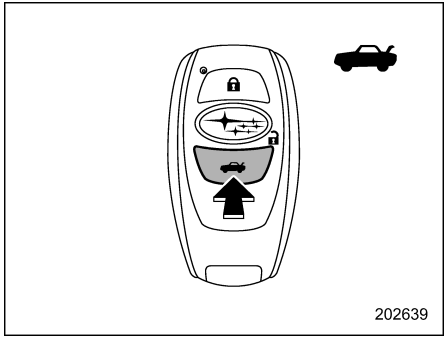
To stop the rear gate midway:

Briefly press the power rear gate button while the rear gate is being opened. Then the hazard warning flashers will flash twice. If the button is pressed again, the rear gate will close. If the button is briefly pressed while the gate is closed, the rear gate can be opened. However, the rear gate cannot be stopped again while it is opening.

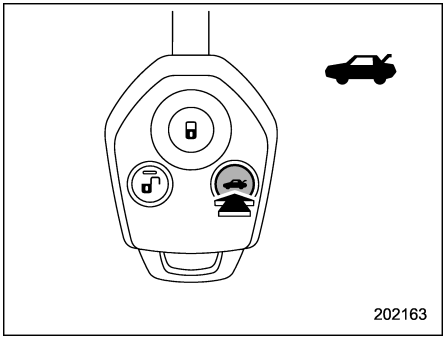
To close the rear gate:

Press and hold the power rear gate button. The hazard warning flashers will flash twice and the rear gate will close automatically. If the button is briefly pressed again, the rear gate will open. However, you cannot stop the rear gate midway even if you press the button again.

▼ **Operation by the button on the access key/transmitter**



Power rear gate button (models with access key)



Power rear gate button (models with transmitter)

To open the rear gate:

Press and hold the power rear gate button when the rear gate is closed. The hazard warning flashers will flash twice and the rear gate will open automatically.

To stop the rear gate midway:

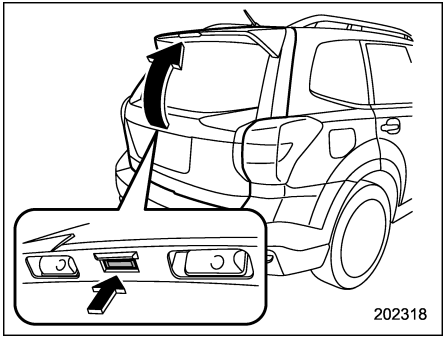
Briefly press the power rear gate button while the rear gate is being opened. Then the hazard warning flashers will flash twice. If the button is pressed again, the rear gate will close. If the button is briefly pressed while the gate is closed, the rear gate can be opened. However, the rear gate cannot be stopped again while it is opening.

– CONTINUED –

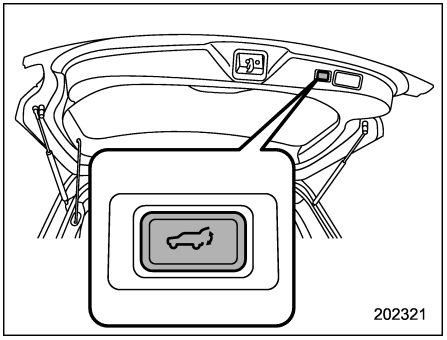
To close the rear gate:

Press and hold the power rear gate button. The hazard warning flashers will flash twice and the rear gate will close automatically. If the button is briefly pressed again, the rear gate will open. However, you cannot stop the rear gate midway even if you press the button again.

▼ Operation by the buttons on the rear gate



Rear gate opener button



Power rear gate button on the inside edge of the rear gate

To open the rear gate:

Briefly press the rear gate opener button when the rear gate is closed. The hazard warning flashers will flash twice and the rear gate will open automatically.

To stop the rear gate midway:

Briefly press the opener button/power rear gate button on the inside edge of the rear gate while the rear gate is being opened. Then the hazard warning flashers will flash twice. If the button is pressed again, the rear gate will close. If the button is briefly pressed while the gate is closed, the rear gate can be opened. However, the rear gate cannot be stopped again while it is opening.

To close the rear gate:

Briefly press the opener button/power rear gate button on the inside edge of the rear gate. The hazard warning flashers will flash twice and the rear gate will close automatically. If the button is briefly pressed again, the rear gate will open. However, you cannot stop the rear gate midway even if you press the button again.

NOTE

When the rear gate was fully open, the power rear gate button on the inside edge of the rear gate will only function.

▼ Manual operation

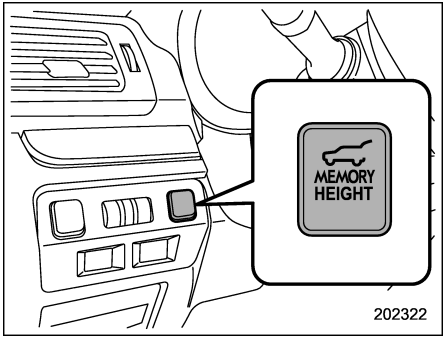
The power rear gate can open and close manually. Refer to “Manual rear gate” ☞2-28.

NOTE

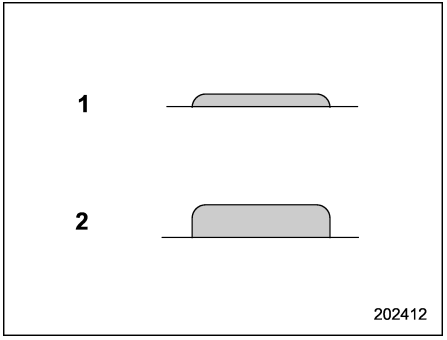
In the following cases, the power rear gate cannot be opened or closed manually.

- **The power rear gate is stopped midway.**
- **The memory switch is ON and the power rear gate is stopped at the set height.**

▼ **Memory function**



Memory switch



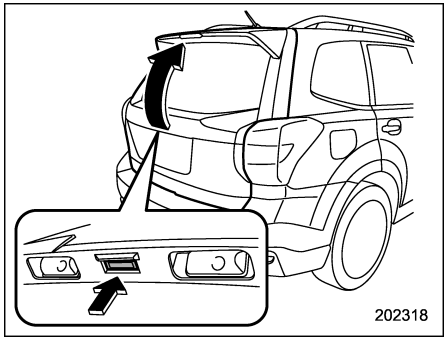
Memory switch status
1) ON status
2) OFF status

Your desired rear gate height can be registered.

Registration of the rear gate height:

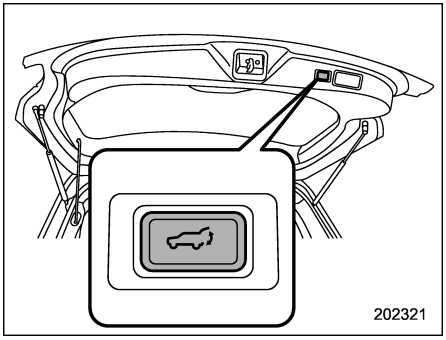
To register the rear gate height, perform the following procedures while the ignition switch is in the “LOCK”/“OFF” position.

1. Press the memory switch to select the “ON” status.



Rear gate opener button

2. Press and hold the rear gate opener button located above the license plate. After the latch releases, let go of the button and raise the rear gate to the desired height manually.



Power rear gate button on the inside edge of the rear gate

3. With the rear gate at the desired height, press and hold the power rear gate button on the inside edge of the rear gate until an electronic chirp is heard and the hazard warning flashers flash three times. The electronic chirp and the flashing hazard warning flashers confirm the selected rear gate height has been registered.

4. Close the rear gate manually (without using the power rear gate).

NOTE

- **To change the registered height, perform the registering procedure again.**
- **It is possible to register the height**

– CONTINUED –

from approximately 30 cm (12 in) or more from the completely closed position.

• Before closing the rear gate in step 4, it is possible to register the height many times through step 3. Therefore, the registered height can easily be fine-tuned.

Retrieval of the rear gate height:

To open the rear gate and stop it at the registered height, perform the following procedure.

1. Press the memory switch to select the ON status.
2. Press and hold any of the power rear gate switches.

Even if any of the power rear gate switches are pressed and held while the memory switch is in the OFF status, you can stop it at the registered height by pressing the memory switch to select the ON status before the rear gate reaches the registered height.

NOTE

• The rear gate will open to the position that is stored in the memory function even if the rear gate is opened by the reverse function.

• If the rear gate is opened manually while the memory function is activated, you cannot close it by pressing the power rear gate button on the rear gate. To close it, press the other power rear gate button or close it manually.

▼ Reverse function

⚠ WARNING

- **Do not let parts of your body be caught intentionally to operate the reverse function. If the reverse function does not operate for some reason, this may lead to serious injury or accidents.**
- **The reverse function may not operate if foreign objects are caught in the rear gate just before it closes completely. Be careful not to catch your fingers and other body parts.**
- **The reverse function may not operate depending on the object shape and the manner in which it was caught. Be careful not to catch your fingers and other body parts.**

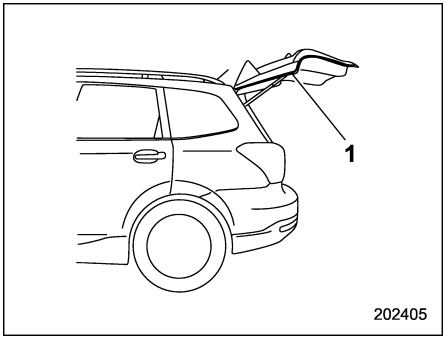
⚠ CAUTION

- **If the reverse function is operated 3 times consecutively, automatic opening and closing of the power rear gate function will be canceled and the rear gate can be opened and closed normally. Whether the rear gate opens or closes depends on the rear gate height when automatic operation is ceased. Be careful that the rear gate does not hit anyone's head or face, etc. and that fingers and baggage, etc. are not caught in it.**
- **Take care not to damage the touch sensors. Otherwise, the reverse function may cease to operate.**

If, while opening or closing using power rear gate, the rear gate catches persons or baggage or hits an obstacle, an electronic chirp will sound 3 times and the rear gate will operate as follows.

When opening the rear gate: The rear gate will automatically close.

When closing the rear gate: The rear gate will automatically open.



1) Touch sensor

Touch sensors are attached on the left and right edges of the rear gate. If the touch sensors detect fingers, baggage, etc. while closing by the power rear gate function, an electronic chirp will sounds 3 times and the rear gate will open automatically.

NOTE

When the rear gate is opened using the reverse function, it will be opened fully or to the height registered in the memory function.

▼ Rear gate drop prevention function

If, while fully opened via the power rear gate function, the rear gate is lowered by the weight of snow and such, an electronic chirp will sound and the rear gate will close automatically.

NOTE

- **If there is snow on the rear gate, only use the power rear gate function after removing the snow.**
- **If you close the rear gate manually just after the rear gate is fully opened using the power rear gate function, the rear gate drop prevention function will operate to close the rear gate automatically. In this case, this is not a malfunction.**

Sunroof (if equipped)

⚠ WARNING

Never let anyone's hands, arms, head or any objects protrude from the sunroof. A person could be seriously injured if any of the following conditions occur.

- **The vehicle stops suddenly.**
- **The vehicle turns sharply.**
- **The vehicle is involved in an accident.**
- **Body parts protruding from the vehicle are struck by outside objects.**

To avoid serious personal injury caused by entrapment, always conform to the following instructions without exception.

- **Before closing the sunroof, make sure that no one's hands, arms, head or other objects will be accidentally caught in the sunroof.**
- **Always carry the key when you leave the vehicle for safety and never allow an unattended child to remain in the vehicle. Failure**

– CONTINUED –

to follow this procedure could result in injury to a child operating the sunroof.

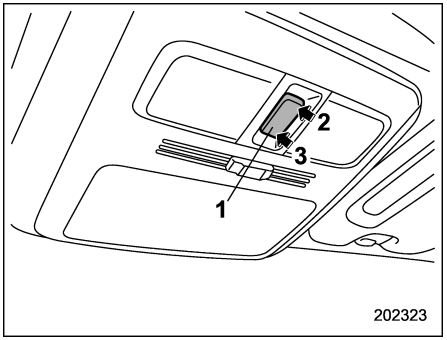
- **Never try to check the anti-entrapment function by deliberately placing part of your body in the sunroof.**
- **The driver should be aware of and pay careful attention to his/her responsibilities.**

⚠ CAUTION

- **Do not sit on the edge of the open sunroof.**
- **Do not operate the sunroof if falling snow or extremely cold conditions have caused it to freeze shut.**
- **Do not touch the moving parts of the sunroof while the sunroof is operating.**
- **If the sunroof does not close, we recommend that you have the system checked by a SUBARU dealer.**

The sunroof operates only when the ignition switch is in the "ON" position.

■ Sunroof switch



1) OPEN/CLOSE switch
2) Open
3) Close

To open the sunroof:

Press the rear side of the "OPEN/CLOSE" switch. The sun shade will also be opened together with the sunroof. The sunroof will stop at a position approximately 20 cm (8 in) away from the fully opened position. Press the rear side of the switch again to open the sunroof completely.

To close the sunroof:

Press the front side of the "OPEN/CLOSE" switch. To stop the sunroof at a selected mid-way position while opening or closing it, momentarily press the front side or rear side of the switch.

After washing the vehicle or after it rains, wipe away water on the roof prior to opening the sunroof to prevent drops of water from falling into the passenger compartment.

NOTE

Driving with the sunroof fully open can cause an annoying sound to be generated at high speeds. If this occurs, use the sunroof at the initial stop position of 20 cm (8 in) away from the fully opened position.

■ Anti-entrapment function

When the sunroof senses a substantial enough object trapped between its glass and the vehicle's roof during closure, the sunroof will automatically open to 15 cm (6 in) or fully open and stop at that position. The anti-entrapment function may also be activated by a strong shock on the sunroof even when there is nothing trapped.

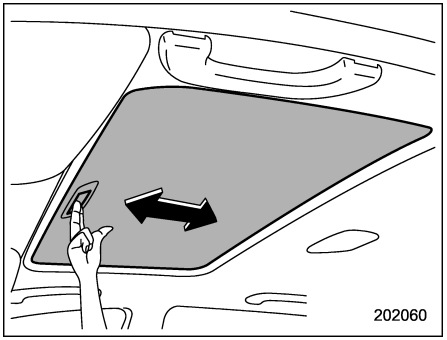
⚠ CAUTION

Never attempt to test this function using fingers, hands or other parts of your body.

NOTE

For the sake of safety, it is recommended that you avoid driving with the sunroof fully opened.

■ Sun shade



The sun shade can be slid forward or backward by hand while the sunroof is closed.

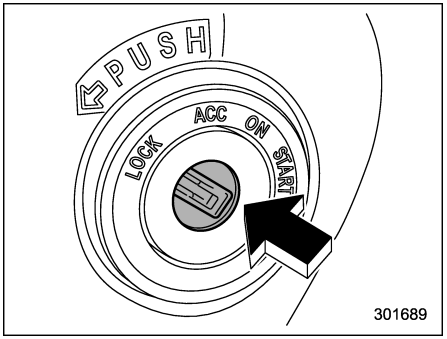
If the sunroof is opened, the sun shade also moves back.

Ignition switch (models without push-button start system) 3-4
LOCK 3-4
ACC 3-5
ON 3-5
START 3-5
Key reminder chime (if equipped) 3-5
Ignition switch light 3-5
Push-button ignition switch (models with push-button start system) 3-6
Safety precautions 3-6
Operating range for push-button start system 3-6
Switch location 3-7
Switching power 3-7
When access key does not operate properly 3-8
Hazard warning flasher 3-8
Meters and gauges 3-9
Combination meter illumination 3-9
Canceling the function for meter/gauge needle movement upon turning on the ignition switch 3-9
Speedometer 3-10
Odometer 3-10
Double trip meter 3-10
Tachometer 3-11
Fuel gauge 3-11
ECO gauge (if equipped) 3-12
Warning and indicator lights 3-13
Initial illumination for system check 3-13
Seatbelt warning light and chime 3-14
Rear seatbelt indicator light and chime (if equipped) 3-15
SRS airbag system warning light 3-16
Front passenger's frontal airbag ON and OFF indicators (if equipped) 3-16
Malfunction indicator light (Check Engine light) 3-17
Coolant temperature low indicator light/Coolant temperature high warning light 3-18
Charge warning light 3-19
Oil pressure warning light 3-19
Engine low oil level warning light 3-19
AT OIL TEMP warning light (CVT models) 3-20
Rear differential oil temperature warning light (if equipped) 3-20
Low tire pressure warning light (if equipped) 3-20
ABS warning light 3-22
Vehicle Dynamics Control warning light/Vehicle Dynamics Control operation indicator light 3-23
Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF indicator light 3-24
Brake system warning light (red) 3-24
Vacuum pump system warning light (turbo petrol engine models) (yellow) 3-25
Low fuel warning light 3-25
Windshield washer fluid warning light 3-25
Hill start assist warning light/Hill start assist OFF indicator light 3-26
Door open warning light 3-26
All-Wheel Drive warning light (CVT models) 3-26
Power steering warning light (models with electric power steering) 3-26

Automatic headlight beam leveler warning light (models with HID headlights) 3-27
Warning chimes and warning light of the keyless access with push-button start system (if equipped) 3-27
Immobilizer indicator light 3-32
SI-DRIVE indicator light (if equipped) 3-32
Shift-up indicator light (MT models without gear shift indicator) 3-33
Select lever/gear position indicator (if equipped) 3-33
Turn signal indicator lights 3-34
High beam indicator light 3-34
Cruise control indicator light (if equipped) 3-34
Cruise control set indicator light (if equipped) 3-34
Headlight indicator light (if equipped) 3-34
Front fog light indicator light (if equipped) 3-34
Rear fog light indicator light (if equipped) 3-34
X mode indicator light (if equipped) 3-34
Hill descent control indicator light (if equipped) 3-34
Fuel filter warning light (diesel engine models) 3-35
Preheating indicator light (diesel engine models) 3-35
Diesel particulate filter warning light (diesel engine models) 3-35
Over-rev warning light (yellow) (MT diesel engine models) 3-36
Auto Start Stop warning light/Auto Start Stop OFF indicator light (yellow) (if equipped) 3-36
Auto Start Stop indicator light (green) (if equipped) 3-37
Information display (if equipped) 3-37
Outside temperature indicator 3-37
Driving information display 3-38
Clock 3-42
Multi function display (if equipped) 3-43
Basic operation 3-44
Welcome screen 3-44
Ending screen 3-45
Self-check screen 3-46
Interruption screen 3-47
Basic screens 3-47
Selection screen 3-56
Date and time settings 3-59
Image quality and volume settings 3-67
Screen settings 3-70
Maintenance settings 3-77
Driving history registration 3-81
Car settings 3-82
Initialize 3-87
Light control switch 3-90
Headlights 3-90
High/low beam change (dimmer) 3-92
Headlight flasher 3-93
Daytime running light system (if equipped) 3-93
Turn signal lever 3-93
One-touch lane changer 3-94
Illumination brightness control 3-94

Headlight beam leveler (if equipped) **3-95**
Automatic headlight beam leveler (models with HID headlights) 3-95
Manual headlight beam leveler (models without HID headlights) 3-95
Fog light switch **3-97**
Front fog light switch (if equipped) 3-97
Rear fog light switch (if equipped) 3-98
Wiper and washer **3-99**
Windshield wiper and washer switches 3-101
Rear window wiper and washer switch 3-104
Headlight washer (if equipped) **3-105**
Mirrors **3-106**
Inside mirror 3-106
Outside mirrors 3-106
Defogger and deicer **3-108**
Tilt/telescopic steering wheel **3-109**
Horn **3-110**

Ignition switch (models without push-button start system)



The ignition switch has four positions: LOCK, ACC, ON and START.

⚠ WARNING

- **Never turn the ignition switch to "LOCK" while the vehicle is being driven or towed because that will lock the steering wheel, preventing steering control. And when the engine is turned off, it takes a much greater effort than usual to steer.**
- **Before leaving the vehicle, always remove the key from the ignition switch for safety and never allow an unattended child to remain in the vehicle. Failure to follow this procedure could result in injury to a child or others. Children could operate the power windows or other controls or even make the vehicle move.**

⚠ CAUTION

Do not attach a large key holder or key case to either key. If it bangs against your knees while you are driving, it could turn the ignition switch from the "ON" position to the "ACC" or "LOCK" position, thereby stopping the engine.

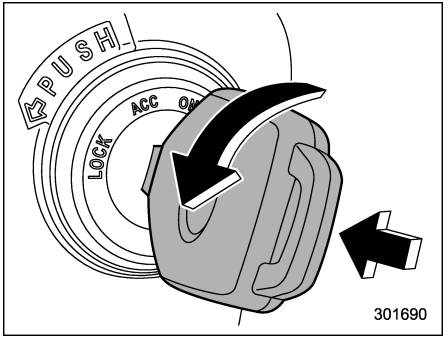
NOTE

• Keep the ignition switch in the "LOCK" position when the engine is not running.
• Using electrical accessories for a long time with the ignition switch in the "ON" or "ACC" position can cause the battery to go dead.
• If the ignition switch will not move from the "LOCK" position to the "ACC" position, turn the steering wheel slightly to the left and right as you turn the ignition switch.

■ LOCK

The key can only be inserted or removed in this position. The ignition switch will lock the steering wheel when you remove the key.

If turning the key is difficult, turn the steering wheel slightly to the right and left as you turn the key.



The key can be turned from the "ACC" to "LOCK" position only when the select lever is in the "P" position (CVT models) and the key is pushed in while turning it (all models).

■ ACC

In this position the electrical accessories (audio, accessory power outlet, etc.) can be used.

■ ON

This is the normal operating position after the engine is started.

■ START

The engine is started in this position. The starter cranks the engine to start it. When the key is released (after the engine has started), the key automatically returns to the “ON” position.

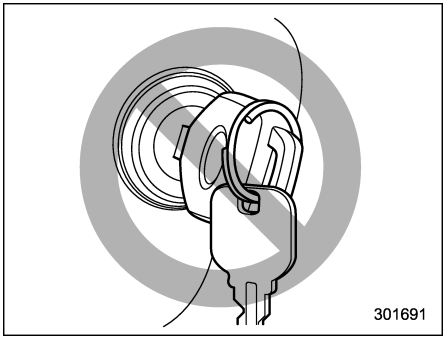
⚠ CAUTION

Do not turn the ignition switch to the “START” position while the engine is running.

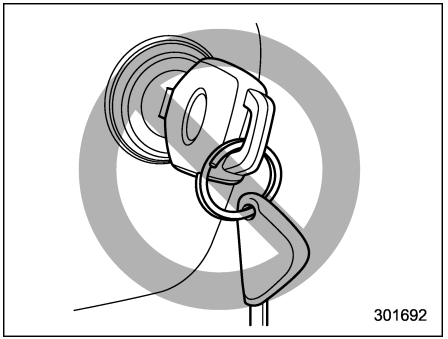
As your vehicle is equipped with an immobilizer system, if you fail to start the engine with a registered key, pull out the key once, (at this time, the immobilizer indicator light blinks) and then insert the key in the ignition switch and turn it to the “START” position and again try to start your engine.

NOTE

The engine may not start in the following cases:



- **The key grip is touching another key or a metallic key holder.**



- **The key is near another key that contains an immobilizer transponder.**
- **The key is near or touching another transmitter.**

■ Key reminder chime (if equipped)

The reminder chime sounds when the driver’s door is opened and the ignition switch is in the “LOCK” or “ACC” position.

The chime stops under the following conditions.

- when the ignition switch is turned to the “ON” position
- when the key is removed from the ignition switch
- when the driver’s door is closed

■ Ignition switch light

For easy access to the ignition switch in the dark, the ignition switch light illuminates when the driver’s door is opened or when the driver’s door is unlocked using the remote keyless entry transmitter.

The light remains illuminated for several tens of seconds and then gradually turns off under the following conditions.

- when the driver’s door is closed
- when the doors are unlocked using the remote keyless entry transmitter

– CONTINUED –

The light turns off immediately under the following conditions.

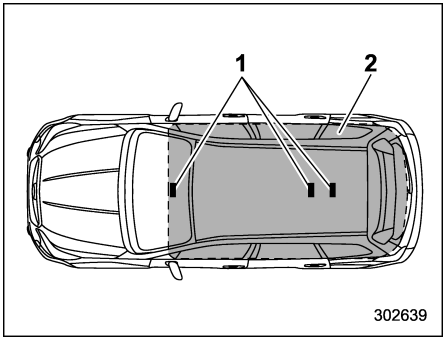
- when the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position
- when all doors and the rear gate are locked using the remote keyless entry transmitter

Push-button ignition switch (models with push-button start system)

■ Safety precautions

Refer to "Safety precautions" ☞2-8.

■ Operating range for push-button start system



1) Antenna
2) Operating range

NOTE

• If the access key is not detected within the operating range of the antennas inside the vehicle, the push-button ignition switch and the engine start cannot be operated.

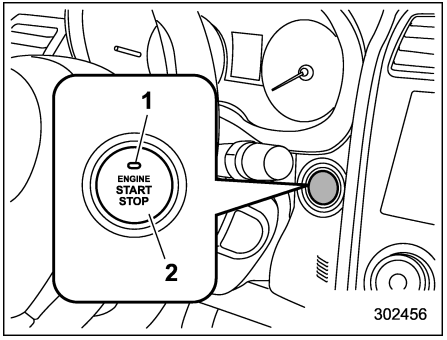
• Even when the access key is outside the vehicle, if it is placed too close to the glass, it may be possible to switch the power or to start the engine.

• Do not leave the access key in the following places. It may become impossible to operate the push-button ignition switch and the engine start.

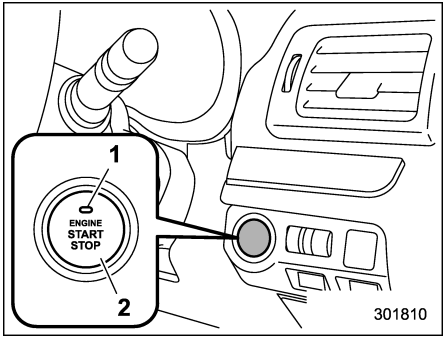
- **– On the instrument panel**
- **– On the floor**
- **– Inside the glove box**
- **– Inside the door trim pocket**
- **– On the rear seat**
- **– At the corner of the cargo area**

• When operating the push-button ignition switch or starting the engine, if the access key battery is discharged, perform the procedure described in "Access key – if access key does not operate properly" ☞9-17. In such a case, replace the battery immediately. Refer to "Replacing battery of access key" ☞11-57.

■ Switch location



Left-hand drive models



Right-hand drive models

1) Operation indicator
2) Push-button ignition switch

■ Switching power

The power is switched every time the push-button ignition switch is pressed.

1. Carry the access key, and sit in the driver's seat.
2. Shift the shift lever in neutral (MT models) or the select lever in the "P" position (CVT models).
3. Press the push-button ignition switch without depressing the clutch pedal (MT models) or the brake pedal (CVT models). Every time the button is pressed, the power is switched in the sequence of "OFF", "ACC", "ON" and "OFF". The operation indicator on the push-button ignition switch illuminates or turns off as shown in the following chart.

Power status	Indicator color	Operation
OFF	Turned off	Power is turned off.
ACC	Orange	The following systems can be used: audio and accessory power outlet.
ON	Orange (while engine is stopped)	All electrical systems can be used.
	Turned off (while engine is running)	

⚠ CAUTION

- **When the push-button ignition switch is left in "ON" or "ACC" for a long time, it may result in vehicle battery discharge.**
- **Do not spill drinks or other liquids on the push-button ignition switch. It may cause a malfunction.**
- **Do not touch the push-button ignition switch with a hand soiled with oil or other contaminants. It may cause a malfunction.**
- **If the push-button ignition switch does not operate smoothly, stop the operation. We recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer immediately.**
- **If the push-button ignition switch does not illuminate even when the instrument panel illumination is turned on, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected at a SUBARU dealer.**
- **If the vehicle was left in the hot sun for a long time, the surface of the push-button ignition switch may get hot. Be careful not to burn yourself.**

– CONTINUED –

NOTE

• In CVT models, the push-button ignition switch cannot be switched to "OFF" when the select lever is in a position other than "P".
• When operating the push-button ignition switch, firmly press it all the way.
• If the push-button ignition switch is pressed quickly, the power may not turn on or off.
• If the indicator light on the push-button ignition switch flashes in green when the push-button ignition switch is pressed, the steering is locked. When this occurs, press the push-button ignition switch while turning the steering wheel left and right.

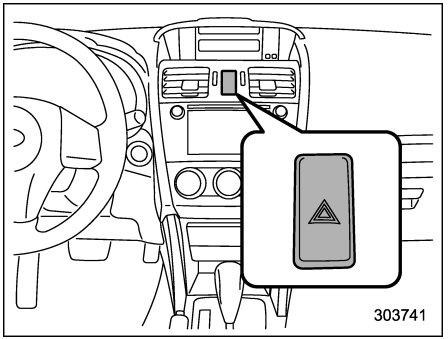
▼ Battery drainage prevention function

When the push-button ignition switch is left in "ON" or "ACC" for approximately 1 hour, the push-button ignition switch will be automatically switched to "OFF" to prevent the battery from going dead. (In CVT models, this function is activated when the select lever is in the "P" position.)

■ When access key does not operate properly

Refer to "Access key – if access key does not operate properly" ☞9-17.

Hazard warning flasher



The hazard warning flasher is used to warn other drivers when you have to park your vehicle under emergency conditions. The hazard warning flasher works with the ignition switch in any position.

To turn on the hazard warning flasher, press the hazard warning button on the instrument panel. To turn off the flasher, press the button again.

NOTE

When the hazard warning flasher is on, the turn signals do not work.

Meters and gauges

NOTE

Liquid-crystal displays are used in some of the meters and gauges on the combination meter. You will find their indications hard to see if you wear polarized glasses.

■ Combination meter illumination

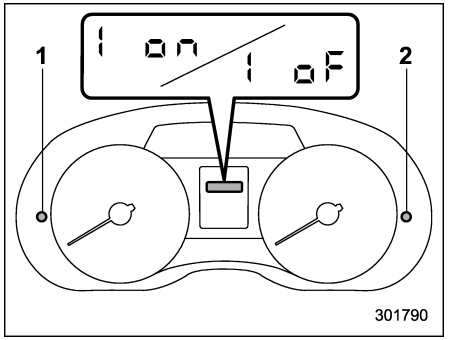
When the ignition switch is turned to the “ON” position, the various parts of the combination meter are illuminated in the following sequence.

1. Warning lights, indicator lights, meter needles, gauge needles and liquid crystal display illuminate.
2. Meter and gauge indications each show MAX position.
3. Meter and gauge indications each show MIN position.
4. Regular illumination (for driving) begins.

■ Canceling the function for meter/gauge needle movement upon turning on the ignition switch

It is possible to activate or deactivate the movement of the meter needles and gauge needles that takes place when the ignition switch is turned to the “ON” position. To change the setting, perform the following procedure.

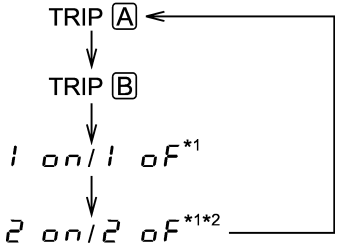
1. Turn the ignition switch to the “LOCK”/“OFF” or “ACC” position.



1) Trip knob (left-hand drive models)
2) Trip knob (right-hand drive models)

2. Press the trip knob to show “I on” or “I oF” on the trip meter display.

The display can be switched as shown in the following sequence by pressing the trip knob.



*1: They cannot be displayed when the ignition switch is in the “ON” position.
*2: Only for MT models without gear shift indicator

To change the current setting, press the trip knob for at least 2 seconds.

I on : Activated
I oF : Deactivated

NOTE

• Your vehicle’s initial movement setting of the meter/gauge needles has been set for activation “I on” at the time of shipment from the factory.
• It is not possible to change the movement setting of the meter/gauge needles when the ignition switch is in the “ON” position. Change the setting

– CONTINUED –

when the ignition switch is in the "LOCK"/"OFF" or "ACC" position.

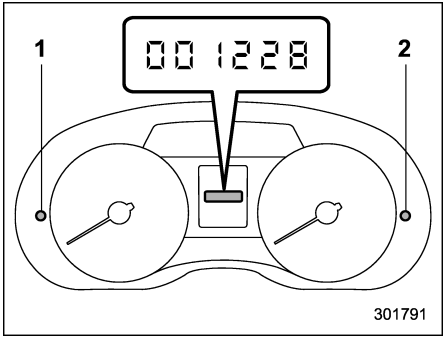
■ Speedometer

The speedometer shows the vehicle speed.

▼ Speed warning chime (if equipped)

When the speed is over approximately 120 km/h (75 mph), a chime sounds.

■ Odometer



1) Trip knob (left-hand drive models)
2) Trip knob (right-hand drive models)

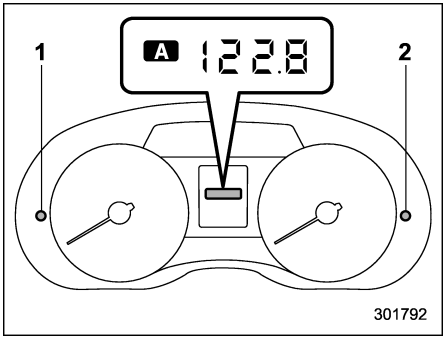
This meter displays the odometer when the ignition switch is in the "ON" position.

The odometer shows the total distance that the vehicle has been driven.

If you press the trip knob when the ignition switch is in the "LOCK"/"OFF" or "ACC" position, the odometer/trip meter will light up. If you do not press the trip knob within 10 seconds of illumination of the odometer/trip meter, the odometer/trip meter will turn off.

Also, if you open and close the driver's door within 10 seconds of illumination of the odometer/trip meter, the odometer/trip meter will turn off.

■ Double trip meter



1) Trip knob (left-hand drive models)
2) Trip knob (right-hand drive models)

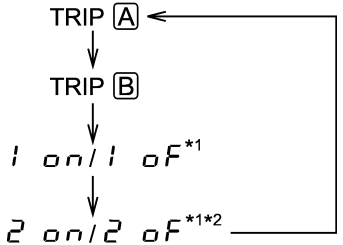
This meter displays the two trip meters when the ignition switch is in the "ON" position.

The trip meter shows the distance that the vehicle has been driven since you last set it to zero.

If you press the trip knob when the ignition switch is in the "LOCK"/"OFF" or "ACC" position, the odometer/trip meter will light up. It is possible to switch between the A trip meter and B trip meter indications while the odometer/trip meter is lit up. If you do not press the trip knob within 10 seconds of illumination of the odometer/trip meter, the odometer/trip meter will turn off.

Also, if you open and close the driver's door within 10 seconds of illumination of the odometer/trip meter, the odometer/trip meter will turn off.

The display can be switched as shown in the following sequence by pressing the trip knob.



*1: They cannot be displayed when the

ignition switch is in the “ON” position.

*2: Only for MT models without gear shift indicator

To set the trip meter to zero, select the A trip or B trip meter by pressing the knob and keep the knob pressed for more than 2 seconds.

⚠ CAUTION

To ensure safety, do not attempt to change the function of the indicator during driving, as an accident could result.

NOTE

If the connection between the combination meter and battery is broken for any reason such as vehicle maintenance or fuse replacement, the data recorded on the trip meter will be lost.

■ Tachometer

The tachometer shows the engine speed in thousands of revolutions per minute.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not operate the engine with the pointer of the tachometer in the red zone. In this range, fuel injection will be cut by the engine control module to protect the engine from overrevving. The engine will resume running normally after the engine speed is reduced below the red zone.

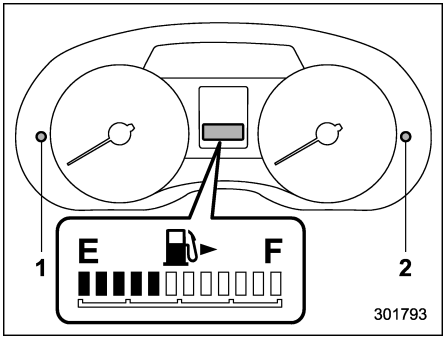
NOTE

To protect the engine/transmission while the select lever is in the “P” or “N” position (CVT models) or the shift lever is in the neutral position (MT models), the engine is controlled so that the engine speed may not become too high even if the accelerator pedal is depressed hard.

■ Fuel gauge

⚠ CAUTION

For diesel engine models, fill the tank with diesel fuel. For details about diesel fuel, refer to “Fuel requirements for diesel engine models” ☞7-3.



Fuel gauge

1) Trip knob (left-hand drive models)
2) Trip knob (right-hand drive models)

The fuel gauge is displayed when the ignition is in the “ON” position, and it shows the approximate amount of fuel remaining in the tank.

The gauge indication may change slightly during braking, turning or acceleration due to fuel level movement in the tank.

If you press the trip knob while the ignition switch is in the “LOCK”/“OFF” or “ACC” position, the fuel gauge will light up and indicate the amount of fuel remaining in the tank. If, while the fuel gauge is indicating the amount of fuel remaining in the tank, you (a) do not press the trip knob for 10 seconds or (b) open and close the

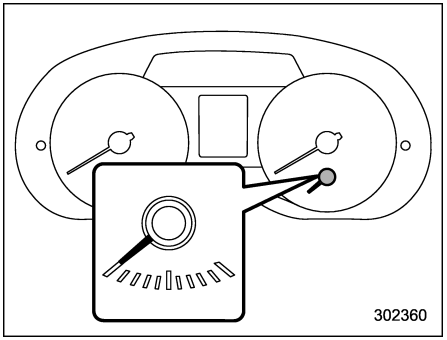
– CONTINUED –

driver's door, the fuel gauge indication will turn off.

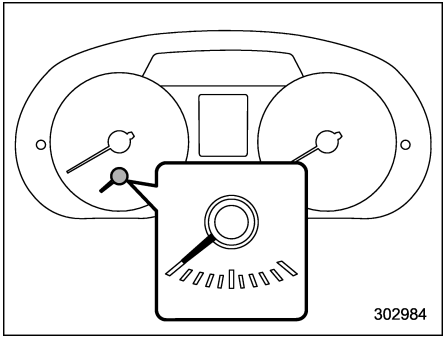
NOTE

You will see the "⛽▶" sign in the fuel gauge. This indicates that the fuel filler door (lid) is located on the right side of the vehicle.

■ ECO gauge (if equipped)



Left-hand drive models



Right-hand drive models

The unit displayed varies depending on the models.

The ECO gauge shows the difference between the current rate of fuel consumption and the average rate of fuel consumption since the trip meter was last reset.

If the needle of the gauge moves towards the right side, this indicates better fuel efficiency.

NOTE

- **The ECO gauge shows only an approximate indication of fuel efficiency.**
- **After resetting the trip meter, the average rate of fuel consumption is not shown until driving 1 km (0.6 mile). Before that time, the ECO gauge does not operate.**

Warning and indicator lights

■ Initial illumination for system check

Several of the warning and indicator lights illuminate when the ignition switch is initially turned to the “ON” position. This permits checking the operation of the bulbs.

Apply the parking brake and turn the ignition switch to the “ON” position. For the system check, the following lights illuminate and then turn off after several seconds or after the engine has started.

: Seatbelt warning light
(The driver’s seatbelt warning light and the front passenger’s seatbelt warning light turn off only when each seatbelt is fastened.)

: SRS airbag system warning light

: Rear seatbelt indicator light (if equipped)

: Front passenger’s frontal airbag ON indicator light (if equipped)

: Front passenger’s frontal airbag OFF indicator light (if equipped)

: Malfunction indicator light
(Check Engine light)

: Coolant temperature high warning light

: Charge warning light

: Oil pressure warning light

: Engine low oil level warning light

: Windshield washer fluid warning light

AT OIL TEMP: AT OIL TEMP warning light
(CVT models)

R.DIFF TEMP: Rear differential oil temperature warning light (if equipped)

(ABS): ABS warning light

: Brake system warning light (red)

: Vacuum pump system warning light (yellow)

: Low fuel warning light

: Low tire pressure warning light
(if equipped)

: Hill start assist warning light/Hill start assist OFF indicator light

: Door open warning light

AWD: AWD warning light (CVT models)

: Power steering warning light (models with electric power steering)

: Vehicle Dynamics Control warning light/Vehicle Dynamics Control operation indicator light

OFF: Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF indicator light

: Shift-up indicator light (MT models without gear shift indicator)

: Cruise control indicator light
(if equipped)

SET: Cruise control set indicator light
(if equipped)

: Automatic headlight beam leveler warning light (models with HID headlights)

: Access key warning light
(if equipped)

: X mode indicator light (if equipped)

: Hill descent control indicator light (if equipped)

: Fuel filter warning light
(diesel engine models)

: Preheating indicator light
(diesel engine models)

: Diesel particulate filter warning light
(diesel engine models)

– CONTINUED –

▲: Over-rev warning light (yellow) (MT diesel engine models)

Ⓐ: Auto Start Stop warning light/Auto Start Stop OFF indicator light (yellow) (if equipped)

Ⓐ: Auto Start Stop indicator light (green) (if equipped)

If any lights fail to illuminate, it indicates a burned-out bulb or a malfunction of the corresponding system.

We recommend that you consult your authorized SUBARU dealer for repair.

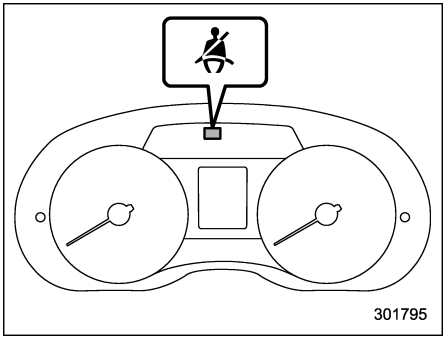
■ Seatbelt warning light and chime

NOTE

If your seatbelt warning device does not operate as described below, it may be malfunctioning. We recommend that you have the device inspected and, if necessary, repaired by the nearest SUBARU dealer.

▼ Seatbelt warning for driver's seat

Your vehicle is equipped with a seatbelt warning device for the driver's seat.



Driver's warning light

This device causes the seatbelt warning light on the combination meter to illuminate when the ignition switch is turned to "ON" to remind the driver to wear the seatbelt.

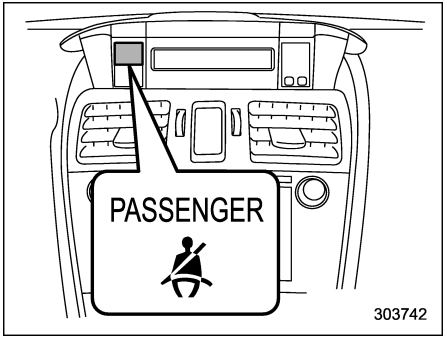
If the vehicle is driven at a speed no higher than approximately 20 km/h (12.5 mph) with the driver's seatbelt not fastened, the warning light will illuminate continuously.

If the vehicle subsequently reaches a speed of approximately 20 km/h (12.5 mph) with the driver's seatbelt not fastened, the warning light will start a repeated cycle consisting of 5 seconds of flashing followed by 1 second of steady illumination. At the same time, a buzzer will start a repeated cycle consisting of sounding for 5 seconds followed by a 1-second pause. If the seatbelt is fastened at this time, the warning light will turn off and the buzzer will stop sounding immediately.

This condition will continue for approximately 108 seconds. If the driver's seatbelt is still not fastened when the 108-second period has elapsed, the warning light will stop flashing and the buzzer will stop sounding. The warning light, however, will remain illuminated continuously unless the seatbelt is fastened.

▼ **Seatbelt warning for front passenger's seat (if equipped)**

Your vehicle is equipped with a seatbelt warning device for the front passenger's seat.



Front passenger's warning light

With the ignition switch turned to the "ON" position, this device reminds the front passenger to fasten his/her seatbelt by illuminating a warning light as shown in the illustration.

If the vehicle is driven at a speed no higher than approximately 20 km/h (12.5 mph) with the front passenger's seatbelt not fastened, the warning light(s) corresponding to the unfastened seatbelt(s) will illuminate continuously.

If the vehicle subsequently reaches a speed of approximately 20 km/h (12.5 mph) with the front passenger's seatbelt not fastened, the warning light(s) will start a repeated cycle consisting of 5 seconds of flashing followed by 1 second of steady illumination.

At the same time, a buzzer will start a repeated cycle consisting of sounding for 5 seconds followed by a 1-second pause. If either the driver's or front passenger's unfastened seatbelts is fastened at this time, the warning light corresponding to that seatbelt will immediately turn off but the buzzer will continue operating unless the remaining seatbelt is fastened.

NOTE

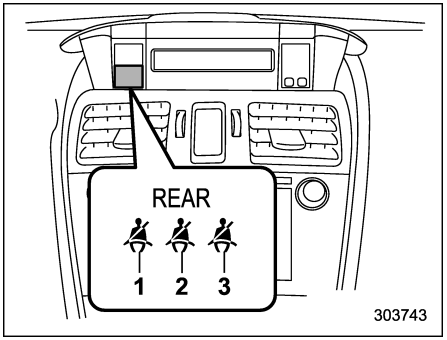
• If the driver's and front passenger's seatbelts are not fastened simultaneously (if one seatbelt is fastened significantly earlier or later than the other), the buzzer may sound longer (10 seconds maximum).

• The occupant detection system of the front passenger's seat detects if the seat is occupied by a passenger. However, if there is an object on the seat, the seatbelt warning system may be activated even the seat is not occupied.

• If you use a cushion on the front passenger's seat, there is the possibility that the occupant detection system cannot detect the passenger.

If the driver's seatbelt and/or the front passenger's seatbelt is still not fastened when the 108-second period has elapsed, the warning light(s) will stop flashing and the buzzer will stop sounding. The warning light(s), however, will remain illuminated continuously unless the corresponding seatbelt(s) is fastened.

■ Rear seatbelt indicator light and chime (if equipped)



1) Rear seat (left position)
2) Rear seat (center position)
3) Rear seat (right position)

This indicator light is located as shown in the illustration. It illuminates to show only the seating positions in which seatbelts have not been fastened.

– CONTINUED –

■ SRS airbag system warning light

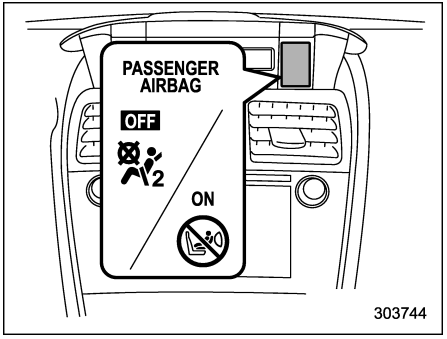
⚠ WARNING

If the warning light exhibits any of the following conditions, there may be a malfunction in the seatbelt pretensioners and/or SRS airbag system. We recommend that you have the system checked immediately by your nearest SUBARU dealer. Unless checked and properly repaired, the seatbelt pretensioners and/or SRS airbags will operate improperly (e.g. SRS airbags may inflate in a very minor collision or not inflate in a severe collision), which may increase the risk of injury.

- **Flashing or flickering of the warning light**
- **No illumination of the warning light when the ignition switch is first turned to the "ON" position**
- **Continuous illumination of the warning light**
- **Illumination of the warning light while driving**

For more details about the SRS airbag system warning light, refer to "SRS airbag system monitor" ☞1-60.

■ Front passenger's frontal airbag ON and OFF indicators (if equipped)



: Front passenger's frontal airbag ON indicator
: Front passenger's frontal airbag OFF indicator

The front passenger's frontal airbag ON and OFF indicators show you the status of the front passenger's SRS frontal airbag.

When the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position, both the ON and OFF indicators illuminate for 6 seconds during which time the system is checked. Following the system check, both indicators turn off for 2 seconds. After that, one of the indicators illuminates depending on the status of the front passenger's SRS frontal airbag determined by the frontal airbag system monitoring.

If the front passenger's SRS frontal airbag is activated, the passenger's frontal airbag ON indicator will illuminate while the OFF indicator will remain off.

If the front passenger's SRS frontal airbag is deactivated, the passenger's frontal airbag ON indicator will remain off while the OFF indicator will illuminate.

With the ignition switch turned to the "ON" position, if both the ON and OFF indicators remain illuminated or off simultaneously even after the system check period, the system is malfunctioning. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer immediately for an inspection.

■ Malfunction indicator light (Check Engine light)

▼ Models equipped with OBD system

Vehicles sold in Europe are equipped with an enhanced on-board diagnostics system called OBD that monitors the performance of the vehicle's emission control system.

Vehicles sold in some countries outside Europe may be equipped with the OBD system. We recommend that you ask your SUBARU dealer to ascertain whether your vehicle has the OBD system.

The OBD system helps to protect the environment by ensuring that emissions are at acceptable levels for the life of the vehicle.

If the malfunction indicator light illuminates steadily or blinks while the engine is running, it may indicate that there is a problem or potential problem somewhere in the emission control system and that service is required. The OBD system also assists your service technician in properly diagnosing any malfunction.

⚠ CAUTION

If the malfunction indicator light illuminates while you are driving, we recommend that you have your vehicle checked/repaired by your SUBARU dealer as soon as possible. Continued vehicle operation without having the emission control system checked and repaired as necessary could cause serious damage, which may not be covered by your vehicle's warranty.

▽ If the light illuminates steadily

If the light illuminates steadily while driving or does not turn off after the engine starts, an emission control system malfunction has been detected.

We recommend that you have your vehicle checked by an authorized SUBARU dealer immediately.

▽ If the light is blinking

If the light is blinking while driving, an engine misfire condition has been detected which may damage the emission control system.

To prevent serious damage to the emission control system, you should do the following:

- Reduce vehicle speed.
- Avoid hard acceleration.
- Avoid steep uphill grades.
- Reduce the amount of cargo, if possible.
- Stop towing a trailer as soon as possible.

The malfunction indicator light may stop blinking and illuminate steadily after several driving trips. We recommend that you have your vehicle checked by an authorized SUBARU dealer immediately.

▼ Models NOT equipped with OBD system

If the malfunction indicator light illuminates when the engine is running, it may indicate that there is a problem somewhere in the engine control system.

If the light illuminates while driving or does not turn off after the engine starts, we recommend that you contact your nearest SUBARU dealer immediately.

– CONTINUED –

■ Coolant temperature low indicator light/Coolant temperature high warning light

⚠ CAUTION

- **After turning the ignition switch to the "ON" position, if this indicator light/warning light behaves under any of the following conditions, the electrical system may be malfunctioning. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer immediately for an inspection.**
  - **– It remains blinking in RED.**
  - **– It remains illuminated in RED for more than 2 seconds.**
  - **– It remains blinking in RED and BLUE alternately.**
- **While driving, if this indicator light/warning light behaves under any of the following conditions, take the specified appropriate measure listed below.**
  - **– Blinking or illuminated in RED:**
    Safely stop the vehicle as soon as possible, and refer to the emergency steps for the engine overheating. Afterward, we recommend that you have the system checked by your nearest SUBARU dealer. Refer to "Engine overheating" ☞9-13.
  - **– Blinking in RED and BLUE alternately:**
    The electrical system may be malfunctioning. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer for an inspection.

This coolant temperature low indicator light/coolant temperature high warning light has the following three functions.

- Illumination in **BLUE** indicates insufficient warming up of the engine
- Blinking in **RED** indicates that the engine is close to overheating
- Illumination in **RED** indicates overheating condition of the engine

For the system check, this indicator light/warning light illuminates in **RED** for approximately 2 seconds when the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position. After that, this indicator light/warning light changes to **BLUE** and maintains illumination in **BLUE**. This **BLUE** illuminated light turns off when the engine is warmed up sufficiently.

If the engine coolant temperature increases over the specified range, the indicator light/warning light blinks in **RED**. At this time, the engine is close to overheating.

If the engine coolant temperature increases further, the indicator light/warning light illuminates in **RED** continuously. At this time, the engine may be overheating.

When the indicator light/warning light blinks in **RED** or illuminates in **RED**, safely stop the vehicle as soon as possible, and refer to the emergency steps for the engine overheating. Refer to "Engine overheating" ☞9-13. Afterward, we recommend that you have the system checked by your nearest SUBARU dealer.

Also, if the indicator light/warning light often blinks in **RED**, the electrical system may be malfunctioning. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer for an inspection.

NOTE

If the engine is restarted after a certain driving condition, this indicator light/warning light may illuminate in RED. However, this is not a malfunction if the indicator light/warning light turns off

after a short time.

■ Charge warning light

If this light illuminates when the engine is running, it may indicate that the charging system is not working properly.

If the light illuminates while driving or does not turn off after the engine starts, stop the engine at the first safe opportunity and check the alternator belt. If the belt is loose, broken or if the belt is in good condition but the light remains illuminated, we recommend that you contact your nearest SUBARU dealer immediately.

■ Oil pressure warning light

If this light illuminates when the engine is running, it may indicate that the engine oil pressure is low and the lubricating system is not working properly.

If the light illuminates while driving or does not turn off after the engine starts, stop the engine at the first safe opportunity and check the engine oil level. If the oil level is low, add oil immediately. If the engine oil is at the proper level but the light remains illuminated, we recommend that you contact your nearest SUBARU dealer immediately.

For details about checking the oil level or adding the engine oil, refer to “Engine oil” ☞11-15.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not operate the engine with the oil pressure warning light on. This may cause serious engine damage.

■ Engine low oil level warning light

This light illuminates when the engine oil level decreases to the lower limit.

If the light illuminates while driving, park the vehicle in a safe and level location, and then check the engine oil level. When the engine oil level is not within the normal range, refill with engine oil as soon as possible. Refer to “Engine oil” ☞11-15.

If the light does not turn off after refilling the engine oil, or the light illuminates even though the engine oil level is within the normal range, we recommend that you have the vehicle checked by a SUBARU dealer.

NOTE

For models with Auto Start Stop system:

- **The engine low oil level warning light will not turn off immediately even if you replace or add engine oil. It will turn off after the vehicle starts to move. Depending on the driving conditions and environment where the vehicle is driven, it may take a period of approximately 10 minutes for the light to turn off. If the light has still not turned off after 15 minutes have elapsed, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.**
- **The engine low oil level warning light may illuminate temporarily in the following conditions because a low oil level may be detected as a result of significant oil movement in the engine.**
  - **– when the vehicle is considerably inclined on an uphill or steep slope**
  - **– when the vehicle has continuously accelerated and decelerated**
  - **– when the vehicle is continuously turned**
  - **– when the vehicle is driven on a road that alternates continuously between uphill and downhill**

– CONTINUED –

For models without Auto Start Stop system:

- **The engine low oil level warning light turns off when the ignition switch is turned to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position. However, after the next time you turn on the engine, if the engine oil level has decreased to the lower limit, the warning light illuminates frequently while the engine is running.**
- **When the vehicle is considerably inclined on an uphill or steep slope, the warning light may illuminate temporarily due to the movement of engine oil in the engine.**

■ AT OIL TEMP warning light (CVT models)

AT OIL TEMP

If this light illuminates when the engine is running, it may indicate that the transmission fluid temperature is too hot.

If the light illuminates while driving, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe location and let the engine idle until the warning light turns off.

▼ Transmission control system warning

If the "AT OIL TEMP" warning light flashes after the engine has started, it may indicate that the transmission control system is not working properly. We recommend that you contact your nearest SUBARU dealer for service immediately.

■ Rear differential oil temperature warning light (if equipped)

R.DIFF TEMP

⚠ CAUTION

Reduce the vehicle speed and park the vehicle in a safe location as soon as possible if the R.DIFF TEMP warning light illuminates. Sustained driving with this light on can cause the rear differential and other parts of the powertrain to be damaged.

If this light illuminates when the engine is running, it may indicate that the rear differential oil temperature is too hot.

If the light illuminates while driving, reduce vehicle speed and stop the vehicle in the nearest safe location. Park the vehicle for several minutes. After the light turns off, you can start driving.

If the light does not turn off, we recommend that you contact the nearest SUBARU dealer for service.

NOTE

- **If the tire pressures are not correct and/or the tires are not all the same size and brand, the rear differential will be heavily loaded when the vehicle is driven, resulting in an abnormally high oil temperature.**
- **The rear differential oil will deteriorate if its temperature increases enough for the rear differential oil temperature warning light to illuminate. It is advisable to have the rear differential oil replaced as soon as possible.**

■ Low tire pressure warning light (if equipped)

When the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position, the low tire pressure warning light will illuminate for approximately 2 seconds to check that the tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) is functioning properly. If the system functions normally and the tire pressure of all four wheels is appropriate for the selected TPMS mode, the warning light will turn off. The TPMS mode should be changed according to the specified pressure shown on the tire inflation pressure label. For how to change a mode and information about the mode to be selected, refer to "Tire pressure mon-

itoring system (TPMS)" ☞11-34.

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly underinflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly underinflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

Should the warning light illuminate steadily after blinking for approximately one minute, we recommend that you have the system inspected by your nearest SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.

⚠ WARNING

If this light does not illuminate briefly after the ignition switch is turned ON or the light illuminates steadily after blinking for approximately one minute, we recommend that you have your Tire Pressure Monitoring System checked at a SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.

If this light illuminates while driving, never brake suddenly and keep driving straight ahead while gradually reducing speed. Then slowly pull off the road to a safe place. Otherwise an accident involving serious vehicle damage and serious personal injury could occur.

If this light still illuminates while driving after adjusting the tire pressure, a tire may have significant damage and a fast leak that causes the tire to lose air rapidly. If you have a flat tire, replace it with a spare tire as soon as possible.

When a spare tire is mounted or a wheel rim is replaced without the original pressure sensor/transmitter being transferred, the Low tire pressure warning light will illuminate steadily after blinking for approxi-

– CONTINUED –

mately one minute. This indicates the TPMS is unable to monitor all four road wheels. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer as soon as possible for tire and sensor replacement and/or system resetting.

If the light illuminates steadily after blinking for approximately one minute, we recommend that you promptly contact a SUBARU dealer to have the system inspected.

⚠ CAUTION

The tire pressure monitoring system is NOT a substitute for manually checking tire pressure. The tire pressure should be checked periodically (at least monthly) using a tire gauge. Change the TPMS mode according to the specified pressure shown on the tire inflation pressure label. After any change to tire pressure(s), the tire pressure monitoring system will not re-check tire inflation pressures until the vehicle is first driven more than 40 km/h (25 mph). After adjusting the tire pressures, increase the vehicle speed to at least 40 km/h (25 mph) to start the TPMS re-checking of the tire inflation pressures. If the tire pressures are now above the severe low pressure threshold, the low tire pressure warning light should turn off a few minutes later. Therefore, be sure to install the specified size for the front and rear tires.

■ ABS warning light

⚠ CAUTION

- **If any of the following conditions occur, we recommend that you have the ABS system repaired at the first available opportunity by your SUBARU dealer.**
  - **The warning light does not illuminate when the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position.**
  - **The warning light illuminates when the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position, but it does not turn off even when the vehicle speed exceeds approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).**
  - **The warning light illuminates during driving.**
- **When the warning light is on (and the brake system warning light is off), the ABS function shuts down. However, the conventional brake system continues to operate normally.**

The ABS warning light illuminates together with the brake system warning light if the EBD system malfunctions. For further details of the EBD system malfunction warning, refer to "Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD) system warning" ☞3-24.

NOTE

If the warning light behavior is as shown in the following, the ABS system may be considered normal.

- **The warning light illuminates when the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position and turns off approximately 2 seconds after the engine has started.**
- **The warning light illuminates right after the engine is started but turns off immediately, remaining off.**
- **The warning light remains illuminated after the engine has been started, but it turns off when the vehicle speed reaches approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).**
- **The warning light illuminates during**

driving, but it turns off immediately and remains off.

When driving with an insufficient battery voltage such as when the engine is jump started, the ABS warning light may illuminate. This is due to the low battery voltage and does not indicate a malfunction. When the battery becomes fully charged, the light will turn off.

■ Vehicle Dynamics Control warning light/ Vehicle Dynamics Control operation indicator light

▼ Vehicle Dynamics Control warning light

⚠ CAUTION

The Vehicle Dynamics Control system provides its ABS control through the electrical circuit of the ABS system. Accordingly, if the ABS is inoperative, the Vehicle Dynamics Control system becomes unable to provide ABS control. As a result, the Vehicle Dynamics Control system becomes inoperative, causing the warning light to illuminate. Although both the Vehicle Dynamics Control and ABS systems are inoperative in this case, the ordinary functions of the brake system are still available. You will be safe while driving with this condition, but drive carefully and we recommend that you have your vehicle checked at a SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.

NOTE

• If the electrical circuit of the Vehicle Dynamics Control system itself malfunctions, the warning light only illuminates. At this time, the ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) remains fully operational.

• The warning light illuminates when the electronic control system of the ABS/Vehicle Dynamics Control system malfunctions.

The Vehicle Dynamics Control system is probably inoperative under any of the following conditions. We recommend that you have your vehicle checked at a SUBARU dealer immediately.

• The warning light does not illuminate when the ignition switch is turned to the “ON” position.

• The warning light illuminates while the vehicle is running.

NOTE

If the warning light behavior is as described in the following examples, the Vehicle Dynamics Control system may be considered normal.

• The warning light illuminates when the ignition switch is turned to the “ON” position and turns off approximately 2 seconds after the engine has started.

• The warning light illuminates right after the engine is started but turns off immediately and remains off.

• The warning light illuminates after the engine has started and turns off while the vehicle is subsequently being driven.

• The warning light illuminates during driving, but turns off immediately and remains off.

• The warning light illuminates when the engine has stalled and continues to illuminate after the engine has been restarted. However, it will turn off once the vehicle starts moving.

▼ Vehicle Dynamics Control operation indicator light

The indicator light flashes during activation of the skid suppression function and during activation of the traction control function.

– CONTINUED –

NOTE

- **The light may remain illuminated for a short period of time after the engine has been started, especially in cold weather. This does not indicate the existence of a problem. The light should turn off as soon as the engine has warmed up.**
- **The indicator light illuminates when the engine has developed a malfunction and the malfunction indicator light/ CHECK ENGINE warning light is on.**

The Vehicle Dynamics Control system is probably malfunctioning under the following condition. We recommend that you have your vehicle checked at a SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.

- The light does not turn off even after the lapse of several minutes (the engine has warmed up) after the engine has started.

■ Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF indicator light

The light illuminates when the Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF switch is pressed to deactivate the Vehicle Dynamics Control system.

The Vehicle Dynamics Control system is probably malfunctioning under any of the following conditions. We recommend that you have your vehicle checked at a SUBARU dealer immediately.

- The light does not illuminate when the ignition switch is turned to the “ON” position.
- The light does not turn off even after a period of approximately 2 seconds after the ignition switch has been turned to the “ON” position.

■ Brake system warning light (red)

⚠ WARNING

- **Driving with the brake system warning light on is dangerous. This indicates your brake system may not be working properly. If the light remains illuminated, we recommend that you have the brakes inspected by a SUBARU dealer immediately.**
- **If at all in doubt about whether the brakes are operating properly, do not drive the vehicle. We recommend that you have your vehicle towed to the nearest SUBARU dealer for repair.**

This light has the following functions.

▼ Parking brake warning

The light illuminates with the parking brake applied while the ignition switch is in the “ON” position. It turns off when the parking brake is fully released.

▼ Brake fluid level warning

The light illuminates when the brake fluid level has dropped to near the “MIN” level of the brake fluid reservoir with the ignition switch in the “ON” position and with the parking brake fully released.

If the light should illuminate while driving (with the parking brake fully released and with the ignition switch positioned in “ON”), it could be an indication of leaking of brake fluid or worn brake pads. If this occurs, immediately stop the vehicle at the nearest safe place and check the brake fluid level. For details, refer to “Brake fluid” ☞11-28. If the fluid level is below the “MIN” mark in the reservoir, do not drive the vehicle. We recommend that you have the vehicle towed to the nearest SUBARU dealer for repair. For details, refer to “Towing” ☞9-14.

▼ Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD) system warning

The brake system warning light also illuminates if a malfunction occurs in the EBD system. In that event, it illuminates

together with the ABS warning light.

The EBD system may be malfunctioning if the brake system warning light and ABS warning light illuminate simultaneously during driving.

Even if the EBD system fails, the conventional braking system will still function. However, the rear wheels will be more prone to locking when the brakes are applied harder than usual and the vehicle's motion may therefore become somewhat harder to control.

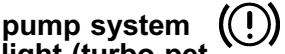
If the brake system warning light and ABS warning light illuminate simultaneously, take the following steps.

1. Stop the vehicle in the nearest safe, flat place.
2. Shut down the engine, apply the parking brake, and then restart it.
3. Release the parking brake. If both warning lights turn off, the EBD system may be malfunctioning.

We recommend that you drive carefully to the nearest SUBARU dealer and have the system inspected.

4. If both warning lights illuminate again and remain illuminated after the engine has been restarted, shut down the engine again, apply the parking brake, and check the brake fluid level. For details, refer to "Brake fluid" ☞11-28.
5. If the brake fluid level is not below the "MIN" mark, the EBD system may be malfunctioning. We recommend that you drive carefully to the nearest SUBARU dealer and have the system inspected.
6. If the brake fluid level is below the "MIN" mark, DO NOT drive the vehicle. Instead, we recommend that you have the vehicle towed to the nearest SUBARU dealer for repair. For details, refer to "Towing" ☞9-14.

■ Vacuum pump system warning light (turbo petrol engine models) (yellow)



This light illuminates when a malfunction occurs in the vacuum pump system of the brake.

NOTE

If the warning light illuminates, the vacuum pump system is malfunctioning. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer immediately for an inspection.

■ Low fuel warning light

The low fuel warning light illuminates when the tank is nearly empty, at approximately 9.0 liters (2.3 US gal, 1.9 Imp gal). It only operates when the ignition switch is in the "ON" position. When this light illuminates, fill the fuel tank immediately.

NOTE

This light does not turn off unless the tank is replenished up to an internal fuel quantity of approximately 17 liters (4.5 US gal, 3.7 Imp gal).

⚠ CAUTION

Promptly put fuel in the tank whenever the low fuel warning light illuminates. Engine misfires as a result of an empty tank could cause damage to the engine.

■ Windshield washer fluid warning light

This light illuminates when the fluid level in the windshield washer fluid tank decreases to the lower limit (approximately 1.0 liter, 1.1 US qt, 0.9 Imp qt).

– CONTINUED –

■ Hill start assist warning light/Hill start assist OFF indicator light

▼ Hill start assist warning light

While the engine is running, if there are any malfunctions in the Hill start assist system, the warning light will illuminate.

⚠ WARNING

When the Hill start assist warning light illuminates, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected at an authorized SUBARU dealer.

▼ Hill start assist OFF indicator light

While the Hill start assist system is deactivated, the Hill start assist OFF indicator light illuminates continuously to inform the driver that the Hill start assist system is not operational.

■ Door open warning light

The warning light illuminates if any door or the rear gate is not fully closed. This function is effective even if the ignition switch is in the “LOCK”/“OFF” or “ACC” position, or the key is removed from the ignition switch.

Always make sure this light is not illuminated before you start to drive.

■ All-Wheel Drive warning light (CVT models)

⚠ CAUTION

Continuing to drive with the AWD warning light flashing can damage the powertrain. If the AWD warning light starts to flash, promptly park in a safe location and check whether the tires have differing diameters and whether any of the tires has an excessively low inflation pressure.

NOTE

If the temporary spare tire is used, the AWD warning light may flash. Use of the temporary spare tire should therefore be restricted to the minimum time necessary. Replace the temporary spare tire with a conventional tire as soon as possible.

This light flashes if the vehicle is driven with tires of different diameters fitted on its wheels or with the air pressure excessively low in any of its tires.

■ Power steering warning light (models with electric power steering)

While the engine is running, this warning light illuminates when a malfunction has been detected in the electric power steering system.

⚠ CAUTION

When the power steering warning light is illuminated, there may be more resistance when the steering wheel is operated. We recommend that you drive carefully to the nearest SUBARU dealer and have the vehicle inspected immediately.

NOTE

If the steering wheel is operated in the following ways, the power steering control system may temporarily limit the power assist in order to prevent the system components, such as the control computer and drive motor, from overheating.

- **The steering wheel is operated frequently and turned sharply while the vehicle is maneuvered at extremely low speeds, such as while frequently turning the steering wheel during parallel**

parking.

• The steering wheel remains in the fully turned position for a long period of time.

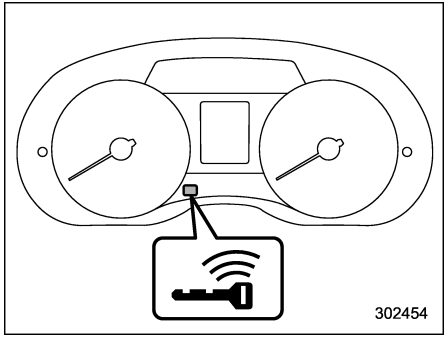
At this time, there will be more resistance when steering. However this is not a malfunction. Normal steering force will be restored after the steering wheel is not operated for a while and the power steering control system has an opportunity to cool down. However, if the power steering is operated in a non-standard way which causes power assist limitation to occur too frequently, this may result in a malfunction of the power steering control system.

■ Automatic headlight beam leveler warning light (models with HID headlights)

This light illuminates when the automatic headlight beam leveler does not operate normally.

If this light illuminates while driving or does not turn off approximately 3 seconds after turning the ignition switch to the “ON” position, we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected at your SUBARU dealer.

■ Warning chimes and warning light of the keyless access with push-button start system (if equipped)



Access key warning light

The keyless access with push-button start system sounds a warning chime and flashes the access key warning light on the combination meter in order to minimize improper operations and help protect your vehicle from theft.

When the warning chime sounds and/or the warning light flashes, take the appropriate action.

⚠ WARNING

Never drive the vehicle if the indicator on the push-button ignition switch is flashing in green when starting the engine. This indicates the status that the steering wheel is not released and could result in an accident involving serious injury or death.

⚠ CAUTION

- **When starting the engine again after the operation indicator on the push-button ignition switch flashes in green, if the operation indicator is still flashing in green, there could be a steering lock malfunction. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.**
- **When the operation indicator on the push-button ignition switch flashes in orange, we recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer immediately.**

NOTE

• Even when the access key is within the operating ranges inside the vehicle,

– CONTINUED –

the access key warning for engine start may be provided depending on the status of the access key and the environmental conditions.

- **When the access key is taken out of the vehicle through an open window, the access key takeout warning or passenger access key takeout warning will not be provided.**

▼ List of warnings

Inside warning chime	Outside warning chime	Access key warning light on meter	Operation indicator on push-button ignition switch	Status	Action
Ding, ding ... (intermittent) (Only for Middle East models)	—	—	—	The driver's door was opened while the push-button ignition switch is "ACC" (in CVT models, when the select lever is in the "P" position).	Switch the push-button ignition switch to "OFF", or close the driver's door. *When exiting the vehicle, be sure to switch the push-button ignition switch to "OFF".
				The push-button ignition switch was switched to "OFF" while the driver's door is open.	Close the driver's door.
Ding	Short beep (2 seconds)	—	—	**Lockout warning:** An attempt was made to lock all doors while the access key is left inside the vehicle.	Take out the access key from the vehicle, and lock the doors. *The doors cannot be locked while the access key is inside the vehicle. *A chirp sound will be heard, and all doors will be unlocked.
—	Short beep (2 seconds)	—	—	**Access key lock-in warning:** The door lock sensor was touched while the push-button ignition switch is "OFF" and the access key is inside the vehicle.	Take out the access key from the vehicle, and lock the doors. *If the access key is inside the vehicle, the doors cannot be locked.
Ding	Long beep (60 seconds max.)	—	—	**Power warning:** The door lock sensor was touched while carrying the access key and the push-button ignition switch is in a position other than "OFF" (in CVT models, when the select lever is in the "P" position).	Return the access key inside the vehicle, or switch the push-button ignition switch to "OFF". *If the push-button ignition switch is not switched to "OFF", the doors cannot be locked.
Ding, ding ... (7 seconds)	—	(Flashes 1 sec. intermittent)	—	**Access key warning:** The vehicle was driven while the access key is not inside the vehicle.	Carry the access key, and drive the vehicle.

– CONTINUED –

Inside warning chime	Outside warning chime	Access key warning light on meter	Operation indicator on push-button ignition switch	Status	Action
Ding	—	(Flashes 1 sec. intermittent)	—	**Access key warning for engine start:** The push-button ignition switch was pressed while the access key is not inside the vehicle.	Carry the access key, and press the push-button ignition switch.
Ding	Beep, beep, beep (3 beeps)	(Flashes 1 sec. intermittent)	—	**Access key takeout warning:** The driver exited the vehicle with the access key and closed the driver's door while the push-button ignition switch is in a position other than "OFF" (in CVT models, when the select lever is in the "P" position).	Switch the push-button ignition switch to "OFF", and get out of the vehicle.
Ding	Beep, beep, beep (3 beeps)	(Flashes 1 sec. intermittent)	—	**Passenger access key takeout warning:** A fellow passenger exited the vehicle with the access key and closed a door other than the driver's door while the push-button ignition switch is in a position other than "OFF".	Return the access key to inside the vehicle, or switch the push-button ignition switch to "OFF".
Long beep (continuous)	Long beep (continuous)	(Flashes 1 sec. intermittent)	—	The driver exited the vehicle with the access key and closed the driver's door while the push-button ignition switch is in a position other than "OFF" (all models) and the select lever is in a position other than the "P" position (CVT models).	Shift the select lever to the "P" position (CVT models), switch the push-button ignition switch to "OFF" (all models) and exit the vehicle.

Inside warning chime	Outside warning chime	Access key warning light on meter	Operation indicator on push-button ignition switch	Status	Action
Long beep (continuous)	—	—	—	**Select lever position warning (CVT models):** The driver's door was opened while the push-button ignition switch is in a position other than "OFF" and the select lever is in a position other than the "P" position.	Shift the select lever to the "P" position, switch the push-button ignition switch to "OFF" and exit the vehicle.
Ding	—	—	—	The battery of the access key is low.	Replace the battery of the access key.
Ding	—	—	Flashes in green (15 seconds max.)	**Steering lock warning:** The engine start procedure was performed, but the steering is still locked.	While turning the steering wheel right and left lightly, depress the brake pedal and press the push-button ignition switch.
Ding	—	—	Flashes in orange	**System malfunction warning:** A malfunction was detected in the power system or steering lock.	We recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer immediately and have the vehicle inspected.

– CONTINUED –

■ Immobilizer indicator light

This light begins flashing under any of the following conditions.

For models with "keyless access with push-button start system":

- Immediately after the push-button ignition switch is turned to the "OFF" position.
- Immediately after the driver's door is opened or closed when all of the following conditions are met.
  - The push-button ignition switch is in the "ON" or "ACC" position.
  - The access key is outside the vehicle.
  - The engine is not running.

In the event that the push-button ignition switch is pressed to turn it on or to start the engine carrying an unauthorized key (for example, the key is unregistered or the ID code does not match), the power is not switched to "ON" and the immobilizer indicator light continues blinking.

For models without "keyless access with push-button start system":

- Approximately 60 seconds after the ignition switch is turned from the "ON" position to the "ACC" or "LOCK" position.
- Immediately after the key is pulled out.

If the indicator light does not blink in the above conditions, it may indicate that immobilizer system may be malfunctioning. We recommend that you contact your nearest SUBARU dealer immediately.

In the event that an unauthorized key (for example, an unauthorized duplicate) is used to start the engine, the immobilizer indicator light illuminates. For details about the immobilizer system, refer to "Immobilizer" ☞2-2.

NOTE

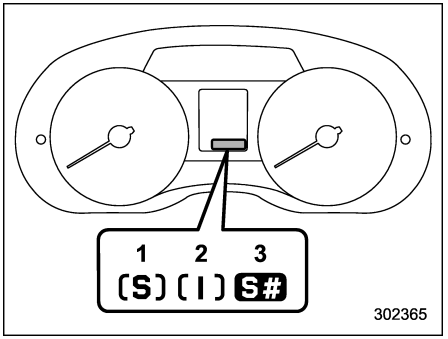
• The immobilizer indicator light remains off in the following conditions. It means that the matching of the ID code is completed and the immobilizer system is deactivated, and it does not indicate a malfunction.

Models with "keyless access with push-button start system":
– while the engine is running
– the push-button ignition switch has been turned to the "ON" or "ACC" position and the driver's door has not been opened or closed

Models without "keyless access with push-button start system":
– while the engine is running
– for approximately 60 seconds after the ignition switch is turned from the "ON" position to the "ACC" or "LOCK" position
– when the ignition switch is in the "ON" position

• Even if a malfunction occurs, such as the immobilizer indicator light flashes irregularly, it will not affect the functionality of the immobilizer system.

■ SI-DRIVE indicator light (if equipped)

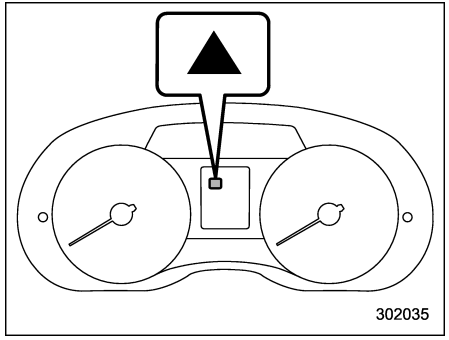


1) Sport (S) mode
2) Intelligent (I) mode
3) Sport Sharp (S#) mode (if equipped)

This light indicates the current SI-DRIVE mode.

For details of SI-DRIVE mode, refer to “SI-DRIVE” ☞7-24.

■ Shift-up indicator light (MT models without gear shift indicator)

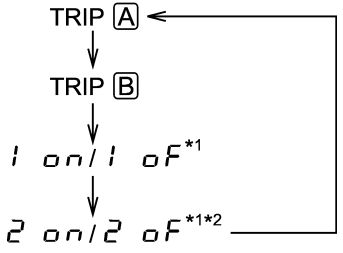


While driving, this indicator light blinks and informs the driver about the upshift timing for fuel-efficient driving.

The shift-up indicator can be activated or deactivated by performing the following procedure.

1. Turn the ignition switch to the “LOCK”/“OFF” or “ACC” position.
2. Press the trip knob to show “2 on” or “2 oF” on the trip meter display.

The display can be switched as shown in the following sequence by pressing the trip knob.



*1: They cannot be displayed when the ignition switch is in the “ON” position.
*2: Only for MT models without gear shift indicator

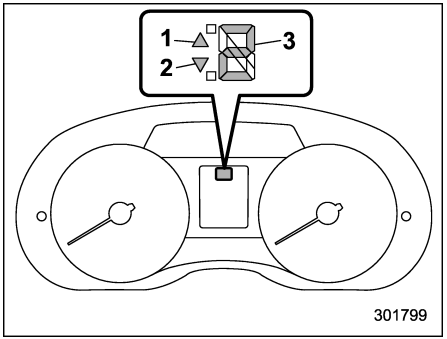
3. To change the current setting, press the trip knob for at least 2 seconds.

2 on : Activated
2 oF : Deactivated

NOTE

• The initial setting for the shift-up indicator has been set for activation “2 on” at the time of shipment from the factory.
• It is not possible to change the setting of the shift-up indicator when the ignition switch is in the “ON” position. Change the setting when the ignition switch is in the “LOCK”/“OFF” or “ACC” position.

■ Select lever/gear position indicator (if equipped)



1) Upshift indicator
2) Downshift indicator
3) Select lever/gear position indicator

For CVT models, the select lever position is displayed on the combination meter. Also, for models with manual mode, the current gear position is displayed with the upshift/downshift indicator when the manual mode is selected. For more details, refer to “Selection of manual mode” ☞7-20.

For some MT models, the current gear position is displayed with the gear shift

– CONTINUED –

indicator (upshift/downshift indicator). For more details, refer to “Gear shift indicator (Europe models)” ☞7-15.

■ Turn signal indicator lights

These lights show the operation of the turn signal or lane change signal.

If the indicator lights do not blink or blink rapidly, the turn signal bulb may be burned out. Replace the bulb as soon as possible. Refer to “Front turn signal light and position light” ☞11-52 or “Rear combination lights” ☞11-54.

■ High beam indicator light

This light shows that the headlights are in the high beam mode.

This indicator light also illuminates when the headlight flasher is operated.

■ Cruise control indicator light (if equipped)

This light illuminates when the cruise control main button is pressed to activate the cruise control function.

⚠ CAUTION

If the malfunction indicator light (Check Engine light) illuminates, the cruise control indicator light flashes at the same time. At this time, avoid driving at high speed and we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected at a SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.

NOTE

If this indicator light does not illuminate even when you press the cruise control main button, the cruise control system may not operate properly. We recommend that you have your vehicle checked by your nearest SUBARU dealer.

■ Cruise control set indicator light (if equipped)

This light illuminates when vehicle speed has been set to use the cruise control function.

■ Headlight indicator light (if equipped)

This indicator light illuminates under the following conditions.

- when the light switch is turned to the “≡D◇≡” or “≡D” position (except Australia models)
- when the light switch is in the “O” or “≡D” position (Australia models)
- when the light control switch is in the “AUTO” position and the headlights illuminate automatically (models with auto on/off headlights)

■ Front fog light indicator light (if equipped)

This indicator light illuminates while the front fog lights are illuminated.

■ Rear fog light indicator light (if equipped)

This indicator light illuminates while the rear fog light is illuminated.

■ X mode indicator light (if equipped)

This light illuminates while the X mode is activated. It will turn off when the X mode is deactivated.

■ Hill descent control indicator light (if equipped)

This indicator illuminates while the hill descent control function is in standby. It will flash while the hill descent control

function is operating. It will turn off when the hill descent control function is not available.

■ Fuel filter warning light (diesel engine models)

This warning light illuminates when the amount of accumulated water in the fuel filter has reached the specified level. If this warning light illuminates, we recommend that you have your vehicle checked at a SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.

⚠ CAUTION

Never drive the vehicle when the warning light is illuminated. Continuing to drive while water has accumulated in the fuel filter will damage the fuel injection pump.

■ Preheating indicator light (diesel engine models)

The preheating indicator light illuminates when the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position and turns off after the engine has sufficiently preheated (a few seconds later).

NOTE

- **When the weather is cold outside, the preheating indicator light remains illuminated a little longer than usual.**
- **For models without push-button start system, start the engine after the preheating indicator light has turned off.**
- **For models with push-button start system, the engine will not start until the preheating indicator light has turned off.**

■ Diesel particulate filter warning light (diesel engine models)

▼ When diesel particulate filter warning light illuminates

The diesel particulate filter warning light illuminates when the filter is not able to automatically burn the soot and the accumulated particulate matter exceeds the specified limit.

When the diesel particulate filter warning light illuminates, drive the vehicle under the following conditions after the engine has been warmed up completely.

- Engine speed (MT models only): 1,800 to 2,500 rpm
- Vehicle speed: 60 km/h (37 mph) or faster is preferred
- Driving time for burn treatment: 15 minutes or more

NOTE

- **Do not accelerate rapidly.**
- **For MT models, accelerate the vehicle according to the upshift timing shown in the gear shift indicator or the shift-up indicator light. During regeneration of the diesel particulate filter, the gear shift indicator / shift-up indicator will prompt the driver to accelerate to the engine speed necessary for regeneration. For details about the gear shift indicator or the shift-up indicator light, refer to the following section.**
  - **– Europe models: Refer to "Gear shift indicator (Europe models)" ☞7-15.**
  - **– Other models: Refer to "Shift-up indicator light (except Europe models)" ☞7-16 or "Shift-up indicator light (MT models without gear shift indicator)" ☞3-33.**
- **For MT models, if it is difficult to maintain all these conditions, maintaining at least the specified engine speed will have some effect for burning soot.**

Driving under these conditions will increase the inside temperature of the filter

– CONTINUED –

and burn the accumulated soot to eliminate it. The warning light turns off when the soot is eliminated.

⚠ WARNING

Even if the diesel particulate filter warning light illuminates, continuing to drive does not damage the engine and diesel particulate filter immediately. Safely drive the vehicle according to all road laws and the traffic conditions. Otherwise, it may cause an accident or traffic violation.

NOTE

While the soot is burning in the diesel particulate filter, the driveability, engine revolutions, engine sound and smell of emission gas may change.

▼ When diesel particulate filter warning light flashes

When the diesel particulate filter warning light flashes, we recommend that you consult the nearest SUBARU dealer for an immediate inspection.

⚠ CAUTION

If you continue to drive the vehicle while the diesel particulate filter warning light is illuminated, the warning light will begin to flash. In this case, we recommend that you consult the nearest SUBARU dealer for an immediate inspection. Otherwise, the engine and diesel particulate filter may be damaged.

■ Over-rev warning light (yellow) (MT diesel engine models)

If engine over-revving is likely to occur, a buzzer will sound and the over-rev warning light on the combination meter will flash in yellow. For more details, refer to "Over-revving warning (MT diesel engine models)" ☞7-16.

■ Auto Start Stop warning light/Auto Start Stop OFF indicator light (yellow) (if equipped)

▼ Auto Start Stop warning light

⚠ CAUTION

- **If the Auto Start Stop warning light is flashing, there may be a malfunction in the Auto Start Stop system. We recommend that you have your vehicle inspected at a SUBARU authorized dealer as soon as possible.**
- **If the Auto Start Stop warning light is illuminated at any time other than in the following cases, and will not turn off even if the Auto Start Stop OFF switch is pushed and held, we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected at a SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.**

The Auto Start Stop warning light will illuminate in yellow if either of the following operations is performed when the engine has been temporarily stopped by the Auto Start Stop system.

- the engine hood is opened
- the driver's seatbelt is unfastened
- the driver's door is opened

In these cases, to ensure safety, the engine will not be automatically restarted, even if the following operations are performed. Use normal operation to restart the engine.

- the brake pedal is released (CVT models)
- the clutch pedal is fully depressed (MT

models)

▼ **Auto Start Stop OFF indicator light**

This light will illuminate in yellow when the Auto Start Stop OFF switch is pressed to prevent the Auto Start Stop system from operating. It will turn off when the Auto Start Stop OFF switch is pressed once more to enable operation of the Auto Start Stop system.

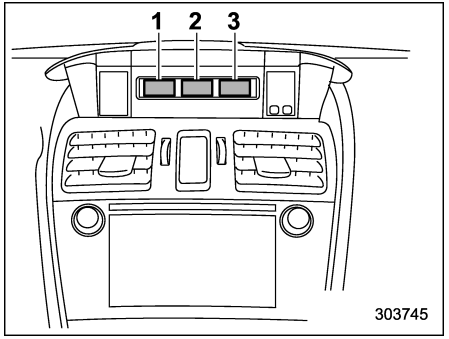
■ Auto Start Stop indicator light (green) (if equipped)

This indicator light illuminates in green when the engine has been temporarily stopped by the Auto Start Stop system. It will turn off when the engine is restarted.

Information display (if equipped)

NOTE

If your vehicle is equipped with a color multi function display, refer to "Multi function display" ☞3-43.

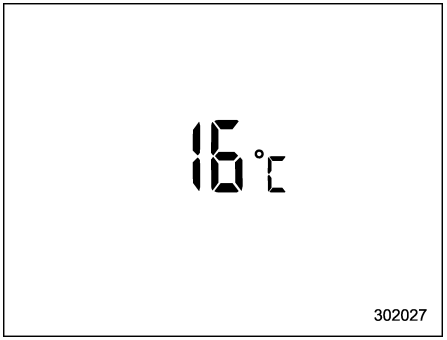


1) Outside temperature indicator
2) Driving information display
3) Clock

With the ignition switch in the "ACC" position, the clock appears on the display.

With the ignition switch in the "ON" position, the outside temperature indicator, driving information display and clock all appear on the display.

■ Outside temperature indicator



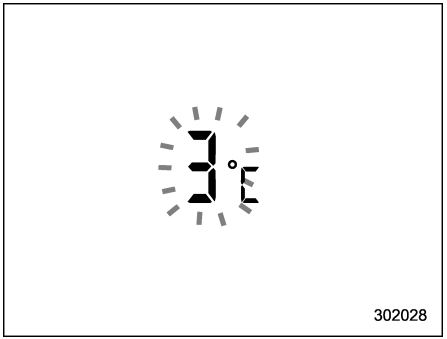
The outside temperature indicator shows the outside temperature within a range from −40 to 50°C.

The indicator can give a false reading under any of the following conditions.

- When there is too much sun.
- During idling; while running at low speeds in a traffic jam; when the engine is restarted immediately following a shutdown.
- When the actual outside temperature falls outside the specified indicator range.

– CONTINUED –

▼ **Road surface freeze warning indication**



When the outside temperature drops to 3°C (37°F) or lower, the temperature indication flashes to show that the road surface may be frozen.

If the outside temperature drops to 3°C (37°F) or lower while the display is giving an indication other than the outside temperature, the display switches to the outside temperature indication and flashes for 5 seconds before returning to its original indication.

If the display is already indicating an outside temperature of 3°C (37°F) or lower when the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position, the indication does not flash.

NOTE

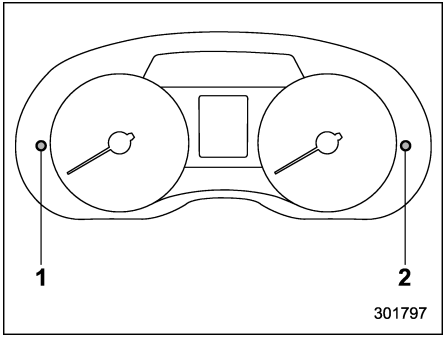
• The outside temperature indicator shows the temperature around the sensor. Therefore, the temperature indication may differ from the actual outside air temperature.

• The road surface freeze warning indication should be treated only as a guide. Be sure to check the condition of the road surface before driving.

• After the road surface freeze warning has already appeared on the display, the warning will not appear again even if the outside temperature drops to 3°C (37°F) or lower until once the outside temperature has increased to 5°C (41°F) or more before that time.

■ Driving information display

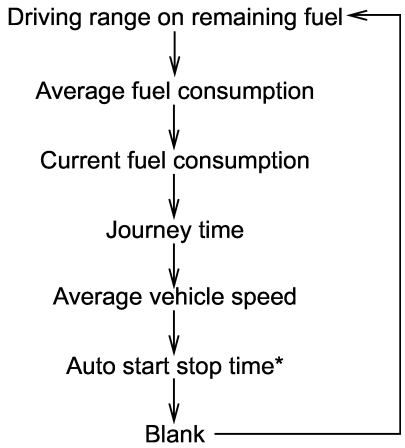
▼ **Display selection**



Information display selection knob

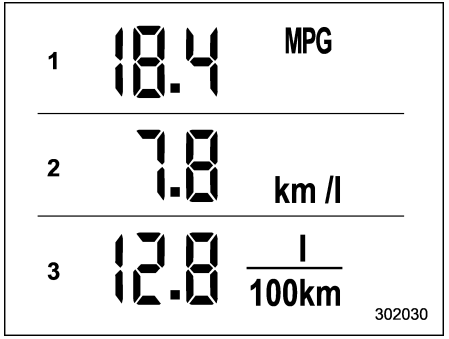
1) Right-hand drive models
2) Left-hand drive models

With the ignition switch in the "ON" position, each successive press of the information display selection knob toggles the display in the following sequence.



*: Models with Auto Start Stop system only

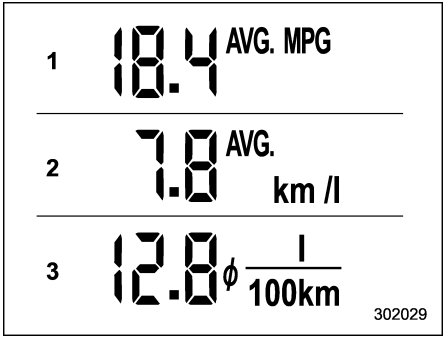
▼ **Current fuel consumption**



1) Type A
2) Type B
3) Type C

This display shows the rate of fuel consumption at the present moment.

▼ **Average fuel consumption**



1) Type A
2) Type B
3) Type C

This display shows the average rate of fuel consumption since the trip meter was last reset.

Pressing the trip knob toggles the display between the average fuel consumption corresponding to the A trip meter mileage and the average fuel consumption corresponding to the B trip meter mileage.

When either of the trip meter mileage is reset, the corresponding average fuel consumption value is also reset.

NOTE

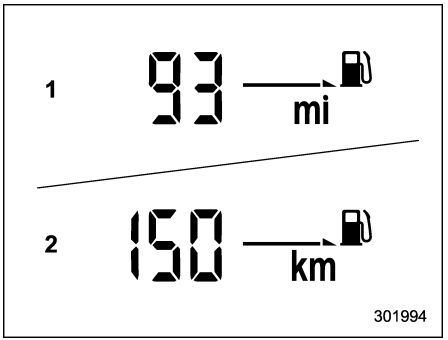
• The indicated values vary in accordance with changes in the vehicle's

– CONTINUED –

running conditions. Also, the indicated values may differ slightly from the actual values and should thus be treated only as a guide.

• When either trip meter mileage is reset, the average fuel consumption corresponding to that trip meter is not shown until the vehicle has subsequently covered a distance of 1 km (or 1 mile).

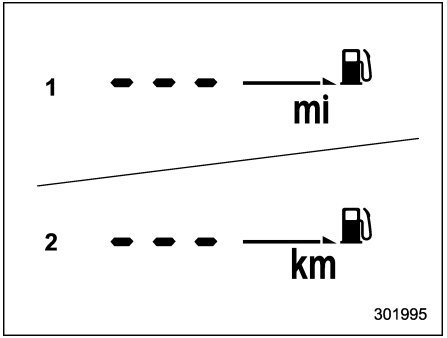
▼ Driving range on remaining fuel



1) U.K. models
2) Except U.K. models

The driving range indicates the distance that can be driven taking into account the amount of fuel remaining in the tank and the average rate of fuel consumption.

When the low fuel warning light illuminates, the driving range display flashes for 5 seconds. (The display first switches to the driving range display if it was originally giving some other value.)



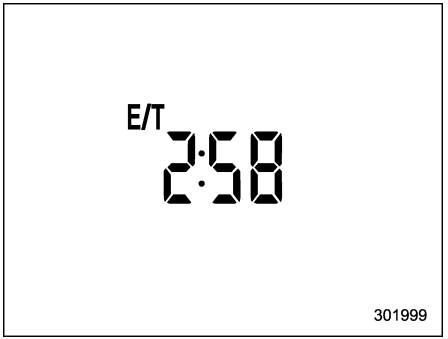
1) U.K. models
2) Except U.K. models

If the driving range is shown as "- - -", there is only a tiny amount of fuel left in the tank. You must refuel the vehicle immediately.

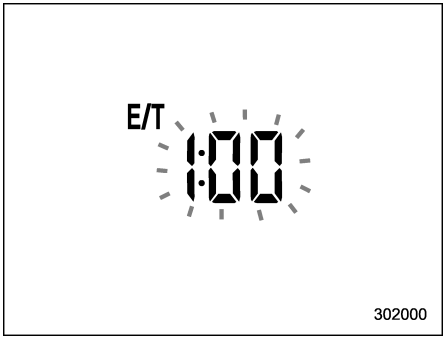
NOTE

The driving range on remaining fuel is only a guide. The indicated value may differ from the actual driving range on remaining fuel, so you must immediately fill the tank when the low fuel warning light illuminates.

▼ Journey time



The journey time shows the time that has elapsed since the ignition switch was turned to the "START" position.



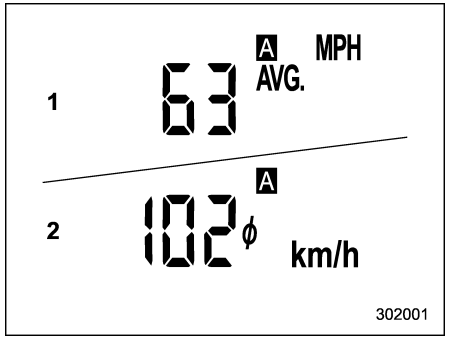
The journey time indication flashes each time a complete hour has elapsed. If the

display is giving a reading other than the journey time, the display switches to the journey time, flashes for 5 seconds, and returns to its original reading each time a complete hour has elapsed.

NOTE

The journey time is reset when the ignition switch is turned to the "LOCK"/ "OFF" position. It is also reset if the ignition switch is turned to the "LOCK"/ "OFF" or "ACC" position prior to restarting of the engine.

▼ **Average vehicle speed**



1) U.K. models
2) Except U.K. models

This display shows the average vehicle speed since the trip meter was last reset.

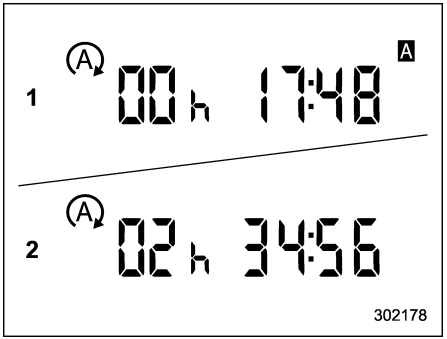
Pressing the trip knob toggles the display between the average vehicle speed corresponding to the A trip meter mileage and the average vehicle speed corresponding to the B trip meter mileage.

When either of the trip meter displays is reset, the corresponding average vehicle speed value is also reset.

NOTE

When either trip meter display is reset, the average vehicle speed corresponding to that trip meter display is not shown until the vehicle has subsequently covered a distance of 1 km (or 1 mile).

▼ **Auto Start Stop time (models with Auto Start Stop system)**



1) Total time in conjunction with the trip meter
2) Total time in conjunction with the ignition switch

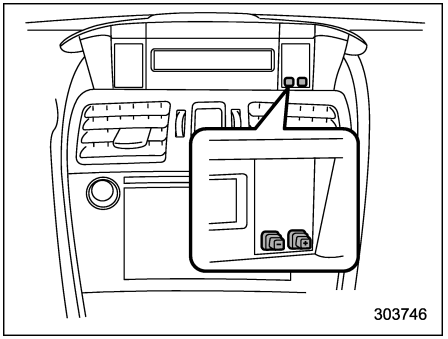
This display shows the total time that the engine was stopped by the Auto Start Stop system in the following ways.

Total time in conjunction with the trip meter: Displays the total time that the engine was stopped by the Auto Start Stop system, from the last time the currently displayed trip meter was reset until the current time. By pressing the trip knob, you can toggle the display between the time the engine was stopped for trip A and the time the engine was stopped for trip B.

– CONTINUED –

Total time in conjunction with the ignition switch: Displays the total time that the engine was stopped by the Auto Start Stop system, from the time when the ignition switch was turned to the "ON" position to the current time.

Perform the following operation to toggle the display between the total time in conjunction with the trip meter and the total time in conjunction with the ignition switch.



1. Press and hold the "+" button located on the side of the information display. The stopped time will then flash.
2. Within 5 seconds after the stopped time starts flashing, press and hold the "–" button located on the side of the information display. The display will then change and after flashing for 3 seconds, the stopped time selected will be displayed.
3. Each time the "–" button is pressed and held during the 3 seconds that the display is flashing, the display will change and flash for 3 seconds. If the "–" button is not pressed and held during the 3 second period that the display is flashing, the stopped time selected will be displayed.

▼ X mode indicator (if equipped)

This indicator will be shown while the X mode is activated. It will turn off when the X mode is deactivated.

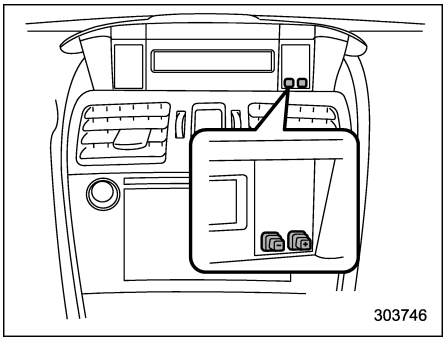
▼ Turn off display of driving information display

The driving information display can be turned off.
To turn off the display, turn the ignition switch to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position and press and hold the "+" button adjacent to the clock. Then, the driving information display and the clock will blink for 3 seconds to notify you that the driving information display has been turned off.
To restore the display, once again press and hold the "+" button.

NOTE

• The initial setting of the driving information display has been set to operational at the time of shipment from the factory.
• The average fuel consumption and average vehicle speed are calculated even while the driving information display has been turned off.
• Even if you turn off the driving information display, the display will automatically turn on when the battery voltage is disconnected and then reconnected for battery replacement or fuse replacement.

■ Clock



To adjust the time shown by the clock, press the "**+**" button or the "**–**" button. If

you press the "**+**" button, the indicated time will change in one-minute increments. If you press the "**–**" button, the indicated time will change in one-minute decrements. If you keep the button pressed, the rate at which the indicated time changes will speed up.

The clock can be set to 12-hour or 24-hour clock displays. Perform the following procedure to switch the display format.

1. Turn the ignition switch to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position.
2. Press and hold the "−" button that is located near the clock display. The clock display will then start to flash for 5 seconds.
3. While the clock display is flashing, press and hold the "**+**" button. The clock format will then change.
4. The clock display will continue to flash for approximately 3 seconds to inform you that the clock display has been changed. If you want to change the clock display again, press and hold the "**+**" button while the clock display is flashing.

Multi function display (if equipped)

⚠ WARNING

Always pay adequate attention to safe driving when operating the multi function display while the vehicle is in motion. When operation of the multi function display is disturbing your awareness and ability to concentrate on driving, stop the vehicle in a safe location before performing operations on the screen. Also, do not concentrate on the display while driving. Doing so may cause you to look away from the road and could result in an accident.

NOTE

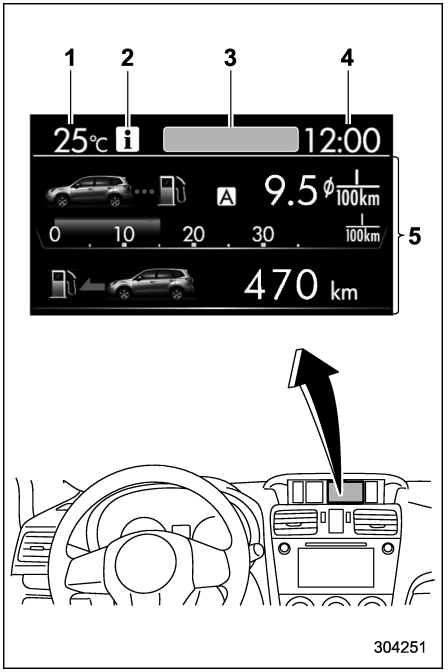
- **If your vehicle is equipped with an information display (monochrome), refer to "Information display" ☞3-37.**
- **Illustrations show the display for the specific model as an example. Some portions in the illustrations (such as display indication and measurement unit) may be different depending on the regional specifications for your vehicle.**
- **When the vehicle is in motion, certain functions and selections may not be available.**

The multi function display has the following functions.

Description	Page
Displays useful messages, such as warning information, etc.	3-47
Displays basic screens (e.g. fuel consumption screen, etc.)	3-47
Sets and adjusts maintenance notification	3-77
Registers driving history	3-81
Sets and customizes car operation	3-82

Also, the multi function display can also be used to set and initialize the multi function display itself.

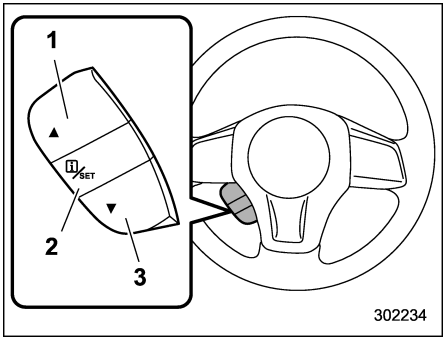
– CONTINUED –



Multi function display

1) Outside temperature indicator
2) Information reminder
3) Top display (For the display setting, refer to "Top display setting" ☞3-70.)
4) Clock
5) Driving information display (For the displayed contents, refer to "Basic screens" ☞3-47.)

■ Basic operation



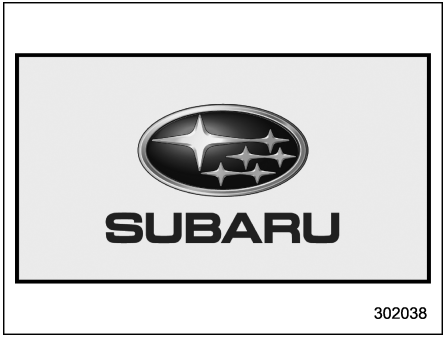
Control switch

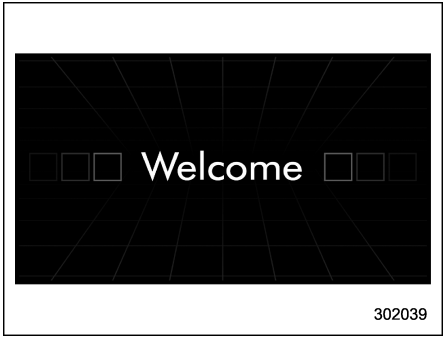
1) Up (select)
2) Set (enter)
3) Down (select)

By operating "▲" or "▼" of the control switch, the screens and selection items can be switched. When the "i/SET" switch is pulled toward you, the item can be selected and set.

■ Welcome screen

When the door is unlocked and the driver's door is opened, the welcome screen will appear for a short time.





NOTE

• The welcome screen will disappear when the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position while the welcome screen is displayed.
• If any of the doors (including the rear gate) is opened while the welcome screen is displayed, the door ajar warning will appear.
• The welcome screen can be set to on or off. For details, refer to "Bypass screen setting" ☞3-75.
• For a certain period of time after the welcome screen has once appeared, it may not appear again even when the driver's door is opened again. This does not indicate a malfunction.

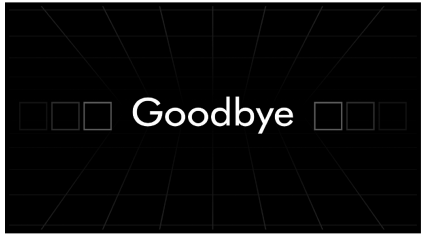
■ Ending screen

If the ignition switch is turned to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position, one of the following screens will be displayed as the ending screen before the screen turns off.

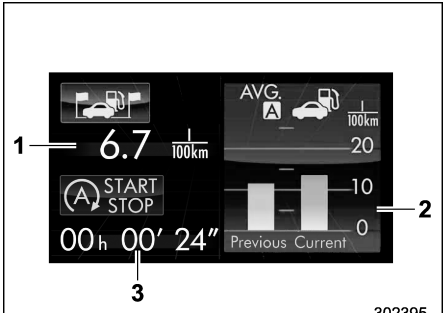
• If "Eco Summary" is set to "Off" in the "Bypass screen setting": The "Goodbye" screen will be displayed.

• If "Eco Summary" is set to "On" in the "Bypass screen setting": The "Fuel consumption results screen" will be displayed.

For details about the bypass screen setting, refer to "Bypass screen setting" ☞3-75.



"Goodbye" screen



Fuel consumption results screen

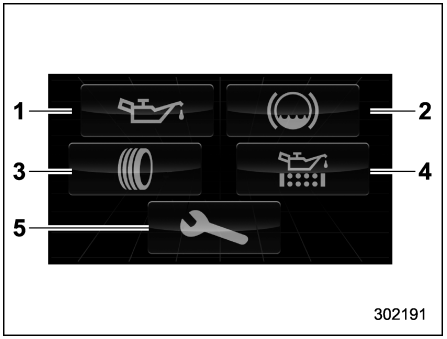
1) The average fuel consumption for the entire driving distance, from when the ignition switch was turned to the "ON" position to when it was turned to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position.
2) The average fuel consumption for the driving interval displayed on the trip meter at the point when the ignition switch was turned to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position.
3) Models with Auto Start Stop system: The total amount of time the engine was stopped by means of the Auto Stop system. It is calculated from when the ignition switch was turned to the "ON" position to when the ignition switch was turned to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position.

– CONTINUED –

■ Self-check screen

When the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position, the vehicle self-check will be performed. Though the self-check screen is set to "Off" as the default setting, if the screen is set to "On", the checking process is displayed as follows. To change the screen setting, refer to "On/Off setting" ☞3-79.

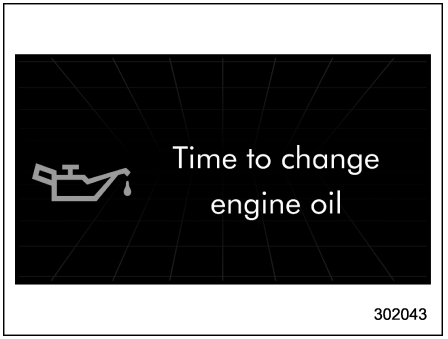
The screens corresponding to the following items will appear one after another for several seconds each.



1) Engine oil: Checks the interval of engine oil replacement.
2) Brake fluid: Checks the level of brake fluid.
3) Tires: Checks the interval of tire rotation.
4) Oil filter: Checks the interval of oil filter replacement.
5) Inspection and maintenance: Checks the interval of inspection and maintenance.

When the checks are performed, the color of the icon corresponding to the checked item will turn green.

If there is no warning message, the self-check will be completed without notification.



Example of notification

If there is a warning message or a maintenance notification, the color of the icon corresponding to the item will turn yellow and the warning message or the maintenance notification will be displayed. Take the appropriate actions based on the messages indicated.

NOTE

• After performing the maintenance, change the setting of the corresponding maintenance item. For details, refer to "Maintenance settings" ☞3-77.

• The maintenance notification screen will be displayed under either of the following conditions.

– The period of time remaining until the registered notification date

is 15 days or less.

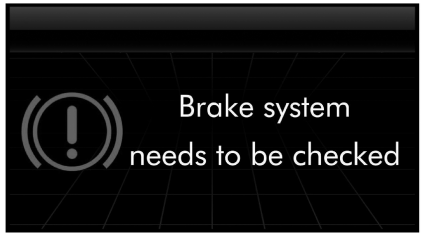
– The total driving distance remaining until the registered notification distance is approximately 500 km (311 miles) or less.

• The maintenance notification screen will be displayed until either of the following conditions is satisfied.

– The period of time passed after the registered notification date is 15 days or more.

– The total distance driven after the registered notification distance is approximately 500 km (311 miles) or more.

■ Interruption screen



Warning information (display example)

Useful messages, such as reminder information, vehicle information, warning information, etc. may interrupt the current screen and appear on the display accompanied by a beep. Take proper action according to the message.

The warning screen will return to the original screen after a few seconds. If the warning screen can be displayed again, an information reminder "i" will appear on the upper left part of the display. To recall the message marked with "i" on the display, pull the "i/SET" switch on the steering wheel toward you.

■ Basic screens

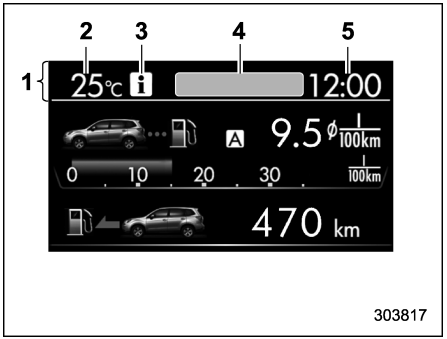
These are the basic screens of the multi function display.

Item	Page
Information bar	3-48
Fuel consumption screen	3-49
ECO gauge screen	3-49
ECO history screen	3-50
Auto Start Stop system screen (if equipped)	3-50
Vehicle activation status screen	3-51
EyeSight screen (models with EyeSight system)	3-52
Triple meter screen	3-53
"Boost pressure" and "Accelerator opening ratio" screen (turbo petrol engine models)	3-54
Guidance screen	3-53
Clock/calendar screen	3-54

By operating the "▲" or "▼" switch on the steering wheel, you can switch the screen that is always displayed. Also, when the "i/SET" switch is pulled and held, the selection screen can be displayed. For details about the selection screen, refer to "Selection screen" ☞3-56.

– CONTINUED –

▼ Information bar



1) Information bar
2) Outside temperature indicator
3) Information reminder
4) Top display
5) Clock

While the ignition switch is in the “ACC” or “ON” position, the outside temperature indicator, clock, etc. will be shown on the information bar.

▽ Outside temperature indicator

This displays the outside temperature between −40°C (−40°F) and 50°C (122°F).

Icy road surface warning screen

When the outside temperature becomes 3°C (37°F) or less, the icy road surface warning screen interrupts to inform the driver that the road surface may be frozen.

NOTE

- **The outside temperature indicator shows the temperature around the sensor. Therefore, the temperature indication may differ from the actual outside air temperature.**
- **The icy road surface warning screen should be treated only as a guide. Be sure to check the condition of the road surface before driving.**
- **Once the icy road surface warning screen is displayed, it will not be displayed again unless the ignition switch is turned to the “ACC” or “ON” position after it has been turned to “LOCK”/“OFF” position.**

▽ Information reminder

The screen returns to the original screen several seconds after the interruption screen has been displayed. If the interruption screen can be displayed once more even after the original screen has appeared, an information reminder “i” should be displayed. For details about the interruption screen, refer to “Interruption screen” ☞3-47.

▽ Top display

One of the following items can be displayed on the top display.

- Average fuel consumption corresponding to the driving distance of each trip meter
- Current fuel consumption (This may not be displayed when driving in a low speed.)
- Driving range on remaining fuel

For details about the setting of the top display, refer to “Top display setting” ☞3-70.

NOTE

The driving range on the remaining fuel is calculated using the average fuel consumption of the last 30 km (19 miles) driven. This value may be different from the values calculated using the average fuel consumption corresponding to the driving distance of each trip meter or the current fuel consumption.

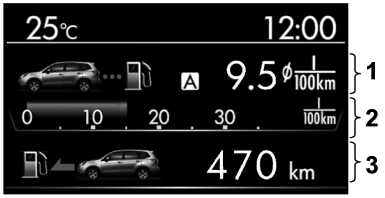
▽ **Clock**

The clock can be displayed in either 12-hour display or 24-hour display. For details about the setting, refer to "Current date and time setting" ☞3-59.

NOTE

If the vehicle battery is disconnected, the clock shown in the information bar will be reset. Set the time again after the vehicle battery is connected. For details about the setting, refer to "Top display setting" ☞3-70.

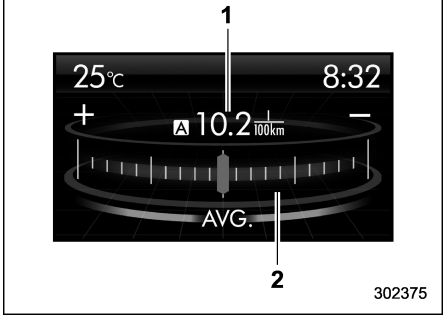
▼ **Fuel consumption screen**



1) Average fuel consumption corresponding to the driving distance of each trip meter
2) Current fuel consumption
3) Driving range on remaining fuel

The displayed location can be customized. For details, refer to "Fuel consumption screen setting" ☞3-71.

▼ **ECO gauge screen**

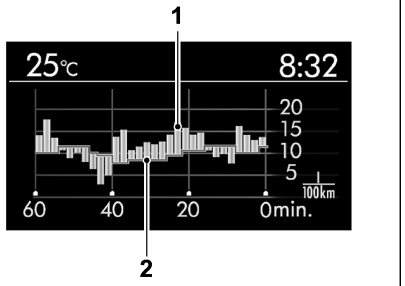


1) Average fuel consumption corresponding to the driving distance of each trip meter
2) ECO gauge

The gauge pointer shows the difference between the current fuel consumption and the average fuel consumption that is displayed on the center part of the screen. If the gauge pointer moves toward the green side, this indicates better fuel efficiency.

– CONTINUED –

▼ ECO history screen



1) Average fuel consumption per unit time (bar graph)
2) Average fuel consumption corresponding to the driving distance of each trip meter (red line)

This screen displays the fuel economy history for the vehicle using a bar graph.

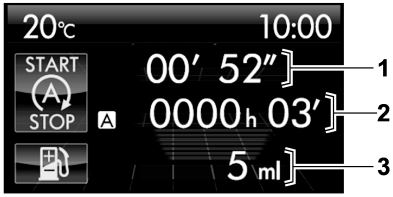
The horizontal scale represents the past time range and the vertical scale represents the fuel consumption. The green bars show driving with good fuel economy and the yellow bars show driving with poor fuel economy.

The time range of the history can be set. The width of the bar graph is adjusted as follows depending on the set time range.

Time range	Width of bar graph
30 minutes	1 minute
60 minutes	2 minutes
120 minutes	4 minutes

For details about the setting, refer to “Economy history setting” ☞3-72.

▼ Auto Start Stop system screen (if equipped)



This screen displays the following vehicle information.

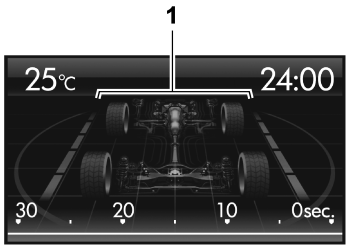
1) The total time the engine was stopped by the Auto Start Stop system, from the time that the ignition switch was turned to the “ON” position to the current time
2) The total time the engine was stopped by the Auto Start Stop system, from the most recent reset of the currently displayed trip meter to the current time
3) The total amount of fuel saved due to the engine being stopped by the Auto Start Stop system, from the most recent reset of the currently displayed trip meter to the current time

NOTE

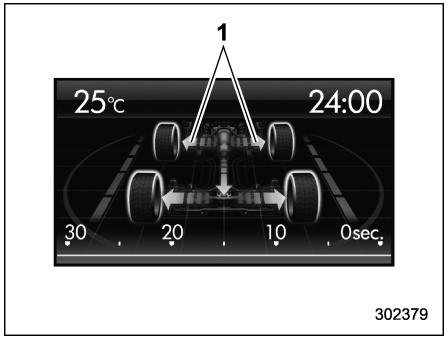
• When the trip meter is reset, the corresponding accumulated time and

the amount of fuel saving are also reset.
• The time spent with the engine stopped by means of the Auto Start Stop system is also added to the journey time.

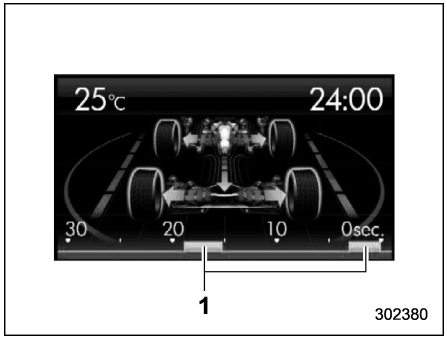
▼ Vehicle activation status screen



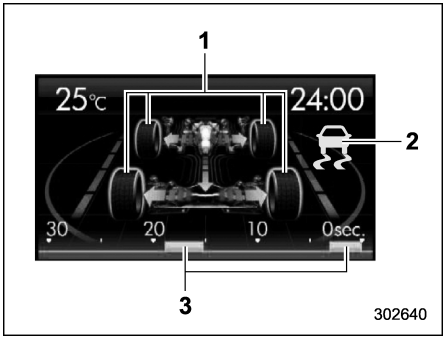
When the vehicle stops
1) Steering axle



When the vehicle is being driven regularly
1) Power train

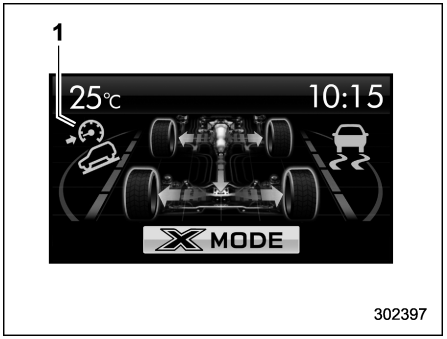


When the Vehicle Dynamics Control system activates, the tires illuminate in yellow.
1) History of Vehicle Dynamics Control system activation



When the Vehicle Dynamics Control system activates, the tires illuminate in yellow.
1) Activation status of the ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)
2) Vehicle Dynamics Control system operating indicator (flashing in yellow)
3) History of Vehicle Dynamics Control system activation

– CONTINUED –



When the X mode is selected (if equipped)
1) Hill descent control indicator

This screen displays the following vehicle information.

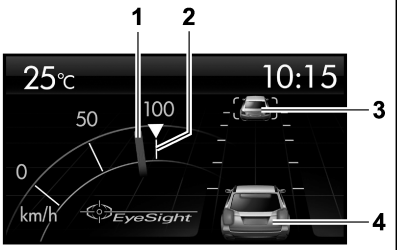
- steering angle and driving wheel status
- activation status of the ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)
- activation status of the Vehicle Dynamics Control system
- activation status of the X mode (if equipped)
- activation status of the hill descent control function (if equipped)

While driving, the vehicle wheels are illuminated in green and the driving direction is represented using an animation of the traffic lane.

If the ABS is activated, all of the vehicle's wheels will be illuminated in yellow and the length of operation in seconds and the number of activations will be displayed in the bar indicator, located on the lowermost part of the display.

If the Vehicle Dynamics Control system is activated, the activated vehicle wheels will be illuminated in yellow and the operating indicator "" will appear on the upper right part of the display. Also, the length of operation in seconds and the number of activations will be displayed in the bar indicator.

▼ EyeSight screen (models with EyeSight system)



1) Current vehicle speed
2) Set vehicle speed
3) Preceding vehicle
4) Your vehicle

This screen displays the status of the EyeSight system.

▼ **Triple meter screen**

Triple meter screen (display example)

This screen displays up to three optional pieces of information that can be selected from the following items.

The items shown in the triple meter screen can be changed. For details, refer to “Triple meter setting” ☞3-73.

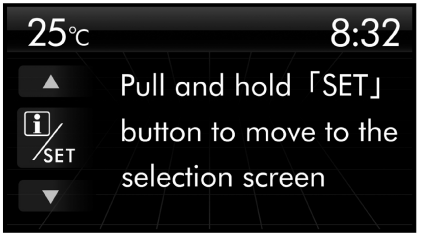
Item	Details
	Average vehicle speed (Average vehicle speed for the entire driving time from when the trip meter was reset)
ODO	Lifetime fuel consumption
	Engine oil temperature (petrol engine models only)
	Accelerator opening ratio
	Boost pressure (turbo petrol engine models only)
	Journey time (the time that has elapsed since the ignition switch was turned to the “ON” position)
	Journey distance (the distance that has been driven since the ignition switch was turned to the “ON” position)
	Average fuel consumption for the entire driving distance from when the ignition switch was turned to the “ON” position

NOTE

For turbo petrol engine models, the following items are displayed in both the digital and analog format.

- **Engine oil temperature**
- **Accelerator opening ratio**
- **Boost pressure**

▼ **Guidance screen**



When the “i/SET” switch is pulled and held, the selection screen can be displayed.

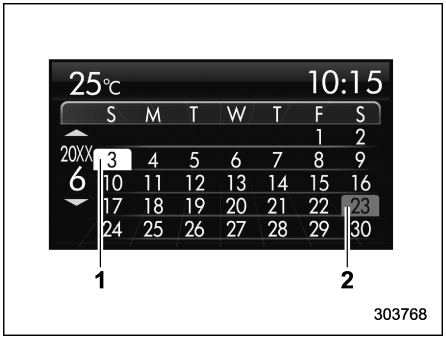
The displayed contents can be set or customized from the selection screen. For details, refer to “Selection screen” ☞3-56.

– CONTINUED –

▼ **Clock/calendar screen**

Clock (Type A)

Clock (Type B)



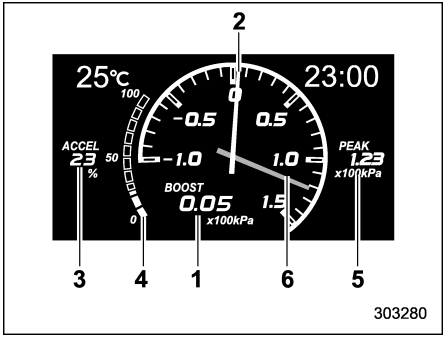
Calendar

1) Today's date
2) Birthday/Anniversary/Scheduled maintenance date

In addition to the clock/calendar, the outside temperature and average fuel consumption can also be displayed.

You can select "Type A clock", "Type B clock", or "Calendar". The clock/calendar can also be set so that it is not displayed. For details, refer to "Clock/calendar screen setting" ☞3-74.

▼ **"Boost pressure" and "Accelerator opening ratio" screen (turbo petrol engine models)**



1) Boost pressure (digital format)
2) Boost pressure (analog format)
3) Accelerator opening ratio (digital format)
4) Accelerator opening ratio (analog format)
5) Peak value of boost pressure (digital format)
6) Peak value of boost pressure (analog format)

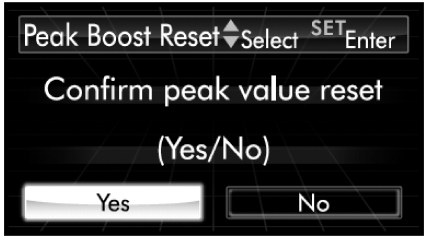
This screen displays the boost pressure, the accelerator opening ratio and the peak value of the boost pressure in both the digital and analog formats.

Also, the peak value of the boost pressure is stored if the ignition switch is turned to the "ACC" or "LOCK"/"OFF" position. To reset the peak value, perform the following

procedure.

Resetting procedure of boost pressure peak value

1. Pull the "i/SET" switch on the steering wheel toward you while the "Boost pressure" and "Accelerator opening ratio" screen is displayed. Then the following confirmation screen will appear.



2. Select "Yes" by operating the "▼" switch on the steering wheel, and confirm the resetting by pulling the "i/SET" switch toward you.

If you select "No", the current peak value is still kept.

– CONTINUED –

■ Selection screen

When the "[i]/SET" switch is pulled and held, the setting screen for each menu can be displayed. Select the preferred menu by operating the "▲" or "▼" switch.

Top menu	Menu option	Description		Page
Date	Time / Date	Set and adjust the time and date. 12h or 24h format can be selected.		3-59
	Birthday	Set a birthday.		3-60
	Anniversary	Set an anniversary day.		3-63
	Day Light Saving Time	Set the day light saving time on or off		3-65
	Delivery Setting (Australia models)	Set a delivery date		3-66
	Go Back	Return to the top menu.		
Display	Contrast	Adjust the contrast.	+5 ↔ −5	3-68
	Screen Off	Turn the screen on or off.	On or Off	3-68
	Beep	Adjust the beep sound volume.	High, Low or Off	3-69
	Go Back	Return to the top menu.		

Top menu	Menu option	Description		Page
Screen Setting	Top Display	Set and customize the top display information contents.	Avg Cons, Inst Cons, Range or Off	3-70
	Cons	Customize the fuel consumption information display.		3-71
	Eco History	Set and customize the time of logging fuel consumption history.	30 min, 60 min or 120 min	3-72
	Triple Meter	Set and customize the triple meter.		3-73
	Clock	Select the clock format.	Type A, Type B, Calendar or Off	3-74
	Bypass Screen	Set the bypass screen for each item.	On or Off	3-75
	Languages	Select the display language.		3-76
	Go Back	Return to the top menu.		
Maintenance	Engine Oil	Set and adjust the oil maintenance notification date.		3-78
	Oil Filter	Set and adjust the oil filter maintenance notification date.		3-79
	Tires	Set and adjust the tire maintenance notification date.		3-79
	Maintenance Schedule	Set and adjust the vehicle maintenance notification date.		3-79
	On/Off	Turn on or off the self-check screen that is activated when the ignition switch is turned to the “ON” position.	On or Off	3-79
	Clear All Settings	Clear all settings for maintenance items.	Yes or No	3-80
	Go Back	Return to the top menu.		
Driving History	Set	Register and overwrite the driving record.		3-81
	Go Back	Return to the top menu.		

– CONTINUED –

Top menu	Menu option	Description		Page
Car Setting	Hazard Warning Flasher	Set the hazard warning flasher.	On or Off	3-82
	Security Relocking*1	Set and customize the automatic locking operation period.	20, 30, 40, 50, 60 seconds or Off	3-84
	Defogger	Set and customize the operation of the defogger.	15 minutes or Continuous	3-85
	Interior Light	Set and customize the interior light off delay timer.	10, 20, 30 seconds or Off	3-86
	Go Back	Return to the top menu.		
Initialize	Reset to Defaults	Reset all settings to the default settings.	Yes or No	3-87
	Lifetime Fuel Consumption Reset	Clear logged lifetime fuel consumption data.	Yes or No	3-88
	Go Back	Return to the top menu.		
Go Back	—	Return to the top menu.		

*1: If equipped

■ Date and time settings

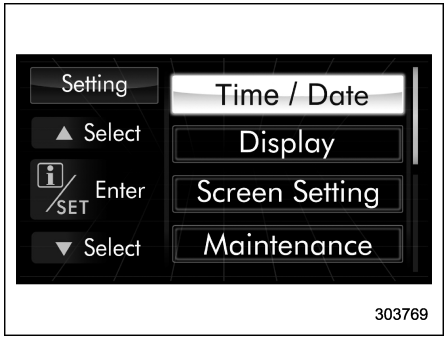
The items in the date and time settings can be set. To change the items, operate the "▲" or "▼" switch.

NOTE

• The "Date" item must be set to display the "Birthday", "Anniversary" and notifications for vehicle maintenance.
• The "Birthday" and "Anniversary" items can be entered after the "Date" item has been set.
• Dates that do not exist in the Gregorian calendar cannot be set (for example, April 31).
• If your vehicle is equipped with genuine SUBARU navigation system, the clock of navigation system must be set separately.

▼ Preparation for date setting

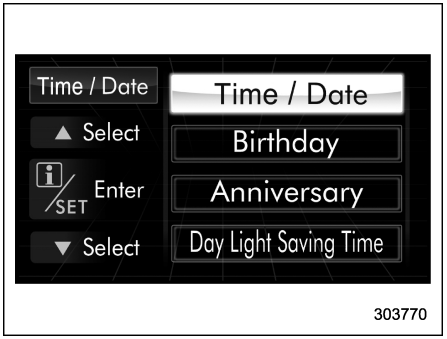
1. Turn the ignition switch to the "ON" position.
2. Pull and hold the "i/SET" switch toward you to show the selection screen.



3. After the selection screen is displayed, operate the "▲" or "▼" switch to show the "Time / Date" item. Then, pull the "i/SET" switch toward you.

▼ Current date and time setting

1. Perform the preparation steps according to "Preparation for date setting" ☞3-59.



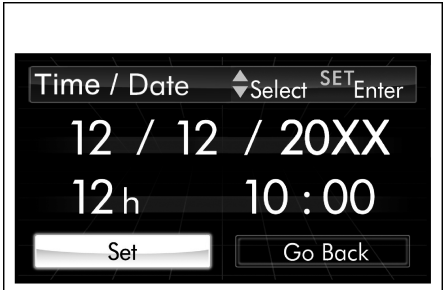
2. Operate the "▲" or "▼" switch to select the "Time / Date" item, and then pull the "i/SET" switch toward you.

3. Select the item to set by operating the "▲" or "▼" switch, and then pull the "i/SET" switch toward you.

– CONTINUED –

303772

4. Select a number by operating the "▲" or "▼" switch, and then pull the "i/SET" switch toward you. When "12 h" is selected, the clock is set to a 12-hour display. When "24 h" is selected, the clock is set to a 24-hour display.



303773

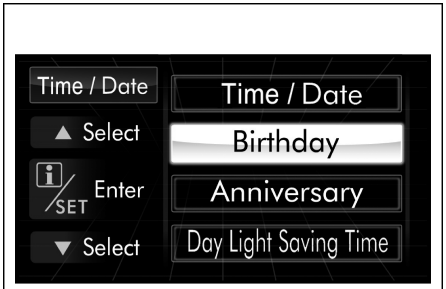
5. After entering the date and time, select "Set" by operating the "▼" switch and confirm the setting by pulling the "i/SET" switch toward you.

303774

6. The system will notify you that the setting is complete.

▼ Birthday setting

1. Perform the preparation steps according to "Preparation for date setting" ☞3-59.



303775

2. Operate the "▲" or "▼" switch to select the "Birthday" item, and then pull the "i/SET" switch toward you.

302399

3. Select the item to set by operating the "▲" or "▼" switch, and then pull the "i/SET" switch toward you.

302400

4. The selected item will be shown.
   – Pull the "i/SET" switch toward you to set the selected item.
   – If you want to select the other item, operate the "▲" switch to go back to step 3.

302401

5. Select numbers by operating the "▲" or "▼" switch, and then pull the "i/SET" switch toward you.

302402

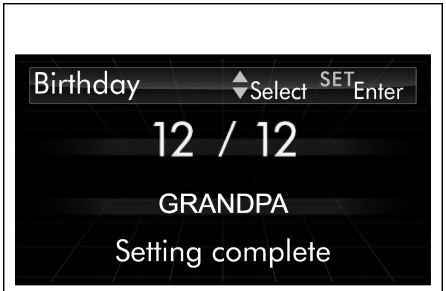
6. After entering the date by repeating step 5, you can enter the name.

302403

7. Select characters by operating the "▲" or "▼" switch, and then pull the "i/SET" switch toward you.
   – You can select characters of the English alphabet (upper case characters and lower case characters are available), eleven symbols or blank spaces.
   – The word being edited will be displayed with an underline.

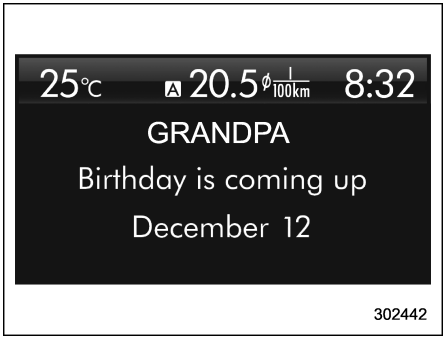
– CONTINUED –

8. After entering the name by repeating step 7, select “Set” by operating the “▼” switch and confirm the setting by pulling the “i/SET” switch toward you.

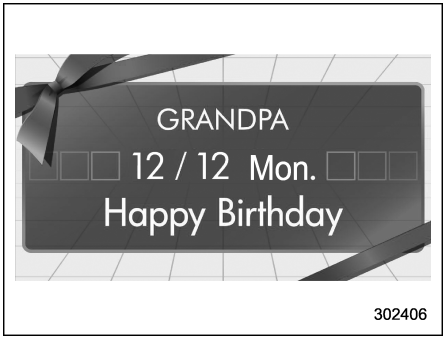


9. The system will notify you that the setting is complete.

If a birthday is approaching, the following screen will be displayed accompanied by a beep when the ignition switch has been turned to the “ON” position. This function can be set to on or off. For details, refer to “Bypass screen setting” ☞3-75.



From 1 to 7 days prior to the birthday



On a birthday

NOTE

If “_ _” is selected for either the “Month” or “Day” item instead of numbers, the birthday notification will be deactivated.

▼ Anniversary setting

1. Perform the preparation steps according to “Preparation for date setting” ☞3-59.

303776

2. Operate the “▲” or “▼” switch to select the “Anniversary” item, and then pull the “i/SET” switch toward you.

302407

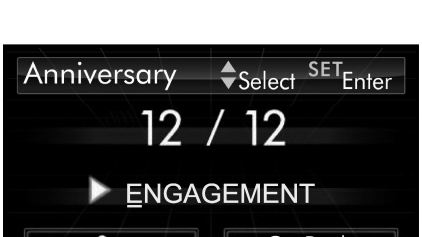
3. Select the item to set by operating the “▲” or “▼” switch, and then pull the “i/SET” switch toward you.

302408

4. The selected item will be shown.
   – Pull the “i/SET” switch toward you to set the selected item.
   – If you want to select another item, operate the “▲” switch to go back to step 3.

302409

5. Select numbers by operating the “▲” or “▼” switch, and then pull the “i/SET” switch toward you.



302410

– CONTINUED –

6. After entering the date by repeating step 5, you can enter the name.

302411

7. Select characters by operating the "▲" or "▼" switch, and then pull the "ⓘ/SET" switch toward you.
   – You can select characters of the English alphabet (upper case characters and lower case characters are available), eleven symbols or blank spaces.
   – The word being edited will be displayed with an underline.

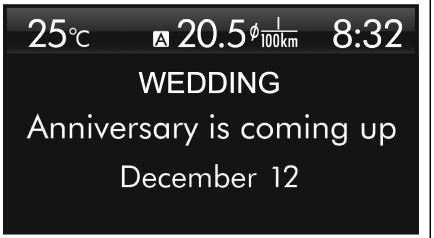
302412

8. After entering the name by repeating step 7, select "Set" by operating the "▼" switch and confirm the setting by pulling the "ⓘ/SET" switch toward you.

302413

9. The system will notify you that the setting is complete.

If an anniversary is approaching, the following screen will be displayed accompanied by a beep when the ignition switch has been turned to the "ON" position. This function can be set to on or off. For details, refer to "Bypass screen setting" ☞3-75.



302443

From 1 to 7 days prior to the anniversary

302414

On an anniversary

NOTE

If "_ _" is selected for either the "Month" or "Day" item instead of numbers, the anniversary notification will be deactivated.

▼ Clearing birthday or anniversary

1. Perform the preparation steps according to "Preparation for date setting" ☞3-59 and display "Birthday" or "Anniversary" on the screen.
2. Select the preferred birthday/anniversary.
3. When "_ _" is selected for either the "Month" or "Day" item instead of numbers, the setting of "Birthday" or "Anniversary" will be cleared.

▼ Daylight saving time setting

1. Perform the preparation steps according to "Preparation for date setting" ☞3-59.

303777

2. Operate the "▲" or "▼" switch to select the "Day Light Saving Time" item, and then pull the "i/SET" switch toward you.

302419

3. The current setting will be displayed. Pull the "i/SET" switch toward you to enter the selection mode.

302420

4. Select "Summer" or "Winter" by operating the "▲" or "▼" switch, and then pull the "i/SET" switch toward you.

– CONTINUED –

302421

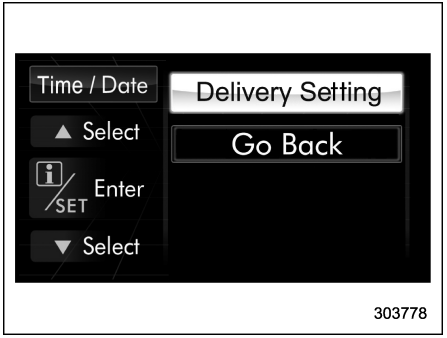
5. Select “Set” by operating the “▼” switch, and confirm the setting by pulling the “i/SET” switch toward you.

302422

6. The system will notify you that the setting is complete.

▼ **Delivery date setting (Australia models)**

1. Perform the preparation steps according to “Preparation for date setting” ☞3-59.



303778

2. Operate the “▲” or “▼” switch to select the “Delivery Setting” item, and then pull the “i/SET” switch toward you.

303779

3. The current setting will be displayed. Pull the “i/SET” switch toward you to enter the setting mode.

303780

4. Select a number by operating the “▲” or “▼” switch, and then pull the “i/SET” switch toward you.

303781

5. Select “Set” by operating the “▼” switch, and confirm the setting by pulling the “i/SET” switch toward you.

303782

6. The system will notify you that the setting is complete.

303783

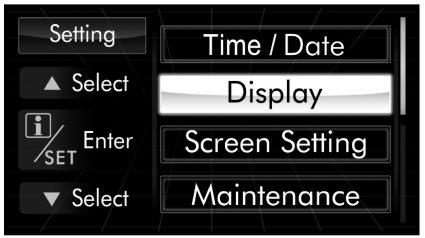
When you turn the ignition switch to the “ON” position on the set delivery date, a special welcome message will be displayed only on that vehicle delivery date. It is displayed every time you turn the ignition switch to the “ON” position that day.

■ Image quality and volume settings

The items in the image quality and volume settings can be set. To change the items, operate the “▲” or “▼” switch.

▼ Preparation for image quality and volume settings

1. Turn the ignition switch to the “ON” position.
2. Pull and hold the “i/SET” switch toward you to show the selection screen.



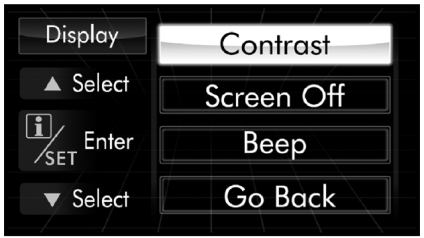
303784

3. After the selection screen is displayed, operate the “▲” or “▼” switch to show the “Display” item. Then, pull the “i/SET” switch toward you.

– CONTINUED –

▼ Contrast setting

1. Perform the preparation steps according to “Preparation for image quality and volume settings” ☞3-67.



303810

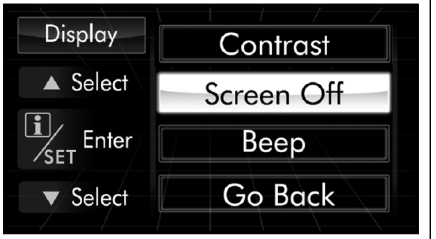
2. Operate the “▲” or “▼” switch to select the “Contrast” item, and then pull the “i/SET” switch toward you.

302069

3. Select a contrast level by operating the “▲” or “▼” switch, and confirm the setting by pulling the “i/SET” switch toward you.

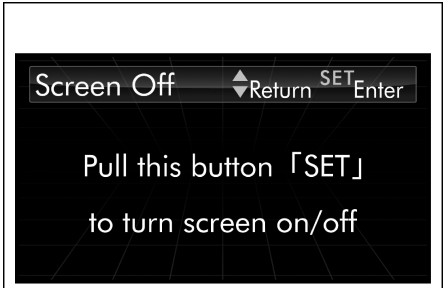
▼ Screen OFF setting

1. Perform the preparation steps according to “Preparation for image quality and volume settings” ☞3-67.



303811

2. Operate the “▲” or “▼” switch to select the “Screen Off” item, and then pull the “i/SET” switch toward you.



302071

3. Pull the “i/SET” switch once more toward you.

302072

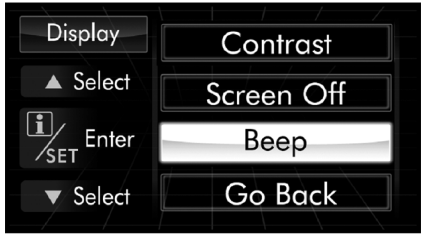
4. The screen will be turned off.

Restoring the screen

When the "▲", "▼" or "i/SET" switch is pulled toward you after the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position, the screen will be restored. The screen will be restored with the basic screen that was displayed when the screen was turned off. While the screen is off, a warning message will be displayed if necessary, but other screens will not be displayed.

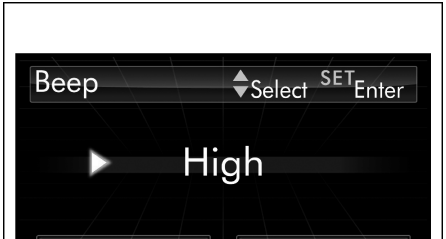
▼ Beep volume setting

1. Perform the preparation steps according to "Preparation for image quality and volume settings" ☞3-67.



303812

2. Operate the "▲" or "▼" switch to select the "Beep" item, and then pull the "i/SET" switch toward you.

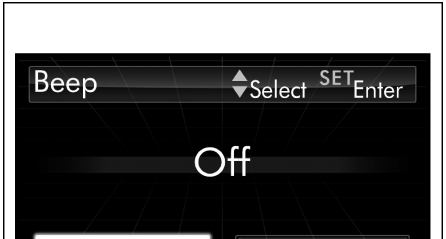


302590

3. Pull the "i/SET" switch toward you.

302591

4. Select an item by operating the "▲" or "▼" switch, and then pull the "i/SET" switch toward you.



302592

5. Select "Set" by operating the "▼" switch, and confirm the setting by pulling the "i/SET" switch toward you.

– CONTINUED –

302077

6. The system will notify you that the setting is complete.

■ Screen settings

The items in the screen settings can be set. To change the items, operate the "▲" or "▼" switch, and then pull the "ⓘ/SET" switch toward you.

▼ Preparation for screen settings

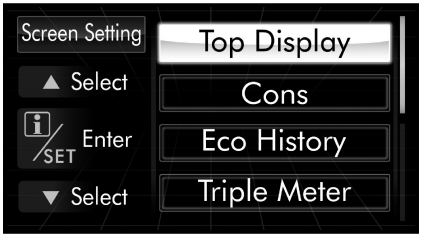
1. Turn the ignition switch to the "ON" position.
2. Pull and hold the "ⓘ/SET" switch toward you to show the selection screen.

303785

3. After the selection screen is displayed, operate the "▲" or "▼" switch to show the "Screen Setting" item. Then, pull the "ⓘ/SET" switch toward you.

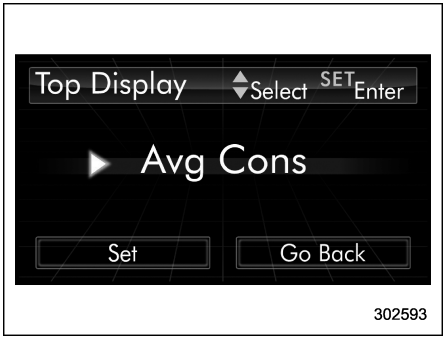
▼ Top display setting

1. Perform the preparation steps according to "Preparation for screen settings" ☞3-70.



302079

2. Operate the "▲" or "▼" switch to select the "Top Display" item, and then pull the "ⓘ/SET" switch toward you.



302593

3. Pull the "ⓘ/SET" switch once more.

302594

4. Select an item by operating the "▲" or "▼" switch, and then pull the "i/SET" switch toward you.

302595

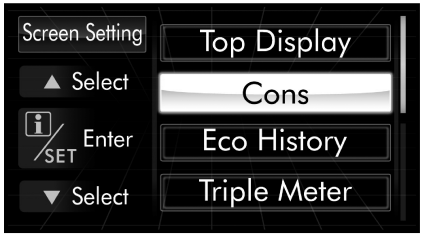
5. Select "Set" by operating the "▼" switch, and confirm the setting by pulling the "i/SET" switch toward you.

302083

6. The system will notify you that the setting is complete.

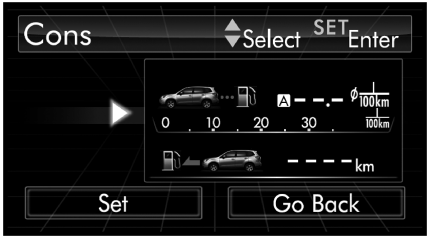
▼ Fuel consumption screen setting

1. Perform the preparation steps according to "Preparation for screen settings" ☞3-70.



302084

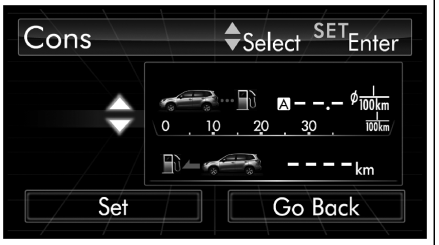
2. Operate the "▲" or "▼" switch to select the "Cons" item, and then pull the "i/SET" switch toward you.



303833

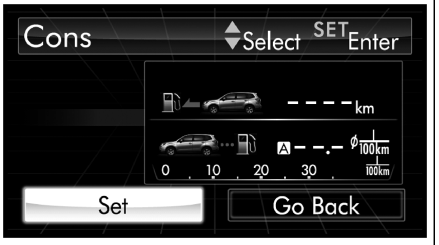
3. Pull the "i/SET" switch once more.

– CONTINUED –



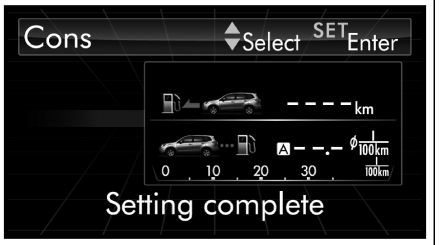
303834

4. Select the displayed configuration by operating the "▲" or "▼" switch, and then pull the "i/SET" switch toward you.



303835

5. Select "Set" by operating the "▼" switch, and confirm the setting by pulling the "i/SET" switch toward you.

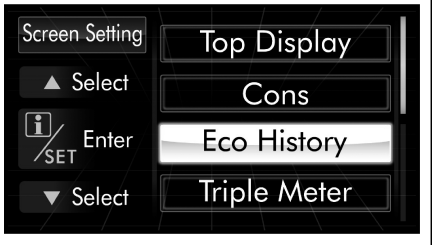


303836

6. The system will notify you that the setting is complete.

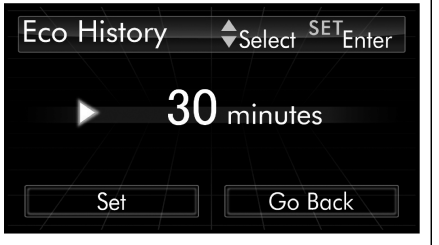
▼ Economy history setting

1. Perform the preparation steps according to "Preparation for screen settings" ☞3-70.



302089

2. Operate the "▲" or "▼" switch to select the "Eco History" item, and then pull the "i/SET" switch toward you.



302599

3. Pull the "i/SET" switch once more.

302600

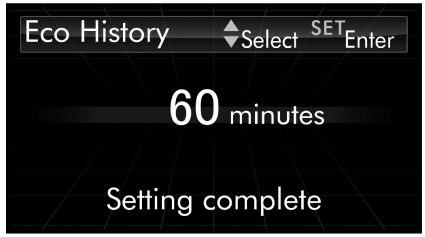
4. Select the time of the logged fuel consumption history by operating the "▲" or "▼" switch, and then pull the "i/SET" switch toward you.

302601

5. Select "Go Back" by operating "▲" switch.

302602

6. Select "Set" by operating the "▲" switch and confirm the setting by pulling the "i/SET" switch toward you.

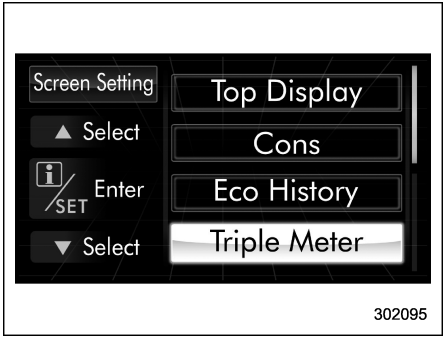


302094

7. The system will notify you that the setting is complete.

▼ Triple meter setting

1. Perform the preparation steps according to "Preparation for screen settings" ☞3-70.



302095

2. Operate the "▲" or "▼" switch to select the "Triple Meter" item, and then pull the "i/SET" switch toward you.

– CONTINUED –

302603

3. Select the setting location (left, center or right) by operating the "▲" or "▼" switch, and then pull the "i/SET" switch toward you.

NOTE

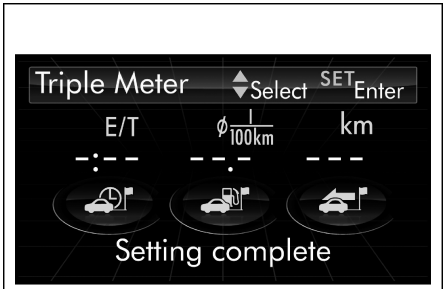
- **The same item cannot be selected for the left, center or right location.**
- **The "Engine oil temperature" item cannot be selected for the diesel engine models.**

302604

4. Select the preferred item by operating the "▲" or "▼" switch, and then pull the "i/SET" switch toward you.
If you also want to change the setting for another location, repeat steps 3 and 4.

302605

5. Select "Set" by operating the "▼" switch, and confirm the setting by pulling the "i/SET" switch toward you.

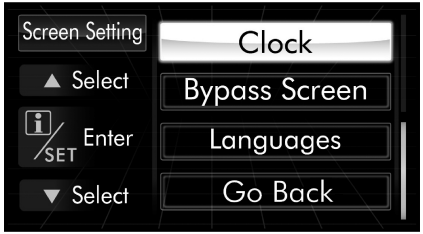


302099

6. The system will notify you that the setting is complete.

▼ Clock/calendar screen setting

1. Perform the preparation steps according to "Preparation for screen settings" ☞3-70.



302606

2. Operate the "▲" or "▼" switch to select the "Clock" item, and then pull the "i/SET" switch toward you.

303813

3. The current setting will be displayed. Pull the "i/SET" switch toward you to enter the selection mode.

303814

4. Select "Type A clock", "Type B clock", "Calendar" or "OFF" by operating the "▲" or "▼" switch and then pull the "i/SET" switch toward you.

303815

5. Select "Set" by operating the "▼" switch, and confirm the setting by pulling the "i/SET" switch toward you.

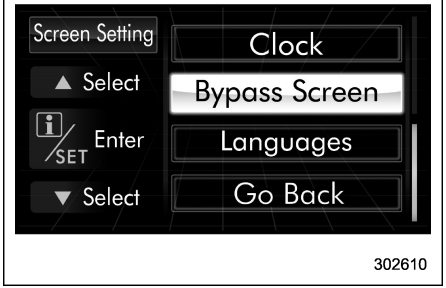
303816

6. The system will notify you that the setting is complete.

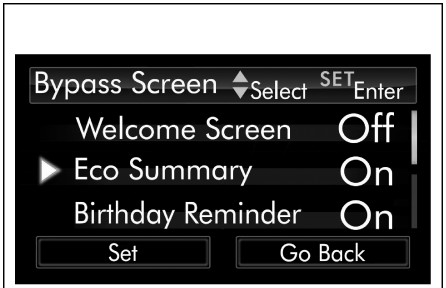
▼ Bypass screen setting

1. Perform the preparation steps according to "Preparation for screen settings" ☞3-70.

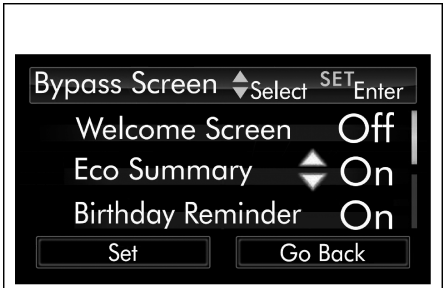
– CONTINUED –



2. Operate the "▲" or "▼" switch to select the "Bypass Screen" item, and then pull the "i/SET" switch toward you.

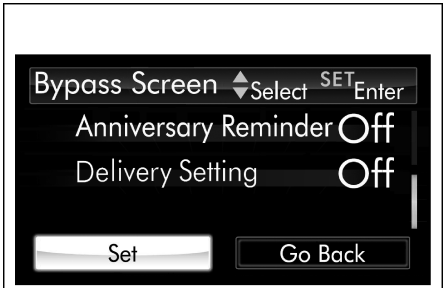


3. Select the item to set by operating the "▲" or "▼" switch, and then pull the "i/SET" switch toward you.

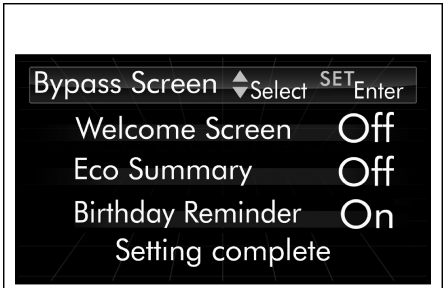


4. Select "On" or "Off" by operating the "▲" or "▼" switch, and pull the "i/SET" switch toward you.

If you want to change setting for another item, repeat steps 3 and 4.



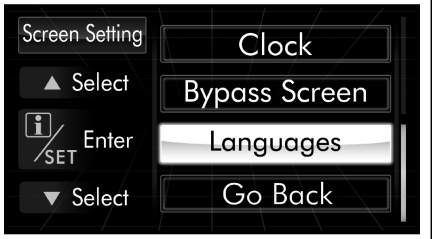
5. Select "Set" by operating the "▲" or "▼" switch, and confirm the setting by pulling the "i/SET" switch toward you.



6. The system will notify you that the setting is complete.

▼ Language setting

1. Perform the preparation steps according to "Preparation for screen settings" ☞3-70.

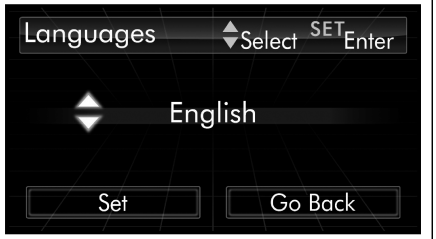


302613

2. Operate the "▲" or "▼" switch to select the "Languages" item, and then pull the "i/SET" switch toward you.

302614

3. The current language setting will be displayed. Pull the "i/SET" switch toward you to enter the language selection mode.

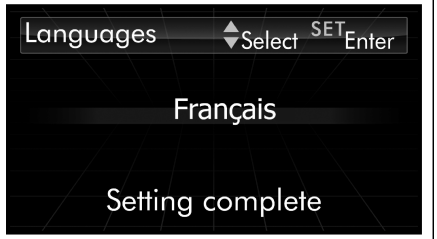


302615

4. Select the preferred language by operating the "▲" or "▼" switch, and then pull the "i/SET" switch toward you.

302616

5. Select "Set" by operating the "▼" switch, and confirm the setting by pulling the "i/SET" switch toward you.



302114

6. The system will notify you that the setting is complete.

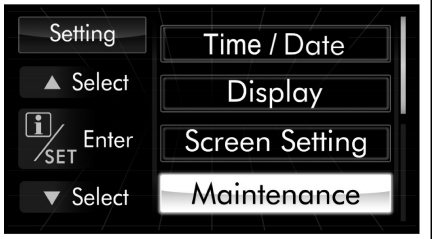
■ Maintenance settings

The items in the maintenance settings can be set. To change the items, operate the "▲" or "▼" switch toward you.

▼ Preparation for maintenance settings

1. Turn the ignition switch to the "ON" position.
2. Pull and hold the "i/SET" switch toward you to show the selection screen.

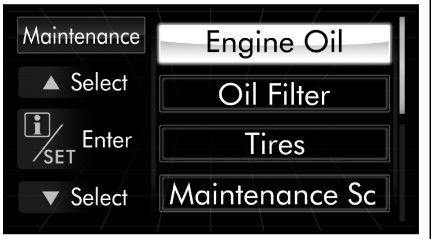
– CONTINUED –



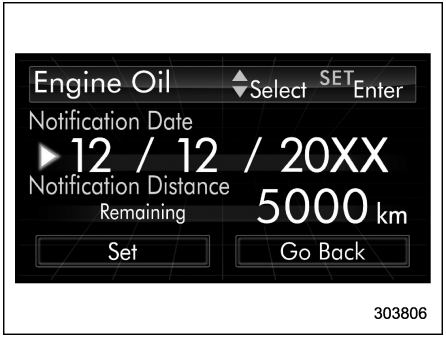
3. After the selection screen is displayed, operate the "▲" or "▼" switch to show the "Maintenance" item. Then, pull the "ⓘ/SET" switch toward you.

▼ Engine oil setting

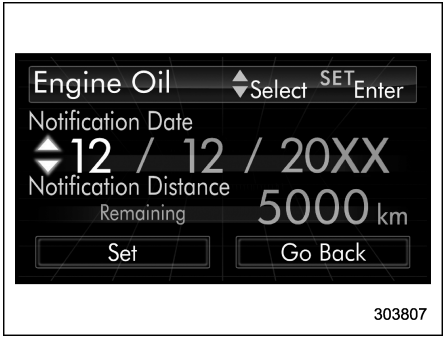
1. Perform the preparation steps according to "Preparation for maintenance settings" ☞3-77.



2. Operate the "▲" or "▼" switch to select the "Engine Oil" item, and then pull the "ⓘ/SET" switch toward you.

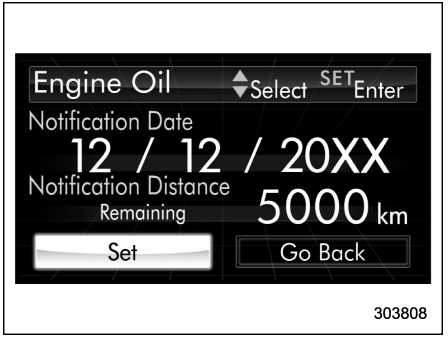


3. Select the setting location (month, day, year or distance) by operating the "▲" or "▼" switch, and then pull the "ⓘ/SET" switch toward you.



4. Select a number by operating the "▲" or "▼" switch, and then pull the "ⓘ/SET" switch toward you.

If you also want to change the setting for another location, repeat steps 3 and 4.



5. Select “Set” by operating the “▲” or “▼” switch and confirm the setting by pulling the “i/SET” switch toward you.

303809

6. The system will notify you that the setting is complete.

NOTE

- **The notification will be displayed with information of both date and distance or either date or distance in accordance with the setting.**
- **When “_ _” is selected for either the “Month”, “Day”, “Year” or “Distance” item instead of numbers, the set notification will be deactivated.**
- **If the notification continues for 15 days or more, the system will display “_ _” on the screen.**
- **When the distance announcement reaches 0 km, the display will show “0000” for the next 500 km (311 miles). After exceeding 500 km (311 miles), “_ _ _ _” will be displayed.**

▼ Oil filter setting

The setting procedure is the same as “Engine oil setting” ☞3-78, but select the “Oil Filter” item in step 2.

▼ Tires setting

The setting procedure is the same as “Engine oil setting” ☞3-78, but select the “Tires” item in step 2.

▼ Maintenance schedule setting

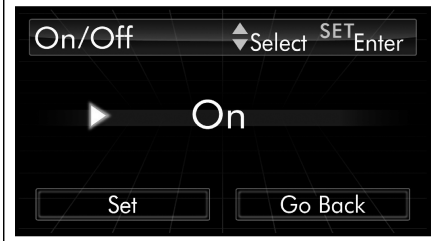
The setting procedure is the same as “Engine oil setting” ☞3-78, but select the “Maintenance Schedule” item in step 2.

▼ On/Off setting

1. Perform the preparation steps according to “Preparation for maintenance settings” ☞3-77.

302617

2. Operate the “▲” or “▼” switch to select the “On/Off” item, and then pull the “i/SET” switch toward you.

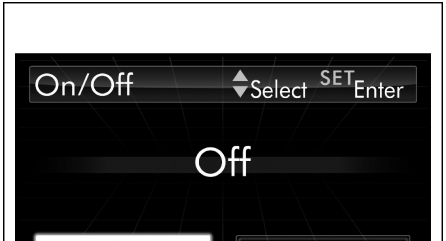


302618

3. The current setting will be displayed. Pull the “i/SET” switch toward you to enter the selection mode.

– CONTINUED –

4. Select “On” or “Off” by operating the “▲” or “▼” switch, and then pull the “ⓘ/SET” switch toward you.



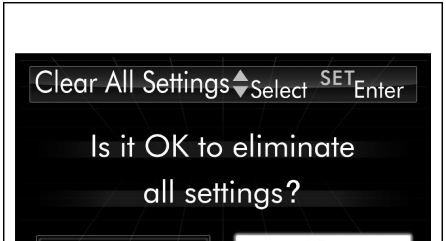
5. Select “Set” by operating the “▼” switch, and confirm the setting by pulling the “ⓘ/SET” switch toward you.

6. The system will notify you that the setting is complete.

▼ Clear setting

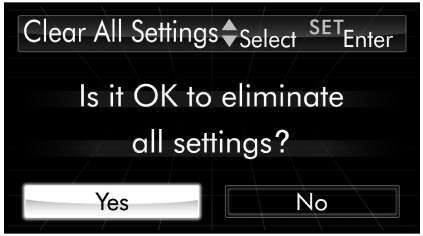
1. Perform the preparation steps according to “Preparation for maintenance settings” ☞3-77.

2. Operate the “▲” or “▼” switch to select the “Clear All Settings” item, and then pull the “ⓘ/SET” switch toward you.



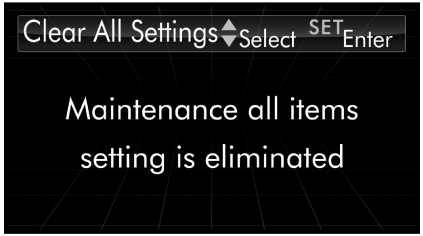
3. The system will prompt a Yes/No dialogue (“No” is selected first). To clear all maintenance settings, select “Yes” by

operating the "▼" switch.



302128

4. Confirm the setting by pulling the "i/SET" switch toward you.



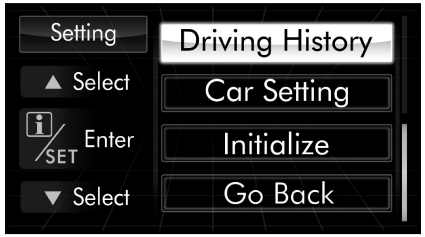
302129

5. The system will notify you that the setting is complete.

■ Driving history registration

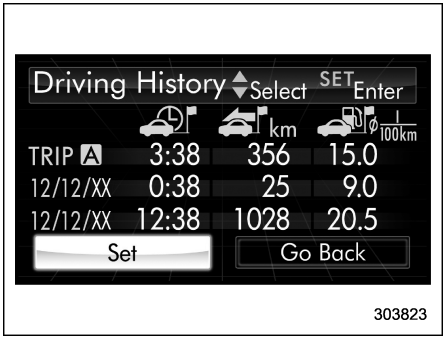
The items in the driving history can be registered. To change the items, operate the "▲" or "▼" switch, and then pull the "i/SET" switch toward you.

1. Turn the ignition switch to the "ON" position.
2. Pull and hold the "i/SET" switch toward you to show the selection screen.



302622

3. After the selection screen is displayed, operate the "▲" or "▼" switch to show the "Driving History" item. Then, pull the "i/SET" switch toward you.



303823

4. Pull the "i/SET" switch toward you once more to enter the setting mode.

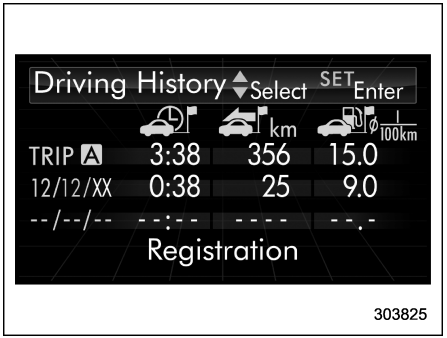
302575

5. The system will notify you of the place to be selected for approximately 2 seconds.

– CONTINUED –

6. Select one of the registration lines by operating the "▲" or "▼" switch, and then pull the "i/SET" switch toward you.

7. To overwrite the previous registration, pull the "i/SET" switch toward you. When registration is performed the first time, it will be registered directly without a notification.



8. The system will notify you that the registration is complete.

NOTE

The driving history can be registered for the trip meter A or B.

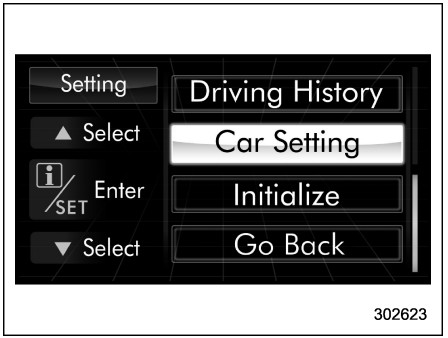
■ Car settings

The items in the car settings can be set. To change the items, operate the "▲" or "▼" switch, and then pull the "i/SET" switch toward you.

▼ Preparation for car settings

1. Turn the ignition switch to the "ON" position.

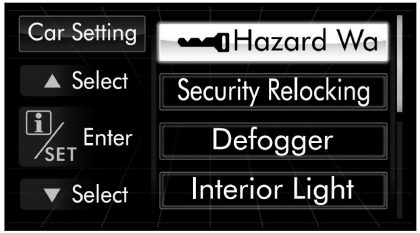
2. Pull and hold the "i/SET" switch toward you to show the selection screen.



3. After the selection screen is displayed, operate the "▲" or "▼" switch to show the "Car Setting" item. Then, pull the "i/SET" switch toward you.

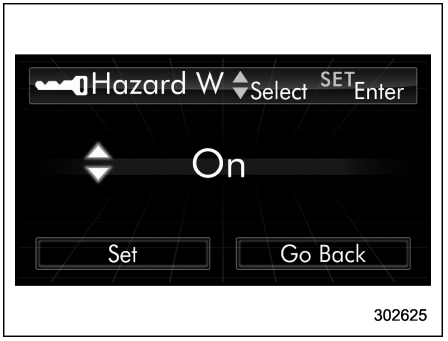
▼ Hazard warning flasher setting

1. Perform the preparation steps according to "Preparation for car settings" ☞3-82.



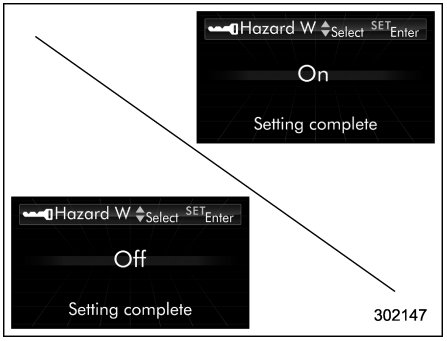
2. Operate the "▲" or "▼" switch to select the "Hazard Warning Flasher" item, and then pull the "i/SET" switch toward you.

3. The current setting will be displayed. Pull the "i/SET" switch toward you to enter the selection mode.



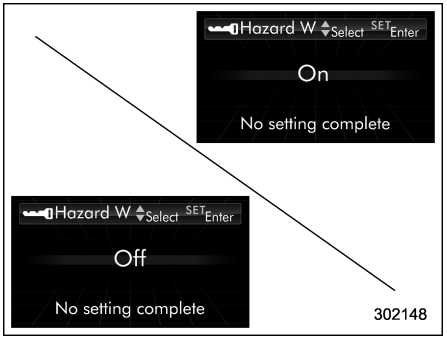
4. Select "On" or "Off" by operating the "▲" or "▼" switch, and then pull the "i/SET" switch toward you.

5. Select "Set" by operating the "▼" switch, and confirm the setting by pulling the "i/SET" switch toward you.



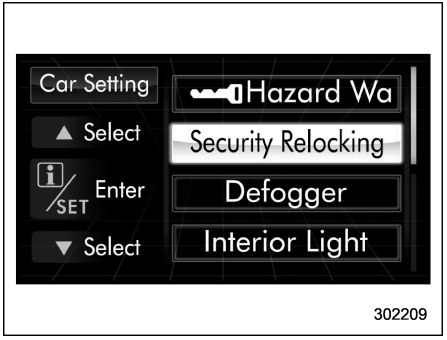
6. The system will notify you that the setting is complete.
If the setting is not available, the following notification will be displayed. In this case, perform the setting procedure again.

– CONTINUED –



▼ **Security Relocking**

1. Perform the preparation steps according to “Preparation for car settings” ☞3-82.



2. Operate the “▲” or “▼” switch to select the “Security Relocking” item, and then pull the “i/SET” switch toward you.

3. The current setting will be displayed. Pull the “i/SET” switch toward you to enter the selection mode.

4. Select the preferred setting by operating the “▲” or “▼” switch, and then pull the “i/SET” switch toward you.

5. Select “Set” by operating the “▼” switch, and confirm the setting by pulling the “i/SET” switch toward you.

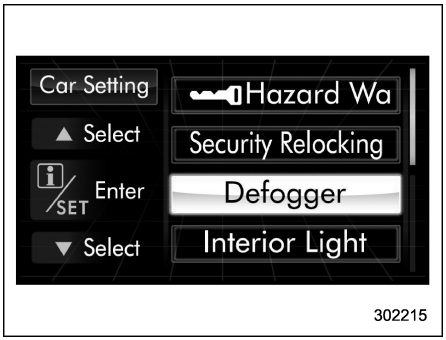
6. The system will notify you that the setting is complete.

If the setting is not available, the following notification will be displayed. In this case, perform the setting procedure again.

302214

▼ Defogger setting

1. Perform the preparation steps according to "Preparation for car settings" ☞3-82.



302215

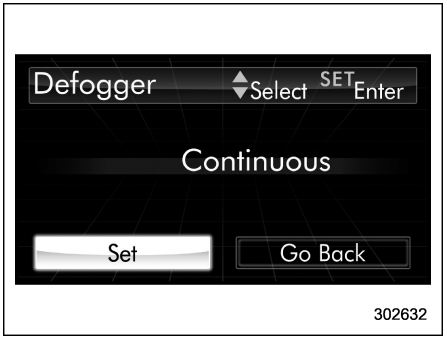
2. Operate the "▲" or "▼" switch to select the "Defogger" item, and then pull the "i/SET" switch toward you.

302630

3. The current setting will be displayed. Pull the "i/SET" switch toward you to enter the selection mode.

302631

4. Select the preferred setting by operating the "▲" or "▼" switch, and then pull the "i/SET" switch toward you.



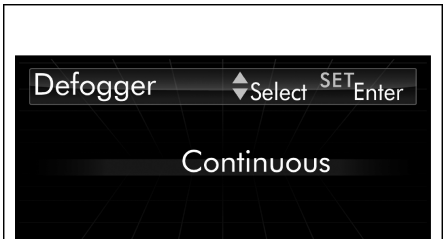
302632

5. Select "Set" by operating the "▼" switch, and confirm the setting by pulling the "i/SET" switch toward you.

– CONTINUED –

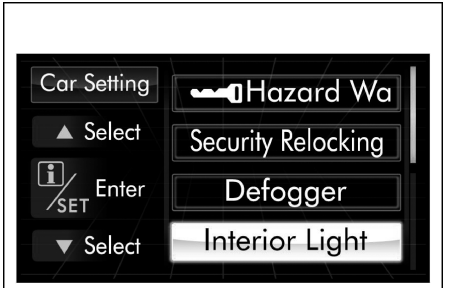
6. The system will notify you that the setting is complete.

If the setting is not available, the following notification will be displayed. In this case, perform the setting procedure again.

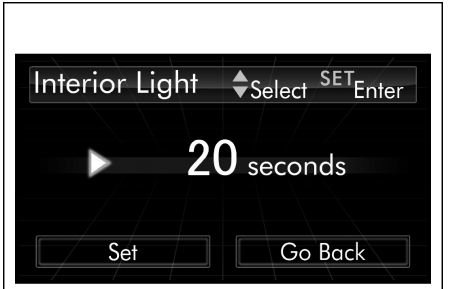


▼ **Interior light off delay timer setting**

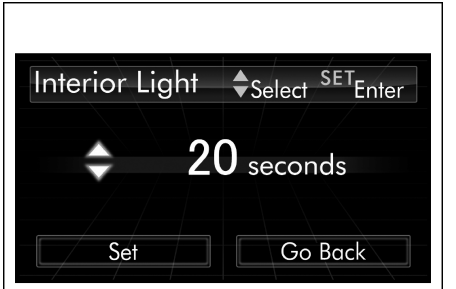
1. Perform the preparation steps according to “Preparation for car settings” ☞3-82.



2. Operate the “▲” or “▼” switch to select the “Interior Light” item, and then pull the “i/SET” switch toward you.

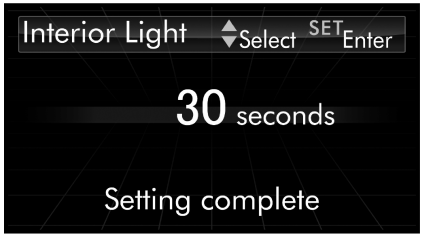


3. The current setting will be displayed. Pull the “i/SET” switch toward you to enter the selection mode.



4. Select the preferred setting by operating the “▲” or “▼” switch, and then pull the “i/SET” switch toward you.

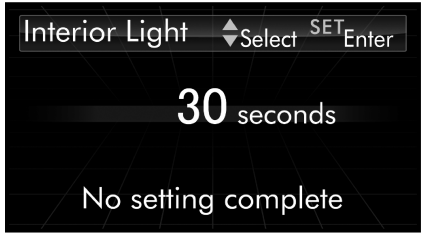
5. Select “Set” by operating the “▼” switch, and confirm the setting by pulling the “i/SET” switch toward you.



302159

6. The system will notify you that the setting is complete.

If the setting is not available, the following notification will be displayed. In this case, perform the setting procedure again.



302160

■ Initialize

Items that have been set to your preference can be initialized. To select an initialization menu, operate the “▲” or “▼” switch as follows.

▼ Preparation for initialization

1. Turn the ignition switch to the “ON” position.
2. Pull and hold the “i/SET” switch toward you to show the selection screen.

302636

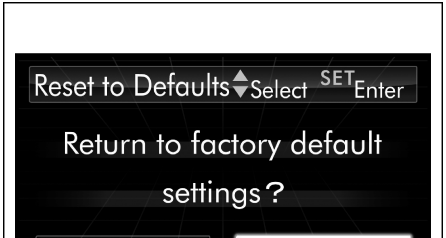
3. After the selection screen is displayed, operate the “▲” or “▼” switch to show the “Initialize” item. Then, pull the “i/SET” switch toward you.

▼ Reset to factory default settings

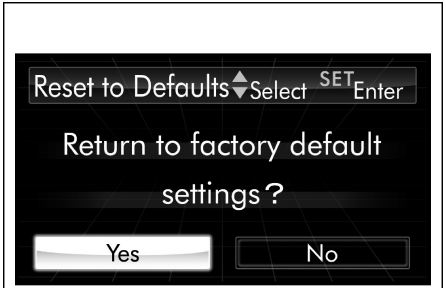
1. Perform the preparation steps according to “Preparation for initialization” ☞3-87.

– CONTINUED –

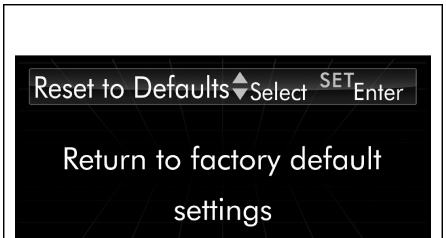
2. Operate the "▲" or "▼" switch to select the "Reset to Defaults" item, and then pull the "i/SET" switch toward you.



3. The system will prompt a Yes/No dialogue ("No" is selected first). To return to the factory default settings, select "Yes" by operating the "▼" switch.



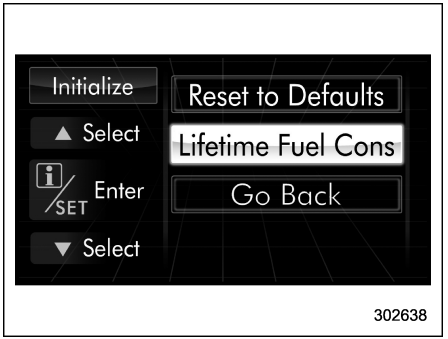
4. Confirm the setting by pulling the "i/SET" switch toward you.



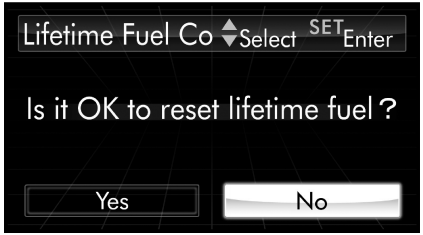
5. The system will notify you that the setting is complete.

▼ Lifetime fuel consumption resetting

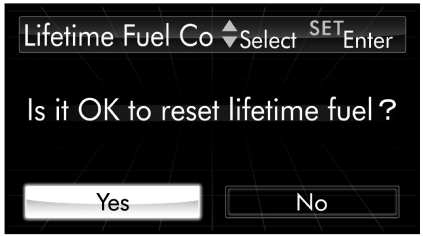
1. Perform the preparation steps according to "Preparation for initialization" ☞3-87.



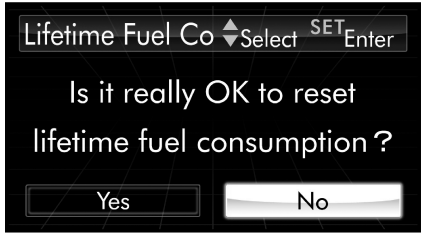
2. Operate the "▲" or "▼" switch to select the "Lifetime Fuel Consumption Resetting" item, and then pull the "i/SET" switch toward you.



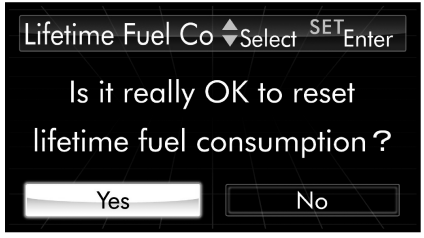
3. The system will prompt a Yes/No dialogue (“No” is selected first). To reset the lifetime fuel consumption, select “Yes” by operating the “▼” switch.



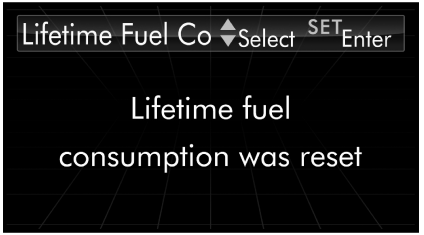
4. Confirm the setting by pulling the “i/SET” switch toward you.



5. Reconfirmation will be displayed. If you are sure you want to proceed, select “Yes” by operating the “▼” switch.



6. Confirm the setting again by pulling the “i/SET” switch toward you.



7. The system will notify you that the setting is complete.

Light control switch

⚠ CAUTION

- **Use of any lights for a long period of time while the engine is not running can cause the battery to discharge.**
- **Before leaving the vehicle, make sure that the light control switch is turned to the off position. If the vehicle is left unattended for a long time with the light control switch set to a position other than the off position, the battery may be discharged.**

Models with "keyless access with push-button start system":

The light control switch operates when the push-button ignition switch is in the "ACC" or "ON" position.

Regardless of the position of the light control switch, the illuminated lights are turned off when the push-button ignition switch is turned off.

Models without "keyless access with push-button start system":

The light control switch operates when the key is inserted in the ignition switch.

Regardless of the position of the light control switch, the illuminated lights are turned off when the key is removed from the ignition switch.

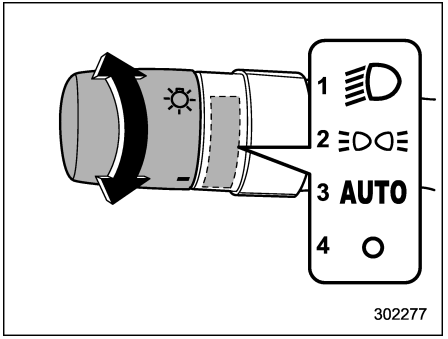
NOTE

The light control switch can be operated (except auto on/off headlights), even under the following conditions.

- **when the key is not inserted into the ignition switch (models without "keyless access with push-button start system")**
- **when the push-button ignition switch is turned off (models with "keyless access with push-button start system")**

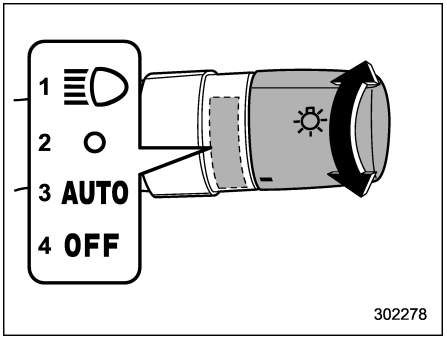
If the driver's door is opened while the headlights are illuminated under such conditions, the chirp sound will inform the driver that the lights are illuminated.

■ Headlights



Except Australia models

1) Second position
2) First position
3) Auto position
4) Off position



Australia models
1) Second position
2) First position
3) Auto position
4) Off position

To turn on the headlights, turn the knob on the end of the turn signal lever.

Second position:
Headlights, front position lights, instrument panel illumination, tail lights and license plate lights are on.

First position:
Front position lights, instrument panel illumination, tail lights and license plate lights are on.

Auto position: auto on/off headlights (if equipped):
When the ignition switch is in the "ON" position, the headlights, front position lights, instrument panel illumination, tail lights and license plate lights are **automatically on or off** depending on the level of the ambient light.

Off position:
The headlights are all off.

NOTE

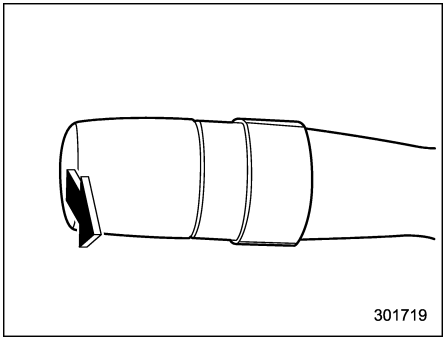
• The sensitivity of the auto on/off headlights can be changed by your SUBARU dealer. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer for details.
• When you drive in a foreign country in which the vehicular lane (left-hand traffic or right-hand traffic) is different from your country, to avoid blinding the oncoming driver, you need to block a part of the headlight lenses. For details, refer to "Driving in a foreign country in which the vehicular lane is different to your country" ☞8-5.

▼ Headlight off delay setting

The headlight off delay function turns on the headlights, etc. for smooth exiting from the vehicle at night or in a dark place.

NOTE

The factory setting (default setting) of the operation duration of the headlights and the exterior lights is 30 seconds. This setting can be changed to OFF (no operation), 30 seconds, 60 seconds, or 90 seconds at SUBARU dealers. For more details, we recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer.



When the ignition switch is turned off and the light control switch is in the "AUTO" (if equipped) or "OFF" position, if you pull the turn signal lever toward you, the headlight low beams and some exterior lights will

– CONTINUED –

illuminate as follows.

- Illuminates for 30 seconds after the driver's door is closed.
- Illuminates until you press the lock button on the access key/transmitter two times successively.
- Illuminates until you touch the door lock sensor on the door handle two times successively (models with "keyless access with push-button start system").

NOTE

- While the headlight off delay function is operating, if you perform any of the following operations, the headlights and exterior lights will turn off.

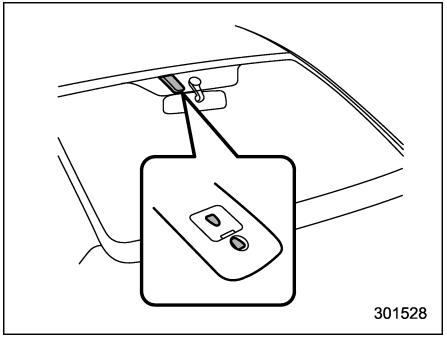
– Turn the ignition switch to the "ON" position.

– Pull the turn signal lever toward you.

– Set the light control switch to a position other than the "AUTO" (if equipped) or "OFF" position.

- If the driver's door is not opened and closed, these lights will turn off in 3 minutes.

▼ Sensor for the auto on/off headlights (rain light sensor) (if equipped)

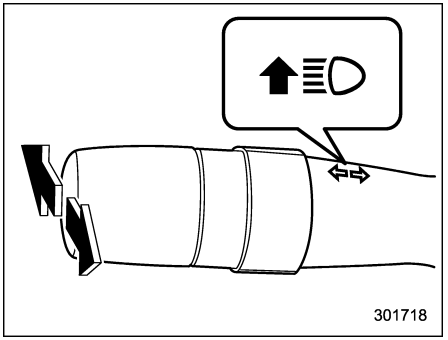


The sensor is on the windshield glass as shown in the illustration.

⚠ CAUTION

If any object is attached on or near the sensor, the sensor may not detect the level of ambient light correctly and the auto on/off headlights may not operate properly.

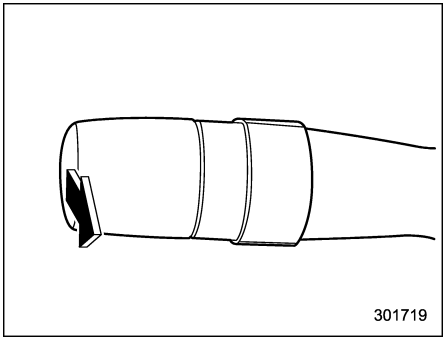
■ High/low beam change (dimmer)



To change from low beam to high beam, push the turn signal lever forward. When the headlights are on high beam, the high beam indicator light "≡D" on the combination meter is also on.

To switch back to low beam, pull the lever back to the center position.

■ Headlight flasher



⚠ CAUTION

Do not hold the lever in the flashing position for more than just a few seconds.

To flash the headlights, pull the lever toward you and then release it. The high beam will stay on for as long as you hold the lever. The headlight flasher works even though the lighting switch is in the off position.

When the headlights are on high beam, the high beam indicator light "≣D" on the combination meter is also on.

■ Daytime running light system (if equipped)

⚠ WARNING

The light switch must always be turned to the "≣D" position when it is dark outside.

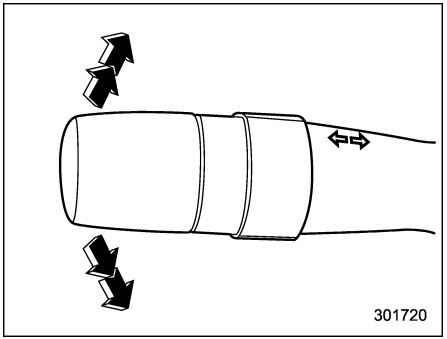
The daytime running light will automatically illuminate at reduced brightness when the following conditions are fulfilled.

- The engine is running.
- The light control switch is in the "AUTO" (if equipped) or off position.

NOTE

- **If the parking brake is applied when you start the engine, the daytime running light will illuminate when the parking brake is released.**
- **When the headlight switch is in the "≣DOE" or "≣D" position, the daytime running light system is deactivated.**
- **For models with the auto on/off headlights, while the headlight switch is in the "AUTO" position and the headlights turn on automatically, the daytime running light is deactivated.**

Turn signal lever



To activate the right turn signal, push the turn signal lever up. To activate the left turn signal, push the turn signal lever down. When the turn is finished, the lever will return automatically. If the lever does not return after cornering, return the lever to the neutral position by hand.

To signal a lane change, push the turn signal lever up or down slightly and hold it during the lane change. The turn signal indicator lights will flash in the direction of the turn or lane change. The lever will return automatically to the neutral position when you release it.

– CONTINUED –

NOTE

For models with a turn signal lever on the right side of the steering wheel, the pushing direction of the turn signal lever is the opposite of that described here.

■ One-touch lane changer

To flash the turn signal and turn signal indicator light three times, push the turn signal lever up or down slightly and immediately release it.

The operational/non-operational setting of the one-touch lane changer can be changed by a SUBARU dealer. We recommend that you contact the nearest SUBARU dealer for details.

Illumination brightness control

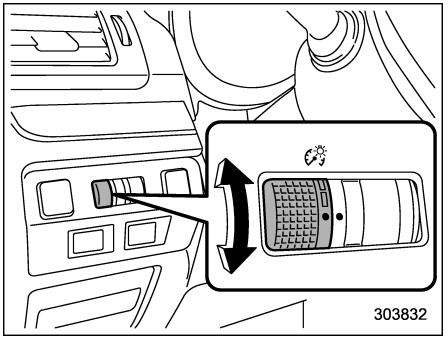
Automatic dimming

The illumination brightness of the instrument panel dims automatically under the following conditions.

- when the light switch is in the "≡DC≡" or "≡D" position (except Australia models)
- when the light switch is in the "O" or "≡D" position (Australia models)
- when the light control switch is in the "AUTO" position and the headlights turn on automatically (models with auto on/off headlights: Refer to "Headlights" ☞3-90.)

Manual adjustment

For better visibility, you can adjust the instrument panel brightness manually in the following ways.



To brighten, turn the control dial upward.
To darken, turn the control dial downward.

For models with the multi function display, the display automatically adjusts its brightness together with the brightness level of the instrument panel. To adjust the display's contrast, refer to "Contrast setting" ☞3-68.

NOTE

- **When the control dial is turned fully upward, the illumination brightness becomes the maximum and the automatic dimming function does not work at all.**
- **The brightness setting is not canceled even when the ignition switch is turned to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position.**

Headlight beam leveler (if equipped)

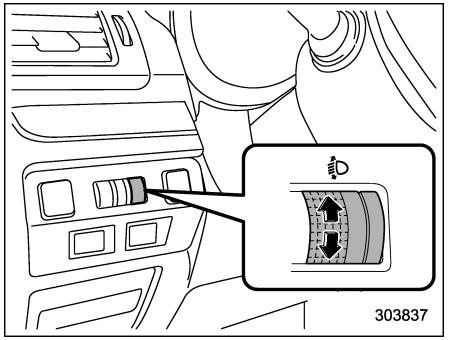
■ Automatic headlight beam leveler (models with HID headlights)

The HID headlights generate more light than conventional halogen headlights.

Therefore a driver of an oncoming vehicle may experience too much glare when your headlight beam height adjustment is high when the vehicle is carrying a heavy load.

The automatic headlight beam leveler adjusts the headlight beam height automatically and optimally according to the load being carried by the vehicle.

■ Manual headlight beam leveler (models without HID headlights)



Adjust the headlight beam level with the following dial positions according to the number of passengers and load condition.

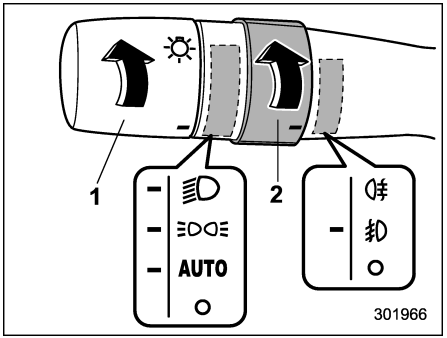
– CONTINUED –

Dial position	Number of front seat occupants	Number of rear seat occupants	Load in the luggage compartment area	Trailer towing
0	1 or 2	0	No load	No
1	2	3	No load	No
2	2	3	Full load*	No
3	1	0	Full load*	No
	1	0	Full load*	Yes
	2	3	Full load*	Yes
4 and 5	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable

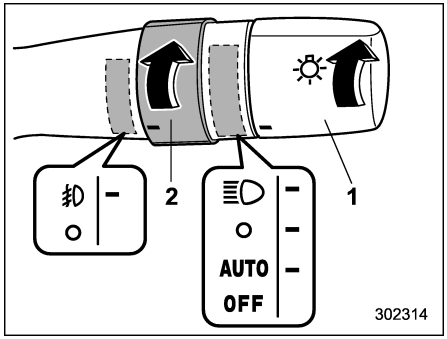
*: Up to maximum permissible weight

Fog light switch

■ Front fog light switch (if equipped)



Front fog light operating condition (except Australia models)
1) Headlight switch
2) Fog light switch



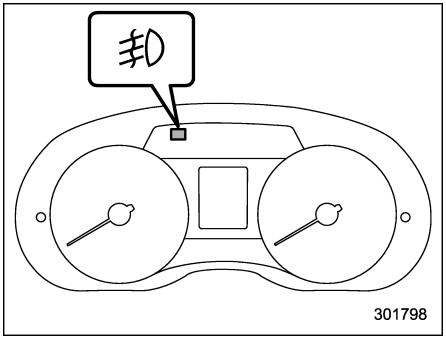
Front fog light operating condition (Australia models)
1) Headlight switch
2) Fog light switch

The front fog lights will turn on when the fog light switch is placed in the "⫤D" position while the headlights are in either of the following conditions.

- when the headlight switch is in the "≡DC≡" or "≡D" position (except Australia models)
- when the headlight switch is in the "O" or "≡D" position (Australia models)
- for models with the auto on/off headlights, while the headlight switch is in the "AUTO" position and the headlights turn on automatically

To turn off the front fog lights, turn the switch back down to the following positions.

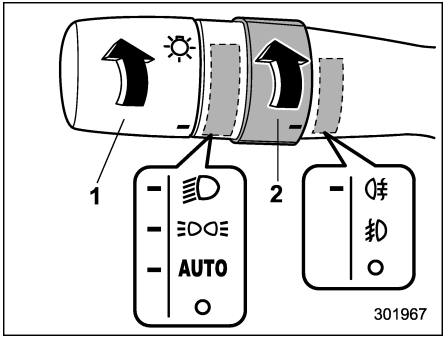
- "O" position (except Australia models)
- "OFF" position (Australia models)



The indicator light on the combination meter will illuminate when the front fog lights are illuminated.

– CONTINUED –

■ Rear fog light switch (if equipped)



Rear fog light operating condition
1) Headlight switch
2) Fog light switch

The rear fog light will turn on when the fog light switch is turned to the "⦶⇞" position while the headlights are in either of the following conditions.

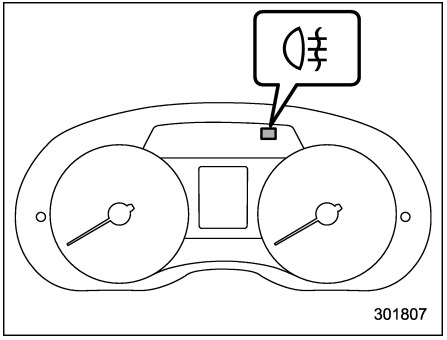
- while the headlight switch is in the "≣D◁≡" or "≣D" position
- for models with the auto on/off headlights, while the headlight switch is in the "AUTO" position and the headlights turn on automatically

The switch will return to the following position when released.

- "⇞⦶" position (models with front fog lights)
- "O" position (models without front fog lights)

To turn off the rear fog light, perform either of the following procedures.

- Turn the fog light switch upward back to the "⦶⇞" position again (all models)
- Turn the fog light switch downward to the "O" position (models with front fog lights)



The indicator light on the combination meter will illuminate when the rear fog light is illuminated.

NOTE

To prevent switching off the rear fog light from being forgotten, the rear fog light circuit is designed so that it turns off whenever one of the following operations is performed.

- **The headlight switch is set to either the "≣D◁≡" or "O" position.**
- **The headlight switch is set to the "AUTO" position and the headlights turn off (models with auto on/off headlights).**
- **The key is removed from the ignition switch (models without the "keyless access with push-button start system").**
- **The push-button ignition switch is turned off (models with the "keyless access with push-button start system").**

However, this does not mean that the rear fog light illuminates when the headlight switch is set to "≣D" position or the ignition switch is turned to "ON" position again. So, if you want to reilluminate the rear fog light, turn the fog light switch to the "⦶⇞" position.

Wiper and washer

⚠ WARNING

In freezing weather, do not use the windshield washer until the windshield is sufficiently warmed by the defroster.

Otherwise the washer fluid can freeze on the windshield, blocking your view.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Do not operate the washer continuously for more than 10 seconds, or when the washer fluid tank is empty. This may cause overheating of the washer motor. Check the washer fluid level frequently, such as at fuel stops.**
- **Do not operate the wipers when the windshield or rear window is dry. This may scratch the glass, damage the wiper blades and cause the wiper motor to burn out. Before operating the wiper on a dry windshield or rear window, always use the windshield washer.**
- **In freezing weather, be sure that the wiper blades are not frozen to the windshield or rear window before switching on the wipers. Attempting to operate the wiper with the blades frozen to the window glass could cause not only the wiper blades to be damaged but also the wiper motor to burn out. If the wiper blades are frozen to the window glass, be sure to operate the defroster, windshield wiper deicer (if equipped) or rear window defogger before turning on the wiper.**
- **If the wipers stop during operation because of ice or some other obstruction on the window, the wiper motor could burn out even if the wiper switch is turned off. If this occurs, promptly stop the vehicle in a safe place, turn the ignition switch to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position and clean the window glass to allow proper wiper operation.**
- **Use clean water if windshield washer fluid is unavailable. In areas where water freezes in winter, use SUBARU Windshield Washer Fluid or the equivalent. Refer to "Windshield washer fluid" ☞11-41.**

  Also, when driving the vehicle when there are freezing temperatures, use non-freezing type wiper blades.
- **Do not clean the wiper blades with fuel or a solvent, such as paint thinner or benzine. This will cause deterioration of the wiper blades.**

For models with automatic rain sensing windshield wipers:

- **When the wiper switch is in the "AUTO" position, do not touch the windshield near the rain light sensor and do not place a wet cloth on the windshield near the rain light sensor. Doing so may result in unexpected wiper operation and cause injury.**
- **When washing the vehicle, make sure that the wiper is turned off. Otherwise, the wipers may operate unexpectedly and cause injury.**
- **When having your vehicle washed in an automatic car wash, make sure that the wiper is turned off. Otherwise, the wipers may be damaged because**

– CONTINUED –

they may operate unexpectedly and car wash brushes could become tangled around them.

NOTE

- The windshield wiper motor is protected against overloads by a circuit breaker. If the motor operates continuously under an unusually heavy load, the circuit breaker may trip to stop the motor temporarily. If this happens, park your vehicle in a safe place, turn off the wiper switch, and wait for approximately 10 minutes. The circuit breaker will reset itself, and the wipers will again operate normally.
- Clean your wiper blades and window glass periodically with a washer solution to prevent streaking, and to remove accumulations of road salt or road film. Operate the windshield washer for at least 1 second so that washer solution will be sprinkled all over the windshield or rear window.
- Grease, wax, insects or other material on the windshield or the wiper blade results in jerky wiper operation and streaking on the glass. If you cannot remove those streaks after operating the washer or if the wiper operation is jerky, clean the outer surface of the windshield or rear window and the wiper blades using a sponge or soft cloth with a neutral detergent or mild-abrasive cleaner. After cleaning, rinse the window glass and wiper blades with clean water. The glass is clean if no beads form on the glass when you rinse with water.
- If you cannot eliminate the streaking even after following this procedure, replace the wiper blades with new ones. For replacement instructions, refer to "Replacement of wiper blades" ☞11-42.

NOTE

For models with automatic rain sensing windshield wipers:

- When the wiper switch is turned to the "AUTO" position while the ignition switch is in the "ON" position, the wipers will operate once. This indicates that the wiper switch is in the "AUTO" position.
- When the wiper switch is in the "AUTO" position, the following situations may occur.
  - The wipers may operate if the rain light sensor or the windshield is vibrated or objects such as, insects, dirt, mud, etc. are covering them. Turn off the wiper unless it is raining or snowing.
  - The wipers do not operate if the rain light sensor does not detect rain or snow. If necessary, push the wiper control lever down to the low speed position or high speed position.
  - The wipers may not operate properly if the rain light sensor does not detect the amount of raindrops because of the water-repellent coating on the windshield, or dirt or ice on the upper half of the windshield.
  - The rain light sensor may be malfunctioning if the wiper intermittent operation does not vary depending on the amount of rainfall. If necessary, turn the wiper switch to any position except for the "AUTO" position. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer and have the system inspected as soon as possible.
  - The wipers stop operation if the ambient temperature decreases to −15°C (5°F) or lower. The wipers resume operation when the ambient temperature increases to −10°C (14°F) or higher. If you need to operate the wipers under −15°C (5°F), push the wiper control lever down to the low speed position or

high speed position.

– The wipers may not operate if the temperature around the rain light sensor is more than 80°C (176°F) because the system cannot detect the amount of raindrops under these temperatures.

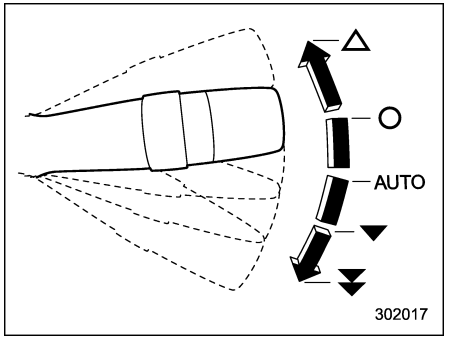
• This system is also equipped with the vehicle speed interlocking intermittent wiper function. When the vehicle stops, the wiper operation interval will become longer compared with that while driving.

• This system may malfunction in a location with strong radio waves or noise.

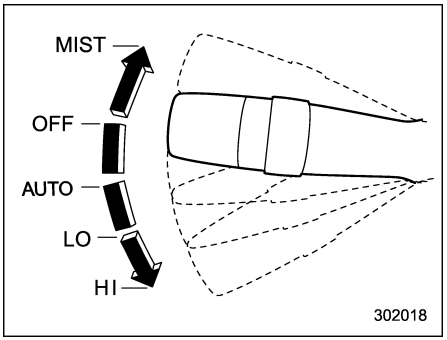
■ Windshield wiper and washer switches

The wiper operates only when the ignition switch is in the “ON” position.

▼ Windshield wipers (models with automatic rain sensing windshield wipers)



Except Australia models



Australia models

△ / MIST: Mist (for a single wipe)
O / OFF: Off
AUTO / AUTO: Automatic operation
▼ / LO: Low speed
▼▼ / HI: High speed

To turn the wipers on, push the wiper control lever down. With the wiper switch in the “AUTO” position, the wipers operate automatically when the rain light sensor detects falling rain. The wiper timing is automatically adjusted depending on the amount of rain.

To turn the wipers off, return the lever to the “OFF”/“O” position.

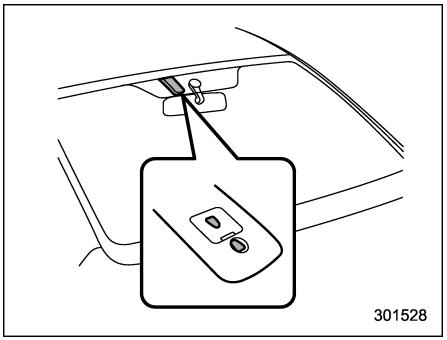
For a single wipe of the wipers, push the lever up. The wipers operate until you release the lever.

– CONTINUED –

NOTE

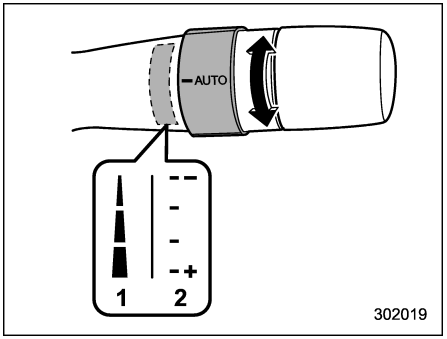
The automatic adjusting mode of the wiper timing can be changed from the rain-sensing mode to the vehicle speed interlocking mode. The setting can be changed by a SUBARU dealer. For more details, we recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer.

▽ **Rain light sensor**



The rain light sensor is on the windshield glass.

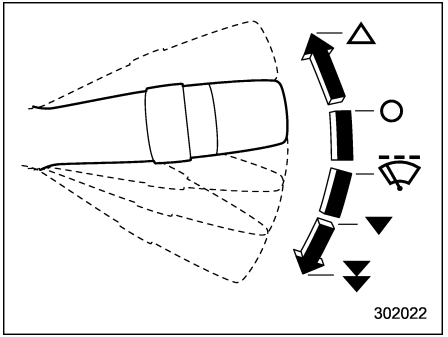
▽ **Sensor sensitivity control**



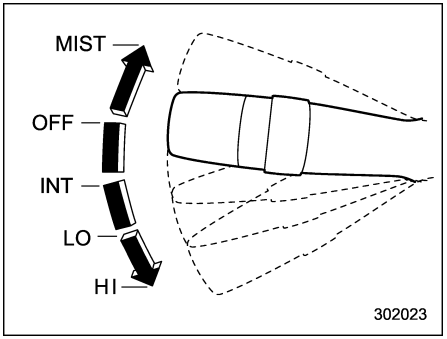
1) Except Australia models
2) Australia models

Turn the dial to adjust the sensitivity of the rain light sensor for wiper control. Turn the dial downward to increase the sensitivity. Turn the dial upward to decrease the sensitivity.

▼ **Windshield wipers (models without automatic rain sensing windshield wipers)**



Except Australia models



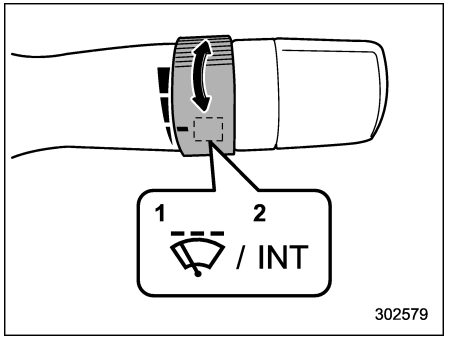
Australia models
△ / MIST: Mist (for a single wipe)
○ / OFF: Off
▽ / INT: Intermittent
▼ / LO: Low speed
▼▼ / HI: High speed

To turn the wipers on, push the wiper control lever down.

To turn the wipers off, return the lever to the "○"/"OFF" position.

For a single wipe of the wipers, push the lever up. The wipers operate until you release the lever.

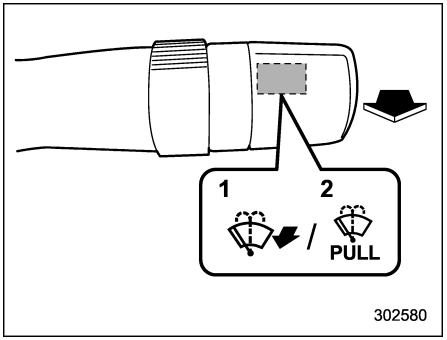
▽ Wiper intermittent time control



1) Except Australia models
2) Australia models

When the wiper switch is in the "▽"/"INT" position, turn the dial to adjust the operating interval of the wiper. The operating interval can be adjusted in several steps from the shortest interval to the longest.

▼ Windshield washer

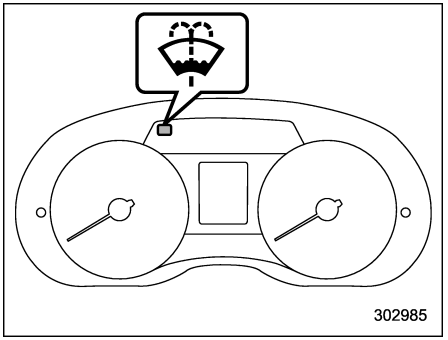


1) Except Australia models
2) Australia models

To wash the windshield, pull the wiper control lever toward you. The washer fluid sprays until you release the lever. The wipers operate while you pull the lever.

– CONTINUED –

NOTE

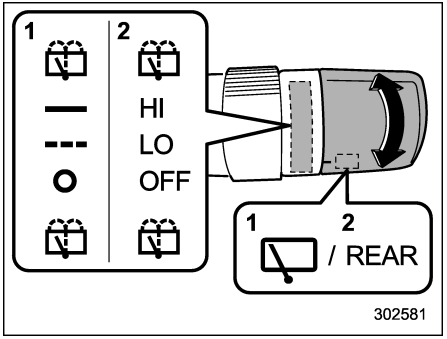


The windshield washer fluid warning light illuminates when the washer fluid level in the tank has dropped to the lower limit. If the warning light illuminates, refill the tank with fluid. For the refilling procedure, refer to "Windshield washer fluid" ☞11-41.

NOTE

If your vehicle is equipped with a headlight washer, pulling the wiper control lever for more than 1 second also causes the headlight washer to operate when the headlight switch is in the "≡D" position. For further details, refer to "Headlight washer" ☞3-105.

■ Rear window wiper and washer switch



1) Except Australia models
2) Australia models

: Washer (accompanied by wiper operation)
— / HI: Continuous
- - - / LO: Intermittent
O / OFF: Off
: Washer (accompanied by wiper operation)

▼ Rear wiper

To turn the rear wiper on, turn the knob switch upward.

To turn the wiper off, return the knob switch to the "O"/"OFF" position.

With the switch turned to the "- - -"/"LO" position, the rear wiper will operate intermittently at intervals corresponding to the vehicle speed. In this position, when you move the select lever to the "R" position (CVT models) or the shift lever to the reverse position (MT models), the rear wiper will switch to continuous operation. When you move the select lever/shift lever from the "R" (reverse) position to another position, the rear wiper will return to intermittent operation.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not attach anything that disturbs the rear wiper operation on the rear gate. Doing so may damage the rear wiper when it operates.

NOTE

Even if the rear wiper switch is in the off position, while the shift lever/select lever is in the "R" position with the windshield wiper operating continuously, the rear wiper will operate intermittently.

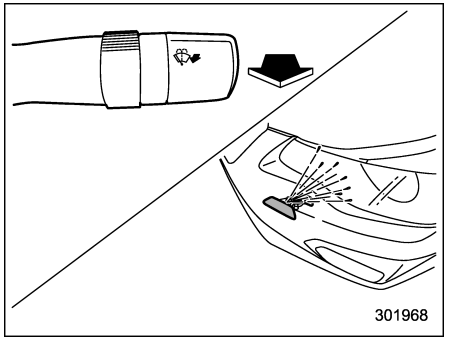
▼ Washer

To wash the rear window while the rear wiper is operating, turn the knob switch upward to the "" position. The washer fluid sprays until you release the knob.

To wash the rear window when the rear wiper is not in use, turn the knob switch

downward to the "⛲" position. The washer fluid sprays and the wiper operates until you release the knob.

Headlight washer (if equipped)



If you pull the wiper control lever toward you and hold it for more than 1 second with the ignition switch in the "ON" position, the headlight washer operates together with the windshield washer in the following conditions.

- when the light switch is in the "≡D" position (except Australia models)
- when the light switch is in the "≡D" position (Australia models)
- when the light switch is in the "AUTO" position and the headlights illuminate automatically (models with auto on/off headlights)

The windshield washer stops spraying washer fluid as soon as you release the wiper control lever. The headlight washer sprays the washer fluid for approximately 1 second and then stops automatically.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not operate the washer if the washer fluid tank is empty. This may cause overheating of the washer motor. Check washer fluid level frequently, such as at fuel stops.

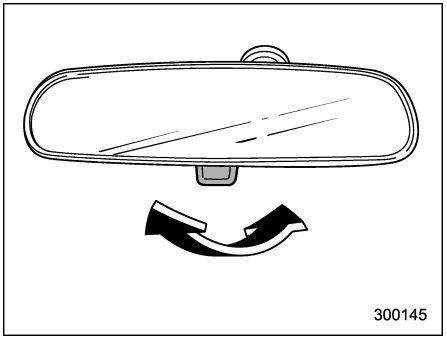
NOTE

When the area around the nozzle cover of the headlight washer is frozen, remove the ice before using.

Mirrors

Always check that the inside and outside mirrors are properly adjusted before you start driving.

■ Inside mirror



The inside mirror has a day and night position. Pull the tab at the bottom of the mirror toward you for the night position. Push it away for the day position. The night position reduces glare from headlights.

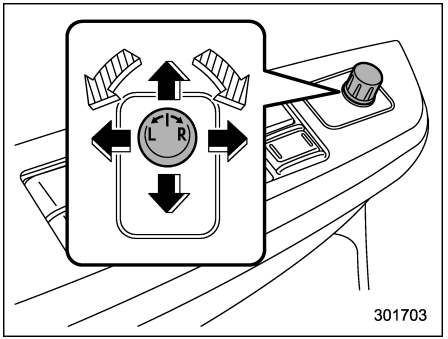
■ Outside mirrors

▼ **Convex mirror (passenger side)**

⚠ WARNING

Objects look smaller in a convex mirror and farther away than when viewed in a flat mirror. Do not use the convex mirror to judge the distance of vehicles behind you when changing lanes. Use the inside mirror (or glance backwards) to determine the actual size and distance of objects that you view in convex mirror.

▼ **Remote control mirror switch**



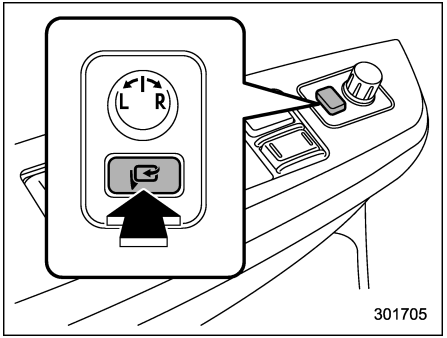
: Select side to adjust
: Direction control

The remote control mirrors operate only when the ignition switch is in the “ON” or “ACC” position.

1. Turn the control switch to the side that you want to adjust. “L” is for the left mirror, “R” is for the right mirror.
2. Move the control switch in the direction you want to move the mirror.
3. Return the control switch to the neutral position to prevent unintentional operation.

The mirrors can also be adjusted manually.

▼ **Power folding mirror switch (if equipped)**



The power folding mirror switch operates only when the ignition switch is in the “ON” or “ACC” position.

To fold the outside mirrors, press the power folding mirror switch. To unfold the mirrors, press the switch again.

NOTE

• If the outside mirrors have been operated (folded or unfolded) manually, when you turn the ignition switch from the “LOCK”/“OFF” position to the “ACC” or “ON” position, the outside mirrors may be adjusted automatically depending on the status of the power folding mirror switch.

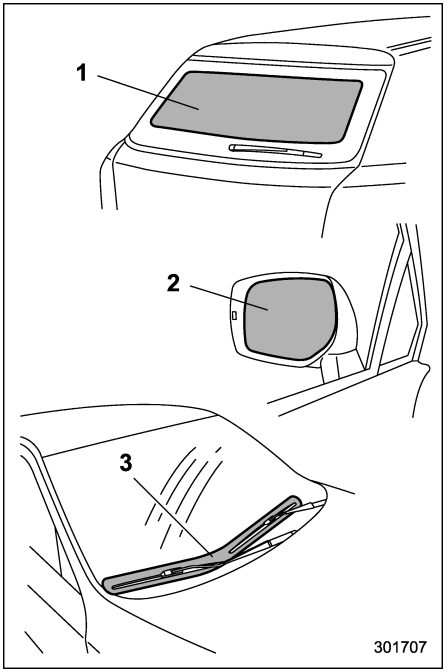
• If the outside mirrors have been manually folded slightly forward of the regularly unfolded position, when you turn the ignition switch from the “LOCK”/“OFF” position to the “ACC” or “ON” position, the outside mirrors may automatically fold further forward depending on the status of the power folding mirror switch. When this happens, press the power folding mirror switch. By doing so, the outside mirrors which have been folded to the furthest forward position will extend to the regularly unfolded position and then fold rearward in the usual way. In order to unfold the outside mirrors, press the switch again.

• When you unfold the outside mirrors manually, the mirrors may become wobbly. Be sure to unfold the mirrors by operating the switch. If the outside mirrors are still wobbly, fold the mirrors again and then unfold them by operating the switch again.

• When the temperature is low, the outside mirrors may stop during operation. Push the switch again. When the outside mirrors do not work by operating the switch, move the outside mirrors several times manually. This makes it possible to operate them by switch operation.

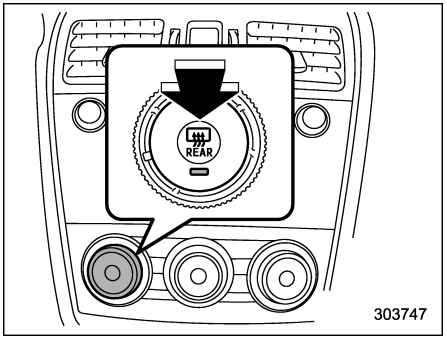
• When you operate the power folding mirror switch continuously, it may not work. This is not a malfunction. Operate after waiting for a short period of time.

Defogger and deicer

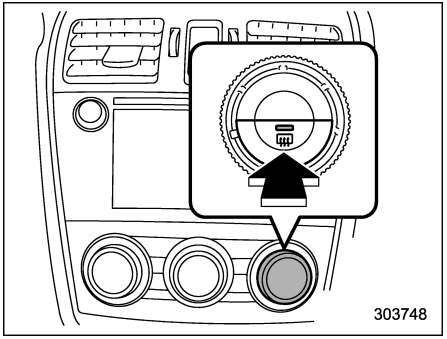


1) Rear window defogger
2) Outside mirror defogger (if equipped)
3) Windshield wiper deicer (if equipped)

The defogger and deicer system is activated only when the ignition switch is in the “ON” position.



Type A climate control system



Type B or type C climate control system

To activate the defogger and deicer system, press the control switch that is located on the climate control panel. The rear window defogger, outside mirror defogger and windshield wiper deicer are activated simultaneously. The indicator light on the control switch illuminates while the defogger and deicer system is activated.

To turn them off, press the control switch again. They also turn off when the ignition switch is turned to the “ACC” or “LOCK”/“OFF” position.

The defogger and deicer system will automatically shut off after approximately 15 minutes. If the rear window and the outside mirrors have been cleared and the windshield wiper blades have been deiced completely before that time, press the control switch to turn them off. If defrosting, defogging or deicing is not complete, you have to press the control switch to turn them on again.

It is possible for the defogger and deicer system to be set to continuous operation mode by a SUBARU dealer. We recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer for details. Also, for models with a multi function display, it is possible to set the defogger and deicer system for the continuous operation mode. For details, refer to “Defogger setting” ☞3-85.

If the battery voltage drops below the permissible level, continuous operation of the defogger and deicer system is canceled and the system stops operating.

⚠ CAUTION

- **To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not operate the defogger and deicer system continuously for any longer than necessary.**
- **Do not use sharp instruments or window cleaner containing abrasives to clean the inner surface of the rear window. They may damage the conductors printed on the window.**

NOTE

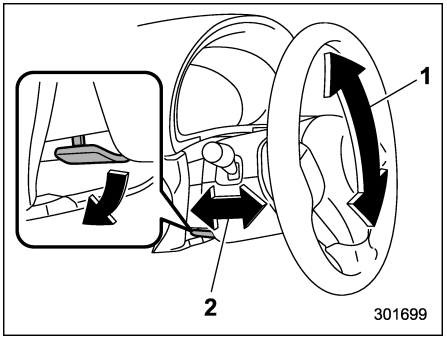
• Turn on the defogger and deicer system if the wipers are frozen to the windshield.
• If the windshield is covered with snow, remove the snow so that the windshield wiper deicer works effectively.
• While the defogger and deicer system is in the continuous operation mode, if the vehicle speed remains at 15 km/h (9 mph) or lower for 15 minutes, the windshield wiper deicer automatically stops operating, though the rear window defogger and outside mirror defogger maintain continuous operation in this condition.

Tilt/telescopic steering wheel

⚠ WARNING

- **Do not adjust the steering wheel tilt/telescopic position while driving. This may cause loss of vehicle control and result in personal injury.**
- **If the lever cannot be raised to the fixed position, adjust the steering wheel again. It is dangerous to drive without locking the steering wheel. This may cause loss of vehicle control and result in personal injury.**

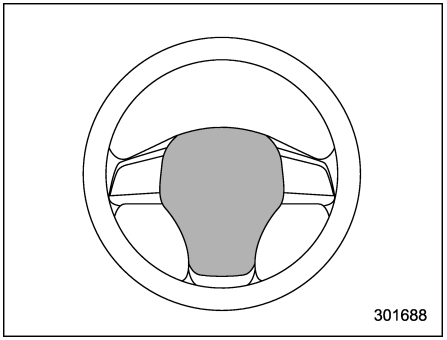
– CONTINUED –



1) Tilt adjustment
2) Telescopic adjustment

1. Adjust the seat position. Refer to “Front seats” ☞1-2.
2. Pull the tilt/telescopic lock lever down.
3. Move the steering wheel to the desired level.
4. Pull the lever up to lock the steering wheel in place.
5. Make sure that the steering wheel is securely locked by moving it up and down, and forward and backward.

Horn

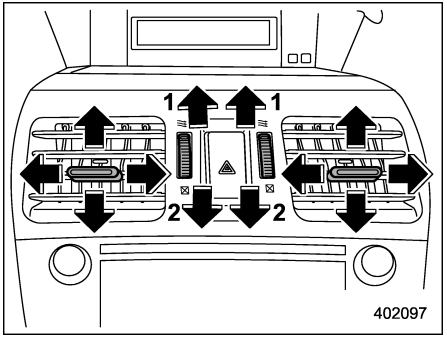


To sound the horn, push the horn pad.

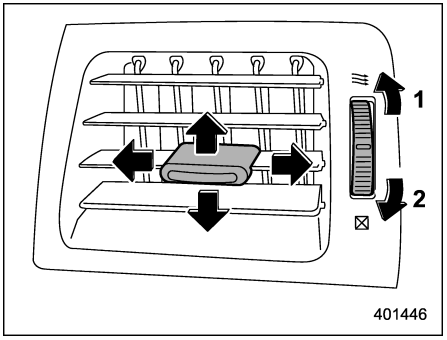
Ventilator control 4-2
Center and side ventilators 4-2
Climate control panel 4-3
Type A 4-3
Type B 4-4
Type C 4-5
Automatic climate control operation 4-6
Type A 4-6
Type B and C 4-6
Temperature sensors 4-7
Manual climate control operation 4-7
Airflow mode selection 4-7
Temperature control 4-8
Fan speed control 4-9
Air conditioner control 4-9
Air inlet selection 4-9
Defrosting 4-10
Type A 4-10
Type B 4-10
Type C 4-10
Operating tips for heater and air conditioner 4-11
Cleaning ventilation grille 4-11
Efficient cooling after parking in direct sunlight 4-11
Lubrication oil circulation in the refrigerant circuit 4-11
Checking air conditioning system before summer season 4-11
Cooling and dehumidifying in high humidity and low temperature weather conditions 4-11
Air conditioner compressor shut-off when engine is heavily loaded 4-11
Refrigerant for your climate control system 4-12
Air filtration system 4-12
Replacing an air filter 4-13

Ventilator control

■ Center and side ventilators



Center ventilators
1) Open
2) Close



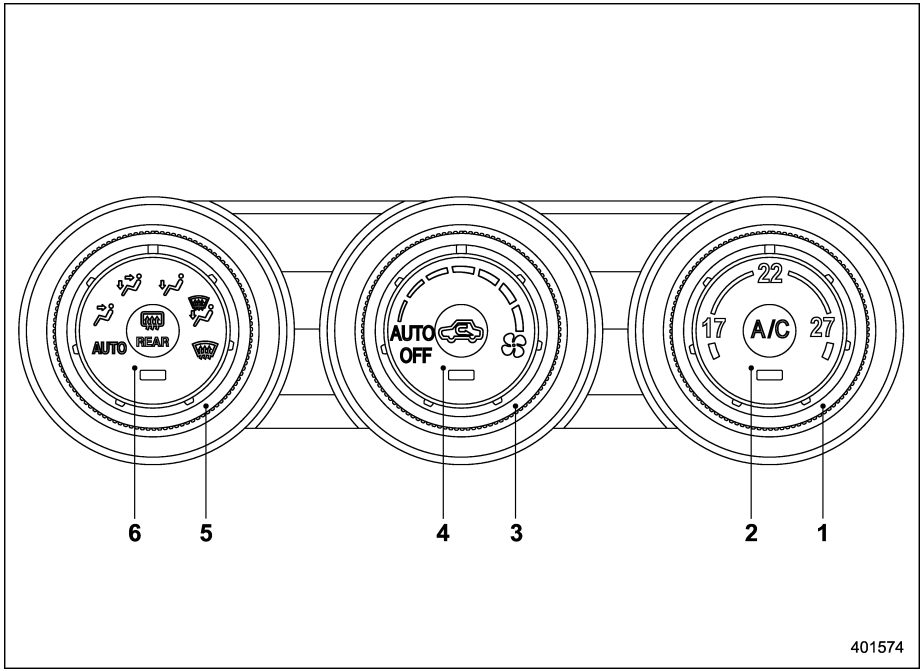
Side ventilators
1) Open
2) Close

To adjust the flow direction, move the tab.

To open or close the ventilator, turn the thumb-wheel up or down.

Climate control panel

■ Type A



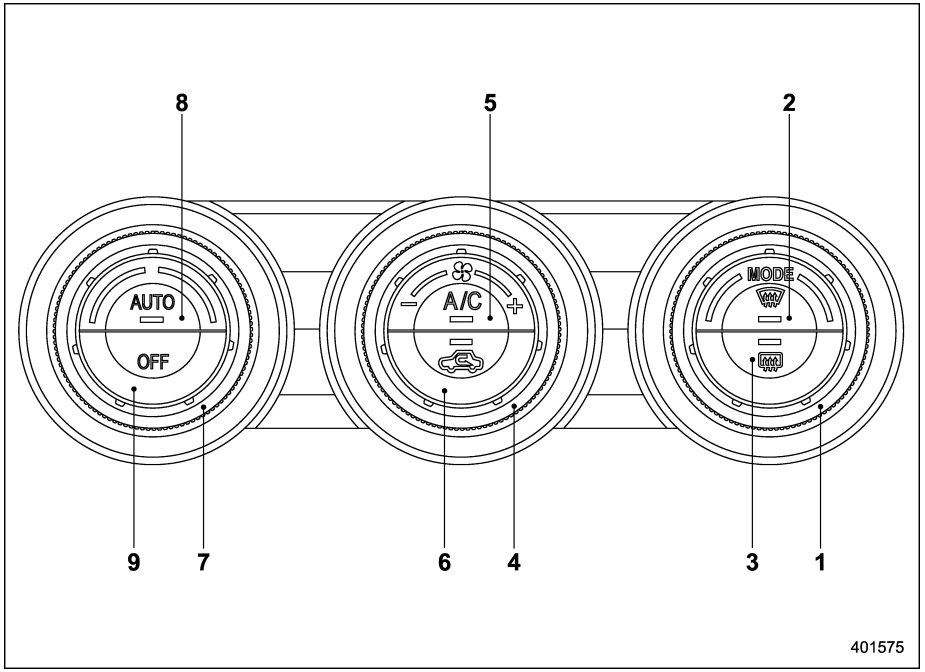
1) Temperature control dial (Refer to “Automatic climate control operation” ☞4-6 and/or “Temperature control” ☞4-8.)
2) Air conditioner button (Refer to “Air conditioner control” ☞4-9.)
3) Fan speed control dial (Refer to “Automatic climate control operation” ☞4-6 and/or “Fan speed control” ☞4-9.)
4) Air inlet selection button (Refer to “Air inlet selection” ☞4-9.)
5) Airflow mode selection dial (Refer to “Automatic climate control operation” ☞4-6 and/or “Airflow mode selection” ☞4-7.)
6) Rear window defogger button (Refer to “Defogger and deicer” ☞3-108.)

NOTE

The controllable temperature range may differ depending on the model.

– CONTINUED –

■ Type B

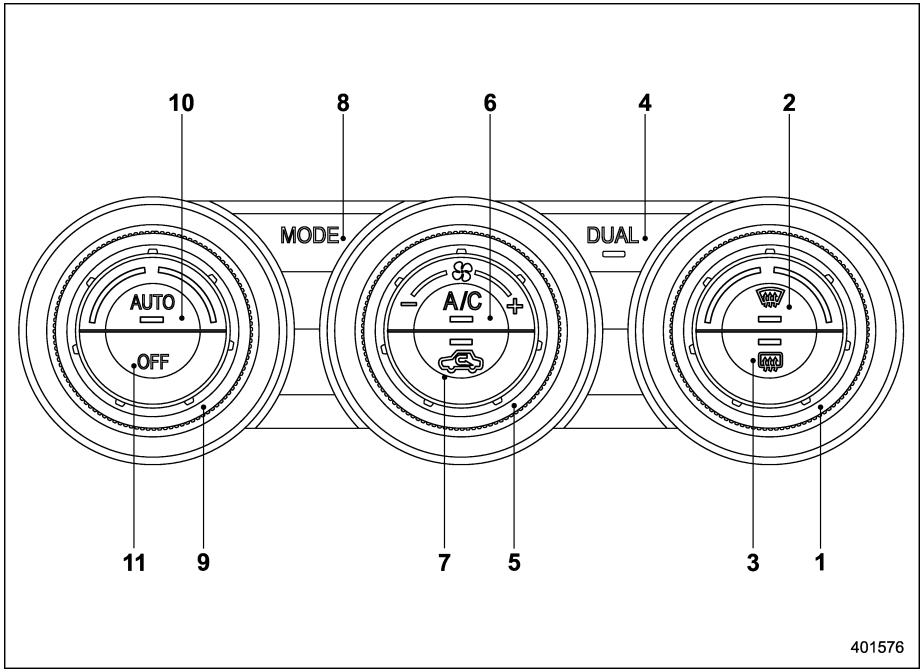


1) Airflow mode selection dial (Refer to “Airflow mode selection” ☞4-7.)
2) Defroster button (Refer to “Airflow mode selection” ☞4-7.)
3) Rear window defogger button (Refer to “Defogger and deicer” ☞3-108.)
4) Fan speed control dial (Refer to “Fan speed control” ☞4-9.)
5) Air conditioner button (Refer to “Air conditioner control” ☞4-9.)
6) Air inlet selection button (Refer to “Air inlet selection” ☞4-9.)
7) Temperature control dial (Refer to “Automatic climate control operation” ☞4-6 and/or “Temperature control” ☞4-8.)
8) AUTO button (Refer to “Automatic climate control operation” ☞4-6.)
9) OFF button (Refer to “Automatic climate control operation” ☞4-6.)

▼ For regional specification

The illustration on the left is a typical example for left-hand drive models. For right-hand drive models, the locations of some buttons/dials are different to that shown in the illustration.

■ Type C



1) Temperature control dial (Refer to “Automatic climate control operation” ☞4-6 and/or “Temperature control” ☞4-8.)
2) Defroster button (Refer to “Airflow mode selection” ☞4-7.)
3) Rear window defogger button (Refer to “Defogger and deicer” ☞3-108.)
4) DUAL mode button (Refer to ““DUAL” mode (type C)” ☞4-9.)
5) Fan speed control dial (Refer to “Fan speed control” ☞4-9.)
6) Air conditioner button (Refer to “Air conditioner control” ☞4-9.)
7) Air inlet selection button (Refer to “Air inlet selection” ☞4-9.)
8) Airflow mode selection button (Refer to “Airflow mode selection” ☞4-7.)
9) Temperature control dial (Refer to “Automatic climate control operation” ☞4-6 and/or “Temperature control” ☞4-8.)
10) AUTO button (Refer to “Automatic climate control operation” ☞4-6.)
11) OFF button (Refer to “Automatic climate control operation” ☞4-6.)

▼ For regional specification

The illustration on the left is a typical example for left-hand drive models. For right-hand drive models, the locations of some buttons/dials are different to that shown in the illustration.

Automatic climate control operation

When this mode is selected, the fan speed, airflow distribution, air-inlet control, and air conditioner compressor operation are automatically controlled. To activate this mode, perform the following.

NOTE

- **Even when cooling is not necessary, setting the temperature much lower than the current outlet air temperature turns on the air conditioner compressor automatically and the "A/C" indicator light on the control panel illuminates.**
- **The air conditioner may not operate in the following cases:**
  - **– when the cabin temperature is low**
  - **– when the ambient temperature decreases close to 0°C (32°F)**
- **The controllable temperature range may vary depending on the regional specifications of the vehicle.**

■ Type A

1. Turn the airflow mode selection dial and fan speed control dial to the "AUTO" position.
2. Set the preferred temperature using the temperature control dial.

NOTE

Each function can be individually set to the AUTO mode independently of the other functions. Any function set to the AUTO mode is controlled automatically. Any function not set to the AUTO mode can be manually adjusted as desired.

3. To turn off the climate control system, turn the fan speed control dial to the "OFF" position. Then the air inlet selection will be set as follows.

- when the AUTO mode is selected: OFF (outside air)
- when the AUTO mode is not selected: the mode that was selected when turning off the climate system will be selected.

■ Type B and C

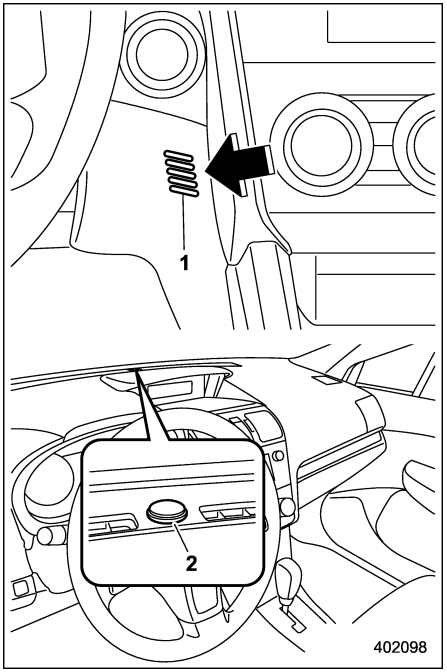
1. Press the "AUTO" button. The indicator light "FULL AUTO" on the display illuminates.
2. Set the preferred temperature using the temperature control dial.

NOTE

If you operate any of the buttons on the control panel other than the "OFF" button, rear window defogger button and temperature control dial(s) during FULL AUTO mode operation, the "FULL" indicator light on the control panel will turn off and the "AUTO" indicator light will remain illuminated. You can then manually control the system as desired using the button you operated. To change the system back to the FULL AUTO mode, press the "AUTO" button.

3. To turn off the climate control system, press the "OFF" button. Then the air inlet selection will be set to OFF (outside air).

■ Temperature sensors



1) Interior air temperature sensor
2) Solar sensor

The automatic climate control system employs several sensors. These sensors are delicate. If they are not treated properly and become damaged, the system may not be able to control the interior temperature correctly. To avoid damaging the sensors, observe the following precautions.

– Do not subject the sensors to impact.
– Keep water away from the sensors.
– Do not cover the sensors.

The sensors are located as follows.

– Solar sensor: beside the windshield defroster grille
– Interior air temperature sensor: next to the steering column
– Outside temperature sensor: near the front bumper opening

Manual climate control operation

■ Airflow mode selection

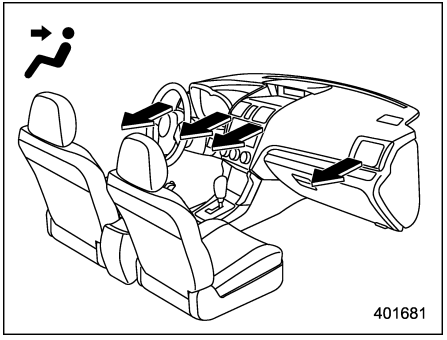
To select the airflow mode:

- **Type A and B:** Turn the airflow mode selection dial.
- **Type C:** Press the airflow mode selection button.

To select the defrost mode:

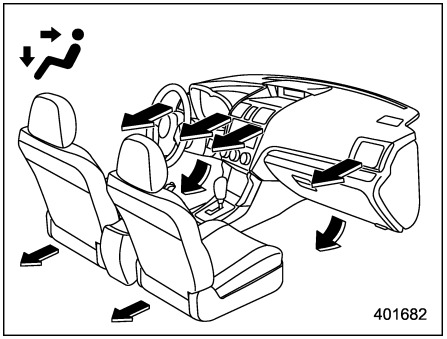
- **Type A:** Turn the airflow mode selection dial and select the "⛆" mode.
- **Type B and C:** Press the defroster button.

Airflow modes are as follows.

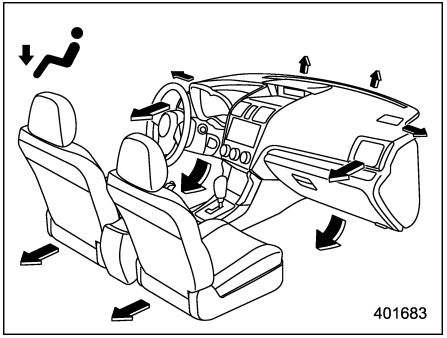


(Ventilation): Instrument panel outlets

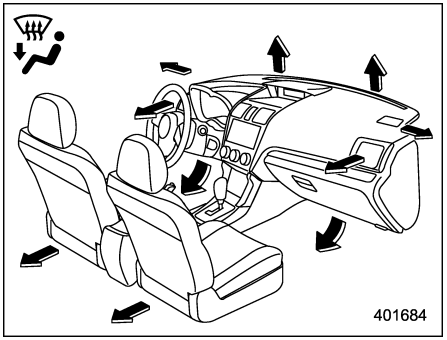
– CONTINUED –



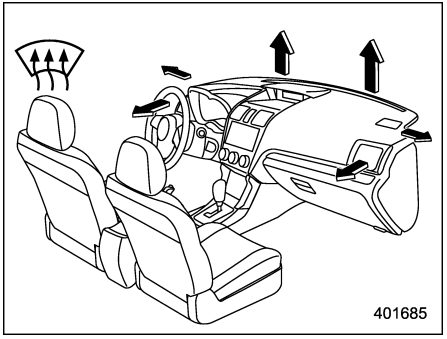
(Bi-level): Instrument panel outlets and foot outlets



(Heat): Foot outlets, both side outlets of the instrument panel and some through windshield defroster outlets (A small amount of air flows to the windshield and both side windows to prevent fogging.)



(Heat-def): Windshield defroster outlets, foot outlets and both side outlets of the instrument panel (Refer to “Defrosting” ☞4-10.)



(Defrost): Windshield defroster outlets and both side outlets of the instrument panel (Refer to “Defrosting” ☞4-10.)

NOTE

When the “” mode or “” mode is selected, the air conditioner compressor automatically operates to more quickly defog the windshield. At the same time, the air inlet selection is automatically set to the outside air mode.

■ Temperature control

NOTE

The controllable temperature range may vary depending on the regional specifications of the vehicle.

▼ Type A

Turn the temperature control dial to set the preferred interior temperature. With the dial set to your preferred temperature, the system automatically adjusts the temperature of air supplied from the outlets so that the preferred temperature is achieved and maintained.

If the dial is turned fully counterclockwise, the system provides maximum cooling performance. If the dial is turned fully clockwise, the system provides maximum heating performance.

▼ **Type B and C**

Turn the temperature control dial over a range from the blue side (cool) to red side (warm) to regulate the temperature of airflow from the air outlets.

▼ **"DUAL" mode (type C)**

You can change the setting of the driver's side and front passenger's side temperature independently by selecting the "DUAL" mode.

You can select the "DUAL" mode by performing either of the following procedures.

- Press the "DUAL" button
- Turn the passenger's side temperature control dial

The "DUAL" mode can be canceled by pressing the "DUAL" button.

When the "DUAL" mode is selected:

Turn the driver's side dial to set the driver's side temperature. Turn the front passenger's side dial to set the front passenger's side temperature.

When the "DUAL" mode is canceled:

Set the desired temperature by turning the driver's side dial.

■ Fan speed control

The fan operates only when the ignition switch is in the "ON" position. Select the preferred fan speed by turning the fan speed control dial.

■ Air conditioner control

The air conditioner operates only when the engine is running.

Press the air conditioner button while the fan is in operation to turn on the air conditioner. When the air conditioner is on, the "A/C" indicator light illuminates.

To turn off the air conditioner, press the button again.

NOTE

For efficient defogging or dehumidifying in cold weather, turn on the air conditioner. However, if the ambient temperature decreases to approximately 0°C (32°F), the air conditioner compressor will stop operating.

■ Air inlet selection

Select the air inlet by pressing the air inlet selection button.

ON position (recirculation): Interior air is recirculated inside the vehicle. Press the air inlet selection button to the ON position for fast cooling with the air conditioner or when driving on a dusty road.

OFF position (outside air): Outside air is drawn into the passenger compartment. Press the air inlet selection button to the OFF position when the interior has cooled to a comfortable temperature and the road is no longer dusty.

⚠ WARNING

Continued operation in the ON position may fog up the windows. Switch to the OFF position as soon as the outside conditions are no longer dusty.

NOTE

• When the indicator light on the air inlet selection button is flashing at engine starting, a malfunction might be occurring in the electrical system. Contact your SUBARU dealer for inspection.

• The indicator light on the air inlet selection button may flash in the following cases. However, this does not indicate a malfunction.

– After the vehicle battery has been disconnected and reconnected.

– When the vehicle battery voltage

– CONTINUED –

is low.

Defrosting

NOTE

When the "" or "" mode is selected, the air conditioner compressor automatically operates to more quickly defrost the windshield. At the same time, the air inlet selection is automatically set to the outside air mode.

■ Type A

Select the "" or "" mode by turning the airflow mode selection dial to defrost or dehumidify the windshield and front door windows.

■ Type B

Select the "" mode by pressing the defroster button, or select the "" mode by turning the airflow mode selection dial to defroster or to dehumidify the windshield and front door windows.

If the defroster button is pressed while the "" mode is selected, it will return to the previous mode before selecting the "" mode.

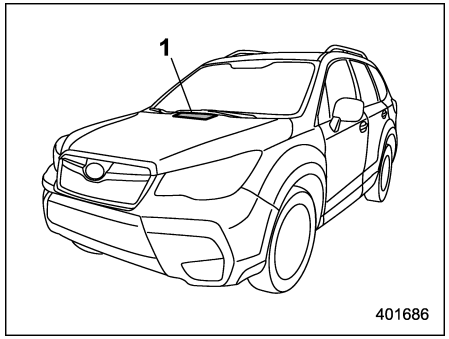
■ Type C

Select the "" mode by pressing the defroster button, or select the "" mode by pressing the airflow mode selection button to defroster or to dehumidify the windshield and front door windows.

If the defroster button is pressed while the "" mode is selected, it will return to the previous mode before selecting the "" mode.

Operating tips for heater and air conditioner

■ Cleaning ventilation grille



1) Front ventilation inlet grille

Always keep the front ventilation inlet grille free of snow, leaves, or other obstructions to ensure efficient heating and defrosting. Since the condenser is located in front of the radiator, this area should be kept clean because cooling performance is impaired by any accumulation of insects and leaves on the condenser.

■ Efficient cooling after parking in direct sunlight

After parking in direct sunlight, drive with the windows open for a few minutes to allow outside air to circulate into the heated interior. This results in quicker cooling by the air conditioner. Keep the windows closed during the operation of the air conditioner for maximum cooling efficiency.

■ Lubrication oil circulation in the refrigerant circuit

Operate the air conditioner compressor at a low engine speed (at idle or low driving speeds) a few minutes each month during the off-season to circulate its oil.

■ Checking air conditioning system before summer season

Check the air conditioner unit for refrigerant leaks, hose conditions, and proper operation each spring. We recommend that you have your SUBARU dealer perform this check.

■ Cooling and dehumidifying in high humidity and low temperature weather conditions

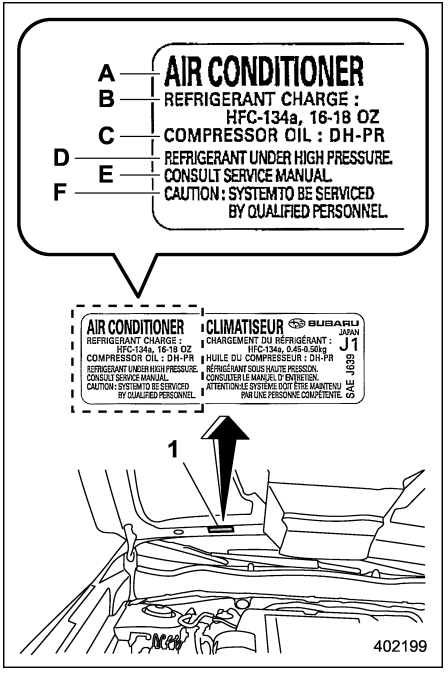
Under certain weather conditions (high relative humidity, low temperatures, etc.) a small amount of water vapor emission from the air outlets may be noticed. This condition is normal and does not indicate any problem with the air conditioning system.

■ Air conditioner compressor shut-off when engine is heavily loaded

To improve acceleration and fuel consumption, the air conditioner compressor is designed to temporarily shut off during air conditioner operation whenever the accelerator pedal is fully depressed such as during rapid acceleration or when driving up a steep incline.

– CONTINUED –

■ Refrigerant for your climate control system



Example of air conditioner label

1) Air conditioner label
A) AIR CONDITIONER
B) REFRIGERANT CHARGE
C) COMPRESSOR OIL
D) REFRIGERANT UNDER HIGH PRESSURE
E) CONSULT SERVICE MANUAL
F) CAUTION: SYSTEM TO BE SERVICED BY QUALIFIED PERSONNEL

Your air conditioner uses ozone friendly refrigerant HFO-1234yf or HFC134a. Therefore, the method for adding, changing or checking the refrigerant is different from the method for CFC12 (freon). Also, the methods for adding, changing or checking HFO-1234yf and HFC134a refrigerant are different. Before adding, changing or checking the refrigerant, check the air conditioner label in the location shown in the illustration to confirm which type of refrigerant is used in your vehicle. We recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer for service. Repairs needed as a result of using the wrong refrigerant are not covered under the warranty.

Air filtration system

Replace the filter element according to the maintenance schedule. Refer to “Maintenance schedule” ☞11-3. The schedule should be followed to maintain the filter’s dust collection ability. Under extremely dusty conditions, the filter should be replaced more frequently. It is recommended that you have your filter checked or replaced by your SUBARU dealer. For replacement, we recommend that you use only a genuine SUBARU air filter kit.

⚠ CAUTION

We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer if the following occurs, even if it is not yet time to change the filter:

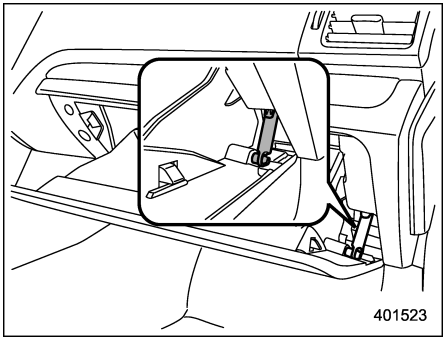
- **Reduction of the airflow through the vents.**
- **Windshield gets easily fogged or misted.**

NOTE

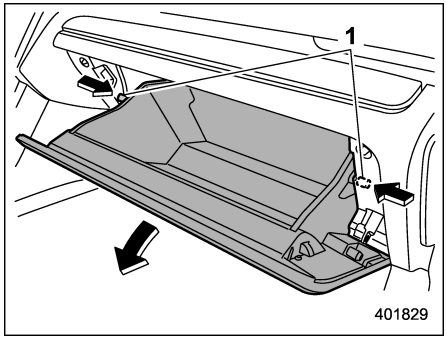
The filter can influence the air conditioning, heating and defroster performance if not properly maintained.

■ Replacing an air filter

1. Remove the glove box.
   (1) Open the glove box.

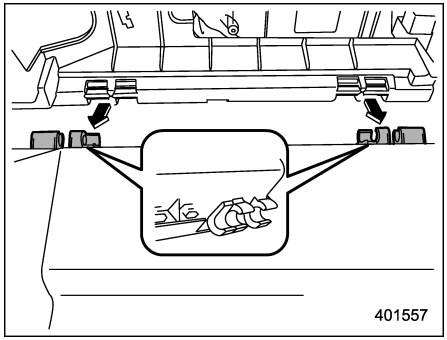


(2) Remove the damper shaft from the glove box.

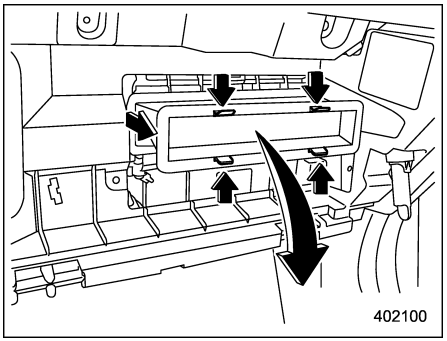


1) Stopper

(3) Push both sides of the glove box inside to unlock the stoppers and then pull down the glove box as far as it will go.

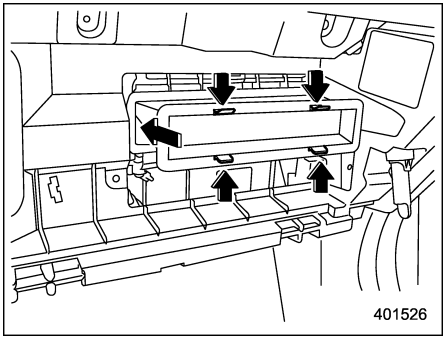


(4) Pull out the glove box horizontally and remove the hinge portion. When doing this, be careful not to damage the hinge.



2. Remove the air filter according to the following procedure in order to prevent dust on the air cleaner from falling to the inside of its housing.
   (1) Push in the four stoppers to unlock, and then slowly pull out the air filter 10 cm (4 in) from the housing.
   (2) Completely pull out the air filter by gently tilting the front side of the air filter downward.

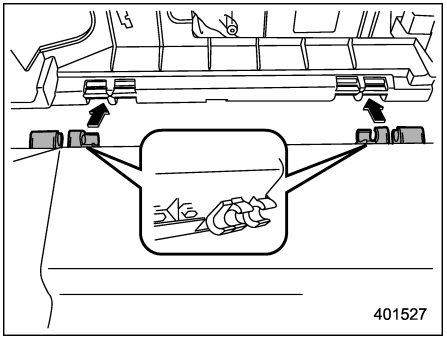
– CONTINUED –



3. Replace the air filter element with a new one.

⚠ CAUTION

The arrow mark on the filter must point UP.



4. Reinstall the glove box, and connect the damper shaft.
5. Close the glove box.
6. Attach the service label to the driver's side door pillar.

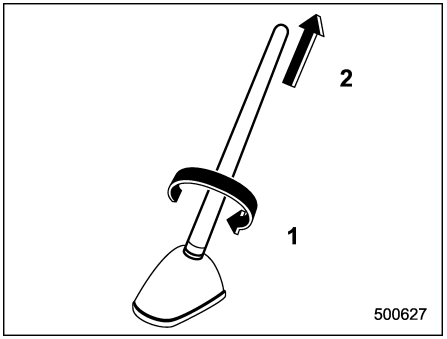
Antenna system 5-2
Roof antenna (for Rod type) 5-2
Roof antenna (for Shark fin type) 5-2
FM reception 5-2
Installation of accessories 5-3
Audio set 5-3
Type A audio set (for Europe) 5-4
Type B audio set (except for Europe) 5-5
Type C audio set (for Australia) 5-6
Basic information before use 5-7
Initial screen 5-7
Loading and unloading a disc 5-8
Connecting and disconnecting a USB memory/ portable device 5-8
Touch screen gestures 5-9
Touch screen operation 5-10
Entering letters and numbers/list screen operation 5-10
Screen adjustment 5-12
Other settings 5-13
Basic operation 5-16
Some basics 5-16
Audio/visual remote controls 5-23
Steering switches 5-23
Tips for operating the audio/visual system 5-25
Operating information 5-25
Useful information 5-32
STARLINK (for Europe) 5-32
Radio operation 5-34
AM/FM radio 5-34
Media operation 5-42
CD 5-42
USB memory 5-48
iPod 5-53
Bluetooth audio 5-60
AUX 5-67
Bluetooth® settings 5-73
Registering/connecting Bluetooth® device 5-73
Setting Bluetooth details 5-76
Phone operation (Hands-free system for cellular phones) 5-79
Quick reference 5-79
Some basics 5-81
Calling on the Bluetooth phone 5-84
Receiving on the Bluetooth phone 5-91
Talking on the Bluetooth phone 5-92
Setup 5-94
Phone settings 5-94
What to do if 5-97
Troubleshooting 5-97
Voice command system operation 5-101
Voice command system 5-101
Command list 5-104
Appendix 5-107
Certification 5-107
Certification for UAE models 5-107
Certification for Paraguay models 5-108
Certification for MAROC models 5-108
Certification for Russia and Kazakhstan models 5-108

Antenna system

■ Roof antenna (for Rod type)

⚠ CAUTION

- **Be sure to remove the antenna rod before entering garages, parking towers and other locations with low ceilings.**
- **Remove the antenna rod before washing your car at a car wash. If the antenna rod is left attached, it may scratch the roof.**
- **When reinstalling the removed antenna rod, be sure to fully tighten it.**

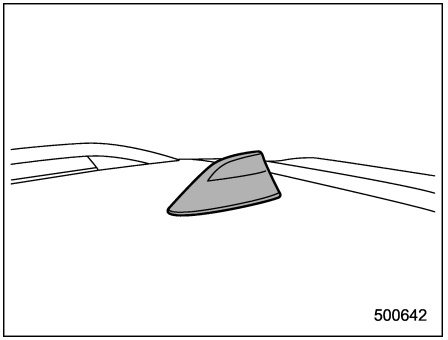


1) Unscrew
2) Remove

The roof antenna is installed in the center at the rear part of the roof.

The antenna rod can be removed by unscrewing it from its base.

■ Roof antenna (for Shark fin type)



The roof antenna is installed in the center at the rear of the roof.

■ FM reception

Although FM is normally static free, reception can be affected by the surrounding area, atmospheric conditions, station strength and transmitter distance. Buildings or other obstructions may cause momentary static, flutter or station interference. If reception continues to be unsatisfactory, switch to a stronger station.

Installation of accessories

Always consult your SUBARU dealer before installing a citizen band radio or other transmitting device in your vehicle. Such devices may cause the electronic control system to malfunction if they are incorrectly installed or if they are not suited for the vehicle.

Audio set

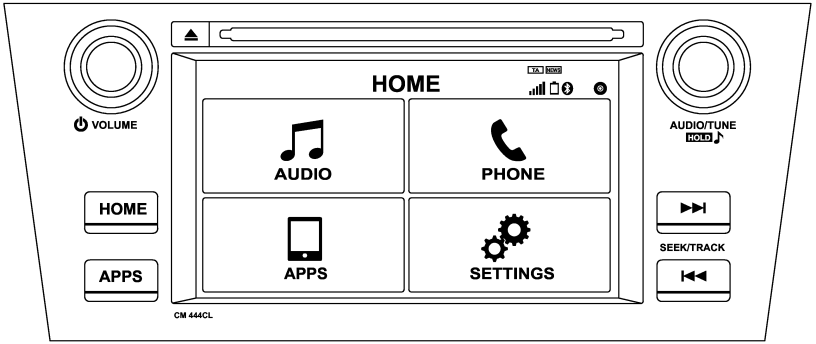
Your SUBARU may be equipped with one of the following audio sets. Refer to the pages indicated in this section for operating details.

NOTE

• If a cell phone is placed near the audio set, it may cause the audio set to emit noise when the phone receives calls. This noise does not indicate an audio set malfunction. Note that a cell phone should be placed as far as possible from the audio set.
• Some functions may not be available depending on the market and specifications of your vehicle.
• The images shown in this Owner's Manual are sample images. The actual images may vary depending on the market and specifications of your vehicle.

– CONTINUED –

■ Type A audio set (for Europe)



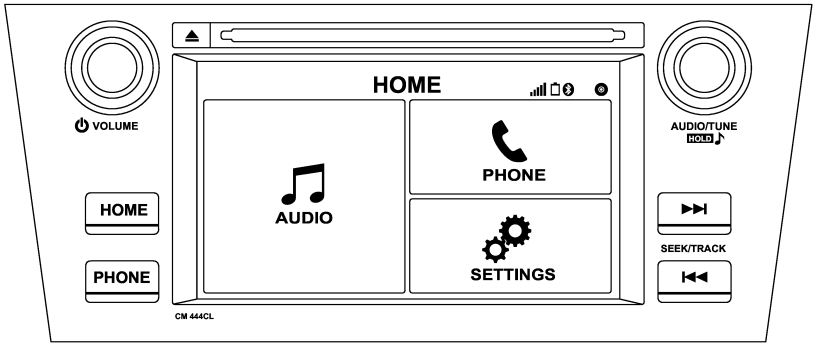
S01635

The audio set will operate only when the ignition switch is in the “ACC” or “ON” position.

For regional specification

The illustration on the left is a typical example for left-hand drive models. For right-hand drive models, some of the switch locations are the opposite of those shown in the illustration.

■ Type B audio set (except for Europe)



S01636

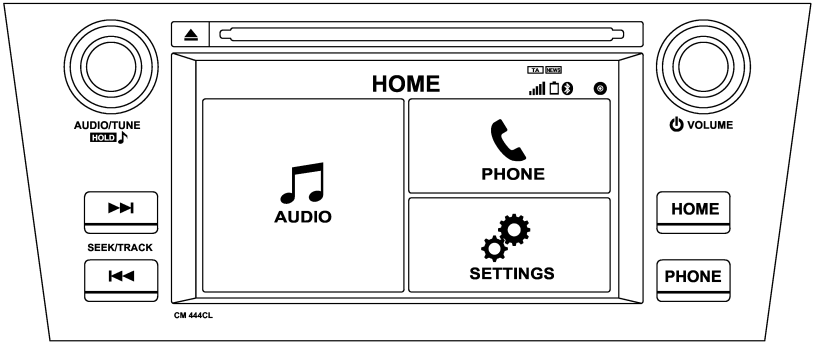
The audio set will operate only when the ignition switch is in the “ACC” or “ON” position.

For regional specification

The illustration on the left is a typical example for left-hand drive models. For right-hand drive models, some of the switch locations are the opposite of those shown in the illustration.

– CONTINUED –

■ Type C audio set (for Australia)



S01637

The audio set will operate only when the ignition switch is in the “ACC” or “ON” position.

Basic information before use

■ Initial screen

▼ Initial screen (for Europe)

1. When the ignition switch is in the “ACC” or “ON” position, the initial screen will be displayed and the system will begin operating.

S01276

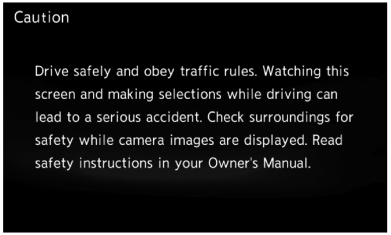
- When using the STARLINK function, the display screen may be different from the screen above.
- After a few seconds, the “Caution (Caution)” screen will be displayed.
- After about 5 seconds, the “Caution (Caution)” screen automatically switches to the next screen.

▼ Initial screen (except for Europe, for Australia)

1. When the ignition switch is in the “ACC” or “ON” position, the initial screen will be displayed and the system will begin operating.

S01479

- After a few seconds, the “Caution (Caution)” screen will be displayed.
- After about 5 seconds, the “Caution (Caution)” screen automatically switches to the next screen.



S01277

⚠ WARNING

When the vehicle is stopped with the engine running, always apply the parking brake for safety.

– CONTINUED –

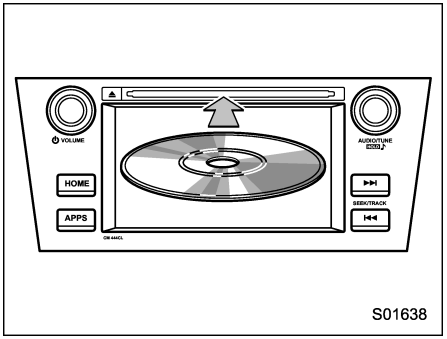
■ Loading and unloading a disc

▼ Loading a disc

⚠ CAUTION

Never try to disassemble the audio kit or lubricate any part of the CD player. Do not insert anything other than a disc into the slot.

1. Insert a disc into the disc slot.



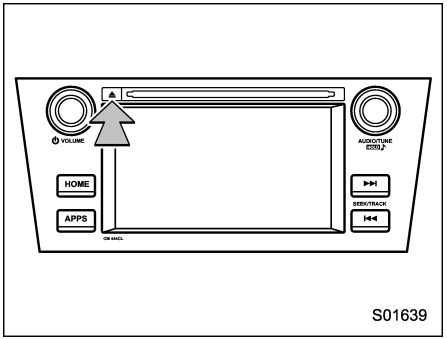
- After insertion, the disc is automatically loaded.

NOTE

- **For compatible discs, refer to "CD player and disc" ☞5-26.**
- **When inserting a disc, gently insert it with the label facing up.**

▼ Unloading a disc

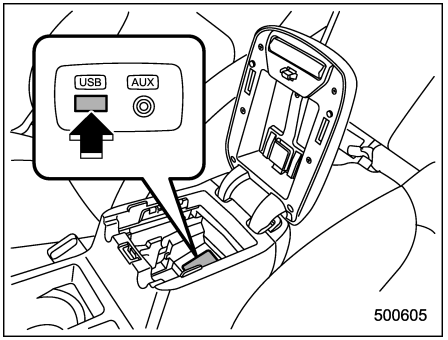
1. Press ⏏ and remove the disc.



■ Connecting and disconnecting a USB memory/portable device

▼ Connecting a device

1. Open the center console and connect a device.



- Turn on the power of the device when it is not turned on.

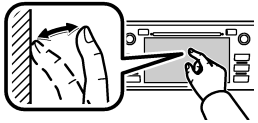
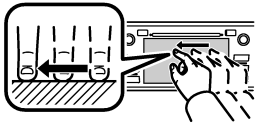
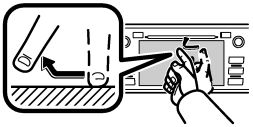
NOTE

- **This unit does not support commercially available USB hubs.**
- **This device has a USB port for USB memory/portable device.**
- **For compatible USB memory devices, refer to "USB memory device" ☞5-28.**

• For compatible iPod models, refer to "iPod" ☞5-28.
• If a USB hub is plugged in, only the most recently connected USB device will be recognized.

■ Touch screen gestures

Operations are performed by touching the touch screen directly with your finger.

Operation method	Outline	Main use
	**Touch** Quickly touch and release once.	Changing and selecting various settings
	**Drag*** Touch the screen with your finger, and move the screen to the desired position.	Scrolling the lists
	**Flick*** Quickly move the screen by flicking with your finger.	Scrolling the main screen page

*: The above operations may not be performed on all screens.

– CONTINUED –

NOTE

There may be a delayed response to flick operation that are performed at high altitudes.

■ Touch screen operation

This system is operated mainly by the buttons on the screen. (These are referred to as screen buttons in this manual.)

- When a screen button is touched, a beep sounds. (You can set the beep sound.) Refer to "Other settings" ☞5-13.

⚠ CAUTION

- **To prevent damaging the screen, touch the screen buttons with your finger lightly.**
- **Do not use objects other than your finger to touch the screen.**
- **Wipe off fingerprints using a glass cleaning cloth. Do not use chemical cleaners to clean the screen, as they may damage the touch screen.**

NOTE

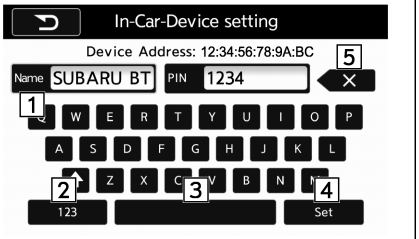
- **If the system does not respond to touching a screen button, move your finger away from the screen and touch it again.**
- **Grayed-out screen buttons cannot be operated.**
- **The displayed image may become darker and moving images may be slightly distorted when the screen is cold.**
- **In extremely cold conditions, the screen may not be displayed correctly. Also, the screen keys may be less responsive than usual when pressed.**
- **When you look at the screen through polarized material such as polarized sunglasses, the screen may be dark and hard to see. If so, look at the screen from different angles, adjust the screen settings on the "Display Settings (Display Settings)" screen or take off your sunglasses.**

■ Entering letters and numbers/list screen operation

▼ Entering letters and numbers

When entering the Bluetooth device name or PIN-code, or the phone number, letters and numbers can be entered via the screen.

In-Car-Device setting



S01148

No.	Function
1	Enter the desired characters (alphabet key mode).
2	Display the number keys (change to number key mode).
3	Enter a space.
4	Set the characters/numbers entered into the window.
5	Delete a character/number entered into the window.

Dialpad

S01149

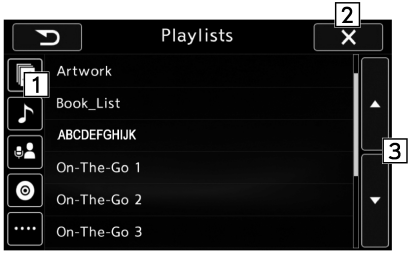
No.	Function
1	Enter the desired numbers.
2	Delete a number entered into the window.

▼ List screen

Two types of list are available on this device.

- Multimedia playlists
- Contacts list

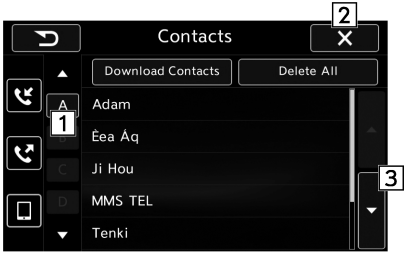
Multimedia playlists (Example: iPod playlist)



S01150

No.	Function
1	Graphic tab: Select a category that wants to play back.
2	Select to return to the playback display of each mode.
3	Select to skip to the next or previous page.

Contacts list (Example: phone book)



S01151

No.	Function
1	Alphabet button: Jump to list entries that begin with the same letter.
2	Select to return to the Phone menu (top screen).
3	Select to skip to the next or previous page.

– CONTINUED –

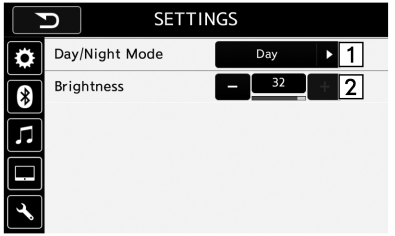
■ Screen adjustment

The contrast and brightness of the screen display and the image of the camera display can be adjusted.

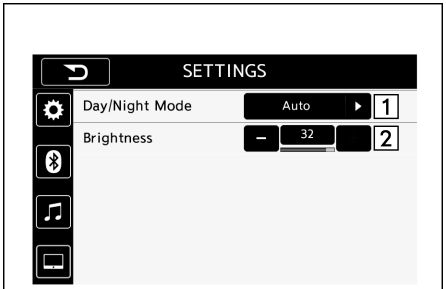
1. Select HOME.
2. Select SETTINGS (SETTINGS).
3. Select the items to be set.

In setting display, the Day/Night Mode and the Brightness can be changed.

SETTINGS display (for Europe)



SETTINGS display (except for Europe, for Australia)



No.	Function
1	Select “Day/Night Mode”. “Auto”, “Day”, or “Night” can be selected on the pop-up screen. When “Auto” is selected, the screen changes to day or night mode depending on the position of the headlight switch.
2	Select “Brightness”. Press “+” or “-” to adjust the brightness.

NOTE

● When the screen is viewed through polarized sunglasses, a rainbow pattern may appear on the screen due to optical characteristics of the screen. If this is disruptive, please operate the screen without polarized sunglasses.

● If the screen is set to “Day” mode with the headlight switch turned on, this condition is memorized even with the engine turned off.

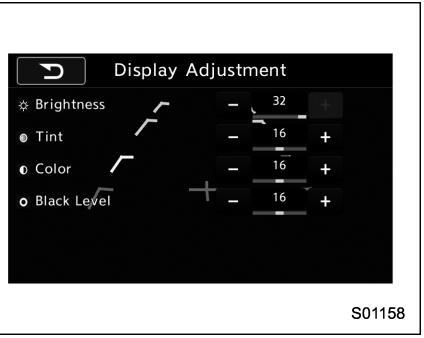
In Camera display, the brightness, tint, color, and black level of the screen can be adjusted.

1. Set the selector lever in the R range.
2. Touch the items to be set after the rear camera monitor is displayed.

NOTE

The Camera display can be accessed when the rear camera monitor is displayed.

Camera display



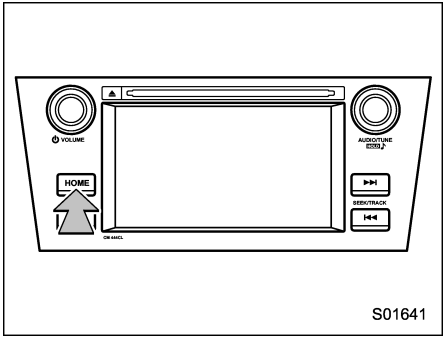
WARNING

When adjusting the camera display screen, make sure to depress the brake pedal fully to stop the vehicle from moving. Failure to do so may lead to a serious accident.

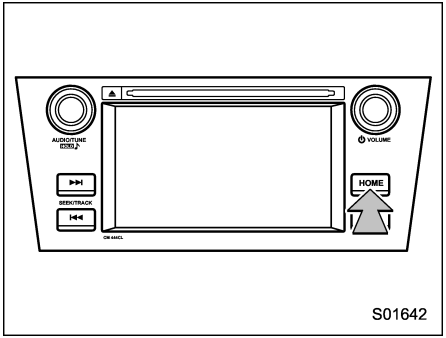
Other settings

1. Select HOME.

For LHD models:

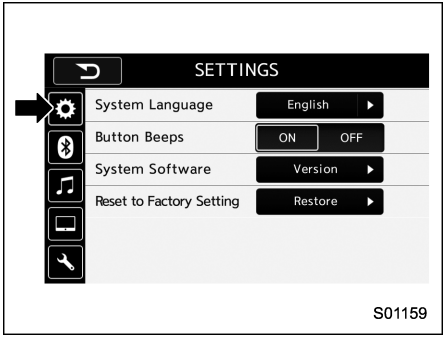


For RHD models:

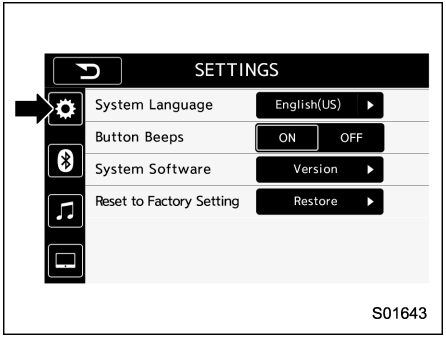


2. Select SETTINGS (SETTINGS).
3. Select the items to be set.

Gear wheel symbol tab (for Europe)

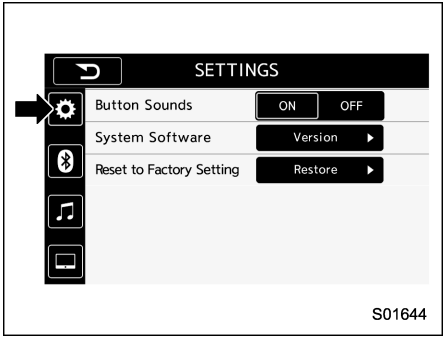


Gear wheel symbol tab (except for Europe)



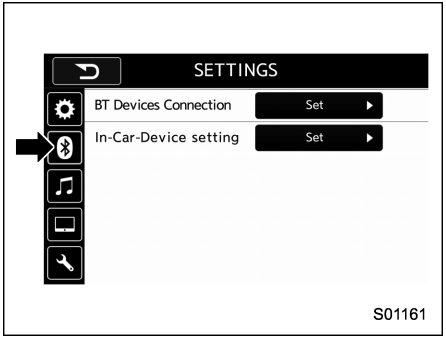
– CONTINUED –

Gear wheel symbol tab (for Australia)

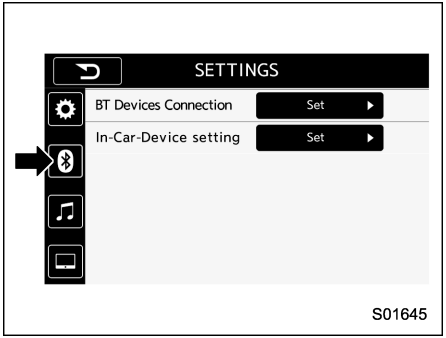


Item	Function
System Language (for Europe, except for Europe)	Select to change the language.
Button Beeps	Select to set the sound beeps on/off.
System Software	Select to update software versions. This menu is not used in usual operation.
Reset to Factory Setting	Select to reset the device to factory settings. This menu is not used in usual operation. When reset to factory setting, turn ignition off and on again.

Bluetooth symbol tab (for Europe)

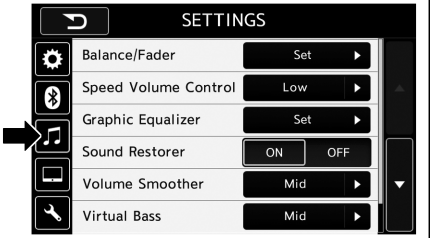


Bluetooth symbol tab (except for Europe, for Australia)

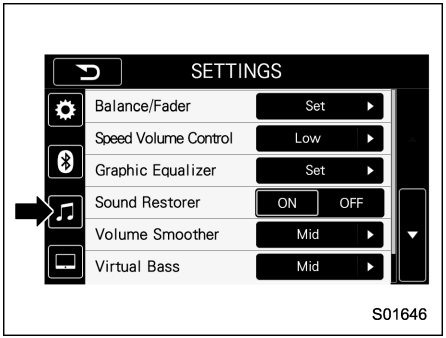


Item	Function
BT Devices Connection	Select to pair/connect the Bluetooth devices.
In-Car-Device setting	Select to enter the Bluetooth device name or PIN-code.

Note symbol tab (for Europe)



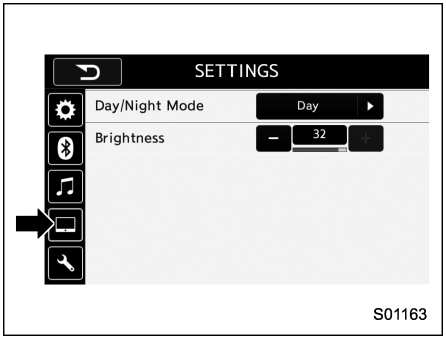
Note symbol tab (except for Europe, for Australia)



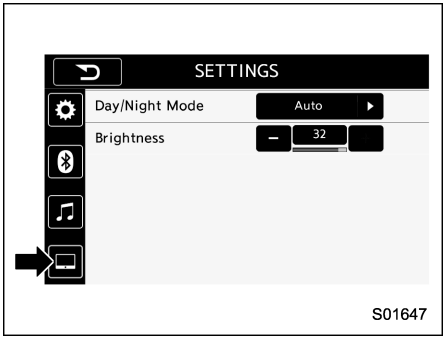
Item	Function
Balance/ Fader	Select to adjust speaker volume balance (right/left and front/rear).
Speed Volume Control	Select to adjust speaker volume coupled to vehicle speed.
Graphic Equalizer	Select to adjust sound quality in each frequency band.
Sound Restorer	Select to add high-pitched tone to the compressed audio file.
Volume Smoother	Select to adjust volume difference between audio sources.
Virtual Bass	Select to add harmonic tone so that low-pitched tone is strengthened.

Item	Function
Vocal Image Control	Select to pick-up vocal sound signal from the sound data, and adjust it to right/left or front/rear.

Monitor symbol tab (for Europe)



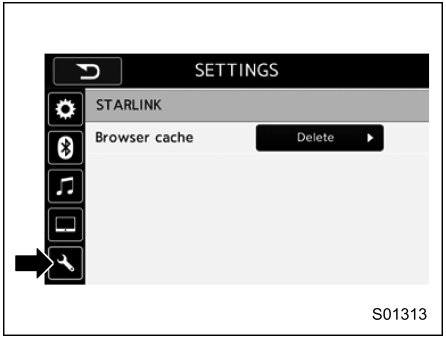
Monitor symbol tab (except for Europe, for Australia)



Item	Function
Day/Night Mode	Select “Day/Night Mode”. “Auto”, “Day”, or “Night” can be selected on the pop-up screen. When “Auto” is selected, the screen changes to day or night mode depending on the position of the headlight switch.
Brightness	Select “Brightness”.

– CONTINUED –

Spanner symbol tab (for Europe)



Item	Function
Browser cache	Select to initialize cache files that the browser stores.

Basic operation

■ Some basics

This section describes some of the basic features of the audio/visual system. Some information may not pertain to your system.

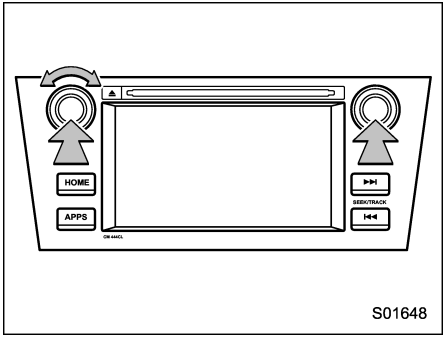
Your audio/visual system works when the ignition switch is turned to the “ACC” or “ON” position.

⚠ CAUTION

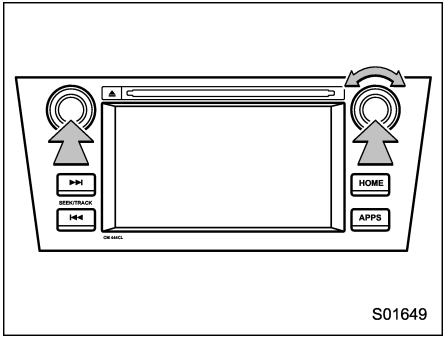
To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not leave the audio/visual system on longer than necessary when the engine is not running.

▼ Turning the system on and off

For LHD models:



For RHD models:



“POWER/VOLUME” knob: Press to turn the audio/visual system on and off. When the system turns on, the last mode is

displayed. Press and hold the knob approx. 1.5 seconds or more, turn the display to off.

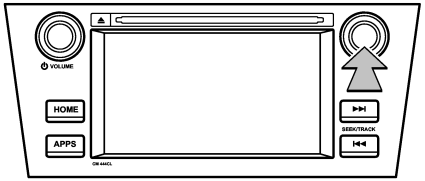
Turn this knob to adjust the volume.

"AUDIO/TUNE" knob: Press to display screen buttons for the audio/visual system.

▼ Selecting an audio source

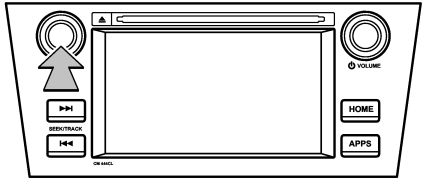
1. Press the "AUDIO/TUNE" knob.

For LHD models:



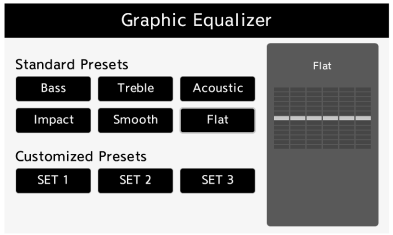
S01650

For RHD models:



S01651

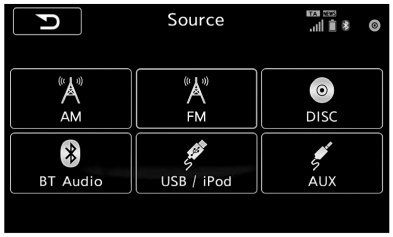
- If the audio control screen appears, select Source (Source) on the audio screen or press the **"AUDIO/TUNE"** knob again.
- Press the "AUDIO/TUNE" knob during lists are displayed, the audio play back screen appears. Press and hold the "AUDIO/TUNE" knob approx. 1.5 seconds or more, the graphic equalizer screen is displayed.



S01652

2. Select the desired source.

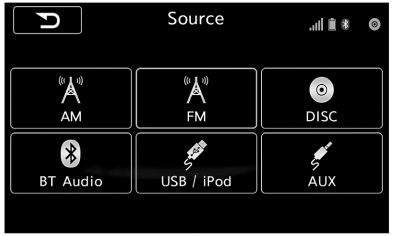
Source select display (for Europe, for Australia)



S01654

– CONTINUED –

Source select display (except for Europe)



▼ Audio settings

1. Select HOME.
2. Select SETTINGS (SETTINGS).
3. Select the note symbol tab.
4. Select the desired item to be adjusted.

Setting ranges

Item	Step	Default
Audio volume	0-40	15
Balance	L9-R9	0 (Center)
Fader	F9-R9	0 (Center)
Vocal Image Control	Left/Right: R9-L9 Front/Rear: R9-F9	Except for Australia: LHD: Left/Right: R3 RHD: Left/Right: L3 For Australia: Left/Right: R3
Speed Volume Control	OFF, Low, High	Low
Graphic Equalizer, SET1-3	−6-+6	0 (Flat)
Sound Restorer	ON, OFF	ON
Volume Smoother	OFF, Low, Mid, High	Mid
Virtual Bass	OFF, Low, Mid, High	Mid

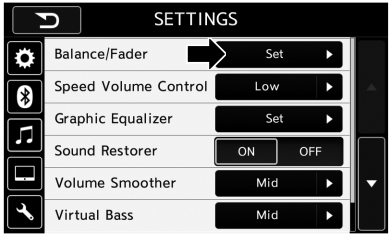
▽ "Balance/Fader"

A good balance of the left and right stereo channels and of the front and rear sound levels is important for good quality audio program listening.

Keep in mind that when listening to a stereo recording or broadcast, changing the right/left balance will increase the volume of 1 group of sounds while decreasing the volume of another.

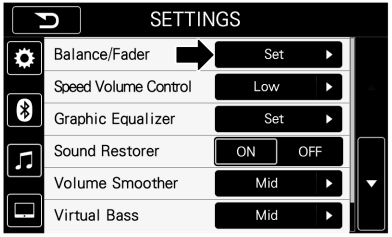
1. Touch the "Set" button of the Balance/Fader function.

For Europe:



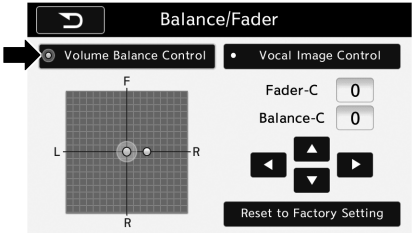
S01168

Except for Europe, for Australia:



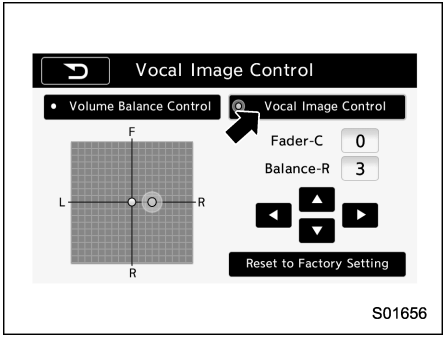
S01655

2. Select the "Volume Balance Control" menu.



S01169

3. Adjust the balance by pressing " ◀ " or " ▶ " button.
4. Adjust the fader by pressing " ▲ " or " ▼ " button.
5. Select the "Vocal Image Control" menu.



S01656

6. Adjust the balance by pressing " ◀ " or " ▶ " button.
7. Adjust the fader by pressing " ▲ " or " ▼ " button.

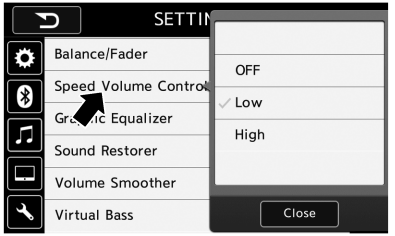
▽ "Speed Volume Control"

The system adjusts to the optimum volume and tone quality according to vehicle speed to compensate for increased vehicle noise.

1. Touch the right side button of the Speed Volume Control function, and select "OFF", "Low", or "High" menu. "High" comes to have a bigger effect.

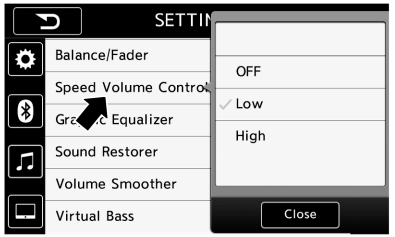
– CONTINUED –

For Europe:



S01171

Except for Europe, for Australia:



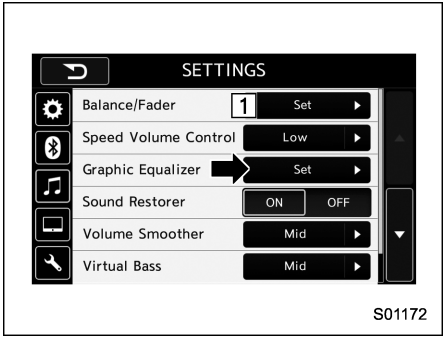
S01657

2. When select “OFF”, speed volume control function is cancelled.

▽ **“Graphic Equalizer”**

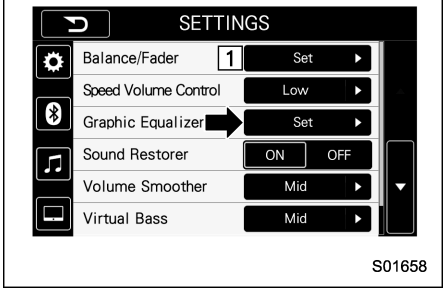
1. Touch the “Set” button of the Graphic Equalizer function.

For Europe:



S01172

Except for Europe, for Australia:



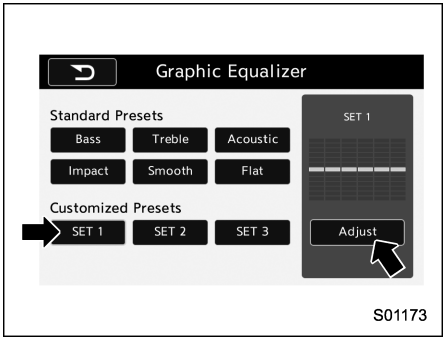
S01658

2. In this mode, 6 preset equalizer patterns and 3 customized patterns are available.

6 preset patterns: “Bass”, “Treble”, “Acoustic”, “Impact”, “Smooth”, “Flat”

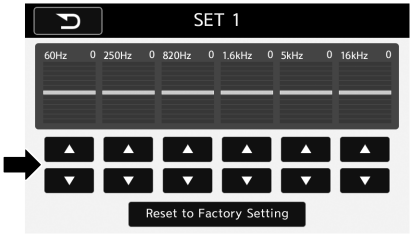
3 customized patterns: “SET 1” - “SET 3”

3. When customizing the equalizer pattern, press one of SET button and then press “Adjust” button.



S01173

4. Adjust the level of each frequency band by pressing “ ▲ ” or “ ▼ ” button.

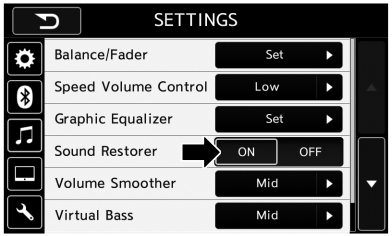


S01176

▽ **“Sound Restorer”**

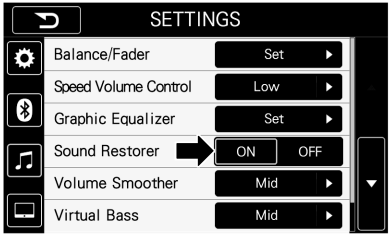
Select “ON” or “OFF” by the right side button of the Sound Restorer function.

For Europe:



S01177

Except for Europe, for Australia:

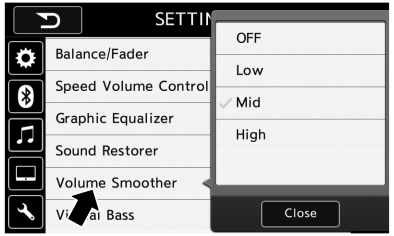


S01659

▽ **“Volume Smoother”**

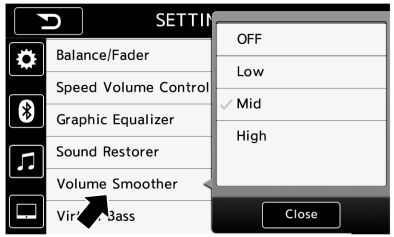
1. Touch the right side button of the Volume Smoother function, and select “OFF”, “Low”, “Mid” or “High” menu. “High” comes to have a bigger effect.

For Europe:



S01178

Except for Europe, for Australia:



S01660

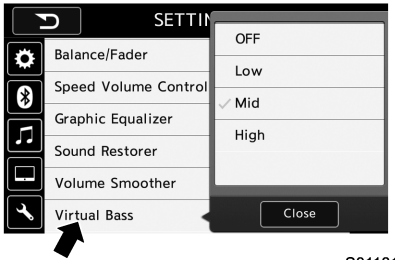
2. When select “OFF”, volume smoother function is cancelled.

– CONTINUED –

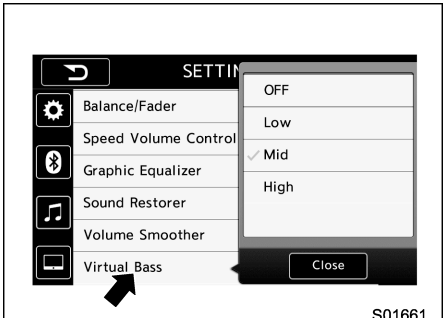
▽ **“Virtual Bass”**

1. Touch the right side button of the Virtual Bass function, and select “OFF”, “Low”, “Mid” or “High” menu. “High” comes to have a bigger effect.

For Europe:



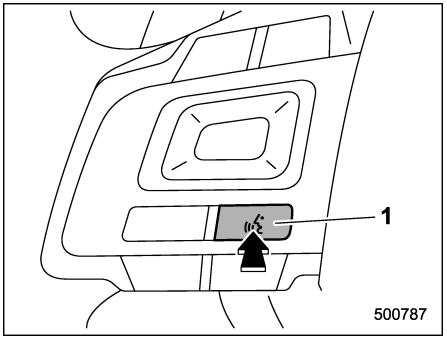
Except for Europe, for Australia:



2. When select “OFF”, virtual bass function is cancelled.

▼ **Voice command system**

1. Press this switch to operate the voice command system.



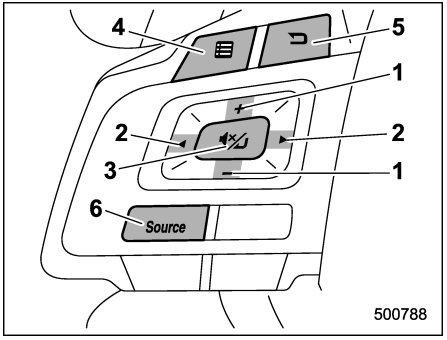
1 Talk switch

- The voice command system and its list of commands can be operated. Refer to “Voice command system operation” ☞5-101.

Audio/visual remote controls

■ Steering switches

Some parts of the audio/visual system can be adjusted using the switches on the steering wheel.



No.	Switch
1	“+/−” switch
2	“< >” switch
3	Mute/Enter switch
4	List switch
5	Back switch
6	“Source” switch

“+/-” switch

Mode	Operation	Function
Except list screen	Press	Volume up/down
	Press and hold	Volume up/down continuously
List screen	Press	Move cursor up/down

“< >” switch

Mode	Operation	Function
AM/FM Radio	Press	Preset channel up/down
	Press and hold	Seek up/down continuously while the switch is being pressed
Audio CD, MP3/WMA/AAC disc, USB, iPod, BT audio	Press	Select a track/file
	Press and hold	Fast forward/rewind
List screen	Press	Move cursor left/right

– CONTINUED –

Mute/Enter switch

Mode	Operation	Function
Except list screen	Press	Audio ON/OFF
List screen	Press	Select cursor entry

Back switch

Mode	Operation	Function
All (except STARLINK) (except for Europe, for Australia)	Press	Return to the previous screen
All	Press and hold	Return to the HOME screen

List switch

Mode	Operation	Function
All (except STARLINK) (except for Europe, for Australia)	Press	Show list screen

“Source” switch

Mode	Operation	Function
All	Press	Change audio modes

NOTE (for Europe)

In the STARLINK mode, some operation may be done on the screen depend on the selected APPS.

Tips for operating the audio/visual system

■ Operating information

⚠ CAUTION

- **To avoid damage to the audio/visual system:**
  - **Be careful not to spill beverages over the audio/visual system.**
  - **Do not put anything other than an appropriate disc into the disc slot.**

NOTE

The use of a cellular phone inside or near the vehicle may cause a noise from the speakers of the audio/visual system which you are listening to. However, this does not indicate a malfunction.

▼ Radio

Usually, a problem with radio reception does not mean there is a problem with the radio — it is just the normal result of conditions outside the vehicle.

For example, nearby buildings and terrain can interfere with FM reception. Power lines or phone wires can interfere with AM signals. And of course, radio signals have a limited range. The farther the vehicle is from a station, the weaker its signal will be. In addition, reception conditions change constantly as the vehicle moves.

Here, some common reception problems that probably do not indicate a problem with the radio are described.

▽ FM

Fading and drifting stations: Generally, the effective range of FM is about 25 miles (40 km). Once outside this range, you may notice fading and drifting, which increase with the distance from the radio transmitter. They are often accompanied by distortion.

Static and fluttering: These occur when signals are blocked by buildings, trees or other large objects. Increasing the bass level may reduce static and fluttering.

Station swapping: If the FM signal being listened to is interrupted or weakened, and there is another strong station nearby on the FM band, the radio may tune in the second station until the original signal can be picked up again.

▽ AM

Fading: AM broadcasts are reflected by the upper atmosphere — especially at night. These reflected signals can interfere with those received directly from the radio station, causing the radio station to sound alternately strong and weak.

Station interference: When a reflected signal and a signal received directly from a radio station are very nearly the same frequency, they can interfere with each other, making it difficult to hear the broadcast.

Static: AM is easily affected by external sources of electrical noise, such as high tension power lines, lightening or electrical motors. This results in static.

– CONTINUED –

▼ CD player and disc

- This CD player is intended for use with 4.7 in. (12 cm) discs only.
- Extremely high temperatures can keep the CD player from working. On hot days, use the air conditioning system to cool the inside of the vehicle before using the player.
- Bumpy roads or other vibrations may make the CD player skip.
- If moisture gets into the CD player, the discs may not be able to be played. Remove the discs from the player and wait until it dries.

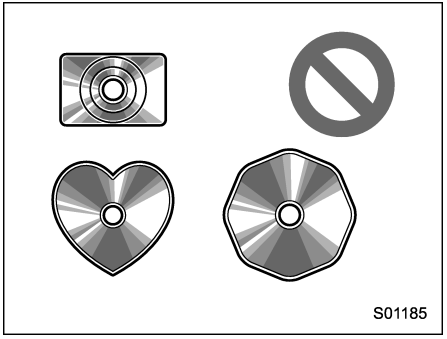
⚠ WARNING

CD players use an invisible laser beam which could cause hazardous radiation exposure if directed outside the unit. Be sure to operate the player correctly.

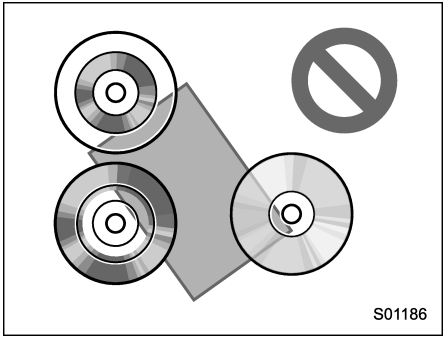
Audio CDs	COMPACT disc DIGITAL AUDIO	COMPACT disc DIGITAL AUDIO TEXT
	COMPACT disc DIGITAL AUDIO Recordable	COMPACT disc DIGITAL AUDIO ReWritable

- Use only discs marked as shown above. The following products may not be playable on your player:
  - SACD
  - dts CD
  - Copy-protected CD
  - Video CD

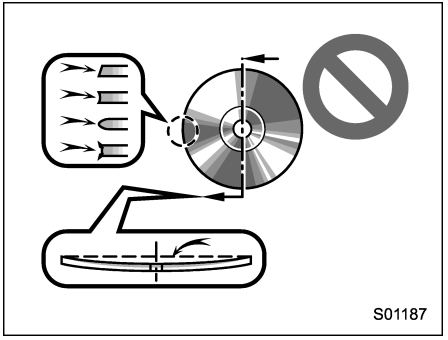
Special shaped discs



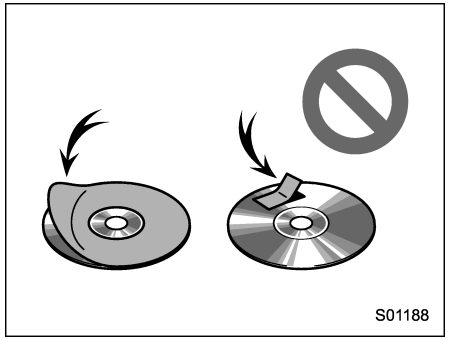
Transparent/translucent discs



Low quality discs

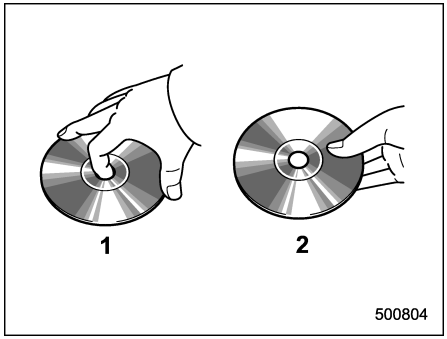


Labeled discs



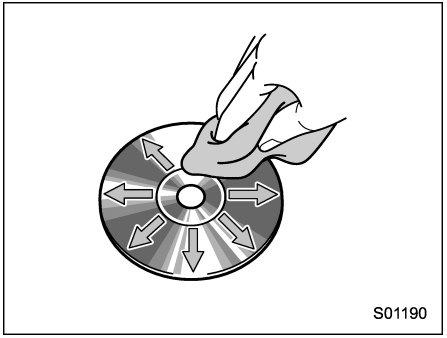
⚠ CAUTION

- **Do not use special shaped, transparent/translucent, low quality or labeled discs such as those shown in the illustrations. The use of such discs may damage the player, or it may be impossible to eject the disc.**
- **This system is not designed for use of Dual Discs. Do not use Dual Discs because they may cause damage to the player.**
- **Do not use discs with a protection ring. The use of such discs may damage the player, or it may be impossible to eject the disc.**
- **Do not use printable discs. The use of such discs may damage the player, or it may be impossible to eject the disc.**



1) Correct
2) Wrong

- Handle discs carefully, especially when inserting them. Hold them on the edge and do not bend them. Avoid getting fingerprints on them, particularly on the shiny side.
- Dirt, scratches, warping, pin holes or other disc damage could cause the player to skip or to repeat a section of a track. (To see a pin hole, hold the disc up to the light.)
- Remove discs from the players when not in use. Store them in their plastic cases away from moisture, heat and direct sunlight.



To clean a disc: Wipe it with a soft, lint-free cloth that has been dampened with water. Wipe in a straight line from the center to the edge of the disc (not in circles). Dry it with another soft, lint-free cloth. Do not use a conventional record cleaner or anti-static device.

▽ CD-R/RW discs

- CD-R/CD-RW discs that have not been subject to the “finalizing process” (a process that allows discs to be played on a conventional CD player) cannot be played.
- It may not be possible to play CD-R/CD-RW discs recorded on a music CD recorder or a personal computer because

– CONTINUED –

of disc characteristics, scratches or dirt on the disc, or dirt, condensation, etc. on the lens of the unit.

- It may not be possible to play discs recorded on a personal computer depending on the application settings and the environment. Record with the correct format. (For details, contact the appropriate application manufacturers of the applications.)
- CD-R/CD-RW discs may be damaged by direct exposure to sunlight, high temperatures or other storage conditions. The unit may be unable to play some damaged discs.
- If you insert a CD-RW disc into the player, playback will begin more slowly than with a conventional CD or CD-R disc.
- Recordings on CD-R/CD-RW cannot be played using the DDCD (Double Density CD) system.

▼ USB memory device

- USB communication formats: USB 1.1/2.0 HS (480 Mbps) and FS (12 Mbps)
- File formats: FAT 16/32
- Correspondence class: Mass storage class

▼ iPod

The following iPod, iPod nano, iPod classic, iPod touch and iPhone devices can be used with this system.

Made for

- iPod touch (5th generation)*
- iPod touch (4th generation)
- iPod touch (3rd generation)
- iPod touch (2nd generation)
- iPod touch (1st generation)
- iPod classic
- iPod nano (7th generation)*
- iPod nano (6th generation)*
- iPod nano (5th generation)
- iPod nano (4th generation)
- iPod nano (3rd generation)
- iPod nano (2nd generation)*
- iPod nano (1st generation)*
- iPhone 5s*
- iPhone 5c*
- iPhone 5*
- iPhone 4s
- iPhone 4
- iPhone 3GS
- iPhone 3G
- iPhone

*: iPod video not supported

Depending on differences between models or software versions etc., some models might be incompatible with this system.

▼ File information

Compatible compressed files (Audio)

Item	USB	DISC
Compatible file format	MP3/WMA/AAC	
Folders in the device	Maximum 512	Maximum 255
Files in the device	Maximum 8000	Maximum 512
Files per folder	Maximum 255	—

Corresponding sampling frequency (Audio)

File type	Frequency (kHz)
MP3 files: MPEG 1 LAYER 3	32/44.1/48
MP3 files: MPEG 2 LSF LAYER 3	16/22.05/24
WMA files: Ver. 7, 8, 9 (9.1/9.2)	32/48/64/80/96/128/160/192
AAC files: MPEG4/AAC-LC	48/44.1/32/24/22.05/16/12/11.025/8

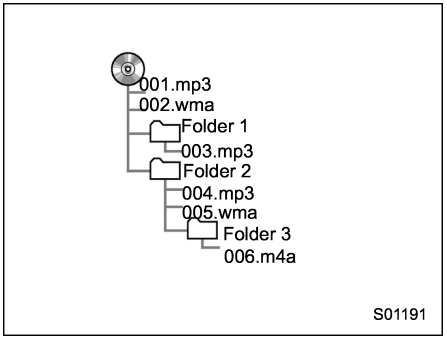
Corresponding bit rates (Audio)

File type	Bit rate (kbps)
MP3 files: MPEG 1 LAYER 3	32 - 320
MP3 files: MPEG 2 LSF LAYER 3	8 - 160
WMA files: Ver. 7, 8	CBR 48 - 192
WMA files: Ver. 9 (9.1/9.2)	CBR 32 - 192
AAC files: MPEG4/AAC-LC	16 - 320

(Variable Bit Rate (VBR) compatible)

- MP3 (MPEG Audio Layer 3), WMA (Windows Media Audio) and AAC (Advanced Audio Coding) are audio compression standards.
- This system can play MP3/WMA/AAC files on CD-R, CD-RW discs, USB memory, and Bluetooth device.
- This system can play disc recordings compatible with ISO 9660 level 1 and level 2 and with the Romeo and Joliet file system.
- When naming an MP3/WMA/AAC file, add an appropriate file extension (.mp3/.wma/.m4a).
- This system plays back files with .mp3/.wma/.m4a file extensions as MP3/WMA/AAC files respectively. To prevent noise and playback errors, use the appropriate file extension.
- This system can play only the first session when using multi-session compatible CDs.
- MP3 files are compatible with the ID3 Tag Ver. 1.0, Ver. 1.1, Ver. 2.2 and Ver. 2.3 formats. This system cannot display disc title, track title and artist name in other formats.
- WMA/AAC files can contain a WMA/AAC tag that is used in the same way as an ID3 tag. WMA/AAC tags carry information such as track title and artist name.
- The emphasis function is available only when playing MP3/WMA files recorded at 32, 44.1 and 48 kHz.
- This system can play back AAC files encoded by iTunes.
- The sound quality of MP3/WMA files generally improves with higher bit rates. In order to achieve a reasonable level of sound quality, discs recorded with a bit rate of at least 128 kbps are recommended.
- The MP3/WMA player does not play back MP3/WMA files from discs recorded using packet write data transfer (UDF format). Discs should be recorded using “pre-mastering” software rather than packetwrite software.
- M3u playlists are not compatible with the audio device.
- MP3i (MP3 interactive) and MP3PRO formats are not compatible with the audio device.
- The player is compatible with VBR (Variable Bit Rate).
- When playing back files recorded as VBR (Variable Bit Rate) files, the play time will not be correctly displayed if the fast forward or reverse operations are used.
- It is not possible to check folders that do not include MP3/WMA/AAC files.
- MP3/WMA/AAC files in folders up to 8 levels deep can be played. However, the start of playback may be delayed when using discs containing numerous levels of folders. For this reason, we recommend creating discs with no more than 2 levels of folders.

– CONTINUED –



- The play order of the compact disc with the structure shown above is as follows:

001.mp3 → 002.wma . . . → 006.m4a

- The order changes depending on the personal computer and MP3/WMA/AAC encoding software you use.

▼ Terms

▽ Packet write

- This is a general term that describes the process of writing data on-demand to CD-R, etc., in the same way that data is written to floppy or hard discs.

▽ ID3 tag

- This is a method of embedding track-related information in an MP3 file. This embedded information can include the track number, track title, the artist's name, the album title, the music genre, the year of production, comments, cover art and other data. The contents can be freely edited using software with ID3 tag editing functions. Although the tags are restricted to a number of characters, the information can be viewed when the track is played back.

▽ WMA tag

- WMA files can contain a WMA tag that is used in the same way as an ID3 tag. WMA tags carry information such as track title and artist name.

▽ ISO 9660 format

- This is the international standard for the formatting of CD-ROM folders and files. For the ISO 9660 format, there are 2 levels of regulations.
- Level 1: The file name is in 8.3 format (8 character file names, with a 3 character file extension. File names must be composed of one-byte capital letters and numbers. The "_" symbol may also be included.)
- Level 2: The file name can have up to 31 characters (including the separation mark "." and file extension). Each folder must contain fewer than 8 hierarchies.

▽ MP3

- MP3 is an audio compression standard determined by a working group (MPEG) of the ISO (International Standard Organization). MP3 compresses audio data to about 1/10 the size of that on conventional discs.

▽ WMA

- WMA (Windows Media Audio) is an audio compression format developed by Microsoft®. It compresses files into a size smaller than that of MP3 files. The decoding formats for WMA files are Ver. 7, 8 and 9.
- This product is protected by certain intellectual property rights of Microsoft Corporation and third parties. Use or distribution of such technology outside of this product is prohibited without a license from Microsoft or an authorized Microsoft subsidiary and third parties.

▽ AAC

- AAC is short for Advanced Audio Coding and refers to an audio compression technology standard used with

MPEG2 and MPEG4.

▼ Error messages

Mode	Message	Explanation
CD	“Disc read error.”	● This indicates that no MP3/WMA/AAC files are included in the disc. ● This indicates that the disc is dirty, damaged, or it was inserted upside down. Clean the disc or insert it correctly. It indicates a disc which is not playable is inserted.
	“Please eject disc.”	There is a trouble inside the system. Eject the disc.
USB	“Media not connected. Press AUDIO/TUNE knob to exit.”	This indicates a problem in the USB memory or its connection. Refer to “Connecting and disconnecting a USB memory/portable device” ☞5-8.
	“No audio file.”	This indicates that no MP3/WMA/AAC files are included in the USB memory.
	“Unplayable file”	This indicates that the accessed file cannot play back.
iPod	“Media not connected. Press AUDIO/TUNE knob to exit.”	This indicates that a USB device/iPod is not connected to the system.
	“No audio file”	This indicates that there is no audio file in the connected iPod.
	“Unplayable file”	This indicates that the accessed file cannot play back.

NOTE

If the malfunction is not rectified: Take your vehicle to your SUBARU dealer.

Useful information

■ STARLINK (for Europe)

The STARLINK function allows the system to link with a smartphone using Bluetooth.

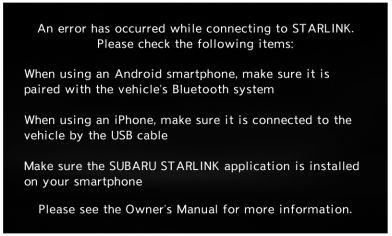
▼ Displaying STARLINK information

1. Press APPS key on the home screen, or press APPS button, the APPS screen is displayed.

S01226

No.	Function
1	Check: Go to APPS screen.
2	Cancel: STARLINK disclaimer screen is disappeared and return to the previous screen.

STARLINK disclaimer error screen

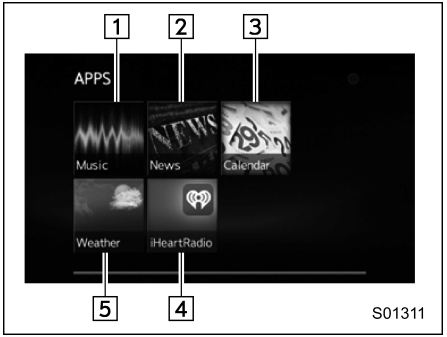


S01310

The error screen will be displayed due to one of the following possible reasons.

- Your smartphone and the system has not been connected via USB (for iPhone) or Bluetooth (for Android).
- STARLINK APPS has not been activated.

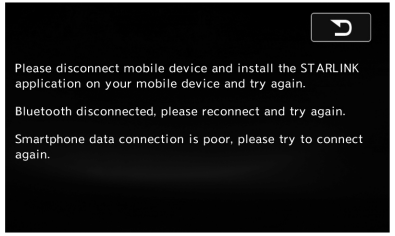
2. If you press Check (Check) on the STARLINK disclaimer screen, the APPS main screen will be displayed.



S01311

No.	Function
1	Select to go to the Music APPS screen.
2	Select to go to the News APPS screen.
3	Select to go to the Calendar APPS screen.
4	Select to go to the Weather APPS screen.
5	Select to go to the iHeartRadio APPS screen.

Error screen that is displayed while using STARLINK



The error screen will be displayed while using STARLINK due to one of the following possible reasons.

- When your smartphone has no service or the Bluetooth communication is not possible.
- When your smartphone is turned off.
- When the STARLINK APPS is quit.
- When connection to the STARLINK server is not possible.
- When a problem occurs other than a server error.

NOTE

When using the STARLINK function, a disclaimer screen will be displayed. Be sure to fully read the contents before using the function.

NOTE

Connection method
iPhone: USB
Android: Bluetooth

Supported devices
iPhone: iPhone 4/iPhone 4s/iPhone 5/ iPhone 5c/iPhone 5s (iOS Ver. 5.1 or later)
Android: (OS Ver. 4.0 or later)

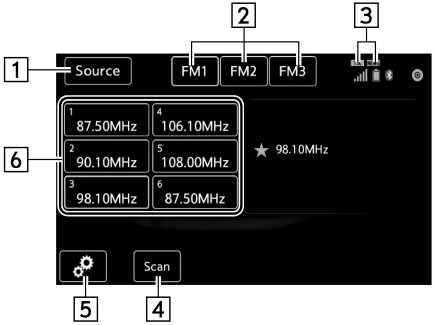
Radio operation

■ AM/FM radio

▼ Overview

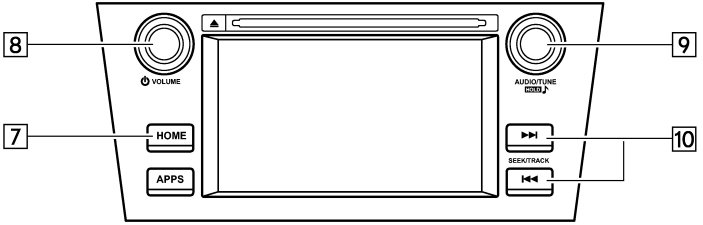
Select AM (AM) or FM (FM) on the "Select Audio Source (Select Audio Source)" screen. Refer to "Selecting an audio source" ☞5-17.

Control screen (for Europe)



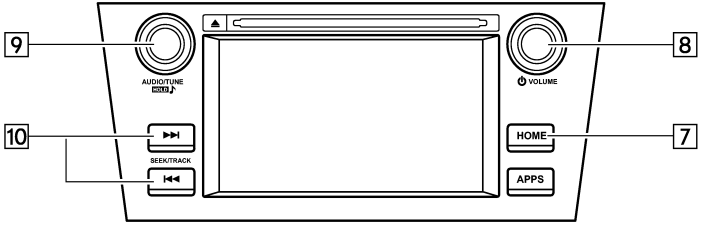
S01662

Control panel (for Europe LHD models)



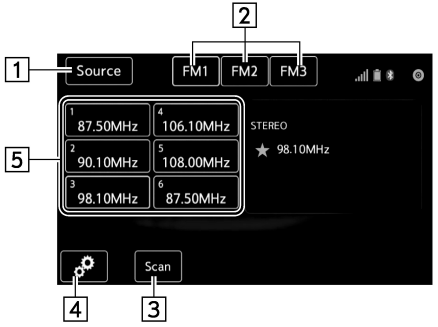
500879

Control panel (for Europe RHD models)



500880

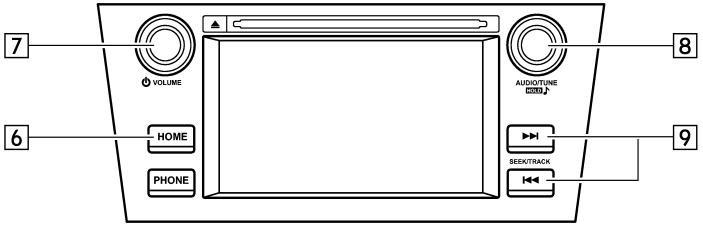
Control screen (except for Europe)



S01663

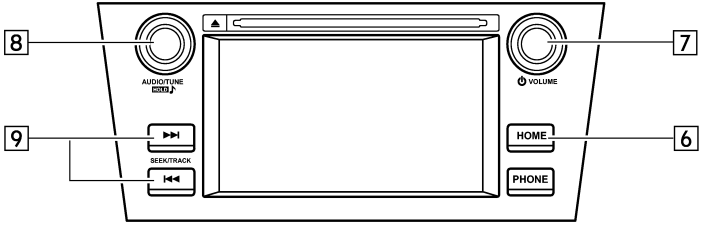
– CONTINUED –

Control panel (except for Europe LHD models)



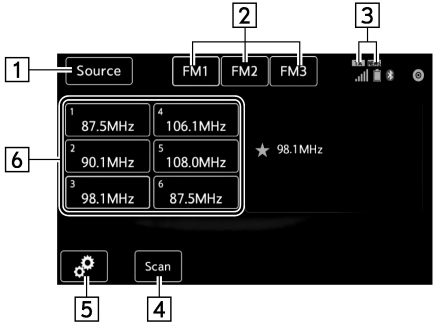
500881

Control panel (except for Europe RHD models)



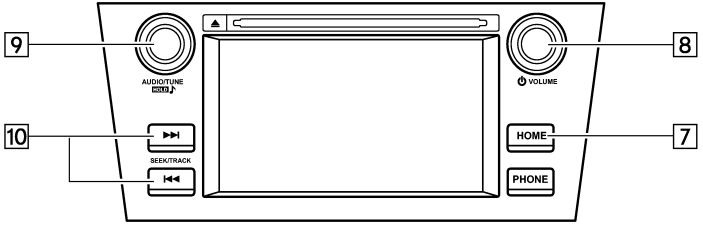
500882

Control screen (for Australia)



S01664

Control panel (for Australia)



500883

– CONTINUED –

For Europe, for Australia:

No.	Function
1	Select to display the audio source selection screen.
2	Select to change the FM band.
3	TA icon: It is displayed when turning the TA setting ON on the FM Options screen. It is not displayed when turning the TA setting OFF. NEWS icon: It is displayed when turning the News setting ON on the FM Options screen. It is not displayed when turning the News setting OFF.
4	Preset SCAN: Select to search for stations stored in the preset channels in the direction of a higher frequency. When a receivable station is found, the system tunes in to the frequency for 10 seconds. The preset scan ends once all the preset channels have been scanned.
5	Option key: Select to open the Option screen.
6	If you press a key for less than 1.5 seconds, the system tunes to the stored frequency. If you press a key for more than 1.5 seconds, the system stores the frequency to the selected preset channel. Refer to “Presetting a station” ☞5-39.
7	Select to display the sound setting screen. Refer to “Basic operation” ☞5-16.
8	Turn to adjust the volume. Press to turn the audio system on/off.
9	Turn to step up/down frequencies. Press to select an audio mode.
10	Select to seek for a station/channel. Select and hold for continuous seek.

Except for Europe:

No.	Function
1	Select to display the audio source selection screen.
2	Select to change the FM band.
3	Select to scan radio channels. This function enables searching for receivable stations automatically, and tunes in to a frequency for 5 seconds if a station is found. When the 5-second period has elapsed, the system searches for the next receivable station again, and tunes in to the frequency for 5 seconds.
4	Option key: Select to open the Option screen.
5	If you press a key for less than 1.5 seconds, the system tunes to the stored frequency. If you press a key for more than 1.5 seconds, the system stores the frequency to the selected preset channel. Refer to “Presetting a station” ☞5-39.
6	Select to display the sound setting screen. Refer to “Basic operation” ☞5-16.
7	Turn to adjust the volume. Press to turn the audio system on/off.
8	Turn to step up/down frequencies. Press to select an audio mode.
9	Select to seek for a station/channel. Select and hold for continuous seek.

NOTE

The radio automatically changes to stereo reception when a stereo broadcast is received.

▼ Presetting a station

The radio mode has a preset function and can store the amount of stations as follows.

AM: up to 6 stations for each band (AM1/AM2)

FM: up to 6 stations for each band (FM1/FM2/FM3)

When a station name has been acquired, the station name will be displayed instead of the frequency.

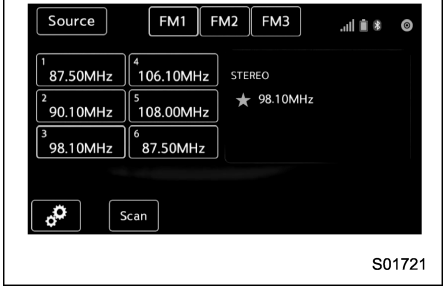
1. Tune in the desired station.
2. If you press a key for more than 1.5 seconds, the system stores the frequency to the selected preset channel.

For Europe, for Australia:

S01670

When a station name has been acquired, the station name will be displayed instead of the frequency.

Except for Europe:



S01721

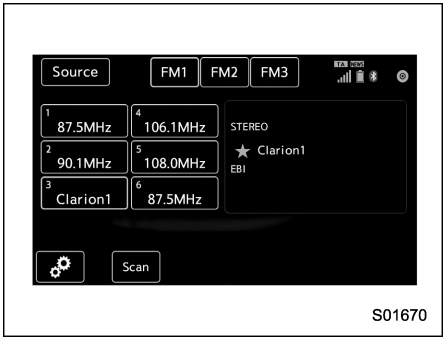
- To change the preset station to a different one, select and hold the preset station.

▼ Radio data system (for Europe, for Australia)

RDS (Radio Data System) is an FM multiplex broadcasting system that is popular in Europe, and it transmits digital information as subcarrier signals on FM radio. RDS broadcasts program information and text information, etc.

The transmitted data of RDS contains the control data so that the system can continue to receive the same radio program when driving across several locations.

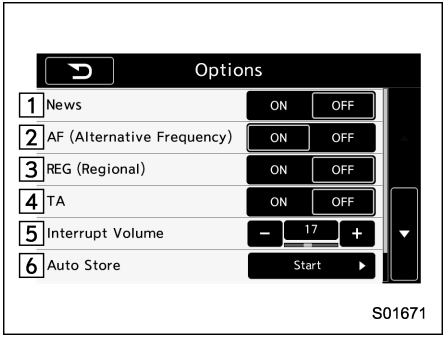
▽ Selecting a desired options screen (for Europe)



S01670

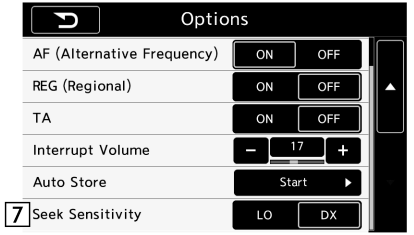
1. Select Option (Option).

Options screen (FM radio)



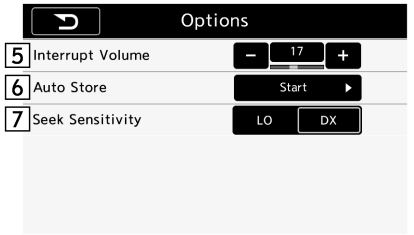
S01671

– CONTINUED –



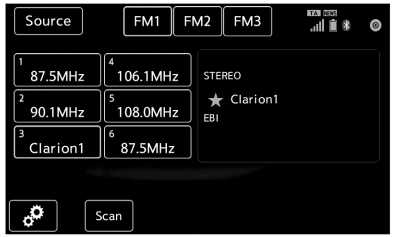
S01672

Options screen (AM radio)



S01673

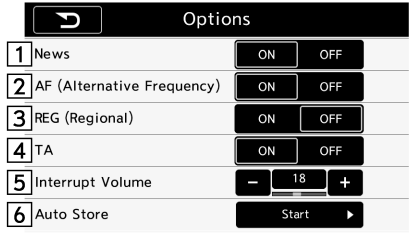
▽ **Selecting a desired options screen (for Australia)**



S01670

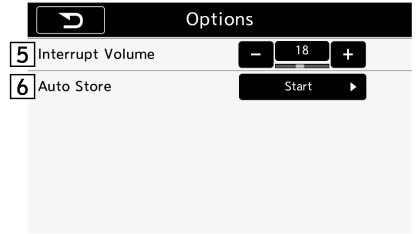
1. Select **Option** (Option).

Options screen (FM radio)



S01674

Options screen (AM radio)



S01675

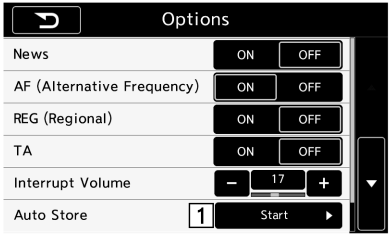
No.	Function
1	Select to turn the news interrupt function ON and OFF (Default setting: OFF). If the setting is ON, when the current station broadcasts a news program, the system will automatically switch the audio source to the radio (News).
2	Select to turn the AF (Alternative Frequency) setting ON and OFF (Default setting: ON).
3	Select to turn the REG (Regional) setting ON and OFF (Default setting: OFF). If the setting is ON, the system will automatically search the station of which the PI code matches completely. If the AF setting is OFF, the button is disabled and turning ON/OFF is not possible.

No.	Function
4	Select to turn the TA (Traffic Announcement) interrupt function ON and OFF (Default setting: OFF). If the setting is ON, when the current station broadcasts TA, the system will automatically switch the audio source to the radio (TA).
5	Select to adjust the volume when interrupting (Alarm/TA/News) between 0 and 40 (Default setting: 17).
6	Select to start the Auto Store function.
7	Select to switch the sensitivity setting between LO and DX during the seek function (Default setting: DX). The set value is applied both to FM and AM. If you change the setting from DX to LO for FM (Options screen), the setting for AM (Options screen) will be also changed to LO.

▽ Selecting a desired auto store

1. Select Start (Start) on the options screen and the following screen will be displayed.

For Europe, for Australia:



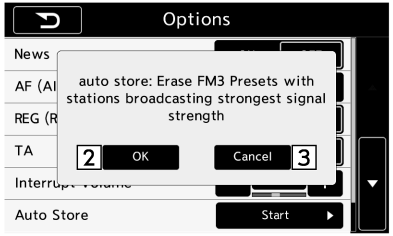
S01676

Except for Europe:

S01722

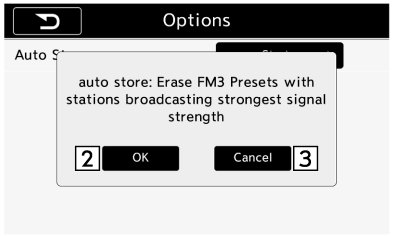
2. If you select OK, the Auto Store screen will be displayed.

For Europe, for Australia:



S01677

Except for Europe:



S01723

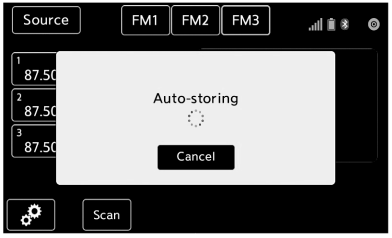
3. If you select Cancel on the Auto Store screen, the screen will go back to the Options screen.

– CONTINUED –

For Europe, for Australia:

S01678

Except for Europe:



S01724

Media operation

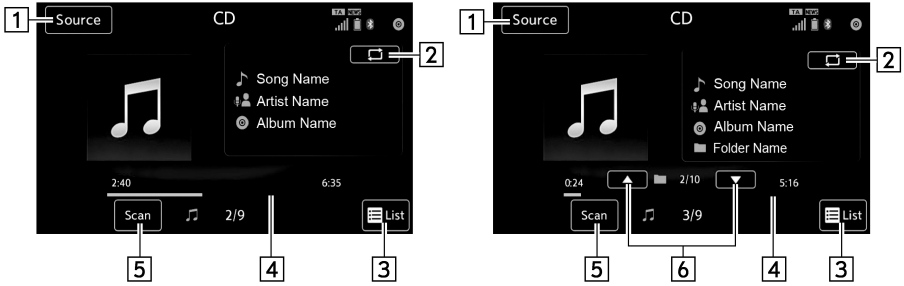
■ CD

▼ Overview

The CD operation screen can be reached by the following methods:

- Insert a disc. Refer to “Loading and unloading a disc” ☞5-8.
- Select DISC (DISC) on the “Select Audio Source (Select Audio Source)” screen. Refer to “Selecting an audio source” ☞5-17.

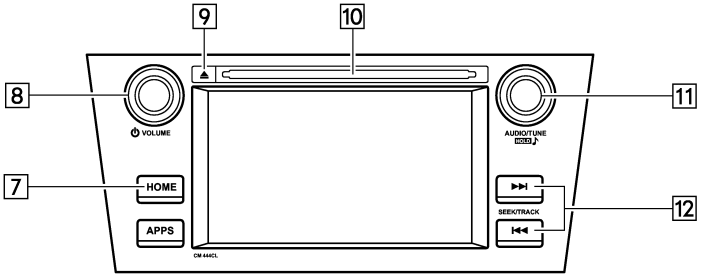
Control screen (for Europe, for Australia)



S01679

Left: Audio CD, Right: MP3/WMA/AAC disc

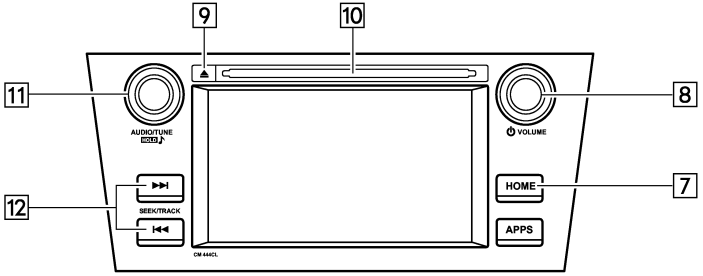
Control panel (for Europe LHD models)



S01680

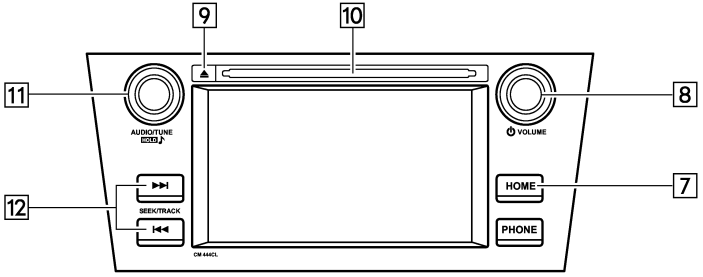
– CONTINUED –

Control panel (for Europe RHD models)



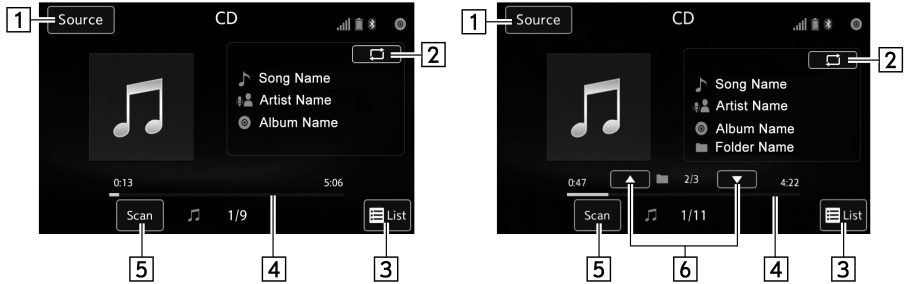
S01683

Control panel (for Australia)



S01682

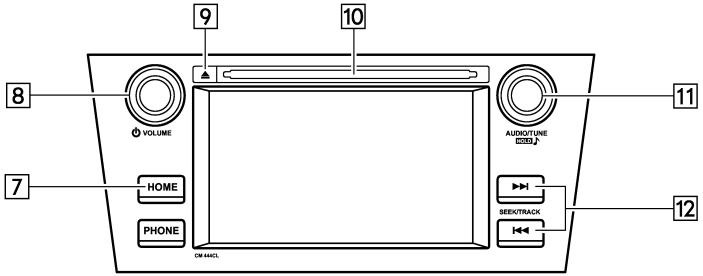
Control screen (except for Europe)



S01196

Left: Audio CD, Right: MP3/WMA/AAC disc

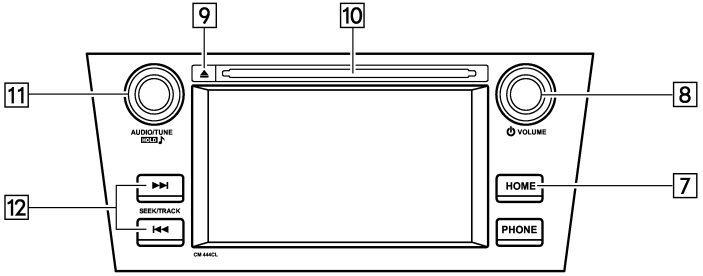
Control panel (except for Europe LHD models)



S01681

– CONTINUED –

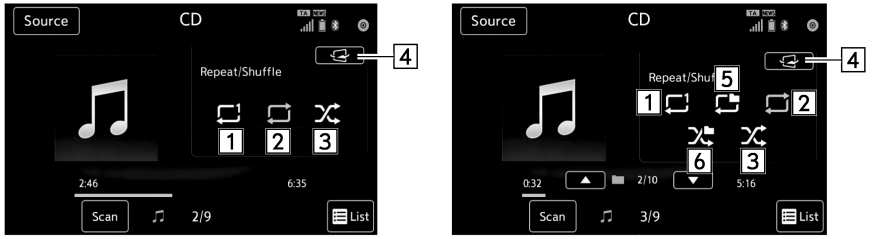
Control panel (except for Europe RHD models)



S01684

No.	Function
1	Select to display the audio source selection screen.
2	Select to display Trick Play Settings screen.
3	Audio CD Select to display a track list. MP3/WMA/AAC disc Select to display a folder list.
4	Shows progress.
5	The tracks in the disc are played back for ten seconds each from the beginning of the track.
6	MP3/WMA/AAC disc Select to choose a folder.
7	Select to display the sound setting screen. Refer to “Basic operation” ☞5-16.
8	Turn to adjust volume. Press to turn the audio system on/off.
9	Press to eject a disc.
10	Disc slot
11	Turn to select a track/file. Press to select an audio mode.
12	Press to select a track/file. Press and hold to fast forward/rewind.

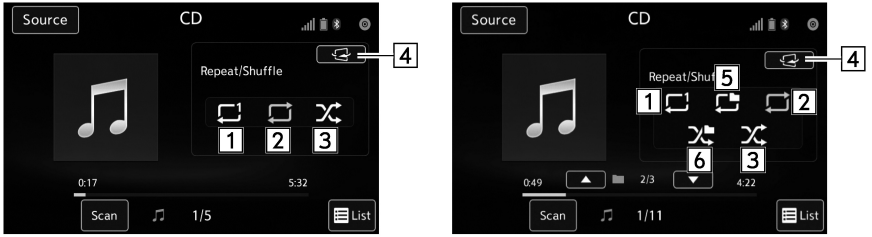
Control screen (Trick Play) (for Europe, for Australia)



S01685

Left: Audio CD, Right: MP3/WMA/AAC disc

Control screen (Trick Play) (except for Europe)



S01198

Left: Audio CD, Right: MP3/WMA/AAC disc

No.	Function
1	Select to start 1 Track Repeat.
2	Select to start Repeat All.
3	Select to start Shuffle All.
4	Select to return to the control screen.
5	Select to start Folder Repeat.
6	Select to start Shuffle Folder.

NOTE

- **If a disc contains CD-DA files and MP3/WMA/AAC files, only the CD-DA files can be played back.**
- **If a CD-TEXT disc is inserted, the title of the disc and track will be displayed. Up to 32 characters can be displayed.**
- **If the disc contains no CD-TEXT, only the track number would be displayed on the screen.**
- **If you press the "Mute" switch on the steering wheel during playback, the track pauses. If you press the "Mute" switch once again, the playback will resume.**

– CONTINUED –

■ USB memory

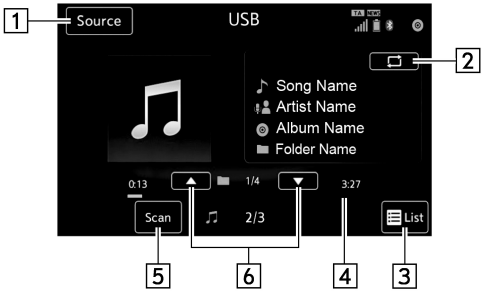
Audio files on the USB memory can be played back.

▼ Overview

The USB Audio playback screen can be reached by the following methods:

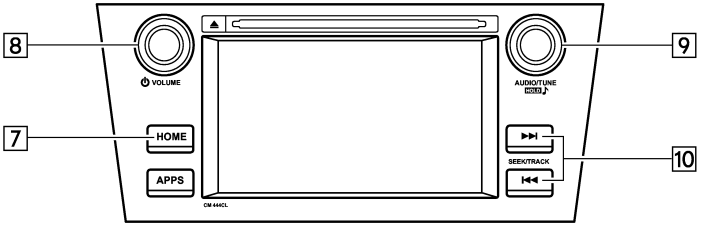
- Connect a USB memory. Refer to “Connecting and disconnecting a USB memory/portable device” ☞5-8.
- Select USB / iPod (USB / iPod) on the “Select Audio Source (Select Audio Source)” screen. Refer to “Selecting an audio source” ☞5-17.

Control screen (for Europe, for Australia)



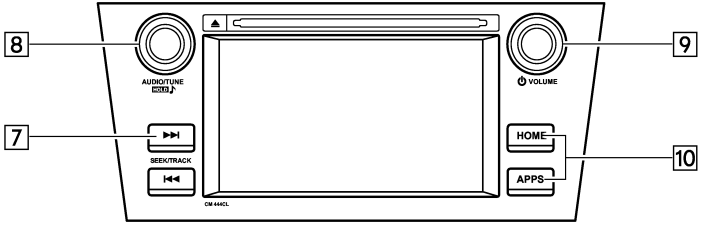
S01686

Control panel (for Europe LHD models)



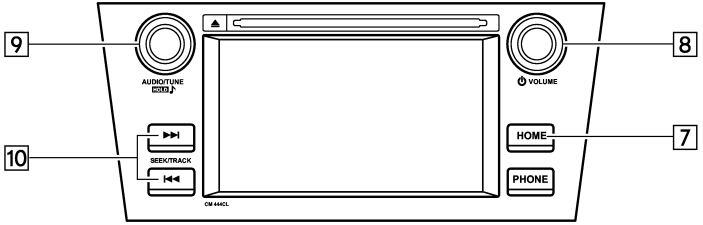
S01688

Control panel (for Europe RHD models)



S01691

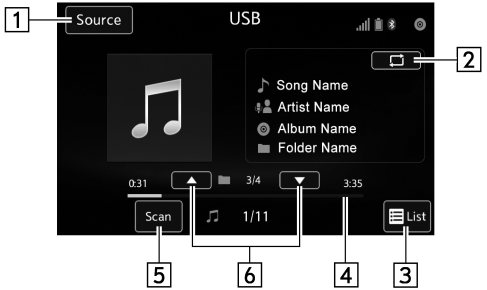
Control panel (for Australia)



S01690

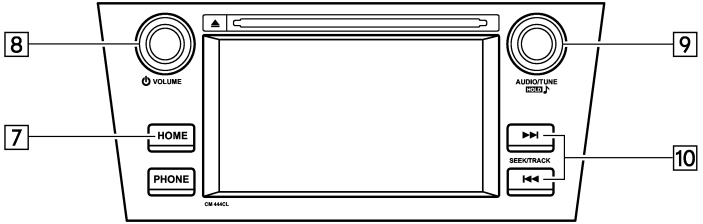
– CONTINUED –

Control screen (except for Europe)



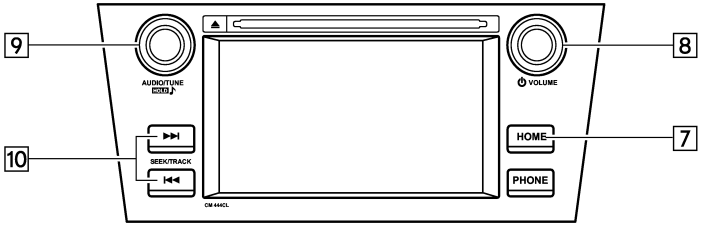
S01199

Control panel (except for Europe LHD models)



S01689

Control panel (except for Europe RHD models)



S01692

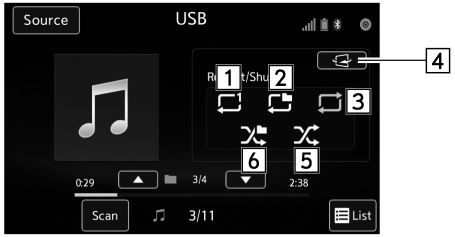
No.	Function
1	Select to display the audio source selection screen.
2	Select to display Trick Play Settings screen.
3	Select to display Folders List.
4	Shows progress.
5	The tracks in the disc are played back ten seconds each from the beginning of the track.
6	Select to choose a folder.
7	Select to display the sound setting screen. Refer to “Basic operation” ☞5-16.
8	Turn to adjust volume. Press to turn the audio system on/off.
9	Turn to select a file/track. Press to select an audio mode.
10	Select to select a file/track. Select and hold to fast forward/rewind.

– CONTINUED –

Control screen (Trick Play) (for Europe, for Australia)

S01687

Control screen (Trick Play) (except for Europe)



S01201

No.	Function
1	Select to start 1 Track Repeat.
2	Select to start Folder Repeat.
3	Select to start Repeat All.
4	Return to the control screen.
5	Select to start Shuffle All.
6	Select to start Shuffle Folder.

⚠ WARNING

Do not operate the player's controls or connect the USB memory while driving.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Do not leave your portable player in the car. In particular, high temperatures inside the vehicle may damage the portable player.**
- **Do not push down on or apply unnecessary pressure to the portable player while it is connected as this may damage the portable player or its terminal.**
- **Do not insert foreign objects into the port as this may damage the portable player or its terminal.**

NOTE

If you press the "Mute" switch on the steering wheel during playback, the track pauses. If you press the "Mute" switch once again, the playback will resume.

■ iPod

▼ Overview

The iPod operation screen can be reached by the following methods:

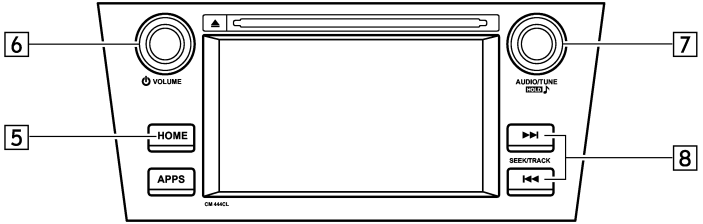
- Connect an iPod. Refer to "Connecting and disconnecting a USB memory/portable device" ☞5-8.
- Select USB / iPod (USB / iPod) on the "Select Audio Source (Select Audio Source)" screen. Refer to "Selecting an audio source" ☞5-17.

– CONTINUED –

Control screen (for Europe, for Australia)

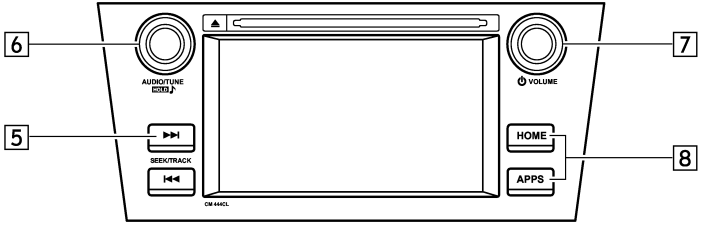
S01693

Control panel (for Europe LHD models)



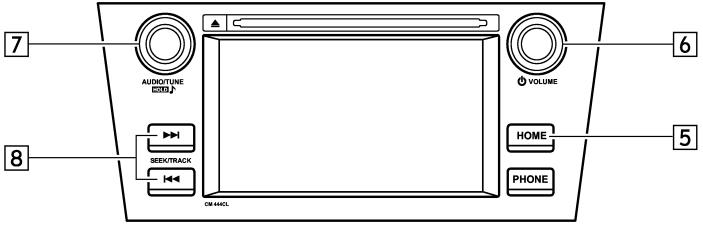
S01695

Control panel (for Europe RHD models)



S01698

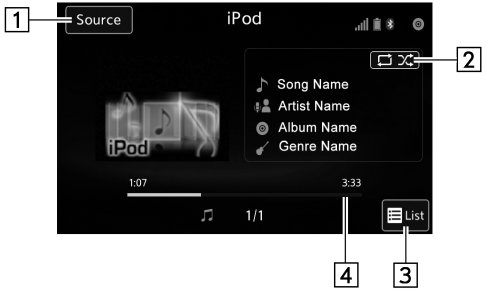
Control panel (for Australia)



S01697

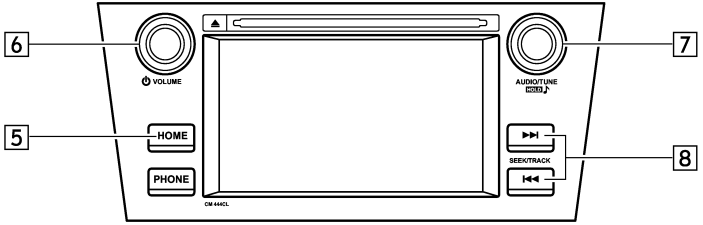
– CONTINUED –

Control screen (except for Europe)



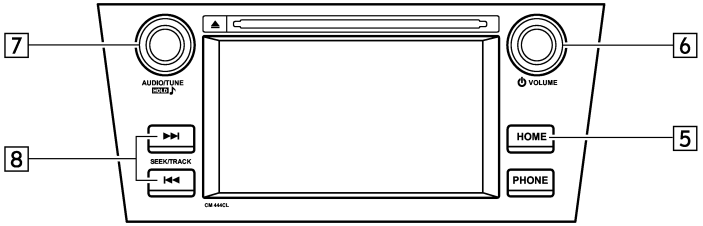
S01202

Control panel (except for Europe LHD models)



S01696

Control panel (except for Europe RHD models)

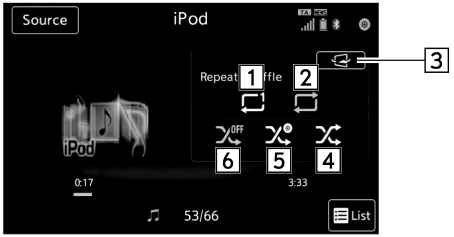


S01699

No.	Function
1	Select to display the audio source selection screen.
2	Select to display Trick Play Settings screen.
3	Select to display iPod List.
4	Shows progress.
5	Select to display the sound setting screen. Refer to “Basic operation” ☞5-16.
6	Turn to adjust volume. Press to turn the audio system on/off.
7	Turn to select a track/file. Press to select an audio mode.
8	Select to select a track/file. Select and hold to fast forward/rewind.

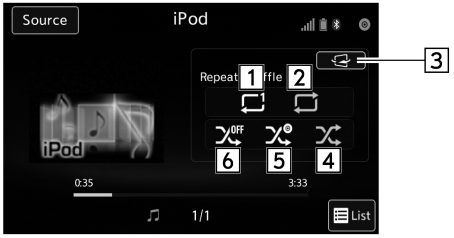
– CONTINUED –

Control screen (Trick Play) (for Europe, for Australia)



S01694

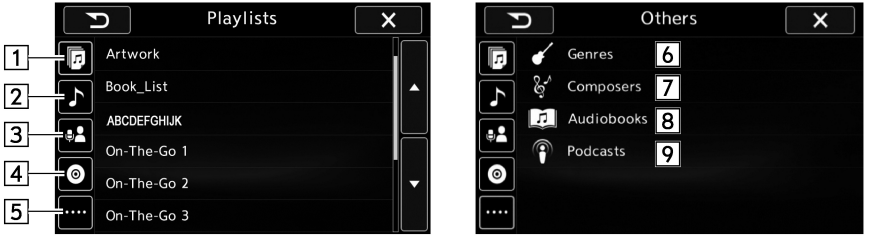
Control screen (Trick Play) (except for Europe)



S01204

No.	Function
1	Select to start 1 Track Repeat.
2	Select to start Repeat All.
3	Select to return to the control screen.
4	Select to start Shuffle Track.
5	Select to start Shuffle Album.
6	Select to turn off Shuffle.

Control screen (Play List)



S01205

No.	Function
1	Select to display the Playlist.
2	Select to display Song List.
3	Select to display Artists List.
4	Select to display Albums List.
5	Select to open Others List.
6	Select to open Genres List.
7	Select to open Composers List.
8	Select to open Audiobooks List.
9	Select to open Podcasts List.

– CONTINUED –

⚠ WARNING

Do not operate the player's controls or connect the iPod while driving.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Do not leave your portable player in the car. In particular, high temperatures inside the vehicle may damage the portable player.**
- **Do not push down on or apply unnecessary pressure to the portable player while it is connected as this may damage the portable player or its terminal.**
- **Do not insert foreign objects into the port as this may damage the portable player or its terminal.**

NOTE

- **When an iPod is connected using a genuine iPod cable, the iPod starts charging its battery.**
- **When an iPod is connected and the audio source is changed to iPod mode, the iPod will resume playing from the same point it was last used.**
- **Depending on the iPod that is connected to the system, certain functions may not be available.**
- **Files/tracks selected by operating a connected iPod may not be recognized or displayed properly.**
- **If you press the "Mute" switch on the steering wheel during playback, the track pauses. If you press the "Mute" switch once again, the playback will resume.**

■ Bluetooth audio

The Bluetooth audio system enables users to enjoy listening to music that is played on a portable player on the vehicle speakers via wireless communication.

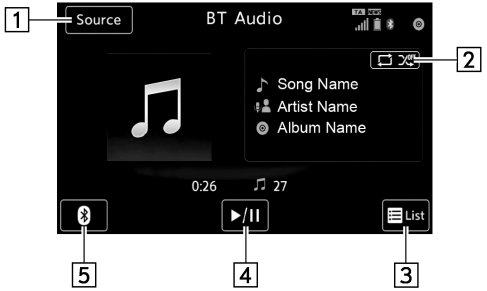
This audio system supports Bluetooth, a wireless data system capable of playing portable audio music without cables. If your device does not support Bluetooth, the Bluetooth audio system will not function.

▼ Overview

Select BT Audio (BT Audio) on the "Select Audio Source (Select Audio Source)" screen. Refer to "Selecting an audio source" ☞5-17.

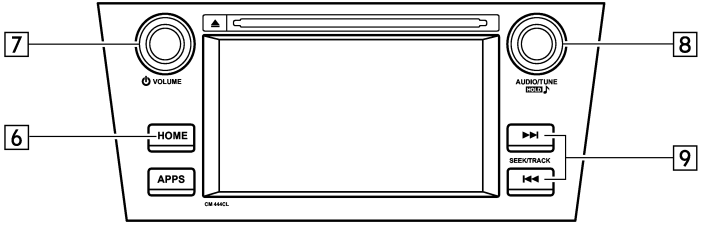
Depending on the type of portable player connected, some functions may not be available and/or the screen may look differently than shown in this manual.

Control screen (for Europe, for Australia)



S01700

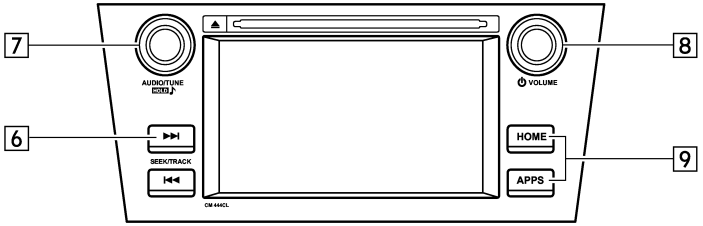
Control panel (for Europe LHD models)



S01702

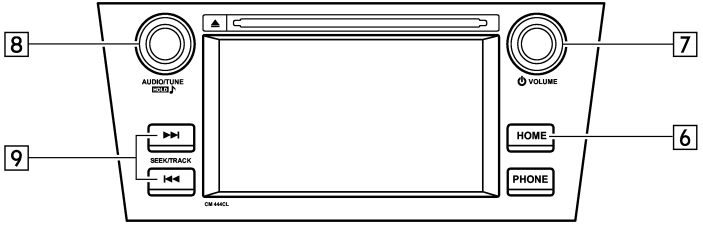
– CONTINUED –

Control panel (for Europe RHD models)



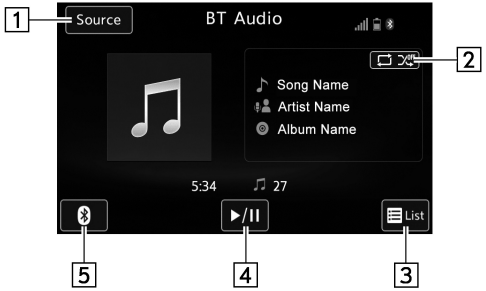
S01705

Control panel (for Australia)



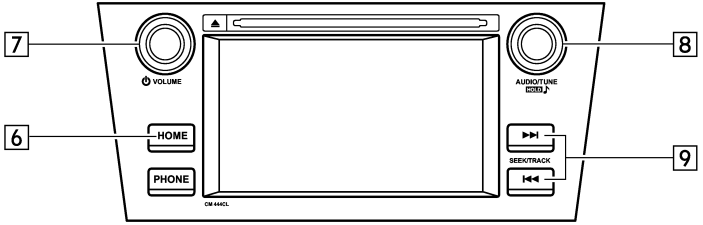
S01704

Control screen (except for Europe)



S01206

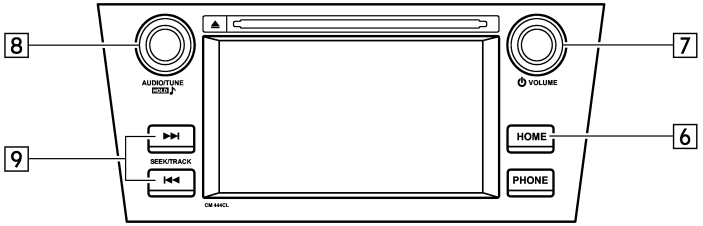
Control panel (except for Europe LHD models)



S01703

– CONTINUED –

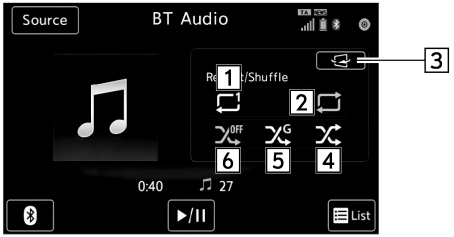
Control panel (except for Europe RHD models)



S01706

No.	Function
1	Select to display the audio source selection screen.
2	Select to display Trick Play Settings screen.
3	Select to display as a list (for the models with AVRCP Ver. 1.4 or higher).
4	Select to play back or pause a track. The track pauses when pressed during playback and plays back when pressed during pause.
5	Select to open Bluetooth Settings.
6	Select to display the sound setting screen. Refer to “Basic operation” ☞5-16.
7	Turn to adjust volume. Press to turn the audio system on/off.
8	Turn to select a track. Press to select an audio mode
9	Select to select a track. Select and hold to fast forward/rewind.

Control screen (Play List) (for Europe, for Australia)



S01701

Control screen (Play List) (except for Europe)

S01208

No.	Function
1	Select to start 1 Track Repeat.
2	Select to start Repeat All.
3	Select to return to the control screen.
4	Select to start Shuffle Track.
5	Select to start Group Shuffle.
6	Select to turn off Shuffle.

– CONTINUED –

⚠ WARNING

- **Do not operate the player's controls or connect to the Bluetooth audio system while driving.**
- **Your audio unit is fitted with Bluetooth antennas. People with implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should maintain a reasonable distance between themselves and the Bluetooth antennas. The radio waves may affect the operation of such devices.**
- **Before using Bluetooth devices, users of any electrical medical device other than implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should consult the manufacturer of the device for information about its operation under the influence of radio waves. Radio waves could have unexpected effects on the operation of such medical devices.**

⚠ CAUTION

Do not leave your portable player in the vehicle. In particular, high temperatures inside the vehicle may damage the portable player.

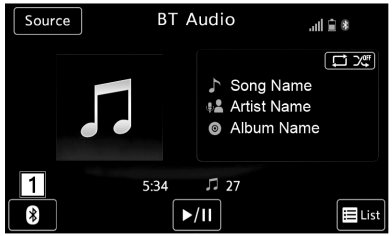
NOTE

- **Depending on the Bluetooth device that is connected to the system, the music may start playing when selecting ▶/II while it is paused. Conversely, the music may pause when selecting ▶/II while it is playing.**
- **In the following conditions, the system may not function:**
  - **– The Bluetooth device is turned off.**
  - **– The Bluetooth device is not connected.**
  - **– The Bluetooth device has a low battery.**
- **It may take time to connect the phone when Bluetooth audio is being played.**
- **For operating the portable player, see the instruction manual that comes with it.**
- **If the Bluetooth device is disconnected due to poor reception from the Bluetooth network when the ignition switch is in the "ACC" or "ON" position, the system will automatically reconnect to the portable player.**
- **If the Bluetooth device is disconnected on purpose, such as it was turned off, this does not happen. Reconnect the portable player manually.**
- **Bluetooth device information is registered when the Bluetooth device is connected to the Bluetooth audio system. When selling or disposing of the vehicle, remove the Bluetooth audio information from the system. Refer to "Other settings" ☞5-13.**

▼ Connecting a Bluetooth device

To use the Bluetooth audio system, it is necessary to register a Bluetooth device with the system.

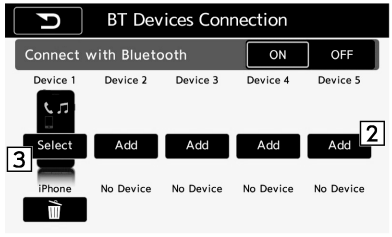
1. Select the Bluetooth setting key (Bluetooth setting key) on the Bluetooth audio control screen.



S01707

2. Select the Add key and register a device.

3. Select the Select key, and then select the registered device.



S01708

Registering an additional device

1. Select Add (Add) on the BT Devices Connection screen.

2. For more information: Refer to “Registering a Bluetooth device” ☞5-76.

Selecting a registered device

1. Select Select (Select) on the BT Devices Connection screen.

2. For more information: Refer to “Connecting a Bluetooth device” ☞5-77.

■ AUX

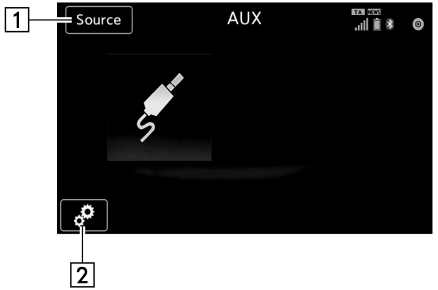
▼ Overview

The AUX operation screen can be reached by the following methods:

- Connect a portable audio device. Refer to “Connecting and disconnecting a USB memory/portable device” ☞5-8.
- Select AUX (AUX) on the “Select Audio Source (Select Audio Source)” screen. Refer to “Selecting an audio source” ☞5-17.

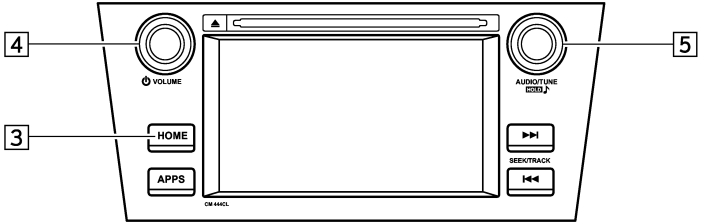
– CONTINUED –

Control screen (for Europe, for Australia)



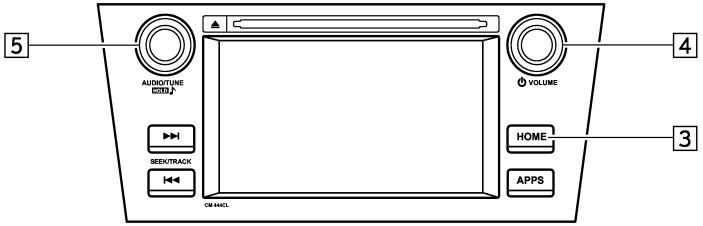
S01709

Control panel (for Europe LHD models)



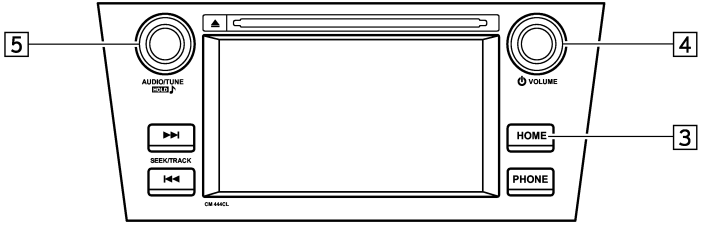
S01710

Control panel (for Europe RHD models)



S01713

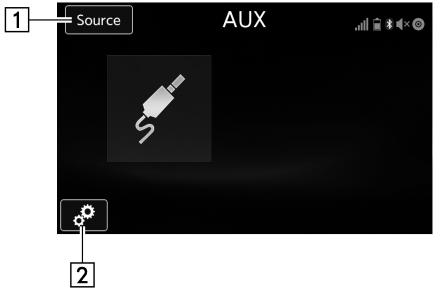
Control panel (for Australia)



S01712

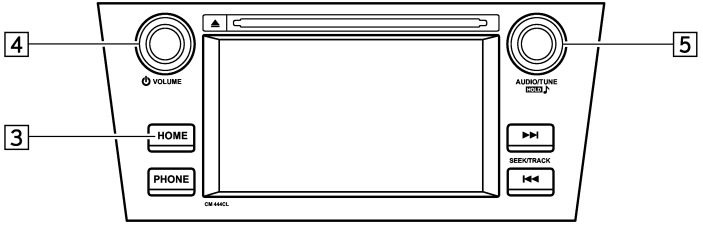
– CONTINUED –

Control screen (except for Europe)



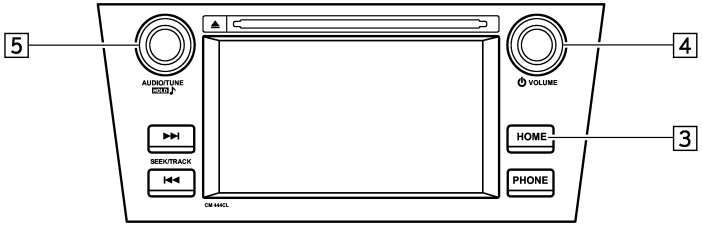
S01214

Control panel (except for Europe LHD models)



S01711

Control panel (except for Europe RHD models)

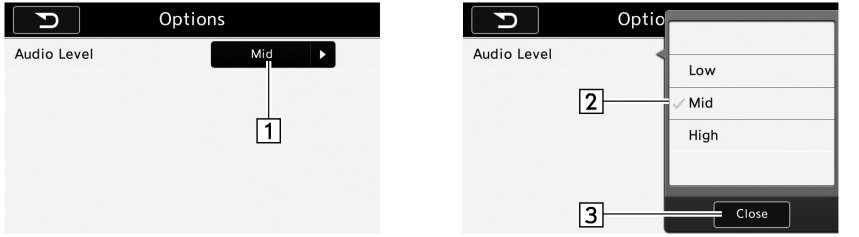


S01714

No.	Function
1	Select to display the audio source selection screen.
2	Option Key: Select to open the Options screen.
3	Select to display the sound setting screen. Refer to “Basic operation” ☞5-16.
4	Turn to adjust volume. Press to turn the audio system on/off.
5	Press to select an audio mode.

– CONTINUED –

Control screen (Option Display)



S01216

No.	Function
1	Select to adjust the audio gain level.
2	Select High, Mid, or Low for the audio gain level. The High setting has greater effect.
3	Select to close the list.

⚠ WARNING

Do not operate the player's controls or connect the portable audio device while driving.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Do not leave portable audio device in the vehicle. The temperature inside the vehicle may become high, resulting in damage to the player.**
- **Do not push down on or apply unnecessary pressure to the portable audio device while it is connected as this may damage the portable audio device or its terminal.**
- **Do not insert foreign objects into the port as this may damage the portable audio device or its terminal.**

Bluetooth® settings

■ Registering/connecting Bluetooth® device

Bluetooth®

The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

▼ Registering a Bluetooth phone for the first time

To use the hands-free system, it is necessary to register a Bluetooth phone with the system.

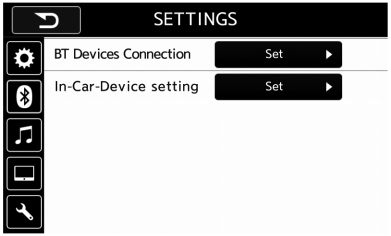
Once the phone has been registered, it is possible to use the hands-free system.

This operation cannot be performed while driving.

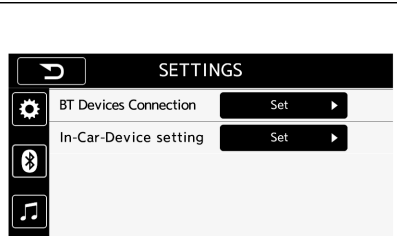
For details about registering a Bluetooth device: Refer to "Registering a Bluetooth device" ☞5-76.

1. Turn the Bluetooth connection setting of your cellular phone on.
   - This function is not available when Bluetooth connection setting of your cellular phone is set to off.
2. Select HOME and select SETTINGS (SETTINGS) to display the SETTINGS screen.

For Europe:



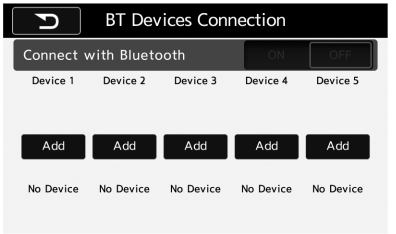
Except for Europe, for Australia:



Settings (When selecting the "BT" tab)

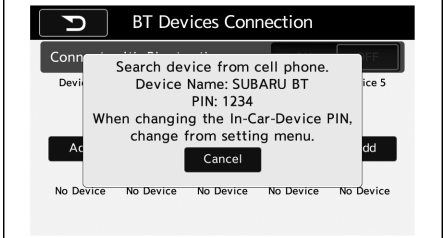
3. To register a device, select "Add" on "BT Devices Connection".

– CONTINUED –



"BT Devices Connection" screen (At the initial startup and when no device is registered.)

4. When this screen is displayed, search for the device name displayed on this screen on the screen of your Bluetooth device.



When "Add" is selected (Waiting for the connection request from a device).

- For details about operating the Bluetooth device, see the manual that comes with it.
- To cancel the registration, select Cancel (Cancel).

5. Register the Bluetooth device using your Bluetooth device.
   - A PIN-code is not required for SSP (Secure Simple Pairing) compatible Bluetooth devices. Depending on the type of Bluetooth device being connected, a message confirming registration may be displayed on the Bluetooth device's screen. Respond and operate the Bluetooth device according to the confirmation message.
6. Check that the screen is displayed when registration is complete.
   - The system waits for connection requests coming from the registered device.
   - At this stage, the Bluetooth functions are not yet available.

▼ Registering a Bluetooth Audio device for the first time

To use the Bluetooth Audio, it is necessary to register an audio device with the system.

Once the player has been registered, it is possible to use the Bluetooth Audio.

This operation cannot be performed while driving.

For details about registering a Bluetooth device: Refer to "Registering a Bluetooth device" ☞5-76.

The device registration procedure is the same for both the hands-free system and Bluetooth audio.

▼ Profiles

This system supports the following services.

Bluetooth Device	Spec.	Function	Requirements	Recommendations
Bluetooth Phone/Bluetooth Audio Device	Bluetooth Specification	Registering a Bluetooth device	Ver. 1.1	Ver. 2.1 + EDR

Bluetooth Device	Profile	Function	Requirements	Recommendations
Bluetooth Phone	HFP (Hands-Free Profile)	Hands-free system	Ver. 1.0	Ver. 1.5
	OPP (Object Push Profile)	Transferring the contacts	Ver. 1.1	Ver. 1.1
	PBAP (Phone Book Access profile)		Ver. 1.0	Ver. 1.0
	MAP (Message Access Profile)	Bluetooth phone message	—	Ver. 1.0
	SPP (Serial Port Profile)	Connecting a Bluetooth phone	—	Ver. 1.1
Bluetooth Audio Device	A2DP (Advanced Audio Distribution Profile)	Bluetooth audio system	Ver. 1.0	Ver. 1.2
	AVRCP (Audio/Video Remote Control Profile)		Ver. 1.0	Ver. 1.4

NOTE

• If your cellular phone does not support HFP, registering the Bluetooth phone or using OPP, PBAP, MAP or SPP profiles individually will not be possible.

• If the connected Bluetooth device version is older than recommended or incompatible, the Bluetooth device function may not work properly.

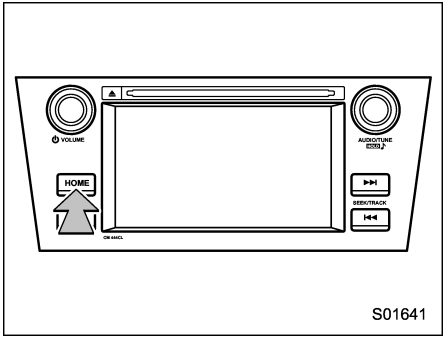
• We recommend that you contact your local dealer to arrange a demonstration in order to confirm whether or not the device can be paired with the vehicle.

– CONTINUED –

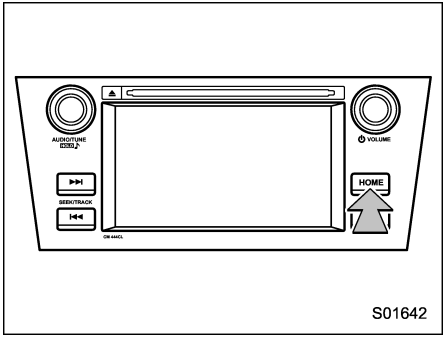
■ Setting Bluetooth details

1. Select HOME.

For LHD models:

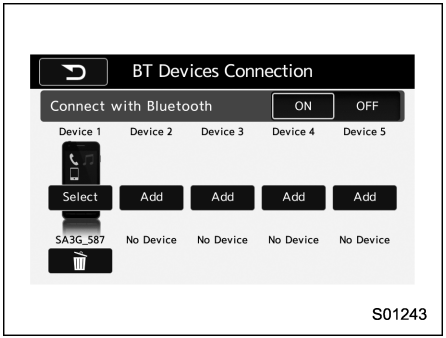


For RHD models:

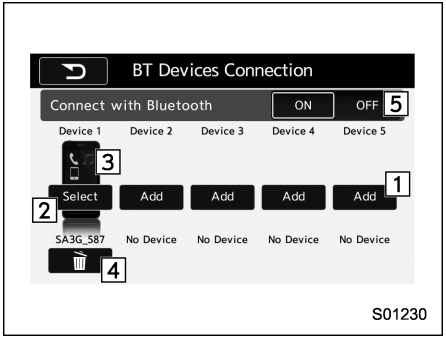


2. Select SETTINGS (SETTINGS).

3. To register a device, select “Add” on “BT Devices Connection”.



▼ BT Devices Connection screen



“BT Devices Connection” screen (One device is registered.)

No.	Function
1	“Add” key: Registers the device.
2	“Select” key: Makes the connection to the registered device.
3	This shows the status of the device connection profile. (The icon illuminates while connected.)
4	“Delete (Trash box)” key: Deletes the registered device.
5	Bluetooth ON/OFF key: Switches to connect/disconnect the Bluetooth communication.

Function	Page
Registering a Bluetooth device	5-76
Deleting a Bluetooth device	5-77
Connecting a Bluetooth device	5-77

▼ Registering a Bluetooth device

You can register up to five devices, regardless of whether they are Bluetooth phones or audio devices.

This operation cannot be performed while driving.

1. Display the “BT Devices Connection” screen. Refer to “Registering a Bluetooth phone for the first time” ☞5-73.
2. Select Add (Add).

The “Add” button is not displayed when five devices are already registered.

To add another device, you need to delete one of the registered devices.

Press and hold the Trash box icon for the device to be deleted, and then select “OK”.

3. Register the Bluetooth device using your Bluetooth device.
   - A PIN-code is not required for SSP (Secure Simple Pairing) compatible Bluetooth devices. Depending on the type of Bluetooth device being connected, a message confirming registration may be displayed on the Bluetooth device’s screen. Respond and operate the Bluetooth device according to the confirmation message.

4. Check that the screen is displayed when registration is complete.
   - The system waits for connection requests coming from the registered device.
   - At this stage, the Bluetooth functions are not yet available.

▼ Deleting a Bluetooth device

1. Display the “BT Devices Connection” screen. Refer to “Registering a Bluetooth phone for the first time” ☞5-73.
2. Select the desired device.

Press and hold the Trash box icon for the device to be deleted, and then select “OK”.

NOTE

When deleting a Bluetooth phone, the contact data will be deleted at the same time.

▼ Connecting a Bluetooth device

Up to 5 Bluetooth devices (Phones (HFP) and audio devices (AVP)) can be registered.

If more than 1 Bluetooth device has been registered, select which device to connect to.

1. Display the “BT Devices Connection” screen. Refer to “Registering a Bluetooth phone for the first time” ☞5-73.
2. Select the device to be connected.
   - Supported profile icons will be displayed.
     - – : Phone
     - – : Audio device
     - – : Smartphone Application (for Europe)
   - Supported profile icons for currently connected devices will illuminate.
   - The Audio icon illuminates only when in the Bluetooth audio mode.
   - All icons are dimmed when Bluetooth is set to OFF or when the connection cannot be made with the device.

NOTE

- **It may take time if the device connection is carried out during Bluetooth audio playback.**
- **Depending on the type of Bluetooth device being connected, it may be necessary to perform additional steps on the device.**
- **It is not possible to establish a Bluetooth connection with iOS devices currently connected with a USB cable.**

▼ Bluetooth ON/OFF

1. Display the “BT Devices Connection” screen. Refer to “Registering a Bluetooth phone for the first time” ☞5-73.
2. Select the “Bluetooth ON/OFF” key.
   - Select “ON” or “OFF” to connect/disconnect the Bluetooth communication. “ON” establishes a connection, and “OFF” disconnects the connection.
   - The setting is fixed as “OFF” when no device is registered.

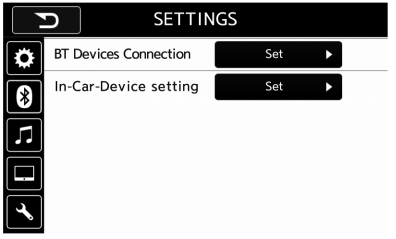
– CONTINUED –

▼ “In-Car-Device setting” screen

The Bluetooth settings can be confirmed and changed.

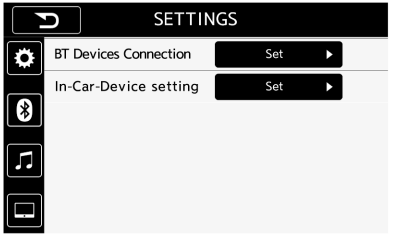
1. Display the “SETTINGS” screen. Refer to “Registering a Bluetooth phone for the first time” ☞5-73.
2. On the SETTINGS for In-Car-Device setting select “set” key.

For Europe:

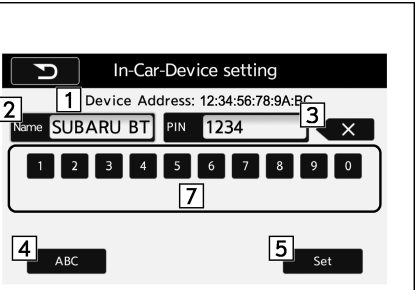


S01231

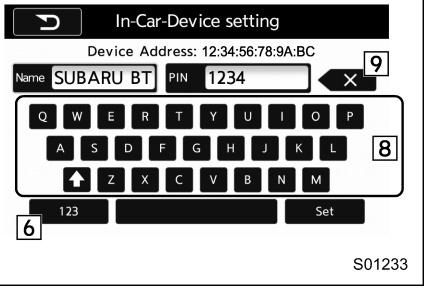
Except for Europe, for Australia:



S01715



S01232



S01233

No.	Function
1	BT device address: Displays the Bluetooth device address of the in-vehicle equipment.
2	BT device name: Displays the Bluetooth device name of the in-vehicle equipment. The default name is “SUBARU BT”, which can be changed by selecting it and entering alphanumeric characters.
3	PIN code: Displays the PIN code of the in-vehicle equipment. The default code is “1234”, which can be changed by selecting it and entering numbers.
4	“ABC” key: Switches the screen to input alphabet characters. This key cannot be selected when entering the PIN code.
5	“Set” key: Saves the current BT device name and PIN code.

No.	Function
6	“123” key: Switches the screen to input numbers.
7	Numeric input keys.
8	Alphabet input keys. The up arrow key toggles the input between upper case and lower case characters.
9	“Delete” key: Deletes one character from the currently selected item (BT device name or the PIN code).

▽ **Editing the Bluetooth Name**

1. Select “System Name”.
2. Enter a name and then select “Set”.

▽ **Editing the PIN-Code**

1. Select “PIN-Code”.
2. Enter a PIN-code and then select “Set”.

▽ **Common operations**

- Press the “Alphabet” key or “Number” key to make the changes.
- Press the “Set” key to set the entered value. The screen changes to the “Settings Bluetooth” screen.
- Press the “Back” key to discard the entered value. The screen returns to the “Settings Bluetooth” screen.

▽ **When the cursor is at the “Device Name Display Area”**

- The device name can be set or changed.
- Press the “PIN” key to enter a passcode.
- If the “PIN” key is already selected, the “Alphabet” key is cross-hatched and disabled.

▽ **When the cursor is at the “Passcode Display Area”**

- The passcode can be set/changed.
- Press the “Name” key to enter a device name.

Phone operation (Hands-free system for cellular phones)

■ Quick reference

The phone top screen can be used to make a phone call. To display the hands-free operation screen, select HOME and then select PHONE (PHONE), or press the ☎ switch on the steering wheel.

Several functions are available to operate on each screen that is displayed by selecting the 4 tabs.

– CONTINUED –

PHONE (Menu) screen (for Europe, for Australia)

S01716

PHONE (Dialpad) screen (for Europe, for Australia)

S01717

PHONE (Menu) screen (except for Europe)

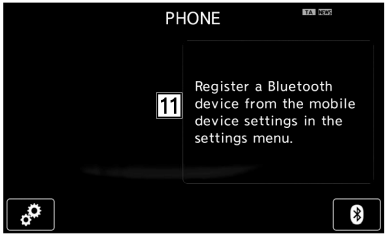
S01234

PHONE (Dialpad) screen (except for Europe)

S01235

For Europe, for Australia:

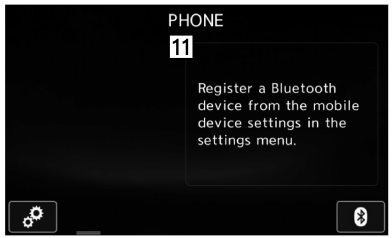
S01718



S01719

Except for Europe:

S01236



S01237

No.	Function
1	“Incoming Calls” key: Opens the Incoming Calls screen.
2	“Outgoing Calls” key: Opens the Outgoing Calls screen.
3	“Contacts” key: Opens the Contacts screen.
4	“Dialpad” key: Changes the screen from the Menu screen to the Dialpad screen.
5	“Option” key: Opens the phone volume setting screen.
6	“OFF Hook” key: Use to make a phone call. You cannot press this key until you open the Dialpad screen and enter a phone number.
7	“Bluetooth Setting” key: Opens the BT Devices Connection screen.
8	Enter the phone number that you want to call.
9	“Switch Screen” key: Switches the screen to the Phone (Menu) screen.
10 11	If no device is registered, a message is displayed instead of menu items.

■ Some basics

The hands-free system enables calls to be made and received without having to take your hands off the steering wheel.

This system supports Bluetooth. Bluetooth is a wireless data system that enables cellular phones to be used without being connected by a cable or placed in a cradle.

The operating procedure of the phone is explained here.

⚠ WARNING

- **While driving, do not use a cellular phone or connect the Bluetooth phone.**
- **Your audio unit is fitted with Bluetooth antennas. People with implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should maintain a reasonable distance between themselves and the Bluetooth antennas. The radio waves may affect the operation of such devices.**
- **Before using Bluetooth devices, users of any electrical medical device other than implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should consult the manufacturer of the device for information about its opera-**

– CONTINUED –

tion under the influence of radio waves. Radio waves could have unexpected effects on the operation of such medical devices.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not leave your cellular phone in the vehicle. The temperature inside may rise to a level that could damage the phone.

NOTE

• If your cellular phone does not support Bluetooth, this system cannot function.

• In the following conditions, the system may not function:

– The cellular phone is turned off.

– The current position is outside the communication area.

– The cellular phone is not connected.

– The cellular phone has a low battery.

• When using the hands free function and other Bluetooth functions at the same time, the following problems may occur:

– The Bluetooth connection may be cut.

– Noise may be heard when playing back voice with the Bluetooth function.

▼ Registering/connecting a Bluetooth phone

To use the hands-free system for cellular phones, it is necessary to register a cellular phone with the system. Refer to "Registering/connecting Bluetooth® device" ☞5-73.

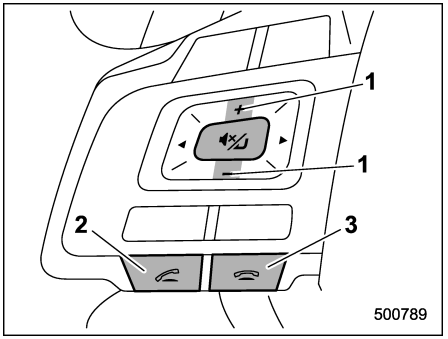
▽ Bluetooth phone condition display

The condition of the Bluetooth phone appears on the upper right side of the screen. Refer to "Bluetooth phone condition display" ☞5-82.

▼ Using the phone switch/microphone

Steering switch

By pressing the phone switch, a call can be received or ended without taking your hands off the steering wheel.



1 Volume control switch

• Press the "+" side to increase the volume.

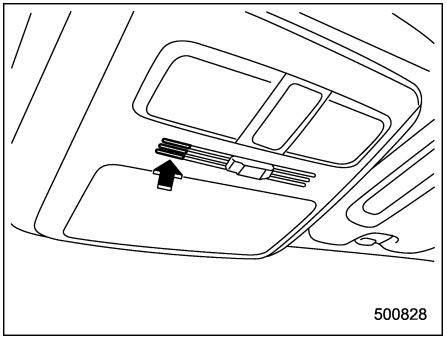
• Press the "-" side to decrease the volume.

2 Off hook switch

3 On hook switch

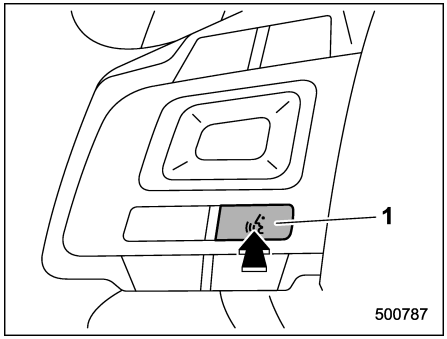
Microphone

The microphone is used when talking on the phone.



▼ **Voice command system**

Press this switch to operate the voice command system.



1 Talk switch

- The voice command system and its list of commands can be operated. Refer to "Voice command system operation" ☞5-102.

NOTE

- **The other party's voice will be heard from the front speakers. The audio/visual system will be muted during phone calls or when hands-free voice commands are used.**
- **Talk alternately with the other party on the phone. If both parties speak at the same time, the other party may not hear what has been said. (This is not a malfunction.)**
- **Keep call volume down. Otherwise, the other party's voice may be audible outside the vehicle and voice echo may increase. When talking on the phone, speak clearly towards the microphone.**
- **The other party may not hear you clearly when:**
  - **– Driving on an unpaved road. (Making excessive traffic noise.)**
  - **– Driving at high speeds.**
  - **– The roof or windows are open.**
  - **– The air conditioning vents are pointed towards the microphone.**
  - **– The sound of the air conditioning fan is loud.**
  - **– There is a negative effect on sound quality due to the phone and/or network being used.**

▼ **About the contacts in the contact list**

- The following data is stored for every registered phone. When another phone is connected, the following registered data cannot be read:
  - – Contact data

NOTE

When a phone's registration is deleted, the above-mentioned data is also de-

– CONTINUED –

leted.

▼ When selling or disposing of the vehicle

A lot of personal data is registered when the hands-free system is used. When selling or disposing of the vehicle, initialize the data. Refer to “Other settings” ☞5-13.

- The following data in the system can be initialized:
  - Contact data
  - Call history data
  - All phone settings

NOTE

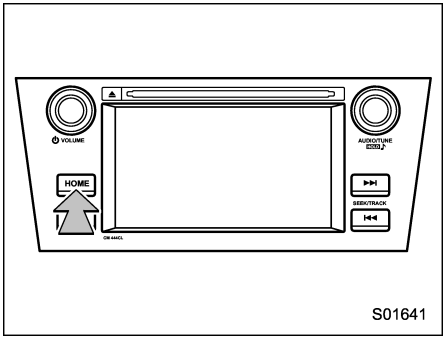
Once initialized, the data and settings will be erased. Pay much attention when initializing the data.

■ Calling on the Bluetooth phone

After a Bluetooth phone has been registered, a call can be made using the hands-free system. There are several methods by which a call can be made, as described below.

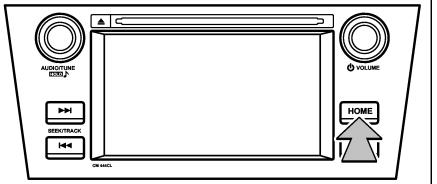
1. Select HOME.

For LHD models:



S01641

For RHD models:



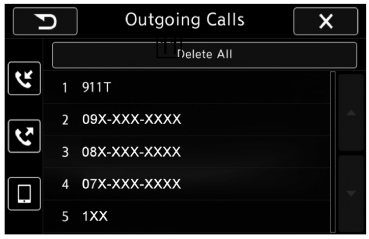
S01642

2. Select PHONE (PHONE).
3. Select the desired tab to call from.

● On the PHONE screen, select “Incoming Calls” to open the Incoming Calls screen. Refer to “Quick reference” ☞5-79.

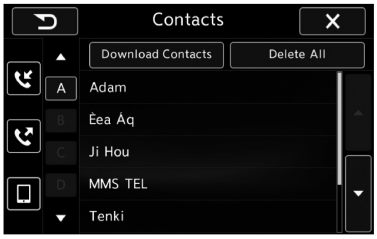
Incoming Calls screen

● On the PHONE screen, select “Outgoing Calls” to open the Outgoing Calls screen. Refer to “Quick reference” ☞5-79.



Outgoing Calls screen

● On the PHONE screen, select “Contacts” to open the Contacts screen. Refer to “Quick reference” ☞5-79.



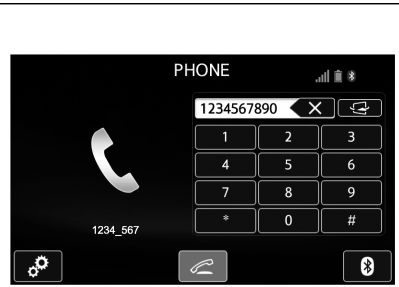
Contacts screen

– CONTINUED –

● On the PHONE screen, select “Dialpad” to open the Dialpad screen. Refer to “Quick reference” ☞5-79.

For Europe, For Australia:

Except for Europe:



PHONE (Dialpad) screen

How to make a call list	Page
By call history	5-86
By contacts list	5-88
By dialpad*1	5-91
By off hook switch	5-91
By voice command system	5-102

*1: The operation cannot be performed while driving.

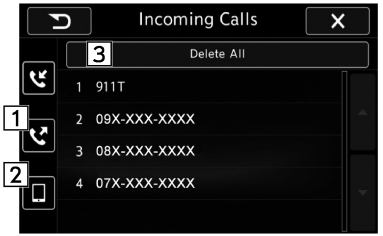
▼ By call history

▽ Incoming Calls

● On the PHONE screen, select “Incoming Calls” to open the Incoming Calls screen.

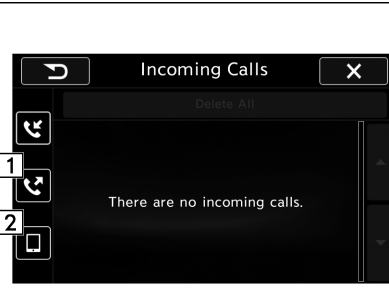
● Up to ten items in the incoming call history are listed. Scroll the screen to see items that are not on the screen.

● You can make a call by selecting an item in the incoming call history list.



Incoming Calls screen

● If there is no incoming call history, a message appears to indicate that there is no incoming call history data.



Incoming Calls screen (No incoming call history)

Incoming Calls screen (Confirmation to delete incoming call history)

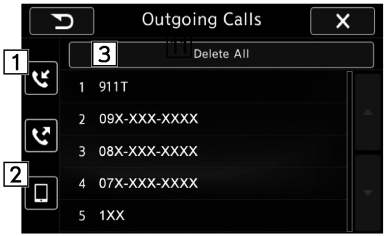
No.	Function
1	“Outgoing Calls” key: Opens the Outgoing Calls screen.
2	“Contacts” key: Opens the Contacts screen.
3	“Delete All” key: Deletes all incoming call history data. The “Delete All” key is disabled when there is no incoming call history.
4	“OK” key: Deletes incoming call history.
5	“Cancel” key: Cancels the deletion of incoming call history. The screen returns to the Incoming Calls screen.

NOTE

• When making a call to the same number continuously, only the most recent call is listed in call history.
• When a phone number registered in the contact list is received, the name is displayed.
• Number-withheld calls are also memorized in the system.
• International phone calls may not be made depending on the type of cellular phone you have.
• The list should group together consecutive entries with the same phone number and same call type.

▽ Outgoing Calls

• On the PHONE screen, select “Outgoing Calls” to open the Outgoing Calls screen.
• Up to ten items in the outgoing call history are listed. Scroll the screen to see items that are not on the screen.
• You can make a call by selecting an item in the outgoing call history list.
• If there is no outgoing call history, a message appears to indicate that there is no outgoing call history data.



Outgoing Calls screen

– CONTINUED –

Outgoing Calls screen (No outgoing call history)

Outgoing Calls screen (Confirmation to delete outgoing call history)

No.	Function
1	"Incoming Calls" key: Opens the Incoming Calls screen.
2	"Contacts" key: Opens the Contacts screen.
3	"Delete All" key: Deletes all outgoing call history data. The "Delete All" key is disabled when there is no outgoing call history.
4	"OK" key: Deletes outgoing call history.
5	"Cancel" key: Cancels to delete outgoing call history. The screen will go back to the Outgoing Calls screen.

NOTE

• When making a call to the same number continuously, only the most recent call is listed in call history.

• When a phone number registered in the contact list is received, the name is displayed.

• Number-withheld calls are also memorized in the system.

• International phone calls may not be made depending on the type of cellular phone you have.

• The list should group together consecutive entries with the same phone number and same call type.

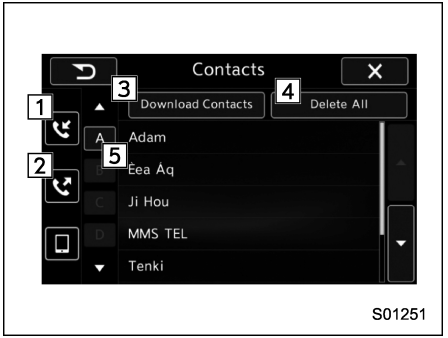
▼ By contacts list

• Up to 1000 items in the contact data are listed. Scroll the screen to see items that are not on the screen.

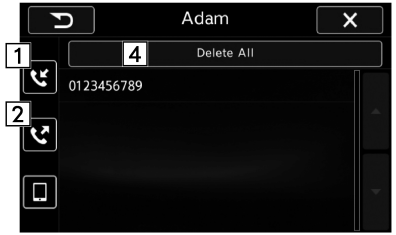
• Select an item in the contact list to open the Phone Number List screen.

• You can make a call by selecting an item in the phone number list (up to five phone numbers are listed).

• If there is no contact data, a message is displayed to indicate that there is no contact data.



Contacts screen



Phone Number List screen (Example when “Adam” is selected)

Contacts screen (When there is no data)

No.	Function
1	“Incoming Calls” key: Opens the Incoming Calls screen.
2	“Outgoing Calls” key: Opens the Outgoing Calls screen.
3	“Download Contacts” key: Opens a pop-up screen for starting the download of contact data.
4	“Delete All” key: Deletes all contact data. The “Delete All” key is disabled when there is no contact data.
5	“Search” key: Opens a list of contacts that starts with the selected character. This key is cross-hatched and cannot be selected if there is no contact data that starts with the selected character,

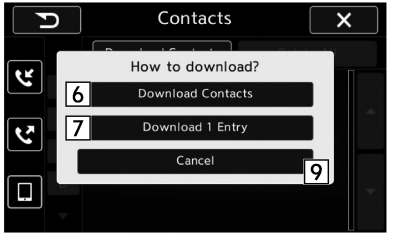
Select the up/down arrow key to scroll the “Search” key.

▽ **When the contact is empty**

For PBAP incompatible but OPP compatible Bluetooth phones

- On the Contacts screen, select “Download Contacts”. A screen where you can select how to download contacts opens.
- You can select to download all items or download one item.

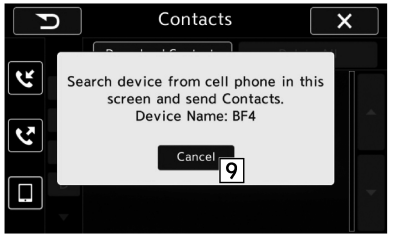
*: To download all items, you may need to change the settings in your cellular phone beforehand.



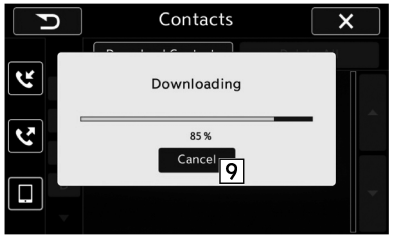
Contacts screen (Download selection)

Contacts screen (Download confirmation)

– CONTINUED –



Contacts screen (Download confirmation)



Contacts screen (Download in progress)

No.	Function
6	“Download Contacts” key: Opens the Download Confirmation screen. Confirm whether or not to download. If the downloaded contact(s) already exist(s), confirm whether or not to overwrite the existing data.
7	“Download 1 Entry” key: Downloads one set of contact data. To download the data, you need to operate from the connected device.
8	“OK” key: Starts downloading all contacts.
9	“Cancel” key: Cancels the download. The screen returns to the Contacts screen. (The pop-up screen disappears.)

- All contact data downloaded into the in-vehicle equipment will be deleted.

Contacts screen (Confirmation to delete contact data)

No.	Function
10	“OK” key: Deletes all downloaded contact data.
11	“Cancel” key: Cancels the deletion. The screen returns to the Contacts screen.

NOTE

- **Manual transfer operation cannot be performed while driving.**
- **If your cellular phone is neither PBAP nor OPP compatible, the contacts cannot be transferred.**
- **Depending on the type of Bluetooth phone:**
  - **It may be necessary to perform additional steps on the phone when**

transferring contact data.

▼ By Dialpad

The Outgoing Call screen opens when you perform the following operations.

- When you enter a phone number on the PHONE (Dialpad) screen and select the “OFF_Hook” key, the Outgoing Call screen opens.
- When you select an item in the incoming call history list on the Incoming Calls screen, the Outgoing Call screen opens.
- When you select an item in the outgoing call history list on the Outgoing Call screen, the Outgoing Call screen opens.
- When you select a phone number on the Contacts (Phone Number List) screen, the Outgoing Call screen opens.

Outgoing Call screen

No.	Function
1	“Option” key: Opens the Options (volume settings) screen.
2	“ON_Hook” key: Aborts the call. The screen returns to the Phone (Menu) screen. This is the same as pressing the “ON_Hook” switch on the steering wheel.

NOTE

Depending on the type of Bluetooth phone being connected, it may be necessary to perform additional steps on the phone.

▼ By off hook switch

Calls can be made using the latest call history item.

1. Press the ☎ switch on the steering wheel to display the phone top screen.
2. Check that the “Call (Call)” screen is displayed.

■ Receiving on the Bluetooth phone

▼ Incoming calls

When a call is received, the incoming call screen is displayed with a sound.

- When you are on the Outgoing Call screen, the screen changes to the Call screen when the other party answers the call.
- The “Mute”, “Speaker”, and “Bluetooth” keys are disabled on the Outgoing Call screen.
- When you receive a phone call while the cellular phone is connected, the screen changes to the Incoming Call screen.

– CONTINUED –

Incoming Call screen

Unable to put call on hold screen

No.	Function
1	“Option” key: Opens the Options (volume settings) screen.
2	“Hold” key: Puts the incoming call on hold. This function may not work on some cell phone models. This function is the same as pressing the “ON_Hook” switch on the steering wheel for a short period of time.
3	“OFF_Hook” key: Opens the Call screen. This function is the same as pressing the “OFF_Hook” switch on the steering wheel.
4	“ON_Hook” key: Rejects the incoming call. This function is the same as pressing and holding the “ON_Hook” switch on the steering wheel.

NOTE

• During international phone calls, the other party’s name or number may not be displayed correctly depending on the type of cellular phone you have.

• The incoming call display mode can be set. Refer to “Incoming Calls” ☞5-86.

• Depending on the type of Bluetooth phone, both the system and Bluetooth phone may sound simultaneously when there is an incoming call. Refer to ““Sound Settings (Sound Settings)” screen” ☞5-94.

■ Talking on the Bluetooth phone

While talking on the phone, this screen is displayed. The operations outlined below can be performed on this screen.

• When the Incoming Call screen is displayed and you accept the call, the screen changes to the Call screen. The screen stays on the Incoming Call screen if you reject the call.

• The “Dialpad” and “Bluetooth Setting” keys are disabled on the Incoming Call screen.

The Call screen opens when you perform the following operations.

• When you accept a call on the Incoming Call screen (by selecting the “OFF_Hook” key), the Call screen opens.

• When you are on the Outgoing Call screen, the screen changes to the Call screen when the other party answers the call.

Call screen

Call screen (Private ON)

Call screen (Your voice Mute ON)

Call (Dialpad) screen (DTMF)

No.	Function
1	“Option” key: Opens the Options (volume settings) screen.
2	“Mute” key: Mutes your voice to the other party. Press the “Mute” key again to deactivate the Mute mode. This key is disabled in the Private mode.
3	“Speaker” key: Changes the mode to Private mode. The other party’s voice emits from the cell phone. Press the “Speaker” key again to deactivate the Private mode.
4	“ON_Hook” key: Ends the call. You return to the Phone (Menu) screen when ending outgoing calls and the previous screen when ending incoming calls. This function is the same as pressing and holding the “ON_Hook” switch on the steering wheel.
5	“Dialpad” key: Opens the Call (Dialpad) screen.
6	“Switch Screen” key: Switches the screen to the Phone (Menu) screen.
7	“Dialpad” key: Allows you to make DTMF (Dual Tone Multi Frequency) calls. The numbers you enter are sent as tone signals.

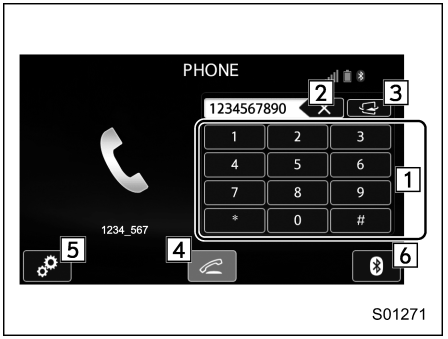
NOTE

- **When cellular phone call is changed to hands-free call, the hands-free screen will be displayed and its functions can be operated on the screen.**
- **Changing between cellular phone call and hands-free call can be per-**

– CONTINUED –

formed by operating the cellular phone directly.
● Transferring methods and operations will be different depending on the type of cellular phone you have.
● For the operation of the cellular phone, see the manual that comes with it.

● On the PHONE (Menu) screen, the screen changes to the Phone (Dialpad) screen when you select “Dialpad”.
● After entering the phone number on the keypad, the call is made when you select the “OFF_Hook” key.



Phone (Dialpad) screen

No.	Function
1	“Dialpad” keys: Allows you to enter numbers from 0 to 9 and *, #, and +. To enter “+”, press and hold the “0” key.
2	“Delete” key: Deletes one character from the entered characters.
3	“Switch Screen” key: Switches the screen to the Phone (Menu) screen.
4	“OFF_Hook” key: Opens the Outgoing Calls screen and dials the entered phone number. This is the same as pressing the “OFF_Hook” switch on the steering wheel. This key is cross-hatched and cannot be selected until the phone number is entered.
5	“Option” key: Opens the Options (volume settings) screen.
6	“Bluetooth Setting” key: Opens the BT Devices Connection screen.

NOTE

The sound quality of the voice heard from the other party’s speaker may be negatively impacted.

Setup

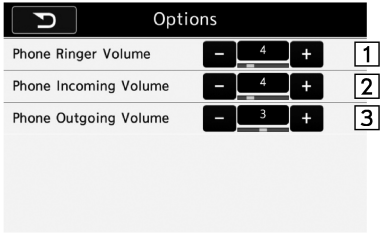
■ Phone settings

▼ “Sound Settings (Sound Settings)” screen

The call and ringtone volume can be adjusted. A ringtone can be selected.

1. Display the “PHONE” screen. Refer to “Quick reference” ☞5-79.
2. Select Option (Option).
3. Select the desired item to be set.

● Select to adjust the volume of the telephone function.
● On the PHONE screen, the screen changes to the Options screen when you select the “Option” key.



Options (volume settings) screen

No.	Function
1	Phone Ringer Volume +/- keys: Adjusts the ringtone volume. The "-" key lowers the volume, and the "+" key increases the volume. (Default volume: 4 out of a total of 16 volume levels)
2	Phone Incoming Volume +/- keys: Adjusts the receive volume. The "-" key lowers the volume, and the "+" key increases the volume. (Default volume: 4 out of a total of 16 volume levels)
3	Phone Outgoing Volume +/- keys: Adjusts the transmit volume. The "-" key lowers the volume, and the "+" key increases the volume. (Default volume: 3 out of a total of 5 volume levels)

NOTE

• Depending on the type of phone, certain functions may not be available.
• Contact data is managed independently for every registered phone. When one phone is connected, another phone's registered data cannot be read.

▼ Update contacts from phone

Operation methods differ between PBAP compatible and PBAP incompatible but OPP compatible Bluetooth phones.

If your cellular phone is neither PBAP nor OPP compatible, the contacts cannot be transferred.

For PBAP compatible Bluetooth phones

1. Select Download Contacts (Download Contacts).
   - Contacts are transferred automatically.
2. Check that a confirmation screen is displayed when the operation is complete.
   - This operation may be unnecessary depending on the type of cellular phone.
   - If another Bluetooth device is connected when transferring contact data, depending on the phone, the connected Bluetooth device may need to be disconnected.
   - Depending on the type of Bluetooth phone being connected, it may be necessary to perform additional steps on the phone.

For PBAP incompatible but OPP compatible Bluetooth phones

This operation cannot be performed while driving.

1. Select Download Contacts (Download Contacts).

Select Download 1 Entry.

2. Transfer the contact data to the system using a Bluetooth phone.
   - This operation may be unnecessary depending on the type of cellular phone.
   - To cancel this function, select Cancel (Cancel).
3. Check that a confirmation screen is displayed when the operation is complete.

▼ Deleting the contact data

1. Select Delete All (Delete All).
2. Select OK (OK) when the confirmation screen appears.

– CONTINUED –

Refer to “By contacts list” ☞5-88.

NOTE

For deleting data, all items are deleted.

What to do if...

■ Troubleshooting

If there is a problem with the hands-free system or a Bluetooth device, first check the table below.

When using the hands-free system with a Bluetooth device

Symptom	Likely cause	Solution	Page	
			Cellular phone	This system
The hands-free system or Bluetooth device does not work.	The connected device may not be a compatible Bluetooth cellular phone.	Contact your local dealer to arrange a demonstration in order to confirm whether or not the device can be paired with the vehicle.	*	—
	The Bluetooth version of the connected cellular phone may be older than the specified version.	Use a cellular phone with Bluetooth version 1.1 or higher (recommended: Ver. 2.1 + EDR or higher).	*	5-75

*: For details, refer to the owner's manual that came with the cellular phone.

– CONTINUED –

When registering/connecting a cellular phone

Symptom	Likely cause	Solution	Page	
			Cellular phone	This system
A cellular phone cannot be registered.	An incorrect passcode was entered on the cellular phone.	Enter the correct passcode on the cellular phone.	*	—
	The registration operation has not been completed on the cellular phone side.	Complete the registration operation on the cellular phone (approve registration on the phone).	*	—
	Old registration information remains on either this system or the cellular phone.	Delete the existing registration information from both this system and the cellular phone, then register the cellular phone you wish to connect to this system.	*	5-76
A Bluetooth connection cannot be made.	Another Bluetooth device is already connected.	Manually connect the cellular phone you wish to use to this system.	—	5-76
	Bluetooth function is not enabled on the cellular phone.	Enable the Bluetooth function on the cellular phone.	*	—
	Automatic Bluetooth connection on this system is set to off.	Set automatic Bluetooth connection on this system to on when the ignition switch is turned to the “ACC” or “ON” position.	—	5-76
“Unable to dial. Please check your phone. (Unable to dial. Please check your phone.)”	Bluetooth function is not enabled on the cellular phone.	Enable the Bluetooth function on the cellular phone.	*	—
	Old registration information remains on either this system or the cellular phone.	Delete the existing registration information from both this system and the cellular phone, then register the cellular phone you wish to connect to this system.	*	5-76

*: For details, refer to the owner’s manual that came with the cellular phone.

When making/receiving a call

Symptom	Likely cause	Solution	Page	
			Cellular phone	This system
A call cannot be made/received.	Your vehicle is in a “No Service (No Service)” area.	Move to where “No Service (No Service)” no longer appears on the display.	—	—

When using the phonebook

Symptom	Likely cause	Solution	Page	
			Cellular phone	This system
Phonebook data cannot be transferred manually.	The profile version of the connected cellular phone may not be compatible with transferring phonebook data.	Contact your local dealer to arrange a demonstration in order to confirm whether or not the device can be paired with the vehicle.	*	—
	Transfer operation on the cellular phone has not completed.	Complete transfer operation on the cellular phone (approve transfer operation on the phone).	*	—
Phonebook data cannot be edited.	Editing function is not available on this system.	—	—	5-95

*: For details, refer to the owner’s manual that came with the cellular phone.

– CONTINUED –

In other situations

Symptom	Likely cause	Solution	Page	
			Cellular phone	This system
Even though all conceivable measures have been taken, the symptom status does not change.	The cellular phone is not close enough to this system.	Bring the cellular phone closer to this system.	—	—
	The cellular phone is the most likely cause of the symptom.	Turn the cellular phone off, remove and reinstall the battery pack, and then restart the cellular phone.	*	—
		Enable the cellular phone's Bluetooth connection.	*	—
		Stop the cellular phone's security software and close all applications.	*	—
		Before using an application installed on the cellular phone, carefully check its source and how its operation might affect this system.	*	—

*: For details, refer to the owner's manual that came with the cellular phone.

Voice command system operation

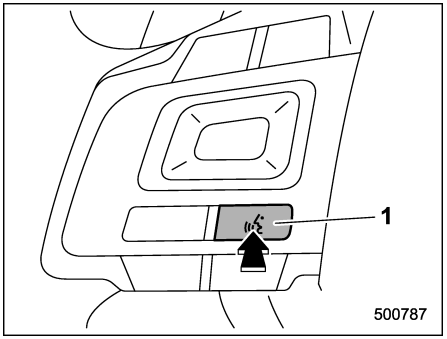
■ Voice command system

The voice command system enables the audio, hands-free systems, etc. to be operated using voice commands.

Refer to the “Command list” ☞5-104 for samples of voice commands.

▼ Using the voice command system

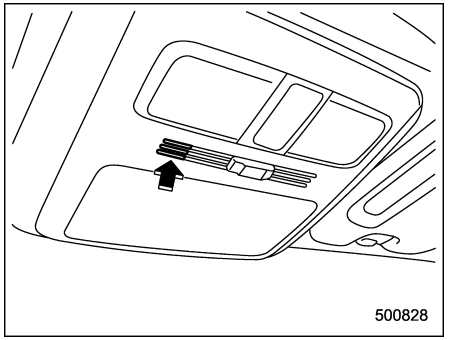
▽ **Steering switch**



1 Talk switch

- Press the talk switch to start the voice command system.
- To cancel voice recognition, press and hold the talk switch.

▽ **Microphone**



- It is unnecessary to speak directly into the microphone when giving a command.

NOTE

- **Wait for the confirmation beep before speaking a command.**
- **Voice commands may not be recognized if:**
  - **– Spoken too quickly.**
  - **– Spoken at a low or high volume.**
  - **– The roof or windows are open.**
  - **– Passengers are talking while voice commands are spoken.**
  - **– The air conditioning speed is set high.**
  - **– The air conditioning vents are turned towards the microphone.**
- **In the following conditions, the system may not recognize the command properly and using voice commands may not be possible:**
  - **– The command is incorrect or unclear. Note that certain words, accents or speech patterns may be difficult for the system to recognize.**
  - **– There is excessive background noise, such as wind noise.**

– CONTINUED –

▼ Voice command system operation

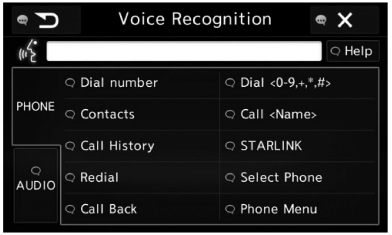
1. Press the talk switch.
   - After the voice command top screen has been displayed, speech guidance will commence.

S01273

NOTE

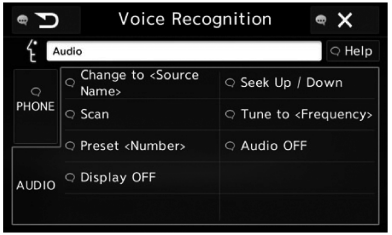
When the voice command mode is audio mode, voice guidance for the voice command system can be skipped by pressing the talk switch.

2. Say the command.
   - Say “Help” or “Phone”.



S01274

   - Say “Audio”.



S01275

   - Commands related with each function are displayed on the screen of the each function tab. Some commonly used commands are displayed on the screen of the main tab. Even if any tab is selected, all commands can be operated.
   - Saying **Help** (Help) prompts guidance to offer examples of commands and operation methods.
   - To cancel voice recognition, select “×”, or press and hold the talk switch.

NOTE

If the system does not respond or the confirmation screen does not disappear, press the talk switch and try again.

▽ Voice command example: Call name

1. Press the talk switch.
2. Say ***“Call <contacts>”***.
   - A confirmation screen will be displayed showing the recognition results. If multiple matching items are found, a selection screen will be displayed. Say ***“<number>”*** or select the number.

NOTE

• In the same manner as it is displayed on the screen, “Call <contacts>” (Call <contacts>), after saying

"Call a contact"* say the name of a contact. For example: *"Call a contact"*, *"John Smith"* or *"Call a contact"*, *"Mary Davis"

- **Short or abbreviated names in the contacts list may not be recognized. Change names in the contacts list to full names.**
- **Sometimes a voice recognition result confirmation screen will be displayed. After confirming the result, say *"Yes"* or *"No"*.**
- **When the system recognizes multiple names from the contacts list, a name candidate list will be displayed on the screen. If the desired name is not displayed on the top of the screen, say or select the number of the name from the candidate list (number 1, number 2, etc.) to select a name from the candidate list.**
- **When a contact has multiple phone numbers registered in the contacts list, a candidate list will be displayed. If the desired phone number is not displayed on the top of the screen, say or select the number of the desired phone number from the candidate list (number 1, number 2, etc.) to select a phone number from the candidate list.**

▽ **Voice command example: Dial number**

1. Press the talk switch.
2. Say the phone number.
   - In the same manner as it is displayed on the screen, "Dial <number>" (Dial <number>), after saying ***"Dial number"*** say the phone number.
   - Say the phone number one digit at a time.
   For example, if the phone number is 2345678:
   Say ***"two three four five six seven eight"***
   Do not say ***"twenty three forty five sixty seven eight"***
   - As the system cannot recognize additional numbers, say the complete number without stopping.

Calling to other phone numbers

3. Say ***"Dial"*** or press the ☎ switch on the steering wheel.
   - When the system recognizes multiple phone numbers, a phone number candidate list will be displayed on the screen. Pressing the ☎ switch on the steering wheel makes a call to the top entry on the list. If the desired phone number is not displayed on the top of the screen, say the number of the desired phone number from the candidate list to select a phone number from the candidate list.

▼ **Casual speech recognization**

Due to natural language speech recognition technology, this system enables recognition of a command when spoken naturally. However, the system cannot recognize every variation of each command. In some situations, it is possible to omit the command for the procedure and directly state the desired operation. Not all voice commands are displayed in the function menu.

NOTE

If the command cannot be recognized completely, the command input screen will be displayed. (Search results will be shown based on the part of the command that was recognized.)

▽ **Expression examples for each function**

Command	Expression examples
"Dial <phone number>"	*Phone <phone number>.*

Command list

Recognizable voice commands and their actions are shown below.

- Some voice commands may not be available depending on the market, vehicle specifications or the device connection status.
- Frequently used commands are listed in the following tables.
- For devices that are not installed in the vehicle, the related commands will not be displayed in the screen. Also, according to conditions, other commands may not be displayed in the screen.
- The functions available may vary according to the system installed.
- Voice recognition language can be changed. Refer to “Other settings” ☞5-13.

NOTE

- **The notations used in the commands are as follows.**
  - **– [OOO]: Commands that need not to be spoken**
  - **– <OOO>: Numbers, titles, or names to be spoken**

Basic command

Voice command	Phrase	Function
System back	Back	Go back one hierarchy or cancel the voice recognition (voice command top screen)
System help	Help	Ask for help with the current task
System cancel (Close)	Cancel, Close	Cancel the current task
Yes	Yes	
No	No	
Display OFF	Display OFF	Turns the display off
Audio ON	Audio ON	Turns the audio system on
Audio OFF	Audio OFF	Turns the audio system off
STARLINK mode change (for Europe)	STARLINK	Switch to APPS mode

Commands for changing the radio mode

Voice command	Phrase	Function
AM mode change	Change to AM	Switch to AM mode
	Change to AM1	Switch to AM mode band 1
	Change to AM2	Switch to AM mode band 2
FM mode change	Change to FM	Switch to FM mode
	Change to FM1	Switch to FM mode band 1
	Change to FM2	Switch to FM mode band 2
	Change to FM3	Switch to FM mode band 3
Bluetooth Audio mode change	Change to BT Audio	Switch to Bluetooth Audio mode
CD mode change	Change to CD	Switch to CD mode
USB mode change	Change to USB	Switch to USB mode
iPod mode change	Change to iPod	Switch to iPod mode
AUX mode change	Change to AUX	Switch to AUX mode

Commands for Hands Free

Voice command	Phrase	Function
Dial number calling	Dial Number → <0-9, +, *, #> → Change number, Dial	Places a call to the said phone number
	Dial <0-9, +, *, #> → Change number, Dial	
Contacts (Phonebook)	Contacts, Phonebook → <Name> → <1-5> → Dial	Make a call by using the phonebook
Call <Name>	Call <Name> → <1-5> → Dial	
Recent calls	Call History → Incoming call, Outgoing call → Next (page), Previous (page) → <1-5> → Dial	Make a call by using the call history
Incoming calls	Incoming Calls	Display the call history screen
Outgoing calls	Outgoing Calls	Display the call history screen
Redial	Redial	Places a call to the phone number of the latest outgoing call
Callback	Callback	Places a call to the phone number of the latest incoming call
Select phone	Select Phone → <1-5>	Display the phone select screen
Show phone menu	Phone Menu	Display the hands free top screen

Commands for AM control

Voice command	Phrase	Function
Seek up	Seek Up	Tunes in the higher frequency direction
Seek down	Seek Down	Tunes in the lower frequency direction
Scan	Scan	Switch to the scan mode
Direct frequency tuning	Tune to <Frequency>	Designate the frequency to switch to a specific radio station
Preset number tuning	Preset <preset number>	Designate the preset channel to switch to specific radio station

– CONTINUED –

Commands for CD control

Voice command	Phrase	Function
Track up, next track	Track Up	Select the next track
Track down, previous track	Track Down	Select the current track
Scan	Scan	Switch to the scan mode
1 Track Repeat	1 Track Repeat	Repeat single track
Repeat All	Repeat All	Repeat all tracks
Shuffle	Shuffle	Plays randomly

Commands for MP3/WMA/AAC, USB control

Voice command	Phrase	Function
Track up, next track	Track Up	Select the next track
Track down, previous track	Track Down	Select the current track
Folder up	Folder Up	Plays from the start of the next folder
Folder down	Folder Down	Plays from the start of the previous folder
Scan	Scan	Switch to the scan mode
1 track repeat	1 Track Repeat	Repeat single track
Repeat folder	Repeat Folder	Repeat of the folder
Repeat all	Repeat All	Repeat all tracks
Shuffle folder	Shuffle Folder	Plays randomly of the folder
Shuffle all	Shuffle All	Plays randomly

Commands for iPod Control

Voice command	Phrase	Function
Track up, next track	Track Up	Select the next track
Track down, previous track	Track Down	Select the current track
Repeat one	Repeat One	Repeat single track
Repeat all	Repeat All	Repeat all tracks
Shuffle track	Shuffle Track	Shuffle all tracks
Shuffle album	Shuffle Album	Shuffle all tracks
Shuffle OFF	Shuffle OFF	Turn off shuffle

Commands for Bluetooth audio control

Voice command	Phrase	Function
Pause	Pause	Pause play
Track up, next track	Track Up	Select the next track
Track down, previous track	Track Down	Select the current track
1 Track repeat	1 Track Repeat	Repeat single track
Repeat all	Repeat All	Repeat all tracks
Group repeat	Group Repeat	Repeat tracks on group
Shuffle all	Shuffle All	Shuffle all tracks
Group shuffle	Group Shuffle	Shuffle tracks on group
Shuffle OFF	Shuffle OFF	Turn off shuffle

Appendix

■ Certification

- **Bluetooth**

The Bluetooth word mark and logo are registered trademarks of Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Clarion Co., Ltd. is under license.

- **iPod**

“Made for iPod” and “Made for iPhone” mean that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPod or iPhone respectively, and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards. Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards. Please note that the use of this accessory with iPod or iPhone may affect wireless performance.

iPhone, iPod, iPod classic, iPod nano, iPod touch, and iTunes are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

- **How to get the source code using the open source**

This system implements software using the open source. For customers who would like to get the source code of the software, it is available by downloading it from the web site of Clarion Co., Ltd.

For details, refer to the following web site.

For Europe:

http://www.clarion.com/xe/en/open-source/index.html

For Australia:

http://www.clarion.com/au/en/open-source/index.html

For South America:

http://www.clarion.com/xl/en/open-source/index.html

For Asia:

http://www.clarion.com/my/en/open-source/index.html

■ Certification for UAE models

PF-3738
TRA
REGISTERED No: ER0133354/14
DEALER No: DA0054309/10

– CONTINUED –

■ Certification for Paraguay models

Record Number: 2014-08-I-000219

Manufacturer: Clarion Co., Ltd.

Paraguay Distributor:

Tokyo Motors S.A.

Avda. Eusebio Ayala 4649 kg 5 1/2 Asuncion, Paraguay

■ Certification for MAROC models

PF-3680

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC

Numéro d'agrément: MR 9314 ANRT 2014

Date d'agrément: 28/05/2014

■ Certification for Russia and Kazakhstan models

"Uniservis" Ltd.

1st Vladimirovskaya street, building 20A, 1st floor, premises 1, room 17, Moscow 111123, Russia. OGRN 5107746076873.

ООО «Юнисервис»

Россия, 111123, г. Москва, ул. 1-ая Владимировска, д. 20А, этаж 1 пом. 1, комн. 17, ОГРН 5107746076873.

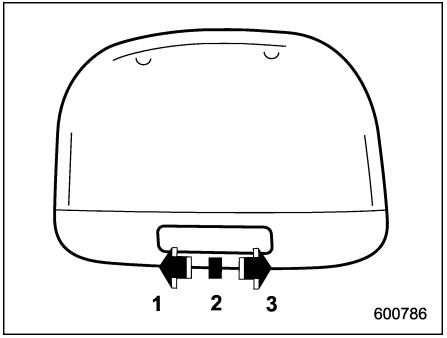
Interior light 6-2
Dome light 6-2
Cargo area light 6-2
Map lights 6-2
OFF delay timer 6-3
Sun visors 6-4
Sun visor extension plate 6-4
Vanity mirror 6-5
Storage compartment 6-5
Glove box 6-5
Center console 6-6
Overhead console (if equipped) 6-6
Cup holders 6-7
Front passenger's cup holder 6-7
Rear passenger's cup holder (if equipped) 6-7
Bottle holders 6-8
Accessory power outlets 6-9
Cigarette lighter (if equipped) 6-10
Ashtray (if equipped) 6-11
Floor mat (if equipped) 6-11
Coat hook 6-12
Shopping bag hook 6-13
Convenient hook 6-13
Cargo area cover 6-14
Using the cover 6-14
To install the front cover 6-14
To remove the front cover 6-14
To remove the cover 6-15
Stowage of the cargo area cover 6-15
To install the cover housing 6-16
Cargo tie-down hooks 6-16
Under-floor storage compartment (if equipped) 6-17
Rear view camera (if equipped) 6-17
How to use the rear view camera 6-18
Viewing range on the screen 6-19
Help line 6-20

Interior light

⚠ CAUTION

When leaving your vehicle, make sure the lights are turned off to avoid battery discharge.

■ Dome light



1) ON
2) DOOR
3) OFF

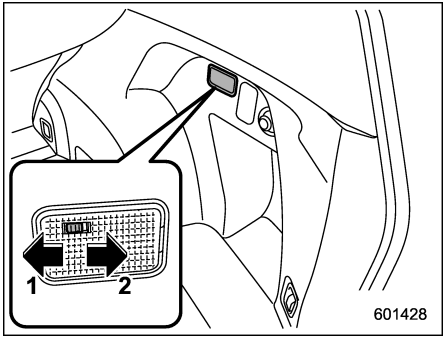
The dome light switch has the following positions.

ON: The light remains on continuously.
OFF: The light remains off.

DOOR: The dome light illuminates automatically in the following cases.

- Any of the doors or the rear gate is opened.
- The doors or the rear gate are unlocked using the keyless access function (if equipped). Refer to “Locking and unlocking with “keyless access” entry function” ☞2-11.
- The doors or the rear gate are unlocked using the remote keyless entry system. Refer to “Remote keyless entry system” ☞2-18.
- The ignition switch is turned to the “LOCK”/“OFF” position.

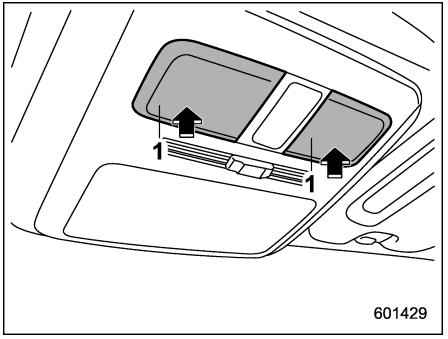
■ Cargo area light



1) ON
2) OFF

ON: The light illuminates when the rear gate is opened. The light remains illuminated for several seconds and gradually turns off after the rear gate is closed.
OFF: The light remains off.

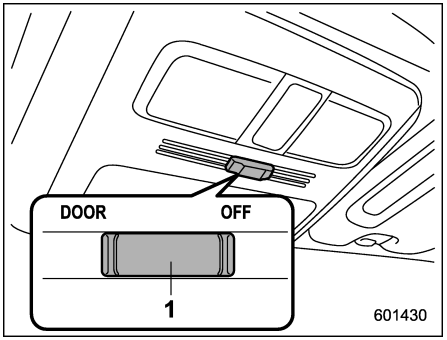
■ Map lights



1) Map light switch (lens)

To turn on the map light, push the lens. To turn it off, push the lens again.

▼ **Door interlock switch**



1) Door interlock switch

Although the map light switches (lenses) are in the OFF position (manually off), the map lights can be set to illuminate automatically in conjunction with a door opening, etc. by use of the door interlock switch. The door interlock switch has the following positions.

OFF: The map lights do not illuminate automatically in conjunction with a door opening. However, the lights can be turned on manually by pushing the map light switches (lenses).

DOOR: The map lights illuminate automatically in the following cases.

- Any of the doors other than the rear gate is opened. (The map lights do not illuminate when only the rear gate is opened.)
- The doors are unlocked using the keyless access function (if equipped). Refer to “Locking and unlocking with “keyless access” entry function” ☞2-11.
- The doors are unlocked using the remote keyless entry system. Refer to “Remote keyless entry system” ☞2-18.
- The ignition switch is turned from the “ACC” position to the “LOCK”/“OFF” position.

■ OFF delay timer

The following lights have an automatic illumination function.

- dome light
- map light
- cargo area light

After being illuminated automatically, these lights remain on for several seconds and then gradually turn off under the following conditions.

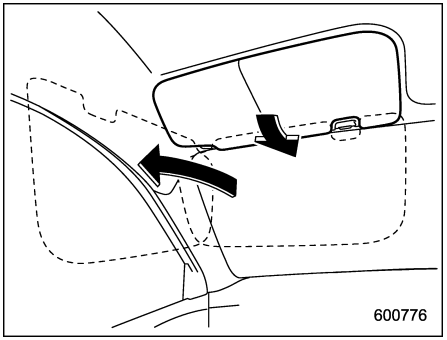
- after all doors and the rear gate are closed (dome light)
- after all doors are closed (map light)
- after the rear gate is closed (cargo area light)

While the lights are illuminated, if any of the following operations are performed, the lights turn off immediately.

- The ignition switch is turned from the “LOCK”/“OFF” position to the “ACC” or “ON” position.
- All doors and the rear gate are locked using the keyless access function (if equipped).
- All doors and the rear gate are locked using the remote keyless entry system.

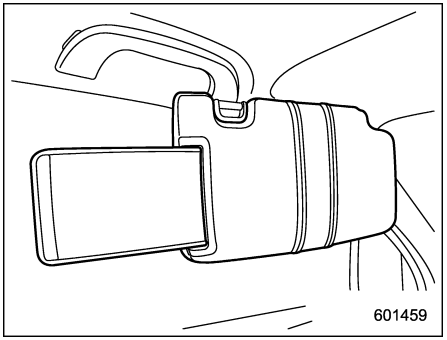
The setting for the period of time in which the lights remain on (OFF delay timer) can be changed by a SUBARU dealer. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer for details. For models with multi function display, the setting can be changed by operating the multi function display. For details, refer to “Interior light off delay timer setting” ☞3-86.

Sun visors

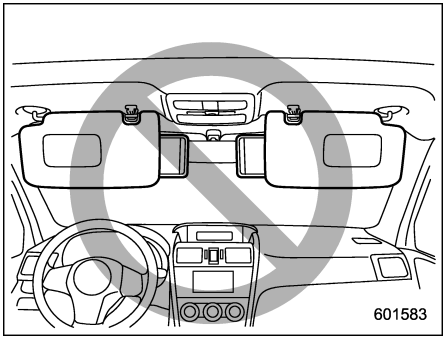


To block out glare, swing down the visors. To use the sun visor at a side window, swing it down and move it sideways.

■ Sun visor extension plate



With the sun visor positioned over the side window, you can use the sun visor extension plate to prevent glare through the gap between the sun visor and center pillar. To use the extension plate, pull it toward the rear of the vehicle. When you have finished using it, stow it by pushing it toward the front of the vehicle.



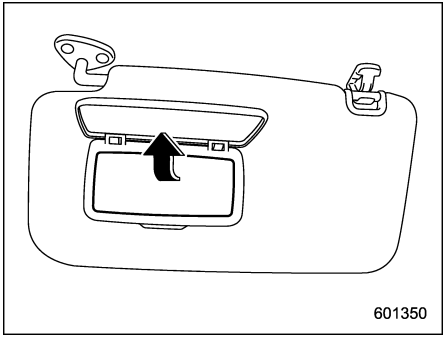
⚠ CAUTION

Do not pull out the extension plate with the sun visor positioned over the windshield. The extension plate would obstruct your view of the rearview mirror.

■ Vanity mirror

⚠ CAUTION

Keep the vanity mirror cover closed while the car is being driven to avoid being blinded by glare.



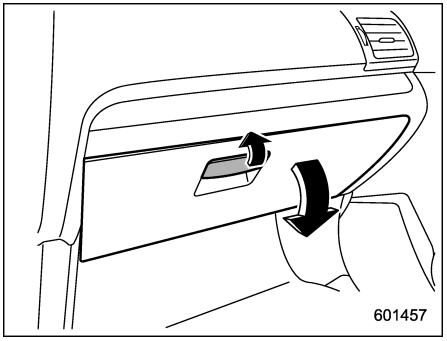
To use the vanity mirror, swing down the sun visor and open the vanity mirror cover.

Storage compartment

⚠ CAUTION

- **Always keep the storage compartment closed while driving to reduce the risk of injury in the event of sudden stops or an accident.**
- **Do not store spray cans, containers with flammable or corrosive liquids or any other dangerous items in the storage compartment.**

■ Glove box

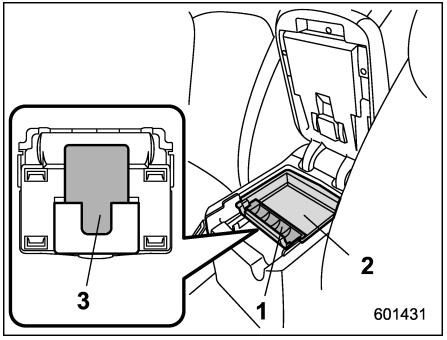


To open the glove box, pull the handle. To close it, push the lid firmly upward.

– CONTINUED –

■ Center console

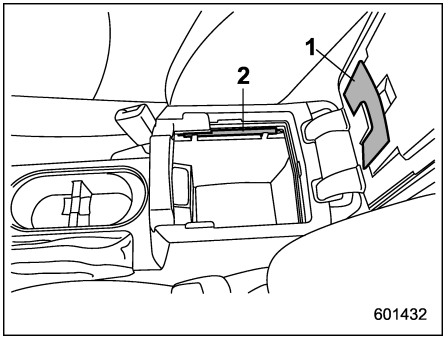
The center console box provides a storage space.



1) Coin tray
2) Accessory tray
3) Card holder

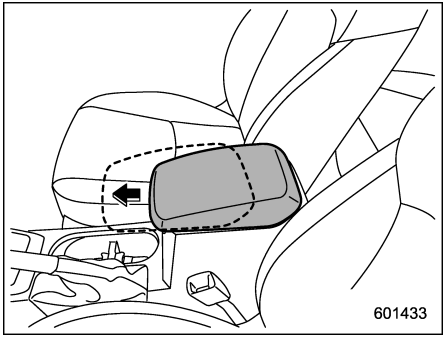
The lid located inside the center console can be used as a coin tray or an accessory tray for small items. There is a card holder on the reverse side of the lid.

When the lid inside the center console is removed, you can use a pen holder.



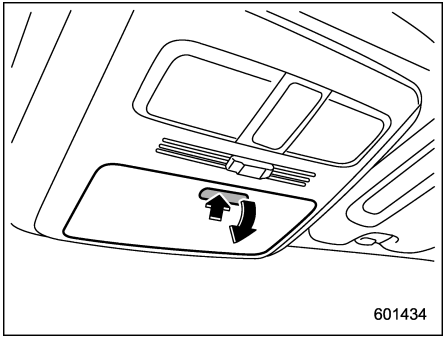
1) Paper holder (if equipped)
2) Pen holder

The top of the console can be used as an armrest.



For some models, the armrest is adjustable. Slide the armrest to the desired position.

■ Overhead console (if equipped)



To open the console, push on the console lid lightly. The lid will automatically open.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Before driving, ensure that the overhead console is closed.**
- **When your vehicle is parked in the sun or on a warm day, the inside of the overhead console heats up. Avoid storing plastic or other heat-vulnerable or flammable articles such as a lighter in the overhead console.**

Cup holders

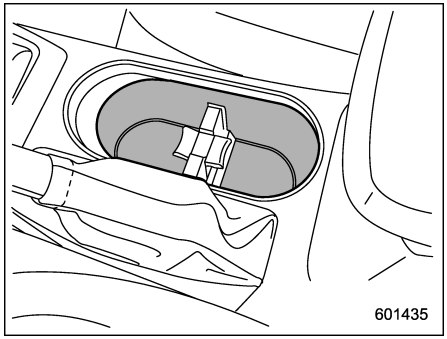
CAUTION

Take care to avoid spills. Beverages, if hot, might burn you and/or your passengers. Spilled beverages may also damage upholstery, carpets or audio equipment.

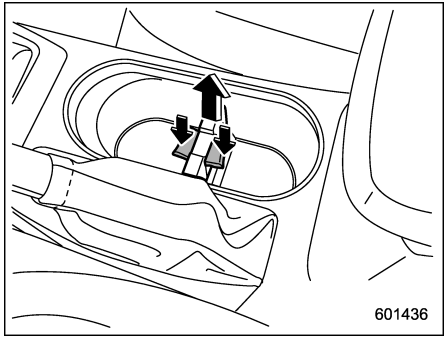
■ Front passenger's cup holder

CAUTION

Do not pick up a cup from the cup holder or put a cup in the holder while you are driving, as this may distract you and lead to an accident.



A dual cup holder is built into the console.



The divider in the cup holder can be pulled out.

NOTE

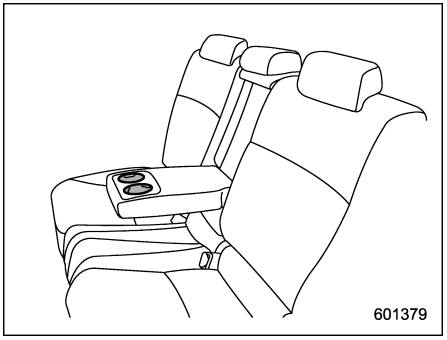
- **The shape of the front passenger's cup holder may be slightly different depending on the model.**
- **With the divider taken out, the cup holder can be used as a storage box.**

■ Rear passenger's cup holder (if equipped)

CAUTION

When a cup in the rear passenger's cup holder contains a beverage, do not fold down the rear seatback. Otherwise, the beverage could spill and, if the beverage is hot, it could burn you and/or your passengers.

– CONTINUED –

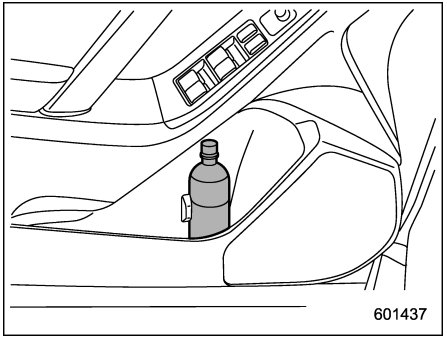


A dual cup holder is built into the armrest.

Bottle holders

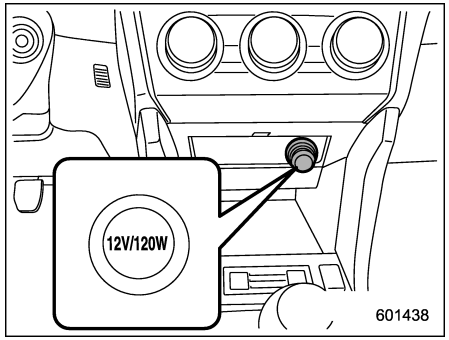
⚠ CAUTION

- **Do not pick up a bottle from the bottle holder or put a bottle in the holder while you are driving, as this may distract you and lead to an accident.**
- **When placing a beverage in a bottle holder, make sure it is capped. Otherwise, the beverage could spill when opening/closing the door or while driving and, if the beverage is hot, it could burn you and/or your passengers.**

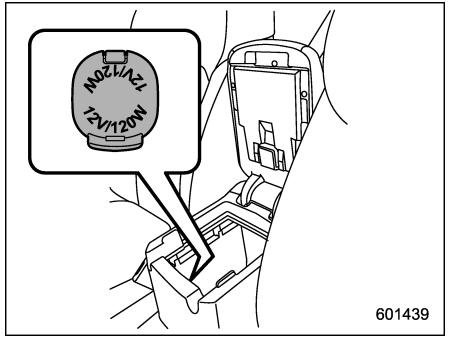


The bottle holder equipped on each door trim can be used to hold beverage bottles and other items.

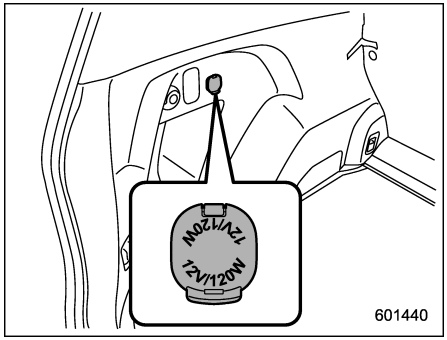
Accessory power outlets



Power outlet below the climate control



Power outlet in the center console



Power outlet in the cargo area

Accessory power outlets are provided below the climate control, in the center console and in the cargo area. Electrical power (12V DC) from the battery is available at any of the outlets when the ignition switch is in either the “ACC” or “ON” position.

You can use an electrical appliance by connecting it to an outlet.

The maximum power rating of an appliance that can be connected is **120W**. Do not use an appliance which exceeds the indicated wattage for each outlet.

When using appliances connected to two or more outlets simultaneously, the total power consumed by them must not exceed 120W.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Do not attempt to use a cigarette lighter in the accessory power outlets.**
- **Do not place any foreign objects, especially metal ones such as coins or aluminum foil, into the accessory power outlet. That could cause a short circuit. Always put the cap on the accessory power outlet when it is not in use.**
- **Use only electrical appliances which are designed for 12V DC.**

  The maximum power rating of an appliance that can be connected is 120W. Do not use an appliance which exceeds the indicated wattage for each outlet.

  When using appliances connected to two or more outlets simultaneously, the total power consumed by them must not exceed 120W. Overloading the accessory power outlet can cause a short circuit. Do not use double adapters or more than one electrical appliance.

– CONTINUED –

- **If the plug on your electric appliance is either too loose or too tight for the accessory power outlet, this can result in poor contact or cause the plug to get stuck. Only use plugs that fit properly.**
- **Use of an electric appliance in the accessory power outlet for a long period of time while the engine is not running can cause battery discharge.**
- **Before driving your vehicle, make sure that the plug and the cord on your electrical appliance will not interfere with your shifting gears and operating the accelerator and brake pedals. If they do, do not use the electrical appliance while driving.**

■ Cigarette lighter (if equipped)

A cigarette lighter may be installed in place of an accessory power outlet. The cigarette lighter assembly is available from your SUBARU dealer.

The cigarette lighter operates only when the ignition switch is in the “ON” or “ACC” position.

To use the cigarette lighter, push in the knob and wait a few moments. It will automatically spring up when ready for use.

⚠ WARNING

To avoid being burned, never grasp the lighter by the end with the heating element. Doing so could result in injury and could also damage the heating element.

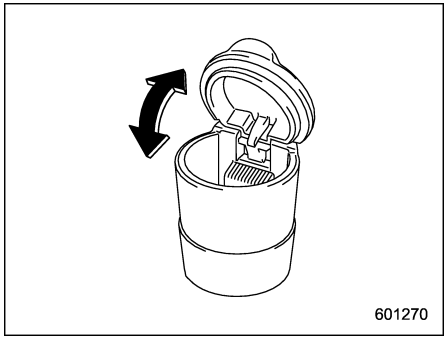
⚠ CAUTION

- **Do not hold the lighter pushed in, because it will overheat.**
- **Do not use non-genuine cigarette lighter plugs in the socket. Doing so may cause a short-circuit and overheating, resulting in a fire.**
- **If the socket is ever used for a plug-in accessory such as a cell phone, that may damage the portion of the socket’s internal mechanism that causes a cigarette lighter plug to “pop out” after its lighter element is heated. Therefore, do not place a cigarette lighter plug in a socket that has been used, even once, to power a plug-in accessory. Doing so may cause the plug to stick and overheat, creating a potential fire hazard.**

Ashtray (if equipped)

⚠ CAUTION

- **Do not use ashtrays as waste receptacles or leave a lighted cigarette in an ashtray. This could cause a fire.**
- **Always extinguish matches and cigarettes before putting them into the ashtray, and then close the ashtray securely. If you keep the ashtray open, the fire of the cigarette may spread to another cigarette butt and start a fire.**
- **Do not put flammable material in the ashtray.**
- **Do not leave a lot of cigarette butts in the ashtray.**



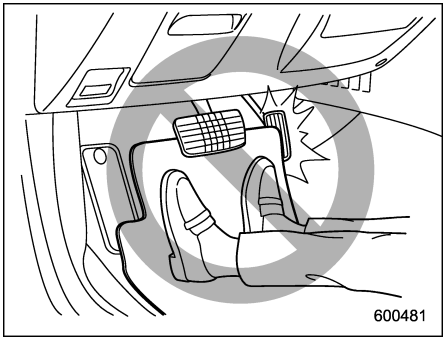
The portable ashtray can be installed in each cup holder or bottle holder. For the locations of the cup holders, refer to “Cup holders” ☞6-7. For the locations of the bottle holders, refer to “Bottle holders” ☞6-8.

When using the ashtray, open the lid of the ashtray. Fully close the lid after using the ashtray to help reduce residual smoke.

NOTE

Particles of ash and tobacco will accumulate around the hinges of the ashtray’s inner lid. Clean them off using a toothbrush or another narrow-ended implement.

Floor mat (if equipped)



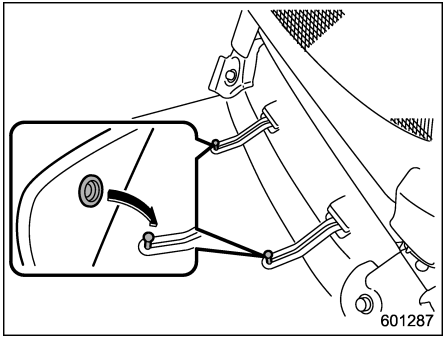
⚠ CAUTION

If the floor mat slips forward and interferes with the movement of the pedals during driving, it could cause an accident. Observe the following precautions to prevent the floor mat from slipping forward.

- **Be sure to use a genuine SUBARU floor mat or an equivalent designed with grommets in the correct locations.**
- **Make sure that the driver’s floor mat is placed in its proper location and is correctly secured on its retaining pins.**

– CONTINUED –

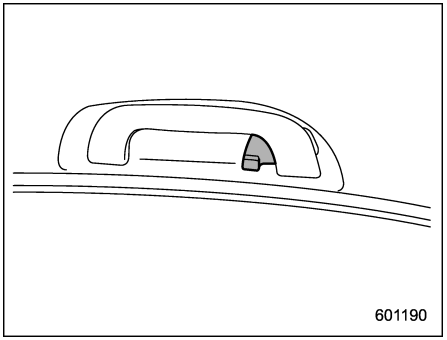
- **Do not use more than one floor mat.**



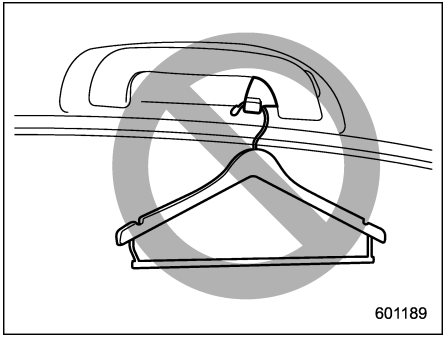
Retaining pins are located on the driver's side floor.

The driver's floor mat should be properly secured using the built-in grommets, by placing the grommets over the pins and pushing them downward.

Coat hook



A coat hook is attached to the rear passenger's hand grip.



⚠ WARNING

Hang clothing directly on the coat hooks without using hangers. Do not hang coat hangers or other hard or pointed objects on the coat hooks. If such items are hanging on the coat hooks, when the SRS curtain airbags deploy, they could cause serious injuries by coming off the coat hooks and being thrown through the cabin or by preventing correct airbag deployment. Before hanging clothing on the coat hooks, make sure there are no pointed objects in the pockets.

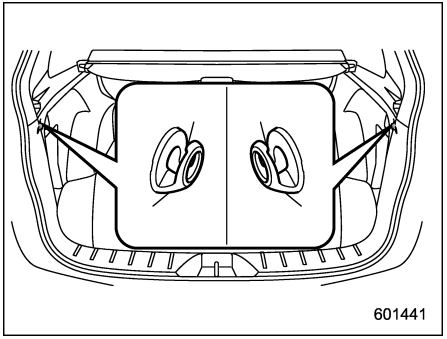
⚠ CAUTION

Never hang anything on the coat hook that might obstruct the driver's view or that could cause injury in sudden stops or in a collision.

Shopping bag hook

⚠ CAUTION

Do not hang items on the shopping bag hook that weigh 3 kg (6 lbs) or more.

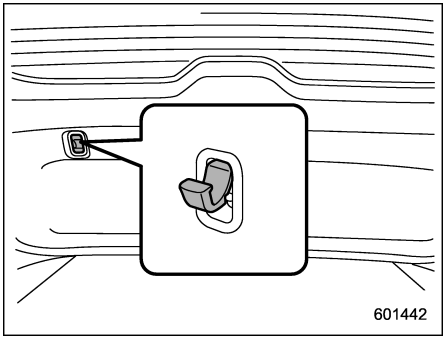


A shopping bag hook is attached to each side of the cargo area.

Convenient hook

⚠ CAUTION

- **Do not hang items on the convenient hook that weigh 3 kg (6 lbs) or more. Depending on the conditions of use (for example, in low temperatures, etc.), the rear gate may lower even with lighter loads. However, this is not a malfunction. Be careful not to hit your head or other body parts.**
- **When using the convenient hook, do not try to close the rear gate. Doing so may cause the item on the hook to be jammed in the rear gate and damaged. Remove the item from the hook before closing the rear gate.**

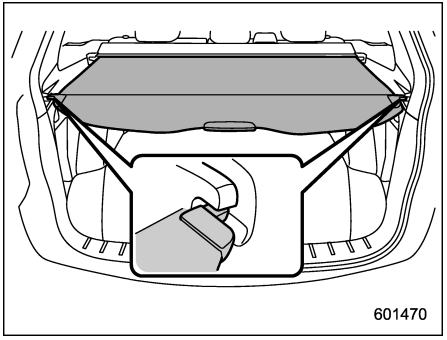


A convenient hook is attached to the rear gate trim. When the rear gate is open, you can hang a candle lantern, wet suit, etc. on the hook.

Cargo area cover

The cargo area cover is provided for covering the cargo area and to protect its contents from direct sunlight. This cover is detachable to make room for additional cargo.

■ Using the cover



To extend the cover, pull the end of the cover out of the housing, then insert its hooks into the catches as shown. To rewind it, unhook it from the catches and it will rewind automatically. You should hold on to the cover and guide it back into the cover housing while it is rewinding.

⚠ WARNING

Do not place anything on the extended cover. Putting excessive weight on the extended cover can break it and an object on the cover could tumble forward in the event of a sudden stop or collision. This could cause serious injury.

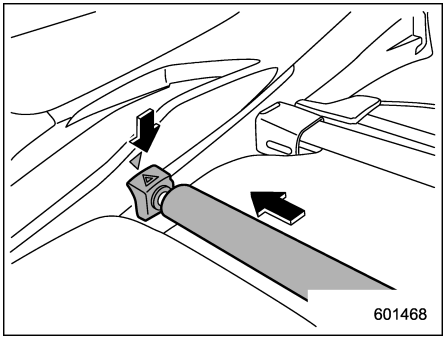
⚠ CAUTION

Be careful not to scratch the rear gate stays while extending and rewinding the cover. Scratches on the stays could cause leakage of gas from the stays, which may result in their inability to hold the rear gate open.

■ To install the front cover

⚠ CAUTION

For models with a rear seat reclining mechanism, when reclining the rear seatback, move the front cover backward so that the cover is not damaged.



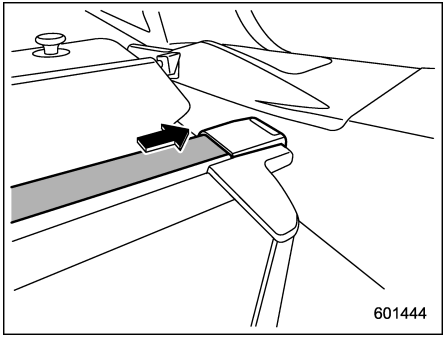
1. Align the right side of the front cover with the triangle mark before fixing the cover in place.
2. Push the front cover to the right side and shorten the bar.
3. Align the left side of the front cover with the triangle mark before fixing the cover in place.

■ To remove the front cover

1. Push the front cover to the right side and shorten the bar.
2. Remove the front cover.

■ To remove the cover

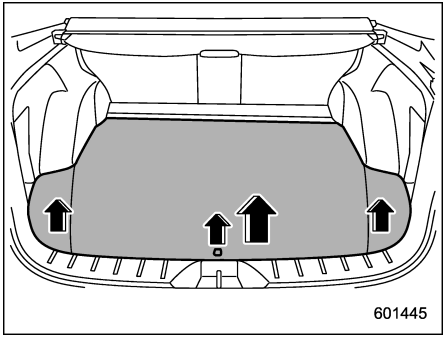
1. Rewind the cover.



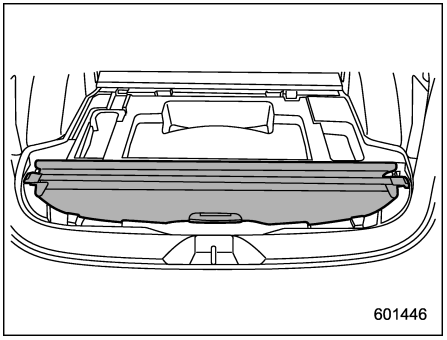
2. Push the bar to the right side and shorten the bar.
3. Take it off the retainer.

■ Stowage of the cargo area cover

The cargo area cover can be stowed under the cargo floor.



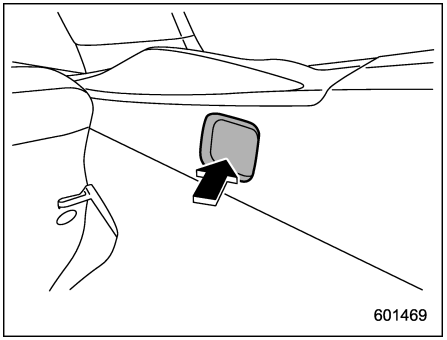
1. Pull the strap to open the center part of the cargo floor lid, and then remove the lid.
2. Remove the left and right parts of the cargo floor lid.



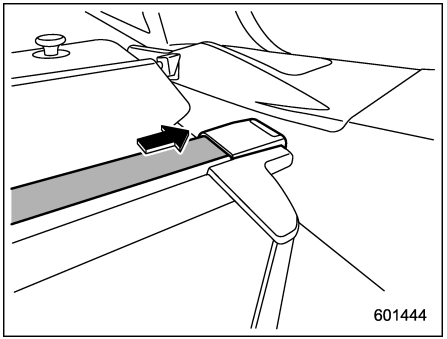
3. Stow the cover housing in the cargo area end.

– CONTINUED –

■ To install the cover housing

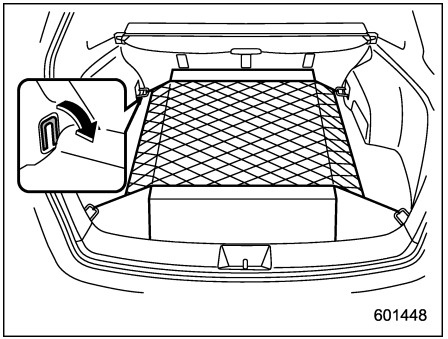


1. Insert the protrusion located on the right end of the sleeve into the recess of the retainer.



2. Push the cover housing to the right side and shorten the bar.
3. Insert the other protrusion into the recess of the other retainer.

Cargo tie-down hooks



The cargo area is equipped with four tie-down hooks so that cargo can be secured with a cargo net or ropes.
When using the front tie-down hooks, turn them down out of the storing recesses.

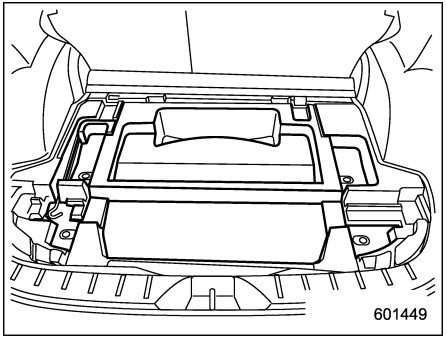
⚠ CAUTION

The cargo tie-down hooks are designed only for securing light cargo. Never try to secure cargo that exceeds the capacity of the hooks. The maximum load capacity is 20 kg (44 lbs) per hook.

Under-floor storage compartment (if equipped)

NOTE

The shape of the storage compartment may be different depending on the model.

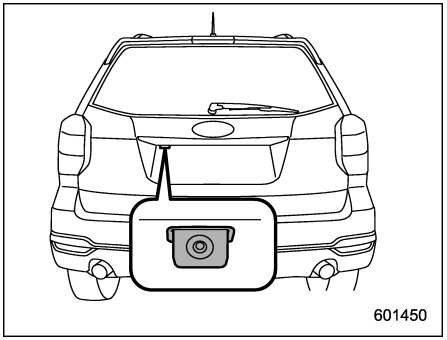


The storage compartment is located under the floor of the cargo area and can be used to store small items. Pull the strap to open the center part of the cargo floor lid, and then remove the lid.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Always keep the lid of the storage compartment closed while driving to reduce the risk of injury in the event of sudden stop or an accident.**
- **Do not store spray cans, containers with flammable or corrosive liquids or any other dangerous items in the storage compartment.**

Rear view camera (if equipped)



A rear view camera is attached to the rear gate. When the ignition switch is “ON” and the shift lever (MT models) or select lever (CVT models) is set to “R”, the rear view camera automatically displays the rear view image behind the vehicle on the monitor of the navigation system (if equipped) or the audio display.

⚠ WARNING

- **Since the rear view camera uses a wide-angle lens, the image on the monitor is different from the actual view in terms of distance.**
- **Since the range of the image on**

– CONTINUED –

the monitor is limited, you should always check the rear view and the surrounding area with your eyes and mirrors, and move backward at a slow speed. Moving backward only by checking the rear view image from the camera could cause an accident.

- **Do not disassemble or modify the camera, switch or wiring. If smoke comes out or you smell a strange odor, stop using the rear view camera immediately. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer for an inspection. Continued use may result in accident, fire or electric shock.**

⚠ CAUTION

- **If your vehicle is washed with a high-pressure washer, do not allow water to contact the camera directly. Entry of water into the camera lens may result in condensation, malfunction, fire or electric shock.**
- **Since the camera is a precision device, do not subject it to strong impacts. Otherwise, malfunction, fire or electric shock may occur.**
- **If mud or snow sticks to or is frozen on the camera, you must be very careful when removing it. Otherwise, damage done to the camera may cause a fire or electric shock. Pour water or lukewarm water over the camera to remove mud and ice, and wipe it with a soft, dry cloth.**
- **Do not put a flame close to the camera or wiring. Otherwise, damage or fire may occur.**
- **When replacing the fuse, be sure to use a fuse with the specified rating. Use of a fuse with a different rating may result in a malfunction.**
- **If the rear view camera is used for a long time while the engine is not operated, the battery may become completely discharged.**

NOTE

- **Do not wipe the camera with alcohol, benzine or paint thinner. Otherwise, discoloration may occur. To remove contamination, wipe the camera with a cloth moistened with a diluted neutral detergent and then wipe it with a soft, dry cloth.**
- **When waxing the vehicle, be careful not to apply the wax to the camera. If it comes in contact with the camera, moisten a clean cloth with a diluted neutral detergent to remove the wax.**
- **The camera lens has hard coating to help prevent scratches. However, when washing the vehicle or cleaning the camera lens, be careful not to scratch the camera lens. Do not use a washing brush directly on the camera lens. The image quality of the rear view camera may deteriorate.**
- **Strong light shined on the camera lens may develop vertical lines around the light source. This is not a malfunction.**
- **Under the fluorescent light, the display may flicker. However, this is not a malfunction.**
- **The image of the rear view camera may be slightly different from the actual color of the objects.**

■ How to use the rear view camera

When the shift lever/select lever is set to “R”, the rear view camera automatically displays the rear view image from the vehicle. When the lever is set to other positions, the image before setting to “R”

is displayed.

1. Set the ignition switch to “ON”.
2. Set the shift lever/select lever to “R”.

NOTE

• For models with the genuine SUBARU navigation system, the image of the rear view camera has priority over other screen displays. Therefore, while the rear view camera is in operation, the operations of other screens are disabled. To operate other screens, set the shift lever or select lever to a position other than “R”.

• The image of the rear view camera is horizontally reversed as is the case with the vehicle rearview mirror or the side view mirror.

• It may be difficult to see the image of the rear view camera in the following cases. This is not a malfunction of the camera.

– The vehicle is in a dark place (at night, in a tunnel, etc.).

– The vehicle is in an extremely hot or cold place.

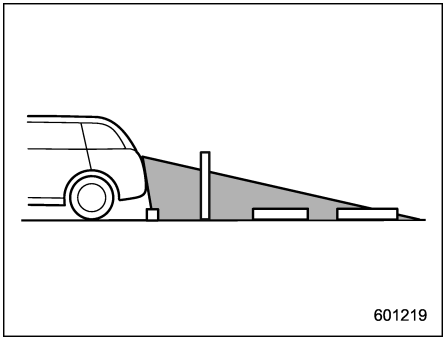
– An object (such as raindrops, snow, dirt, etc.) that disturbs the view of the rear view camera sticks to the lens of the camera.

– Strong light shined directly on the camera lens (occasionally, there are vertical lines on the screen).

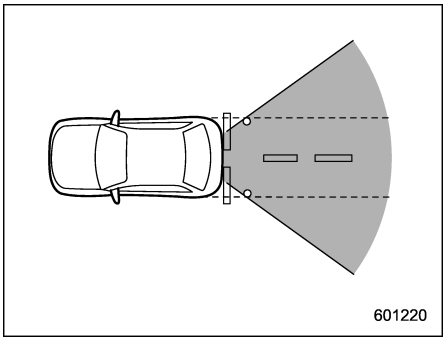
■ Viewing range on the screen

⚠ CAUTION

The range that can be viewed with the rear view camera is limited. Always be sure to check with your eyes when moving backward and proceed slowly.



Range of view



Range of view

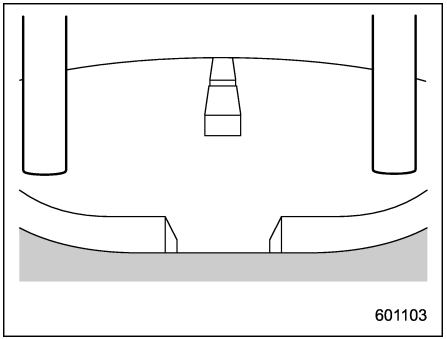
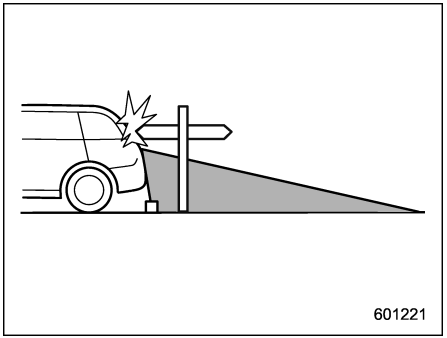


Image from camera

The area from the rear end of the bumper can be viewed. Areas at both ends of the bumper and areas just under the bumper cannot be viewed.

– CONTINUED –

Also, the image from the rear view camera looks shorter than the actual distance.



Range of view

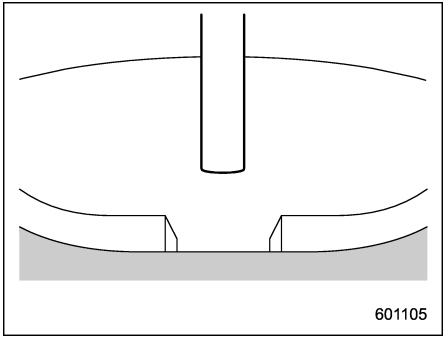


Image from camera

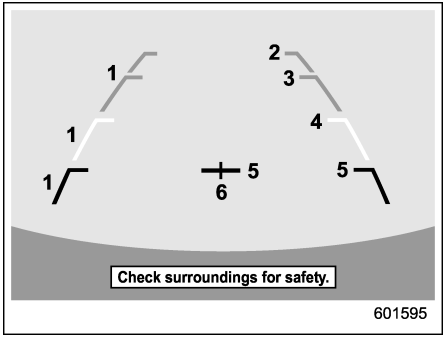
The area above the camera cannot be viewed. If there is an object that has a wide projection on its upper part such as a sign pole behind the vehicle, the projection cannot be seen on the screen.

■ Help line

The help line (distance marker and vehicle width line) is a guide to help you realize the actual distance from the screen image.

NOTE

If you shift to the "R" range within several seconds after turning on the ignition switch, the help line and warning message may not be displayed. Wait for several seconds after turning on the ignition switch before shifting to the "R" range. Then help line and warning message will be displayed.



1) Vehicle width line (oblique vertical line)
2) Approx. 3 m (10 feet) from the bumper (green horizontal line)
3) Approx. 2 m (6.5 feet) from the bumper (green horizontal line)
4) Approx. 1 m (3 feet) from the bumper (yellow horizontal line)
5) Approx. 0.5 m (1.5 feet) from the bumper (red horizontal line)
6) Vehicle centerline

When the shift lever or select lever is set to position "R", the monitor screen displays the help lines together with the rear view image.

⚠ CAUTION

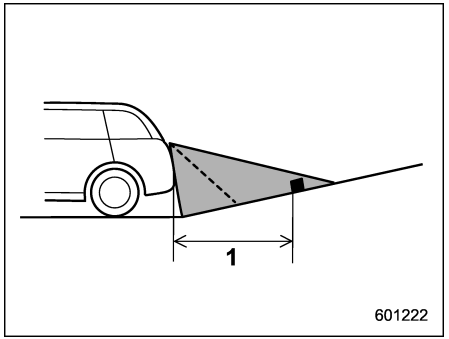
- **When moving backward, always check the back with your eyes without relying on the help lines.**

- **The actual position may be different from the indication of the help lines.**
- **Differences may occur due to number of passengers or loaded cargo.**
- **When the vehicle is on a slope or when the vehicle is inclined against the road, the indication is different from the actual position.**

▼ Difference between screen image and actual road

The distance markers show the distance for a level road when the vehicle is not loaded. It may be different from the actual distance depending on the loading conditions or road conditions.

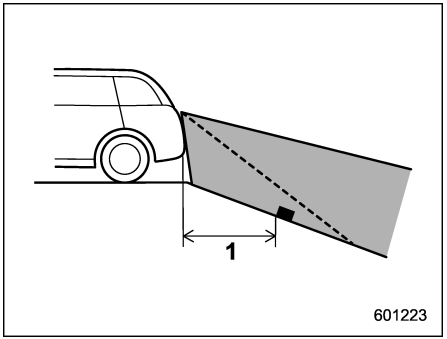
▽ When there is an upward slope at the back



1) 1 m (3 feet)

The distance on the screen looks farther than the actual distance.

▽ When there is a downward slope at the back



1) 1 m (3 feet)

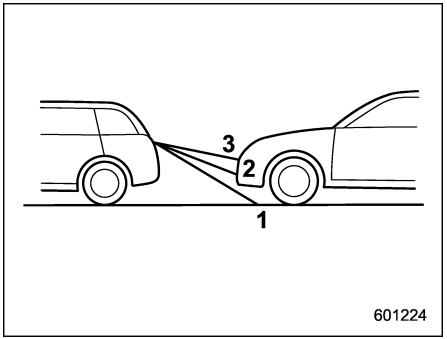
The distance on the screen looks nearer than the actual distance.

NOTE

When cargo is loaded, the rear view distance on the screen looks farther than the actual distance as in an upward slope.

– CONTINUED –

▼ Feature of distance marker



1) 1 m (3 feet) line
2) 2 m (6.5 feet) line
3) 3 m (10 feet) line

The distance marker shows the distance on the road. If there is a car or other object close behind, distance cannot be correctly displayed.

Fuel 7-3
Fuel requirements for petrol engine models 7-3
Fuel requirements for diesel engine models 7-3
Fuel filler lid and cap 7-4
Preparing to drive 7-6
Starting and stopping engine (models without push-button start system) 7-7
Starting engine 7-7
Stopping engine 7-10
Starting and stopping engine (models with push-button start system) 7-11
Safety precautions 7-11
Operating range for push-button start system 7-11
Starting engine 7-11
Stopping engine 7-13
When access key does not operate properly 7-14
Manual transmission 7-14
Shifting speeds 7-15
Driving tips 7-17
Continuously variable transmission 7-18
Select lever 7-19
Selection of manual mode (if equipped) 7-20
Selection of “L” (if equipped) 7-22
Shift lock function 7-23
Driving tips 7-24
SI-DRIVE (if equipped) 7-24
Intelligent (I) mode 7-24
Sport (S) mode 7-25
Sport Sharp (S#) mode (if equipped) 7-25
SI-DRIVE switches 7-26
Power steering 7-27
For models with hydraulic power steering 7-27
For models with electric power steering 7-27
Braking 7-28
Braking tips 7-28
Brake system 7-29
Disc brake pad wear warning indicators 7-30
ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) 7-30
ABS system self-check 7-30
ABS warning light 7-31
Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD) system 7-31
Steps to take if EBD system fails 7-31
Vehicle Dynamics Control system 7-32
Vehicle Dynamics Control system monitor 7-34
Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF switch 7-34
X mode (if equipped) 7-35
To activate/deactivate the X mode 7-36
Hill descent control function 7-37
Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) (if equipped) 7-38
TPMS mode setting 7-39
Parking your vehicle 7-41
Parking brake 7-41
Parking tips 7-41
Hill start assist system 7-42
To activate/deactivate the Hill start assist system 7-44
Hill start assist warning light/Hill start assist OFF indicator light 7-45

Cruise control (if equipped)..... 7-45
- To set cruise control 7-46
- To temporarily cancel the cruise control 7-46
- To turn off the cruise control 7-47
- To change the cruising speed..... 7-47
- Cruise control indicator light 7-49
- Cruise control set indicator light 7-49

Auto Start Stop system (if equipped)..... 7-49
- System operation..... 7-49
- Displaying the Auto Start Stop system status 7-52
- System warning..... 7-52

Fuel

■ Fuel requirements for petrol engine models

⚠ CAUTION

- **Use of a fuel which is low in quality or use of an inappropriate fuel additive may cause engine damage.**
- **Do not let fuel spill on the exterior surfaces of the vehicle. Because fuel may damage the paint, be sure to wipe off any spilled fuel quickly. Paint damage caused by spilled fuel is not covered under the SUBARU Limited Warranty.**
- **The neck of the fuel filler pipe is designed to accept only an unleaded petrol filler nozzle. Under no circumstances should leaded petrol be used because it will damage the emission control system and may impair driveability and fuel economy. Also, this can increase maintenance costs.**

▼ Non-turbo petrol engine models

2.5 L models and Australia models:

Your engine is designed to use only **unleaded petrol**. The use of unleaded petrol with an octane rating of **90 or higher** is recommended. This octane rating is the Research Octane number.

For optimum engine performance and driveability, it is recommended that you use premium grade unleaded petrol.

Other models:

Your engine is designed to use only **unleaded petrol**. The use of unleaded petrol with an octane rating of **95 or higher** is recommended. This octane rating is the Research Octane number.

If unleaded petrol with an octane rating of 95 or higher is not available, unleaded petrol with an octane rating of 90 or higher may be used.

▼ Turbo petrol engine models

The engine is designed to use only **unleaded petrol** with an octane rating of **95 or higher**. This octane rating is the Research Octane number.

■ Fuel requirements for diesel engine models

Your engine is designed to use only **diesel** fuel that conforms to the specification of **EN590** or an equivalent.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Never use fuels other than those that conform to the specification of EN590 or an equivalent for your vehicle. If an inappropriate fuel is used, it could cause not only lower engine performance but also serious damage to the engine and fuel system. To avoid damaging the engine, you must conform to the following instructions.**
  - **– Never use petrol or a diesel fuel mixed with petrol.**
  - **– Never use paraffin, heating oils, etc.**
  - **– Never use marine diesel fuel.**
  - **– Never add any fuel additives or cleaning agents to the diesel fuel.**
- **Do not let fuel spill on the exterior surfaces of the vehicle. Because fuel may damage the paint, be sure to wipe off any spilled fuel**

– CONTINUED –

quickly. Paint damage caused by spilled fuel is not covered under the SUBARU Limited Warranty.

▼ Winter diesel

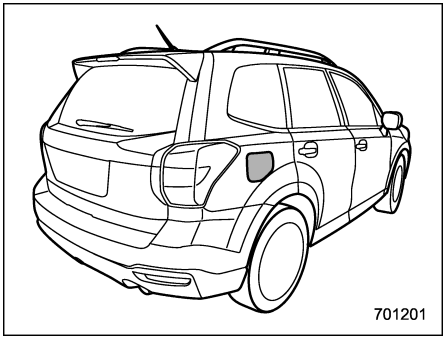
In order to avoid operational problems at low fuel temperatures, diesel fuels with improved cold flow qualities are available during the winter season. However, the specification of the diesel fuel for the winter season depends on the climate of the area where the vehicle is driven. For more details about the winter diesel fuel, we recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer.

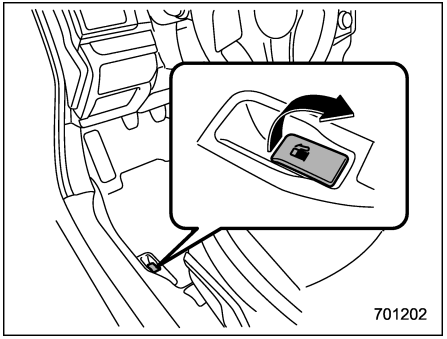
■ Fuel filler lid and cap

▼ Refueling

Only one person should be involved in refueling. Do not allow others to approach the area of the vehicle near the fuel filler pipe while refueling is in progress.

Be sure to observe any other precautions that are posted at the service station.

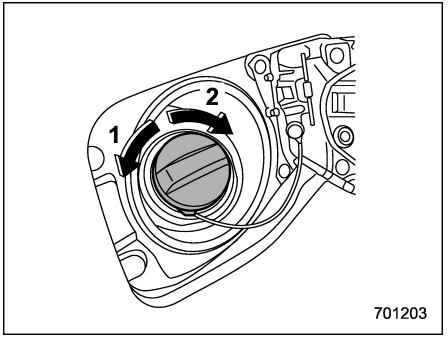




1. To open the fuel filler lid, pull the lid release lever up. The lever is on the floor of the driver's seat.

⚠ WARNING

Before opening the fuel filler cap, first touch the vehicle body or a metal portion of the fuel pump or similar object to discharge any static electricity that may be present on your body. If your body is carrying an electrostatic charge, there is a possibility that an electric spark could ignite the fuel, which could burn you. To avoid acquiring a new static electric charge, do not get back into the vehicle while refueling is in progress.



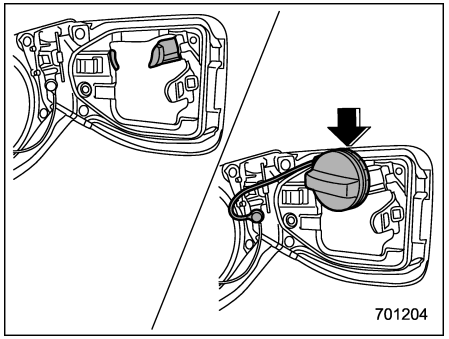
1) Open
2) Close

2. Remove the fuel filler cap by turning it

slowly counterclockwise.

⚠ WARNING

- **Fuel vapor is highly flammable. Before refueling, always first stop the engine and close all vehicle doors and windows. Make sure that there are no lighted cigarettes, open flames or electrical sparks in the adjacent area. Only handle fuel outdoors. Quickly wipe up any spilled fuel.**
- **When opening the cap, grasp it firmly and turn it slowly counterclockwise. Do not remove the cap quickly. Fuel may be under pressure and spray out of the fuel filler neck, especially in hot weather. If you hear a hissing sound while you are removing the cap, wait for the sound to stop and then slowly open the cap to prevent fuel from spraying out and creating a fire hazard.**



3. Set the fuel filler cap on the cap holder inside the fuel filler lid.

⚠ WARNING

- **When refueling, insert the fuel nozzle securely into the fuel filler pipe. If the nozzle is lifted or not fully inserted, its automatic stopping mechanism may not function, causing fuel to overflow the tank and creating a fire hazard.**
- **Stop refueling when the automatic stop mechanism on the fuel nozzle activates. If you continue to add fuel, temperature changes or other conditions may cause fuel to overflow from the tank and create a fire hazard.**

4. Stop filling the tank after the fuel filler pump automatically stops. Do not add any more fuel.
5. Put the cap back on, turn it clockwise until you hear a clicking noise. Be certain not to catch the tether under the cap while tightening.
6. Close the fuel filler lid completely.

If you spill any fuel on the painted surface, rinse it off immediately. Otherwise, the painted surface could be damaged.

NOTE

You will see the "⛽▶" sign in the fuel gauge. This indicates that the fuel filler door (lid) is located on the right side of the vehicle.

– CONTINUED –

⚠ CAUTION

- **Never add any cleaning agents to the fuel tank. The addition of a cleaning agent may cause damage to the fuel system.**
- **After refueling, turn the cap clockwise until it clicks to ensure that it is fully tightened. If the cap is not securely tightened, fuel may leak out while the vehicle is being driven or fuel spillage could occur in the event of an accident, creating a fire hazard.**
- **Do not let fuel spill on the exterior surfaces of the vehicle. Because fuel may damage the paint, be sure to wipe off any spilled fuel quickly. Paint damage caused by spilled fuel is not covered under the SUBARU Limited Warranty.**
- **We recommend that you always use a genuine SUBARU fuel filler cap. If you use the wrong cap, it may not fit or have proper venting and your fuel tank and emission control system may be damaged. It could also lead to fuel spillage and a fire.**
- **Immediately put fuel in the tank whenever the low fuel warning light illuminates. Engine misfires as a result of an empty tank could cause damage to the engine.**

Preparing to drive

You should perform the following checks and adjustments every day before you start driving.

1. Check that all windows, mirrors, and lights are clean and unobstructed.
2. Check the appearance and condition of the tires. Also check tires for proper inflation.
3. Look under the vehicle for any sign of leaks and check that no small animal is under the vehicle.
4. Check that no small animal enters the engine compartment.
5. Check that the hood and rear gate are fully closed.
6. Check the adjustment of the seat.
7. Check the adjustment of the inside and outside mirrors.
8. Fasten your seatbelt. Check that your passengers have fastened their seatbelts.
9. Check the operation of the warning and indicator lights when the ignition switch is turned to the “ON” position.
10. Check the gauges, indicator and warning lights after starting the engine.

⚠ CAUTION

Trapping small animals in the cooling fan or between the drive belts may result in a malfunction of the vehicle. Check that no small animal enters the engine compartment and hides under the vehicle before starting the engine.

NOTE

Engine oil, engine coolant, brake fluid, washer fluid and other fluid levels should be checked daily, weekly or at fuel stops.

Starting and stopping engine (models without push-button start system)

■ Starting engine

⚠ CAUTION

Do not operate the starter motor continuously for more than 10 seconds. If the engine fails to start after operating the starter for 5 to 10 seconds, wait for 10 seconds or more before trying again.

NOTE

It may be difficult to start the engine when the battery has been disconnected and reconnected (for maintenance or other purposes). This difficulty is caused by the electronically controlled throttle's self-diagnosis function. To overcome it, keep the ignition switch in the "ON" position for approximately 10 seconds before starting the engine.

▼ General precautions when starting engine

⚠ WARNING

- **Never start the engine from outside the vehicle. It may result in an accident.**
- **Do not leave the engine running in locations with poor ventilation, such as a garage and indoors. The exhaust gas may enter the vehicle or indoors, and it may result in carbon monoxide poisoning.**
- **Do not start the engine near dry foliage, paper, or other flammable substances. The exhaust pipe and exhaust emissions can create a fire hazard at high temperatures.**

⚠ CAUTION

- **If the engine is stopped during driving, the catalyst may overheat and burn.**
- **When starting the engine, be sure to sit in the driver's seat.**

– CONTINUED –

NOTE

• Avoid rapid racing and rapid acceleration immediately after the engine has started.
• For a short time after the engine has started, the engine speed is kept high. When the warm-up is completed, the engine speed lowers automatically.
• On rare occasions, it may be difficult to start the engine depending on the fuel and the usage condition (repeated driving of a distance in which the engine has not warmed up sufficiently). In such a case, it is recommended that you change to a different brand of fuel.
• On rare occasions, transient knocking may be heard from the engine when the accelerator is operated rapidly such as a rapid start-up and a rapid acceleration. This is not a malfunction.
• The engine starts more easily when the headlights, air conditioner and rear window defogger are turned off.
• After the engine starts, the engine speed will be kept high until the engine has warmed up sufficiently.

▼ MT petrol engine models

1. Apply the parking brake.
2. Turn off unnecessary lights and accessories.
3. Depress the clutch pedal to the floor and shift the shift lever into neutral. Hold the clutch pedal to the floor while starting the engine.
4. Turn the ignition switch to the “ON” position and check the operation of the warning and indicator lights. Refer to “Warning and indicator lights” ☞3-13.
5. Turn the ignition switch to the “START” position **without** depressing the accelerator pedal. Release the key immediately after the engine has started.

If the engine does not start, try the following procedure.

(1) Turn the ignition switch to the “LOCK” position and wait for at least 10 seconds. After checking that the parking brake is firmly set, turn the ignition switch to the “START” position while depressing the accelerator pedal slightly (approximately a quarter of the full stroke). Release the accelerator pedal as soon as the engine starts.

(2) If this fails to start the engine, turn the ignition switch back to the “LOCK” position and wait for at least 10 seconds. Then fully depress the accelerator pedal and turn the ignition switch to the “START” position. If the engine starts, quickly release the accelerator pedal.

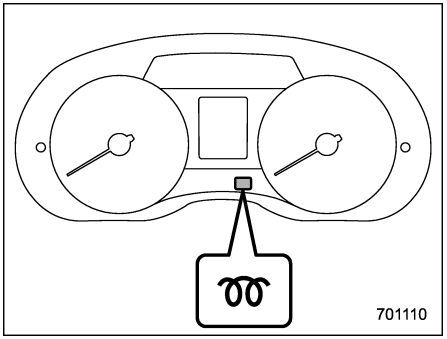
(3) If this fails to start the engine, turn the ignition switch again to the “LOCK” position. After waiting for 10 seconds or longer, turn the ignition switch to the “START” position without depressing the accelerator pedal.

(4) If the engine still does not start, we recommend that you contact your nearest SUBARU dealer for assistance.

6. Confirm that all warning and indicator lights have turned off after the engine has started. The fuel injection system automatically lowers the idle speed as the engine warms up.

▼ MT diesel engine models

1. Apply the parking brake.
2. Turn off unnecessary lights and accessories.
3. Depress the clutch pedal to the floor and shift the shift lever into neutral. Hold the clutch pedal to the floor while starting the engine.



Preheating indicator light

4. Turn the ignition switch to the “ON” position and check the operation of the warning and indicator lights. At this time, confirm that the preheating indicator light has illuminated for a few seconds and has turned off. Refer to “Warning and indicator lights” ☞3-13.
5. Turn the ignition switch to the “START” position **without** depressing the accelerator pedal. Release the key immediately after the engine has started.
6. Confirm that all warning and indicator lights have turned off after the engine has started. The fuel injection system automatically lowers the idle speed as the engine warms up.

NOTE

You may feel vibration during engine idling for several tens of seconds. This vibration is caused by a self-learning procedure of the injector. This learning procedure is necessary to stabilize the best engine performance. Therefore, it does not indicate a malfunction.

▼ CVT petrol engine models

1. Apply the parking brake.
2. Turn off unnecessary lights and accessories.
3. Shift the select lever to the “P” or “N” position (preferably “P” position).
4. Turn the ignition switch to the “ON” position and check the operation of the warning and indicator lights. Refer to “Warning and indicator lights” ☞3-13.
5. Turn the ignition switch to the “START” position **without** depressing the accelerator pedal. Release the key immediately after the engine has started.

If the engine does not start, perform the following procedures.

(1) Turn the ignition switch to the “LOCK” position and wait for at least 10 seconds. After checking that the parking brake is firmly set, turn the ignition switch to the “START” position while depressing the accelerator pedal slightly (approximately a quarter of the full stroke). Release the accelerator pedal as soon as the engine starts.

(2) If this fails to start the engine, turn the ignition switch back to the “LOCK” position and wait for at least 10 seconds. Then fully depress the accelerator pedal and turn the ignition switch to the “START” position. If the engine starts, quickly release the accelerator pedal.

(3) If this fails to start the engine, turn the ignition switch again to the “LOCK” position. After waiting for 10 seconds or longer, turn the ignition switch to the “START” position without depressing the accelerator pedal.

(4) If the engine still does not start, we recommend that you contact your nearest SUBARU dealer for assistance.

6. Confirm that all warning and indicator lights have turned off after the engine has started. The fuel injection system automatically lowers the idle speed as the engine warms up.

While the engine is warming up, make sure that the select lever is at the “P” or “N” position and that the parking brake is applied.

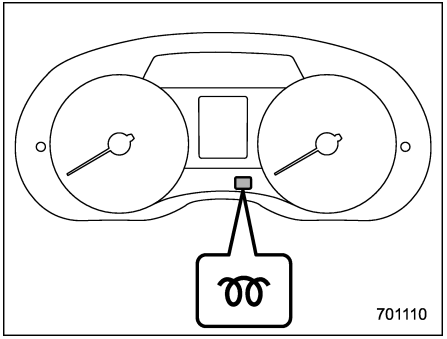
– CONTINUED –

⚠ CAUTION

If you restart the engine while the vehicle is moving, shift the select lever into the "N" position. Do not attempt to place the select lever of a moving vehicle into the "P" position.

▼ CVT diesel engine models

1. Apply the parking brake.
2. Turn off unnecessary lights and accessories.
3. Shift the select lever to the "P" or "N" position (preferably "P" position).



Preheating indicator light

4. Turn the ignition switch to the "ON" position and check the operation of the warning and indicator lights. At this time, confirm that the preheating indicator light has illuminated for a few seconds and has turned off. Refer to "Warning and indicator lights" ☞3-13.
5. Turn the ignition switch to the "START" position **without** depressing the accelerator pedal. Release the key immediately after the engine has started.
6. Confirm that all warning and indicator lights have turned off after the engine has started. The fuel injection system automatically lowers the idle speed as the engine warms up.

While the engine is warming up, make sure that the select lever is at the "P" or "N" position and that the parking brake is applied.

⚠ CAUTION

If you restart the engine while the vehicle is moving, shift the select lever into the "N" position. Do not attempt to place the select lever of a moving vehicle into the "P" position.

NOTE

You may feel vibration during engine idling for several tens of seconds. This vibration is caused by a self-learning procedure of the injector. This learning procedure is necessary to stabilize the best engine performance. Therefore, it does not indicate a malfunction.

■ Stopping engine

The ignition switch should be turned off only when the vehicle is stopped and the engine is idling.

⚠ WARNING

Do not stop the engine when the vehicle is moving. This will cause loss of power to the power steering and the brake booster, making steering and braking more difficult. It could also result in accidental activation of the "LOCK" position on the ignition switch, causing the steering wheel to lock.

Starting and stopping engine (models with push-button start system)

Once you enter the vehicle carrying the access key, the power can be switched and the engine can be started.

■ Safety precautions

Refer to “Safety precautions” ☞2-8.

■ Operating range for push-button start system

Refer to “Operating range for push-button start system” ☞3-6.

■ Starting engine

⚠ WARNING

- **There are some general precautions when starting the engine. Carefully read the precautions described in “General precautions when starting engine” ☞7-7.**
- **If the indicator on the push-button ignition switch flashes in green after the engine has started, never drive the vehicle. The steering wheel is still locked, and it may result in an accident. To release the steering lock, press the push-button ignition switch again while moving the steering wheel right and left and depressing the brake pedal.**

⚠ CAUTION

- **When the operation indicator on the push-button ignition switch is flashing in orange, there may be a malfunction with the vehicle. We recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer immediately.**
- **Do not continue pushing the push-button ignition switch for more than 10 seconds. Doing so could cause a malfunction. If the engine does not start, stop pushing the push-button ignition switch and turn off the engine. Wait 10 seconds, and then push the push-button ignition switch to start the engine.**
- **After the engine starts, the engine speed will be kept high until the coolant temperature low indicator light turns off. Refer to “Coolant temperature low indicator light/Coolant temperature high warning light” ☞3-18.**

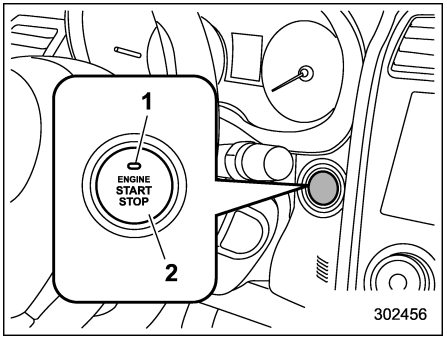
NOTE

- **When the push-button ignition switch is pressed while depressing the clutch pedal (MT models) or the brake pedal (CVT models), the engine starter operates for a maximum of 10 seconds and after starting the engine, the starter stops automatically.**
- **When the push-button ignition switch is pressed while depressing the clutch pedal (MT models) or the brake pedal (CVT models), the engine can be started regardless of the status of the push-button ignition switch.**
- **If the immobilizer indicator light illuminates when you attempt to start the engine but the engine does not start, press the push-button ignition switch to switch the power to “OFF” and then try to start the engine again.**
- **If the engine does not start, press the push-button ignition switch without depressing the clutch pedal (MT models) or the brake pedal (CVT models) to switch the power to “OFF”. Then, while depressing the clutch pedal (MT models) or the brake pedal (CVT models) more forcefully, press the push-button ignition switch.**

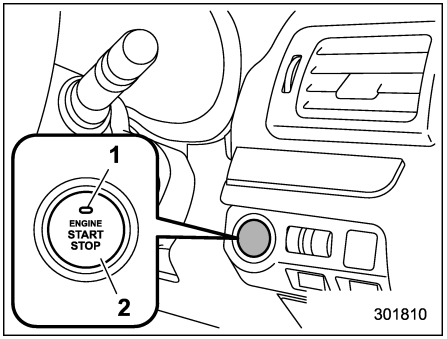
– CONTINUED –

• The engine start procedures may not function depending on the radio wave conditions around the vehicle. In such a case, refer to "Starting engine" ☞9-18.

• If the vehicle battery is discharged, the steering cannot be unlocked. Charge the battery.



Left-hand drive models



Right-hand drive models

1) Operation indicator
2) Push-button ignition switch

When the push-button ignition switch is pressed while depressing the clutch pedal (MT models)/brake pedal (CVT models), the engine will start. The start procedure of the engine is as follows.

▼ MT models

1. Carry the access key, and sit in the driver's seat.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Shift the shift lever in neutral.
4. Depress the brake pedal.
5. Depress the clutch pedal until the indicator on the push-button ignition switch turns green.
6. While depressing the clutch pedal, press the push-button ignition switch.

NOTE

• In case the engine does not start by the normal engine start procedure, move the shift lever to the neutral position, and switch the power to "ACC". Depress the clutch pedal, and press the push-button ignition switch for at least 15 seconds. The engine may start. Only use this engine start procedure in case of emergency.

• For diesel engine models, the engine will not start until the preheating indicator light has turned off.

• For diesel engine models, you may feel vibration during engine idling for several tens of seconds. This vibration is caused by the self-learning procedure of the injector. This learning procedure is necessary for optimum engine performance. This does not indicate a malfunction.

▼ CVT models

1. Carry the access key, and sit in the driver's seat.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Shift the select lever in the "P" position. The engine can also start when the select lever is in the "N" position, however, for safety reasons, start in the "P" position.

4. Depress the brake pedal until the operation indicator on the push-button ignition switch turns green. When starting with the select lever in the “N” position, the indicator does not turn green.
5. While depressing the brake pedal, press the push-button ignition switch.

NOTE

• While pressing the select lever button in, the indicator on the push-button ignition switch will not turn green even when the select lever is in the “P” position.
• In case the engine does not start by the normal engine start procedure, move the select lever to the “P” position, and switch the power to “ACC”. Depress the brake pedal, and press the push-button ignition switch for at least 15 seconds. The engine may start. Only use this engine start procedure in case of emergency.
• When the engine is not started, the brake pedal may feel stiff. In such a case, depress the brake pedal more forcefully than usual. Check that the operation indicator on the push-button ignition switch turns green, and press the push-button ignition switch to start the engine.
• For diesel engine models, the engine will not start until the preheating indicator light has turned off.
• For diesel engine models, you may feel vibration during engine idling for several tens of seconds. This vibration is caused by the self-learning procedure of the injector. This learning procedure is necessary for optimum engine performance. This does not indicate a malfunction.

■ Stopping engine

1. Stop the vehicle completely.
2. Move the select lever to the “P” position (CVT models).
3. Press the push-button ignition switch. The engine will stop, and the power will be switched to “OFF”.

⚠ WARNING

• Do not touch the push-button ignition switch during driving.
When the push-button ignition switch is operated as follows, the engine will stop.
– The switch is pressed and held for 3 seconds or longer.
– The switch is pressed briefly 3 times or more in succession.
When the engine stops, the brake booster will not function. A greater foot pressure will be required on the brake pedal.
The power steering system will not operate either. A greater force will be required to steer, and it may result in an accident.
• If the engine stops during driving, do not operate the push-button ignition switch or open any of the doors until the vehicle is stopped in a safe location. It is dangerous because the steering lock may be activated. Stop the vehicle in a safe location, and we recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer immediately.

⚠ CAUTION

For CVT models:
• Do not stop the engine while the select lever is in a position other than the “P” position.

– CONTINUED –

- **If the engine is stopped while the select lever is in a position other than the “P” position, the power will be in “ACC”. If the vehicle is left in this condition, the battery may be discharged.**

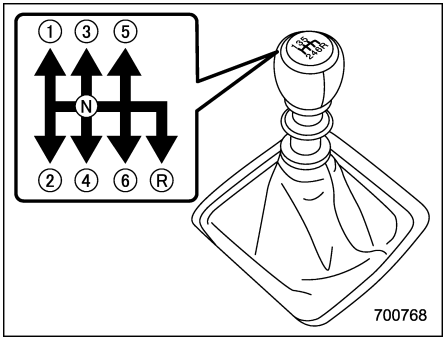
NOTE

Although you can stop the engine by operating the push-button ignition switch, do not stop the engine during driving except in an emergency.

■ When access key does not operate properly

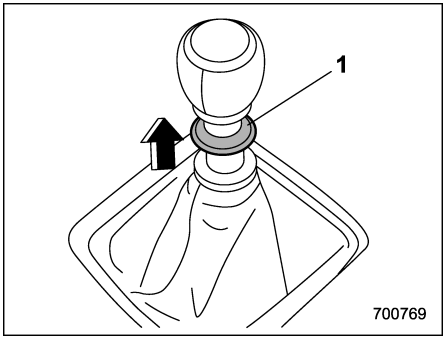
Refer to “Access key – if access key does not operate properly” ☞9-17.

Manual transmission



This manual transmission is a completely synchromesh, 6-forward-speed and 1-reverse-speed transmission.

The shift pattern is shown on the shift lever knob.



1) Slider

You must raise the slider and hold it in that position before you can move the shift lever to the “R” position.

To change gears, fully depress the clutch pedal, move the shift lever, and gradually let up on the clutch pedal.

If it is difficult to shift into gear, put the transmission in neutral, release the clutch pedal momentarily, and then try again.

⚠ WARNING

- **Do not drive the vehicle with the clutch disengaged (i.e., when the clutch pedal is depressed) or with the shift lever in the neutral position. Engine braking has no effect in either of these conditions and the risk of an accident is consequently increased.**
- **Do not engage the clutch (i.e., release the clutch pedal) suddenly when starting the vehicle. By doing so the vehicle might unexpectedly accelerate or the transmission could malfunction.**

⚠ CAUTION

Shift into reverse ONLY when the vehicle has completely stopped. It may cause damage to the transmission to try shifting into reverse when the vehicle is moving.

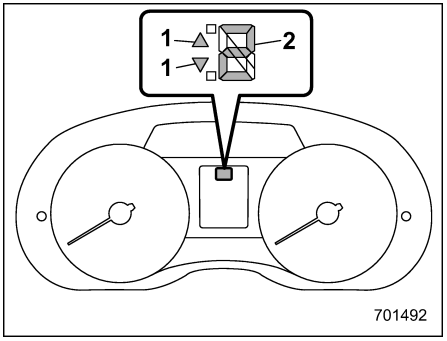
■ Shifting speeds

▼ Recommended shifting speeds

The best compromise between fuel economy and vehicle performance during normal driving is ensured by shifting up at the speeds listed in the following table.

Shift up	km/h (mph)
1st to 2nd	24 (15)
2nd to 3rd	40 (25)
3rd to 4th	64 (40)
4th to 5th	72 (45)
5th to 6th	80 (50)

▽ Gear shift indicator (Europe models)



1) Gear shift indicator
   ▲: Upshift indicator
   ▼: Downshift indicator
2) Gear position indicator

The gear position indicator shows the currently selected gear.

The gear shift indicator consists of the upshift indicator and downshift indicator. When shifting up is recommended for good fuel economy, the upshift indicator blinks. When shifting down is recommended, the downshift indicator blinks.

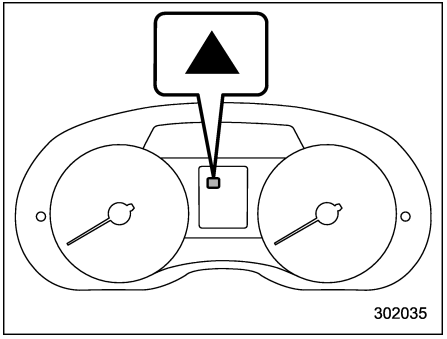
NOTE

- **Usually, the gear shift indicator is guideline for driving more fuel-effi-**

– CONTINUED –

ciency and it also may operate to prevent a possible engine stall at low engine speed.
• Also, the gear shift indicator operates to prevent engine damage at high engine speed.
• The gear shift indicator cannot be deactivated.

▽ Shift-up indicator light (except Europe models)



Shift-up indicator light

The shift-up indicator light blinks to inform the driver about the upshift timing for fuel-efficient driving.

The shift-up indicator light can be activated or deactivated. For details, refer to "Shift-up indicator light (MT models without gear shift indicator)" ☞3-33.

▼ Maximum allowable speeds

The following table shows the maximum speeds that are possible with each different gear. The tachometer's needle will enter the red area if these speeds are exceeded.

With the exception of cases where sudden acceleration is required, the vehicle should not be driven with the tachometer's needle inside the red area. Failure to observe this precaution can lead to excessive engine wear and poor fuel economy.

km/h (mph)

Gear	Petrol engine models	Diesel engine models
1st	44 (27)	35 (22)
2nd	88 (54)	65 (40)
3rd	132 (82)	115 (71)
4th	166 (103)	156 (97)
5th	207 (129)	193 (120)
6th	Top speed	Top speed

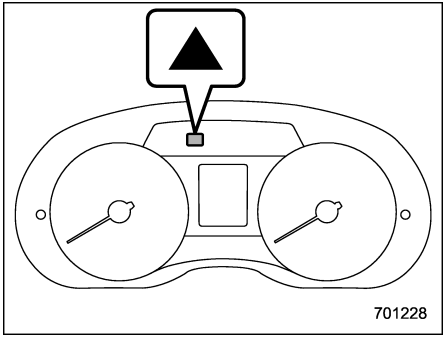
NOTE

Never exceed posted speed limits.

⚠ WARNING

When shifting down a gear, ensure that the vehicle is not travelling at a speed exceeding the Maximum Allowable Speed for the gear which is about to be selected. Failure to observe this precaution can lead to engine over-revving and this in turn can result in engine damage. In addition, sudden application of engine brakes when the vehicle is travelling on a slippery surface can lead to wheel locking; as a consequence, control of the vehicle may be lost and the risk of an accident increased.

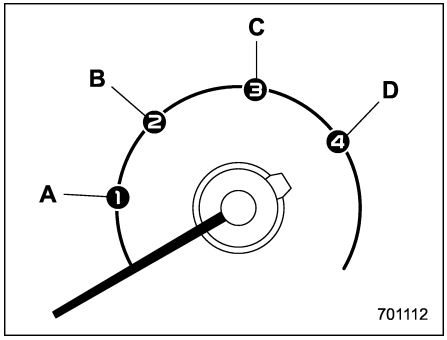
▽ Over-revving warning (MT diesel engine models)



Over-rev warning light

⚠ CAUTION

When performing the down shifting procedure by depressing the clutch pedal and moving the shift lever into a lower gear, if the warning system determines that it is highly likely that over-revving will occur if the clutch is engaged (clutch pedal is released) in that position, a buzzer will sound and the over-rev warning light on the combination meter will flash in yellow. In this case, do not engage the clutch in that position. Shift the gear up properly while keeping the clutch pedal depressed. Not doing so could result in serious engine damage.



Speedometer dial (MT diesel engine models)

A) Maximum allowable speed for 1st gear
B) Maximum allowable speed for 2nd gear
C) Maximum allowable speed for 3rd gear
D) Maximum allowable speed for 4th gear

On the speedometer dial of the MT diesel engine models, the maximum allowable speed for each gear position is displayed. For example in the previous illustration, after starting your vehicle in 1st gear, before the speedometer needle reaches the speed “A” [38 km/h (23 mph)] that is marked with “①”, you should shift up to the 2nd gear. Thus the speed with a “①” marking means the maximum allowable speed for the 1st gear.

Before shifting down a gear, refer to the allowable gear position for the current vehicle speed on the speedometer dial.

■ Driving tips

Do not drive with your foot resting on the clutch pedal and do not use the clutch to hold your vehicle at a standstill on an upgrade. Either of those actions may cause clutch damage.

Do not drive with your hand resting on the shift lever. This may cause wear on the transmission components.

When it is necessary to reduce vehicle speed due to slow traffic, turning corners, or driving up steep hills, downshift to a lower gear before the engine starts to labor.

On steep downgrades, downshift the transmission to 5th, 4th, 3rd or 2nd gear as necessary; this helps to maintain a safe speed and to extend brake pad life.

In this way, the engine provides a braking effect. Remember, if you “ride” (over use) the brakes while descending a hill, they may overheat and not work properly.

The engine may, on rare occasions, knock when the vehicle rapidly accelerates or rapidly pulls away from a standstill. This phenomenon does not indicate a problem.

Continuously variable transmission

The continuously variable transmission is electronically controlled and provides an infinite number of forward speeds and 1 reverse speed. For some models, it also has a manual mode or an "L" position.

⚠ WARNING

Do not shift from the "P" or "N" position into the "D" or "R" position while depressing the accelerator pedal. This may cause the vehicle to lurch forward or backward.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Shift into the "P" or "R" position only after the vehicle is completely stopped. Shifting while the vehicle is moving may cause damage to the transmission.**
- **Do not race the engine for more than 5 seconds in any position except the "N" or "P" position when the brake is applied or when chocks are used in the wheels. This may cause the transmission fluid to overheat.**
- **Avoid shifting from one of the forward driving positions into the "R" position or vice versa until the vehicle has completely stopped. Such shifting may cause damage to the transmission.**
- **When parking the vehicle, first securely apply the parking brake and then place the select lever in the "P" position. Avoid parking for a long time with the select lever in any other position as doing so could result in a dead battery.**

NOTE

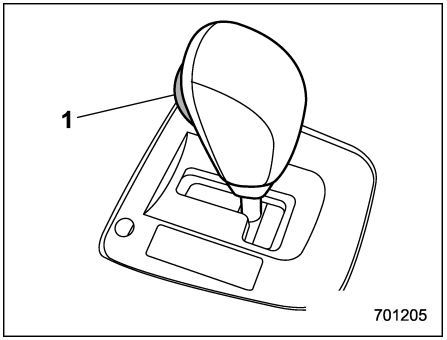
• When the engine coolant temperature is still low, the transmission will upshift or downshift at higher engine speeds than when the coolant temperature is sufficiently high in order to shorten the warm-up time and improve driveability. The gearshift timing will automatically shift to the normal timing after the engine has warmed up.

• Immediately after transmission fluid is replaced, you may feel that the transmission operation is somewhat unusual. This results from invalidation of data which the on-board computer has collected and stored in the memory to allow the transmission to shift at the most appropriate times for the current condition of your vehicle. Optimized shifting will be restored as the vehicle continues to be driven for a while.

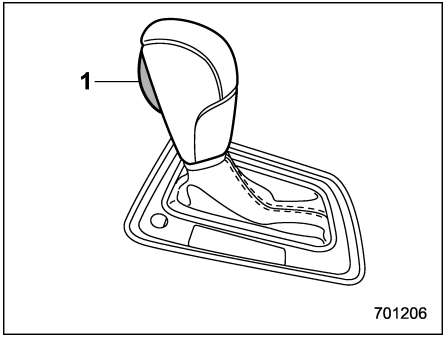
• When driving a CVT model under continuous heavy load conditions such as towing a camper or climbing a long, steep hill, the engine speed or the vehicle speed may automatically be reduced. This is not a malfunction. This phenomenon results from the engine control function maintaining the cooling performance of the vehicle. The engine and vehicle speed will return to a normal speed when the engine is able to maintain the optimum cooling performance after the heavy load decreases. Driving under a heavy load must be performed with extreme care. Do not try to pass a vehicle in front when driving on an uphill slope while towing.

• The continuously variable transmission is a chain type system that provides superior transmission efficiency for maximum fuel economy. At times, depending on varying driving conditions, a chain operating noise may be heard that is characteristic of this type of system.

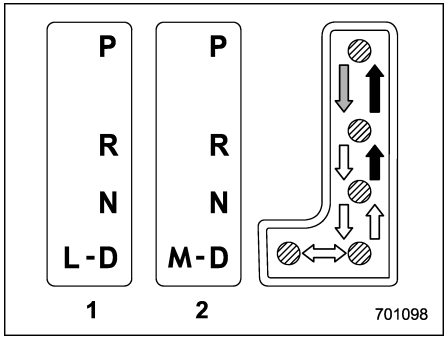
■ Select lever



Type A
1) Select lever button



Type B
1) Select lever button



1) Models with “L” position
2) Models with manual mode
⇨ : With the brake pedal depressed, shift while pressing the select lever button in.
➡ : Shift while pressing the select lever button in.
⇨ : Shift without pressing the select lever button.

The select lever has four positions, “P”, “R”, “N”, “D” and it also has an “L” or “M” gate.

▼ P (Park)

This position is for parking the vehicle and starting the engine. In this position, the transmission is mechanically locked to prevent the vehicle from rolling freely.

When you park the vehicle, first apply the parking brake firmly, then shift into the “P” position. Do not hold the vehicle with only the mechanical friction of the transmission.

To shift the select lever from the “P” position to any other position, you should depress the brake pedal fully then move the select lever. This prevents the vehicle from lurching when it is started.

▼ R (Reverse)

This position is for backing the vehicle. To shift from the “N” to “R” position, stop the vehicle completely then move the lever to the “R” position while pressing the select lever button in.

When the ignition switch has been turned to the “LOCK”/“OFF” position, movement of the select lever from the “N” to “R” position is possible for a limited time period by depressing the brake pedal, and then it becomes impossible. For details, refer to “Shift lock function” ☞7-23.

▼ N (Neutral)

This position is for restarting a stalled engine. In this position, the transmission is neutral, meaning that the wheels and transmission are not locked. Therefore, the vehicle will roll freely, even on the slightest incline unless the parking brake or foot brake is applied.

Avoid coasting with the transmission in

– CONTINUED –

neutral. Engine braking has no effect in this condition.

⚠ WARNING

Do not drive the vehicle with the select lever in the "N" (neutral) position. Engine braking has no effect in this condition and the risk of an accident is consequently increased.

NOTE

If the select lever is in the "N" position when you stop the engine for parking, you may not subsequently be able to move it to the "R" and "P" positions. If this happens, turn the ignition switch to the "ON" position. You will then be able to move the select lever to the "P" position.

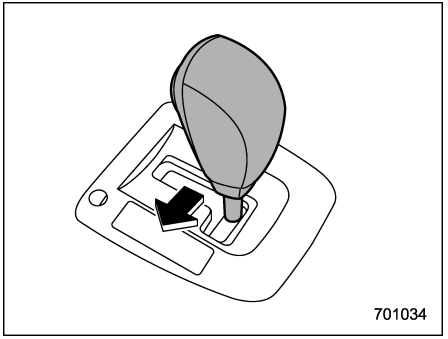
▼ D (Drive)

This position is for normal driving. The transmission shifts automatically and continuously into a suitable gear according to the vehicle speed and the acceleration you require. Also, while driving up and down a hill, the transmission assists and controls the driving performance and engine braking while corresponding to the road grade.

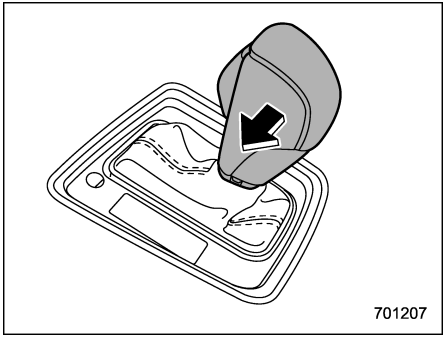
When more acceleration is required in the "D" position, depress the accelerator pedal fully to the floor and hold that position. The transmission will automatically downshift. When you release the pedal, the transmission will return to the original gear position.

For models with manual mode, if one of the shift paddles behind the steering wheel is operated while driving in the "D" position, the transmission will temporarily switch to the manual mode. In this mode, you can shift into any gear position using the shift paddles. For details about the manual mode, refer to "Selection of manual mode" ☞7-20. Once the vehicle speed stabilizes, the transmission will switch from the manual mode back to the "D" position for normal driving.

■ Selection of manual mode (if equipped)



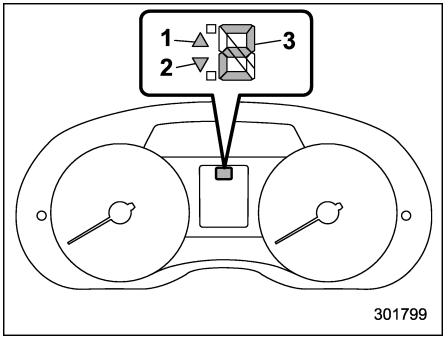
Type A



Type B

With the vehicle either moving or stationary, move the select lever from the "D"

position to the “M” position to select the manual mode.



1) Upshift indicator
2) Downshift indicator
3) Gear position indicator

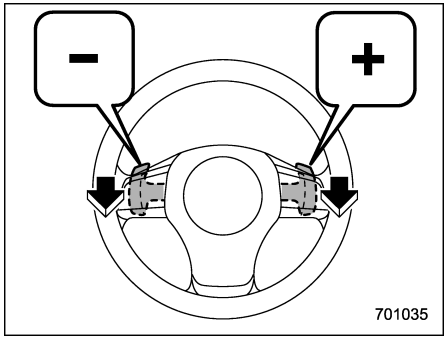
When the manual mode is selected, the gear position indicator and upshift indicator and/or downshift indicator on the combination meter illuminate.

The gear position indicator shows the currently selected gear in the following range.

- Petrol engine models:
  – 1st-to-8th-gear range (when the Sport Sharp (S#) mode is selected [if equipped])
  – 1st-to-6th-gear range (in other situations)
- Diesel engine models: 1st-to-7th-gear range

The upshift and downshift indicators show when a gear shift is possible. When the upshift indicator “▲” illuminates, upshifting is possible. When the downshift indicator “▼” illuminates, downshifting is possible. When both indicators illuminate, upshifting and downshifting are both possible. When the vehicle stops (for example, at traffic signals), the downshift indicator turns off.

Gearshifts can be performed using the shift paddle behind the steering wheel.



To upshift to the next higher gear position, pull the shift paddle that has “**+**” indicated on it. To downshift to the next lower gear position, pull the shift paddle that has “**–**” indicated on it.

To deselect the manual mode, return the select lever to the “D” position from the “M” position.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not place or hang anything on the shift paddles. Doing so may result in accidental gear shifting.

NOTE

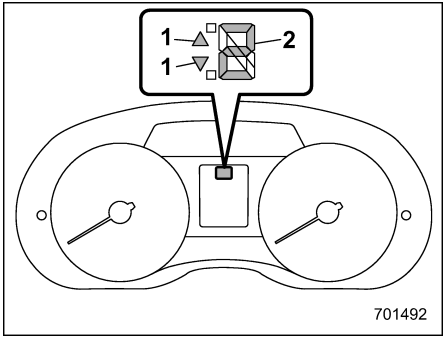
Please read the following points carefully and bear them in mind when using the manual mode.

- **If you attempt to shift down when the engine speed is too high, i.e., when a downshift would push the tachometer needle beyond the red zone, beeps will be emitted to warn you that the downshift is not possible.**
- **If you attempt to shift up when the vehicle speed is too low, the transmission will not respond.**
- **You can perform a skip-shift (for example, from 4th to 2nd) by operating the shift paddle twice in rapid succession.**
- **The transmission automatically selects 1st gear when the vehicle stops moving.**

– CONTINUED –

• If the temperature of the transmission fluid becomes too high, the "AT OIL TEMP" warning light on the combination meter will illuminate. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe location and let the engine idle until the warning light turns off.

▼ Gear shift indicator (Europe models)



1) Gear shift indicator
   ▲: Upshift indicator
   ▼: Downshift indicator
2) Gear position indicator

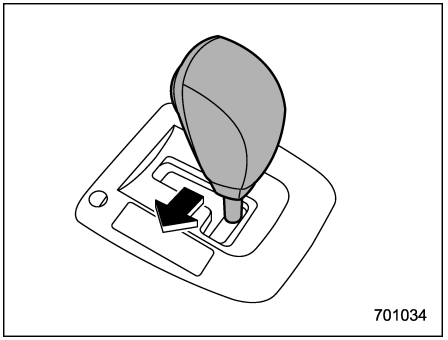
The upshift indicator and downshift indicator can be utilized as a "gear shift indicator" that informs the driver about the gear shift timing for fuel-efficient driving.

When shifting up is recommended for good fuel economy, the upshift indicator blinks. When shifting down is recommended, the downshift indicator blinks.

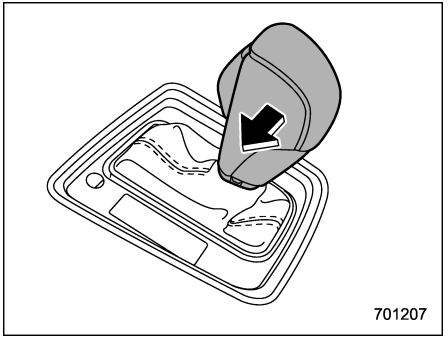
NOTE

• Usually, the gear shift indicator is guideline for driving more fuel-efficiency and it also may operate to prevent a possible engine stall at low engine speed.
• Also, the gear shift indicator operates to prevent engine damage at high engine speed.
• The gear shift indicator cannot be deactivated.

■ Selection of "L" (if equipped)



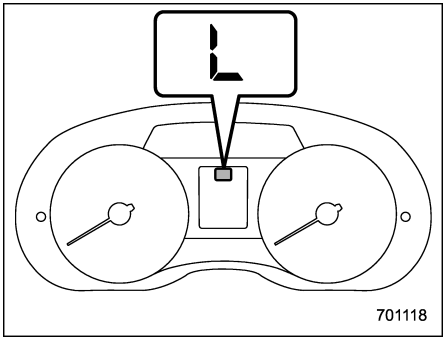
Type A



Type B

"L" is for using engine braking when going down a hill, etc. To select this mode, move the select lever from the "D" position to the

"L" position.



When selected, the indicator "L" will illuminate on the combination meter.

To deselect "L", move the select lever to the "D" position.

■ Shift lock function

The shift lock function helps prevent the improper operation of the select lever.

- The select lever cannot be operated unless the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position and the brake pedal is depressed.
- The select lever cannot be moved from the "P" position to any other position before the brake pedal is depressed. Depress the brake pedal first, and then operate the select lever.
- Only the "P" position allows you to turn the ignition switch from the "ACC" position to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position and remove the key from the ignition switch.
- If the ignition switch is turned to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position while the select lever is in the "N" position, the select lever may not be moved to the "P" position after a period of time. Therefore, move the select lever to the "P" position with the brake pedal depressed soon after the ignition switch is turned to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position.

▼ Shift lock release

If the select lever cannot be operated, turn the ignition switch back to the "ON" position then move the select lever to the "P" position with the select lever button pressed and brake pedal depressed.

If the select lever does not move after performing the above procedure, perform the following steps.

- **When the select lever cannot be shifted from "P" to "N":**

Refer to "Shift lock release using the shift lock release button" ☞7-23.

- **When the select lever cannot be shifted from "N" to "R", "P":**

Within 60 seconds after placing the ignition switch in the "ACC" position, move the select lever to the "P" position with the select lever button pressed and brake pedal depressed.

If you must perform the above procedure, the shift lock system (or the vehicle control system) may be malfunctioning. We recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer for an inspection as soon as possible.

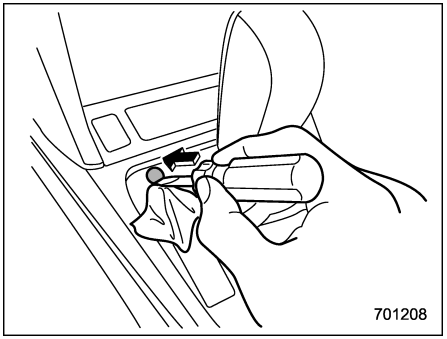
If the select lever does not move after performing the above procedure, refer to "Shift lock release using the shift lock release button" ☞7-23.

▼ Shift lock release using the shift lock release button

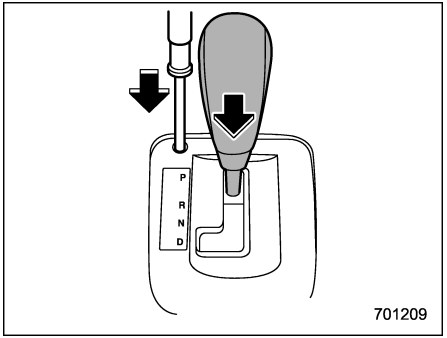
Perform the following procedure to release the shift lock.

1. Apply the parking brake and stop the engine.

– CONTINUED –



2. Wrap the tip of a flat-head screwdriver with vinyl tape or a cloth and use it to remove the shift lock cover. The shift lock release button is located under the shift lock cover.



3. While depressing the brake pedal, insert a screwdriver into the hole, press the shift lock release button using a screwdriver, and then move the select lever.

If the select lever does not move after performing the above procedure, the shift lock system may be malfunctioning. We recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer for an inspection as soon as possible.

■ Driving tips

- Always apply the foot or parking brake when the vehicle is stopped in the “D” or “R” position.
- Always apply the parking brake when parking your vehicle. Do not hold the vehicle with only the mechanical friction of the transmission.
- Do not keep the vehicle in a stationary position on an uphill grade by using the “D” position. Use the brake instead.
- The engine may, on rare occasions, knock when the vehicle rapidly accelerates or rapidly pulls away from a standstill. This phenomenon does not indicate a malfunction.

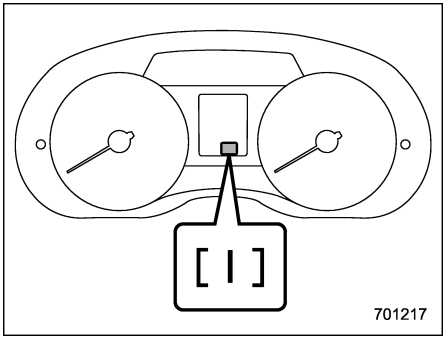
SI-DRIVE (if equipped)

SI-DRIVE (SUBARU Intelligent Drive) works to maximize engine performance, control and efficiency.

This system consists of two or three modes: Intelligent (I), Sport (S), and Sport Sharp (S#) (if equipped). By operating the SI-DRIVE switches, the character of the power unit changes.

■ Intelligent (I) mode

▼ For smooth, efficient performance driving

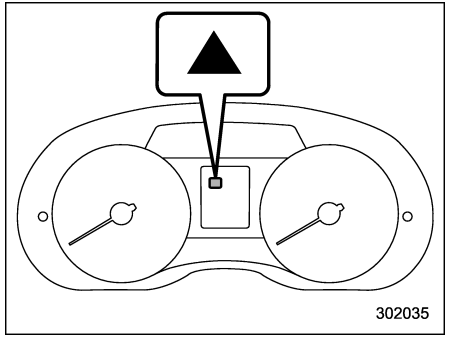


The linear acceleration characteristic of the Intelligent (I) mode is ideal for normal driving usage.

The Intelligent (I) mode provides well-

balanced performance with greater fuel efficiency and smooth driveability without stress. Power delivery is moderate during acceleration for maximum fuel efficiency.

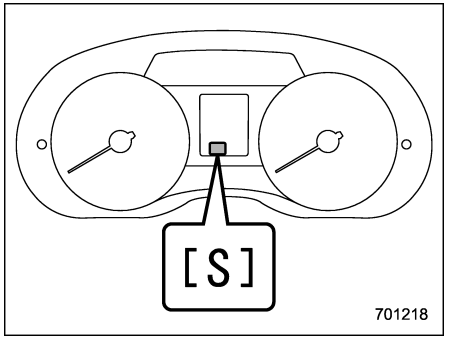
This is ideal for around-town driving and situations that do not require full power output. It provides better control in difficult driving conditions, such as slippery roads or loose surfaces, due to gentler throttle response.



For MT models with the shift-up indicator light, when Intelligent (I) mode is selected, a shift-up indicator "▲" on the combination meter will blink to signal the best time to shift gears for maximum fuel efficiency. For details about the shift-up indicator light, refer to "Shift-up indicator light (MT models without gear shift indicator)" ☞3-33.

■ Sport (S) mode

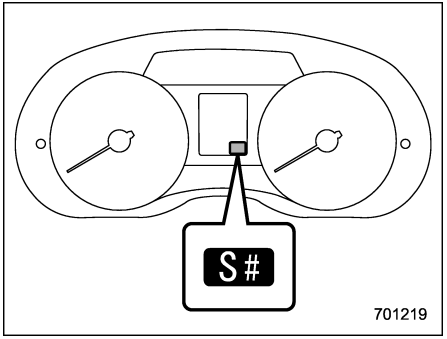
▼ For all-around performance driving



The Sport (S) mode provides the engine power desired by those who want to make the driving experience their own personal adventure.

■ Sport Sharp (S#) mode (if equipped)

▼ For maximum performance driving



For sports-minded drivers, the Sport Sharp (S#) mode offers an exhilarating level of engine performance and control. The throttle becomes more responsive regardless of the engine speed. Delivering maximum driving enjoyment, this mode is ideal for tackling twisting roads and for merging or overtaking other vehicles on the freeway with confidence.

When you select the Sport Sharp (S#) mode while the select lever is in the "D" position, the transmission gear ratio will shift from variable speed to eight-speed. The select lever/gear position indicator display will change from "D" to the gear

– CONTINUED –

position.

When selecting Sport Sharp (S#) mode, the following controls will be applied.

Uphill control: Prevents unnecessary shift-up/shift-down during ascent.

Cornering control: While turning, if there is a large centrifugal force, shift-up will not occur: during re-acceleration.

Braking control: At the beginning of corners etc., heavy application of the brake pedal will cause automatic down-shift and gently re-accelerate.

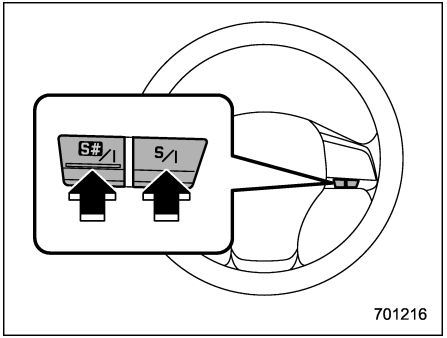
Sudden acceleration return control: During acceleration, if acceleration pedal is returned suddenly (for example, at corners etc.), shift-up will not be applied.

■ SI-DRIVE switches

NOTE

If any of the SI-DRIVE indicators blink, the SI-DRIVE system may be malfunctioning. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.

▼ Models with Sport Sharp (S#) mode



SI-DRIVE switches

Pressing the “S/I” switch changes the SI-DRIVE system between the Sport (S) mode and the Intelligent (I) mode.

Pressing the “S#/I” switch changes the SI-DRIVE system between the Sport Sharp (S#) mode and the Intelligent (I) mode.

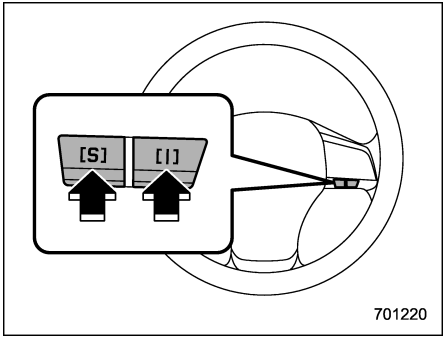
NOTE

• The default mode of the SI-DRIVE system is the Intelligent (I) mode. Once you turn off the engine, the previous setting mode is canceled and the SI-DRIVE system returns to the Intelligent (I) mode the next time you turn on the engine.

• While the engine is running, if the malfunction indicator light/CHECK ENGINE warning light illuminates, the SI-DRIVE mode changes to the Sport (S) mode. In this case, it is not possible to change to the Sport Sharp (S#) mode or Intelligent (I) mode.

• If there is a possibility that the engine could overheat because of a temperature increase of the engine coolant, it is not possible to change to the Sport Sharp (S#) mode. While the vehicle is in the Sport Sharp (S#) mode, it changes to the Sport (S) mode when the engine coolant temperature increases.

▼ **Models without Sport Sharp (S#) mode**



SI-DRIVE switches

To select the Intelligent (I) mode, press the “I” switch. To select the Sport (S) mode, press the “S” switch.

NOTE

The default mode of the SI-DRIVE system is the Intelligent (I) mode. Once you turn off the engine, the previous setting mode is canceled and the SI-DRIVE system returns to the Intelligent (I) mode the next time you turn on the engine.

Power steering

■ For models with hydraulic power steering

This vehicle is equipped with a hydraulic power steering system. The power steering system operates only while the engine is running. If you lose power steering assist because the engine stops or the system fails to function, you can steer but it will take much more effort.

⚠ CAUTION

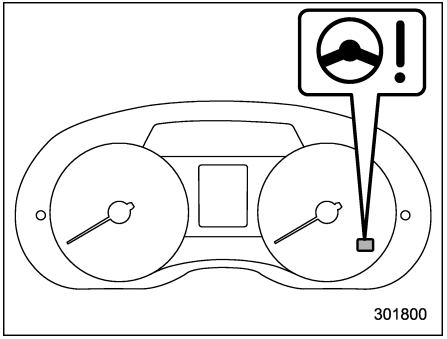
Do not hold the steering wheel at the fully locked position left or right for more than 5 seconds. This may damage the power steering pump.

NOTE

Right after the engine has been started and before it has warmed up, you may hear a noise coming from areas adjacent to the power steering pump which is located at the right-front area of the engine compartment. This noise is normal. It does not indicate power steering system trouble.

■ For models with electric power steering

This vehicle is equipped with an electric power steering system. The power steering system operates only while the engine is running.



Power steering warning light

When the ignition switch is turned to the “ON” position, the power steering warning light on the combination meter illuminates to inform the driver that the warning system is functioning properly. Then, if the engine started, the warning light turns off to inform the driver that the steering power assist is operational.

– CONTINUED –

⚠ CAUTION

While the power steering warning light is illuminated, there may be more resistance when the steering wheel is operated. We recommend that you drive carefully to the nearest SUBARU dealer and have the vehicle inspected immediately.

NOTE

If the steering wheel is operated in the following ways, the power steering control system may temporarily limit the power assist in order to prevent the system components, such as the control computer and drive motor, from overheating.

- **The steering wheel is operated frequently and turned sharply while the vehicle is maneuvered at extremely low speeds, such as while frequently turning the steering wheel during parallel parking.**
- **The steering wheel remains in the fully turned position for a long period of time.**

At this time, there will be more resistance when steering. However this is not a malfunction. Normal steering force will be restored after the steering wheel is not operated for a while and the power steering control system has an opportunity to cool down. However, if the power steering is operated in a non-standard way which causes power assist limitation to occur too frequently, this may result in a malfunction of the power steering control system.

Braking

■ Braking tips

⚠ WARNING

Never rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving. This can cause dangerous overheating of the brakes and needless wear on the brake pads and linings.

▼ When the brakes get wet

When driving in rain or after washing the vehicle, the brakes may get wet. As a result, brake stopping distance will be longer. To dry the brakes, drive the vehicle at a safe speed while lightly depressing the brake pedal to heat up the brakes.

▼ Use of engine braking

Remember to make use of engine braking in addition to foot braking. When descending a grade, if only the foot brake is used, the brakes may start working improperly because of brake fluid overheating, caused by overheated brake pads. To help prevent this, shift into a lower gear to get stronger engine braking.

▼ **Braking when a tire is punctured**

Do not depress the brake pedal suddenly when a tire is punctured. This could cause a loss of control of the vehicle. Keep driving straight ahead while gradually reducing speed. Then slowly pull off the road to a safe place.

■ Brake system

▼ **Two separate circuits**

Your vehicle has two separate circuit brake systems. Each circuit works diagonally across the vehicle. If one circuit of the brake system should fail, the other half of the system still works. If one circuit fails, the brake pedal will go down much closer to the floor than usual and you will need to press it down much harder. And a much longer distance will be needed to stop the vehicle.

▼ **Brake booster**

The brake booster uses engine manifold vacuum to assist braking force. Do not turn off the engine while driving because that will turn off the brake booster, resulting in poor braking power.

The brakes will continue to work even when the brake booster completely stops functioning. If this happens, however, you will have to depress the pedal much harder than normal and the braking distance will increase.

▼ **Brake assist system**

⚠ WARNING

Do not be overconfident about the brake assist. It is not a system that brings more braking ability to the vehicle beyond its braking capability. Always use the utmost care when driving regarding vehicle speed and safe distance.

⚠ CAUTION

When you need to brake suddenly, continue depressing the brake pedal strongly to bring the effect of the brake assist.

Brake assist is a driver assistance system. It assists the brake power when the driver cannot depress the brake pedal strongly and the brake power is insufficient.

Brake assist generates the brake power according to the speed at which the driver depresses the brake pedal.

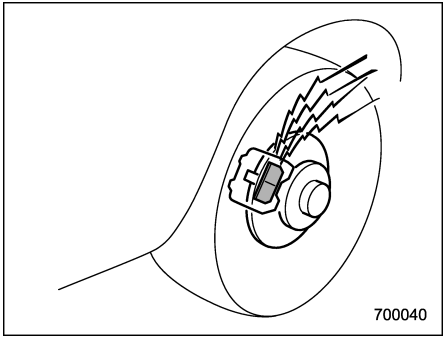
NOTE

When you depress the brake pedal strongly or suddenly, the following phenomena occur. However, even though these occur, they do not indicate any malfunctions, and the brake assist system is operating properly.

- **You might feel that the brake pedal is applied by lighter force and generates a greater braking force.**
- **You might hear the sound of the ABS operating from the engine compartment.**

– CONTINUED –

■ Disc brake pad wear warning indicators



The disc brake pad wear warning indicators on the disc brakes give a warning noise when the brake pads are worn.

If a squeaking or scraping noise is heard from the disc brakes while braking, we recommend that you immediately have your vehicle checked by your SUBARU dealer.

ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)

The ABS system prevents the lock-up of wheels which may occur during sudden braking or braking on slippery road surfaces. This helps prevent the loss of steering control and directional stability caused by wheel lock-up.

When the ABS system is operating, you may hear a chattering noise or feel a slight vibration in the brake pedal. This is normal when the ABS operates.

The ABS system will not operate when the vehicle speed is below approximately 10 km/h (6 mph).

⚠ WARNING

Always use the utmost care in driving – overconfidence because you are driving with an ABS equipped vehicle could easily lead to a serious accident.

⚠ CAUTION

- **The ABS system does not always decrease stopping distance. You should always maintain a safe following distance from other vehicles.**
- **When driving on badly surfaced roads, gravel roads, icy roads, or over deep newly fallen snow, stopping distances may be longer for a vehicle with the ABS system than one without. When driving under these conditions, therefore, reduce your speed and leave ample distance from other vehicles.**
- **When tire chains are installed, stopping distances may be longer for a vehicle with the ABS system than one without. Be sure to reduce your speed and maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front.**
- **When you feel the ABS system operating, you should maintain constant brake pedal pressure. Do not pump the brake pedal since doing so may defeat the operation of the ABS system.**

■ ABS system self-check

Just after the vehicle is started, you may feel on the brake pedal a vibration similar to when the ABS operates, and you may

also hear the sound of the ABS working from the engine compartment. This is caused by an automatic functional test of the ABS system being carried out and does not indicate any abnormal condition.

■ ABS warning light

Refer to “ABS warning light” ☞3-22.

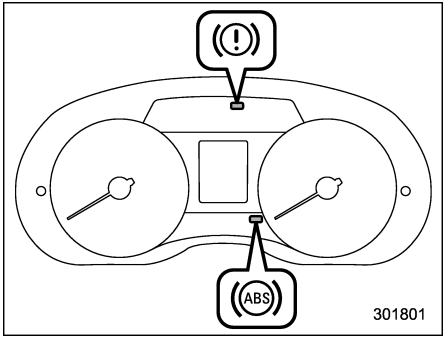
Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD) system

The EBD system maximizes the effectiveness of the brakes by allowing the rear brakes to supply a greater proportion of the braking force. It functions by adjusting the distribution of braking force to the rear wheels in accordance with the vehicle’s loading condition and speed.

The EBD system is an integral part of the ABS system and uses some of the ABS system’s components to perform its function of optimizing the distribution of braking force. If any of the ABS components used by the EBD system malfunction, the EBD system also stops working.

When the EBD system is operating, you may hear a chattering noise or feel a slight vibration in the brake pedal. This is normal and does not indicate a malfunction.

■ Steps to take if EBD system fails



If a malfunction occurs in the EBD system, the system stops working and the brake system warning light and ABS warning light illuminate simultaneously.

The EBD system may be malfunctioning if the brake system warning light and ABS warning light illuminate simultaneously during driving.

Even if the EBD system malfunctions, the conventional braking system will still function. However, the rear wheels will be more prone to locking when the brakes are applied harder than usual and the vehicle’s motion may therefore become somewhat harder to control.

If the brake system warning light and ABS

– CONTINUED –

warning light illuminate simultaneously, take the following steps.

1. Stop the vehicle in the nearest safe, flat location.
2. Shut down the engine, apply the parking brake, and then restart it.
3. Release the parking brake. If both warning lights turn off, the EBD system may be malfunctioning. We recommend that you drive carefully to the nearest SUBARU dealer and have the system inspected.
4. If both warning lights illuminate again and remain illuminated after the engine has been restarted, shut down the engine again, apply the parking brake, and check the brake fluid level. Refer to "Brake fluid" ☞11-28.
5. If the brake fluid level is not below the "MIN" mark, the EBD system may be malfunctioning. We recommend that you drive carefully to the nearest SUBARU dealer and have the system inspected.
6. If the brake fluid level is below the "MIN" mark, DO NOT drive the vehicle. Instead, we recommend that you have the vehicle towed to the nearest SUBARU dealer for repair.

⚠ WARNING

- **Driving with the brake system warning light illuminated is dangerous. This indicates your brake system may not be working properly. If the light remains illuminated, we recommend that you have the brakes inspected by a SUBARU dealer immediately.**
- **If at all in doubt about whether the brakes are operating properly, do not drive the vehicle. We recommend that you have your vehicle towed to the nearest SUBARU dealer for repair.**

Vehicle Dynamics Control system

⚠ WARNING

Always use the utmost care in driving – overconfidence because you are driving a vehicle with the Vehicle Dynamics Control system could easily lead to a serious accident.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Even if your vehicle is equipped with Vehicle Dynamics Control, winter tires or snow chains should be used when driving on snow-covered or icy roads; in addition, vehicle speed should be reduced considerably. Simply having a Vehicle Dynamics Control system does not guarantee that the vehicle will be able to avoid accidents in any situation.**
- **When a vehicle is fitted with snow chains, the effectiveness of the Vehicle Dynamics Control system is reduced and this should be taken into account**

when driving the vehicle in such a condition.

- **Activation of the Vehicle Dynamics Control system is an indication that the road being travelled on has a slippery surface; since having Vehicle Dynamics Control is no guarantee that full vehicle control will be maintained at all times and under all conditions, its activation should be seen as a sign that the speed of the vehicle should be reduced considerably.**
- **Whenever suspension components, steering components, or an axle are removed from a vehicle, we recommend that you have an inspection of that system performed by an authorized SUBARU dealer.**
- **The following precautions should be observed in order to ensure that the Vehicle Dynamics Control system is operating properly:**
  - **All four wheels should be fitted with tires of the same size, type, and brand. Furthermore, the amount of wear should be the same for all four tires.**
  - **Keep the tire pressure at the proper level as shown on the label attached to the vehicle's door pillar.**
  - **Use only the special temporary spare tire to replace a flat tire. With a temporary spare tire, the effectiveness of the Vehicle Dynamics Control system is reduced and this should be taken into account when driving the vehicle in such a condition.**
- **If non-matching tires are used, the Vehicle Dynamics Control system may not operate correctly.**
- **The Vehicle Dynamics Control system helps prevent unstable vehicle motion such as skidding using control of the brakes and engine power. Do not turn off the Vehicle Dynamics Control system unless it is absolutely necessary. If you must turn off the Vehicle Dynamics Control system, drive very carefully according to the road surface condition.**

In the event of wheelspin and/or skidding on a slippery road surface and/or during cornering and/or an evasive maneuver, the Vehicle Dynamics Control system adjusts the engine's output and the wheels' respective braking forces to help maintain traction and directional control.

- **Traction Control Function**

The traction control function is designed to prevent spinning of the driving wheels on slippery road surfaces, thereby helping to maintain traction and directional control. Activation of this function is shown by flashing the Vehicle Dynamics Control operation indicator light.

- **Skid Suppression Function**

The skid suppression function is designed to help maintain directional stability by suppressing the wheels' tendency to slide sideways during steering operations. Activation of this function is shown by flashing of the Vehicle Dynamics Control operation indicator light.

NOTE

- **The Vehicle Dynamics Control system may be considered normal when the following conditions occur.**
  - **Slight twitching of the brake pedal is felt.**
  - **The vehicle or steering wheel shakes to a small degree.**
  - **An operating sound from the engine compartment is heard**

– CONTINUED –

briefly when starting the engine and when driving off after starting the engine.

– The brake pedal seems to jolt when driving off after starting the engine.

• In the following circumstances, the vehicle may be less stable than it feels to the driver. The Vehicle Dynamics Control System may therefore operate. Such operation does not indicate a system malfunction.

– on gravel-covered or rutted roads

– on unfinished roads

– when the vehicle is towing a trailer

– when the vehicle is fitted with snow tires or winter tires

• Activation of the Vehicle Dynamics Control system will cause operation of the steering wheel to feel slightly different compared to that for normal conditions.

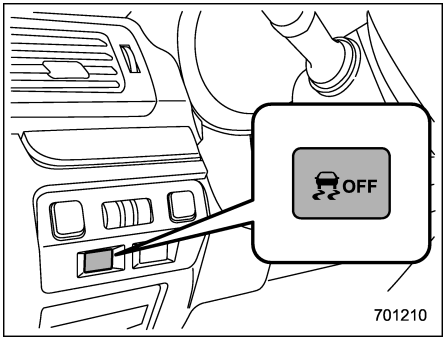
• It is always important to reduce speed when approaching a corner, even if your vehicle is equipped with the Vehicle Dynamics Control system.

• Always turn off the engine before replacing a tire. Failure to do so may render the Vehicle Dynamics Control system unable to operate correctly.

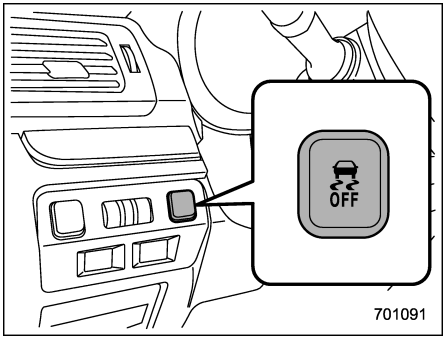
■ Vehicle Dynamics Control system monitor

Refer to “Vehicle Dynamics Control warning light/Vehicle Dynamics Control operation indicator light” ☞3-23 and “Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF indicator light” ☞3-24.

■ Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF switch



Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF switch (models with power rear gate)

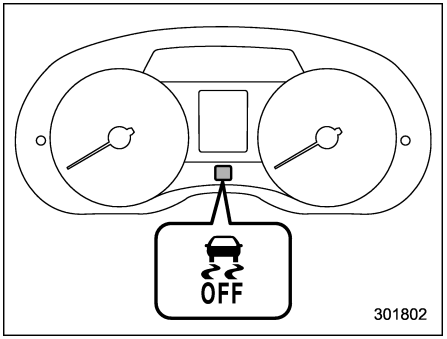


Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF switch (models without power rear gate)

Pressing the Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF switch deactivates the Vehicle Dynamics Control system.

Creating an adequate driving wheel slip by deactivating the Vehicle Dynamics Control system temporarily may help to escape from the following situations. Use the Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF switch as necessary.

- a standing start on a steeply sloping road with a snowy, gravel-covered, or otherwise slippery surface
- extrication of the vehicle when its wheels are stuck in mud or deep snow



Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF indicator light

When the switch is pressed during engine operation, the Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF indicator light illuminates. The Vehicle Dynamics Control system will be deactivated and the vehicle will behave like a model not equipped with the Vehicle Dynamics Control system. When the switch is pressed again to reactivate the Vehicle Dynamics Control system, the indicator light turns off.

With the Vehicle Dynamics Control system deactivated, traction and stability enhancement offered by Vehicle Dynamics Control system is unavailable. Therefore you should not deactivate the Vehicle Dynamics Control system except under above-mentioned situations.

NOTE

• The Vehicle Dynamics Control system will be activated automatically when the engine is started.

• If the switch is pressed and held for 30 seconds or longer, the indicator light turns off, the Vehicle Dynamics Control system is activated, and the system ignores any further pressing of the switch. To make the switch usable again, turn the ignition switch to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position and restart the engine.

• When the switch is pressed to deactivate the Vehicle Dynamics Control system, the vehicle's running performance is comparable with that of a vehicle that does not have a Vehicle Dynamics Control system. Do not deactivate the Vehicle Dynamics Control system except when absolutely necessary.

• Even when the Vehicle Dynamics Control system is deactivated, components of the brake control system may still activate. When the brake control system is activated, the Vehicle Dynamics Control operation indicator light illuminates.

X mode (if equipped)

⚠ WARNING

- **Always use the utmost care in driving – overconfidence because you are driving a vehicle with X mode could easily lead to a serious accident.**
- **Always use the utmost care in driving – overconfidence because you are driving a vehicle with hill descent control function could easily lead to a serious accident. Be especially careful, and depress the brake pedal if necessary when driving on extremely steep downhill, frozen, muddy or sandy roads. Failure to control the vehicle's speed may cause a loss of control and result in a serious accident.**

⚠ CAUTION

- **Even if your vehicle is equipped with X mode, winter tires or snow chains should be used when driving on snow-covered or icy roads; in addition, vehicle speed should be reduced considerably.**

– CONTINUED –

Simply having X mode does not guarantee that the vehicle will be able to avoid accidents in any situation.

- **Activate the X mode when you encounter a very slippery surface at low speed. However, having X mode is no guarantee that full vehicle control will be maintained at all times and under all conditions. Even when activating X mode, reduce the vehicle speed considerably.**
- **Whenever suspension components, steering components, or an axle are removed from a vehicle, we recommend that you have the system inspected by an authorized SUBARU dealer.**
- **The following precautions should be observed in order to ensure that the X mode is operating properly:**
  - **All four wheels should be fitted with tires of the same size, type, and brand. Furthermore, the amount of wear should be the same for all four tires.**
  - **Keep the tire pressure at the proper level as shown on the label attached to the vehicle's door pillar.**
  - **Use only the special temporary spare tire to replace a flat tire. With a normal temporary spare tire, the effectiveness of the X mode is reduced and this should be taken into account when driving the vehicle in such a condition.**
- **If the hill descent control function has operated continuously for a long time, the temperature of the brake disc may increase and the hill descent control function may be temporarily disabled. In this case, the hill descent control indicator light will turn off. When the hill descent control indicator light turns off, the hill descent control function is disabled.**

X mode is the integrated control system of the engine, AWD and Vehicle Dynamics Control system, etc. for driving with bad road conditions. Using X mode, you can drive more comfortably even in slippery road conditions including uphill and downhill.

X mode has the following functions.

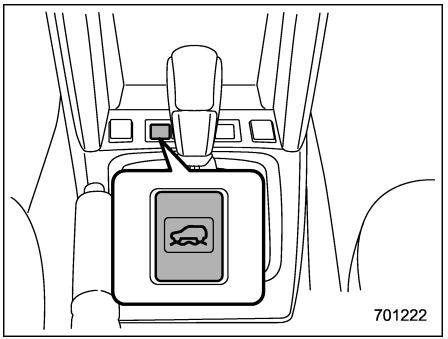
- **Hill descent control function:**

Using the hill descent control function, you can keep the vehicle at a consistent speed driving downhill. If the vehicle speed is likely to increase, the brake control system will be activated to adjust the vehicle speed.

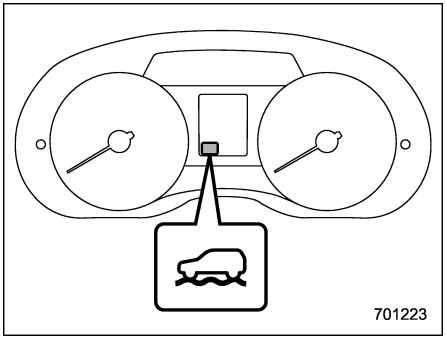
- **Driving ability control:**

This mode increases the hill-climbing ability and driving ability as well as enabling smooth application of torque for easier control of the steering wheel.

■ To activate/deactivate the X mode



X mode switch



X mode indicator light

To activate:

Press the X mode switch. While the X mode is activated, the X mode indicator light illuminates.

To deactivate:

Press the X mode switch again. The X mode indicator light will turn off when the X mode is deactivated.

NOTE

• Even if you try to activate the X mode by pressing the X mode switch when the vehicle speed is 20 km/h (12 mph) or more, the X mode will not be activated. At this time, the buzzer will sound twice.

• If the vehicle speed reaches 40 km/h (25 mph) or more while the X mode is activated, a buzzer will sound once and the X mode will be deactivated.

• For models with SI-DRIVE, the SI-DRIVE mode will change to the Intelligent (I) mode when the X mode is deactivated.

• For models with SI-DRIVE, the SI-DRIVE mode will not be affected even if the SI-DRIVE switch is pressed while the X mode is activated. At this time, the buzzer will sound twice.

• For models with Auto Start Stop system, the system will be stopped while the X mode is activated.

• While the engine is running, if either of the following conditions is met, the X mode will be deactivated. In this case, it is not possible to activate the X mode. Also, for models with SI-DRIVE, the mode will change to the Sport (S) mode and it will not be possible to change to the other modes.

– The malfunction indicator light (Check Engine light) illuminates.

– The AT OIL TEMP warning light flashes.

– The ABS warning light illuminates.

– The Vehicle Dynamics Control warning light illuminates.

• If there is a possibility that the engine could overheat because of a temperature increase of the engine coolant, it is not possible to activate the X mode. Even while the X mode is activated, the X mode will be deactivated when the engine coolant temperature increases. In this case, for models with SI-DRIVE, the SI-DRIVE mode will change to the Sport (S) mode.

■ Hill descent control function

The hill descent control function will be in standby mode when the X mode is activated and the vehicle speed is less than approximately 20 km/h (12 mph).

The function will operate when the vehicle speed is less than approximately 20 km/h (12 mph) and the accelerator ratio is less than approximately 10%.

The function will turn off when the vehicle speed is more than approximately 20 km/h (12 mph) and the accelerator pedal is depressed.

NOTE

• Even while the hill descent control function is operating, you can vary the vehicle speed by using the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.

• During braking by the hill descent control function, the brake system

– CONTINUED –

warning light will illuminate.

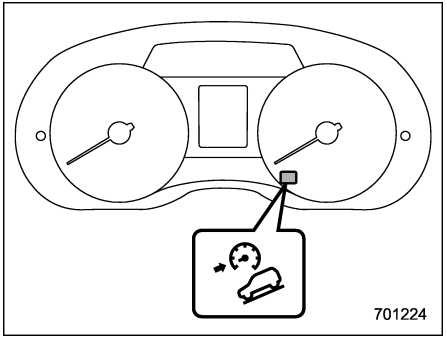
• The hill descent control function is operable regardless of the gradient of the road.

• The hill descent control function may be considered normal when the following conditions occur.

– An operating sound is heard briefly from the engine compartment while the hill descent control function is operating.

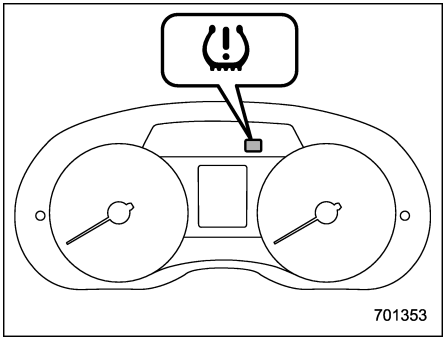
– The sensation of depressing the brake pedal is different, (harder than usual etc.) when the brake pedal is depressed during hill descent control function operation.

▼ Hill descent control indicator light



This light illuminates while the hill descent control function is in the standby mode. It flashes while the function is operating. It will turn off when the function is in the disabled mode. When this function is changed from operational to non-operational, it will turn off when the vehicle speed reaches more than approximately 30 km/h (18 mph).

Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) (if equipped)



The tire pressure monitoring system provides the driver with a warning message by sending a signal from a sensor that is installed in each wheel when a tire pressure is severely low relative to the selected TPMS mode.

The tire pressure monitoring system will activate only when the vehicle is driven at speeds above 40 km/h (25 mph). Also, this system may not react immediately to a sudden drop in tire pressure (for example, a blow-out caused by running over a sharp object).

⚠ WARNING

If the low tire pressure warning light illuminates while driving, never brake suddenly and keep driving straight ahead while gradually reducing speed. Then slowly pull off the road to a safe place. Otherwise an accident involving serious vehicle damage and serious personal injury could occur.

Check the pressure for all four tires and adjust the pressure according to the most appropriate one of three (normal, loading, towing) COLD tire pressure values shown on the tire placard located on the door pillar on the driver's side.

Even when the vehicle is driven a very short distance, the tires get warm and their pressures increase accordingly. Be sure to let the tires cool thoroughly before adjusting their pressures to the standard values shown on the tire placard. Refer to "Tires and wheels" ☞11-33. The tire pressure monitoring system does not function when the vehicle is stationary. After adjusting the tire pressures, increase the vehicle speed to at least 40 km/h (25 mph) to start the TPMS rechecking of the tire inflation pressures. If the tire pressures are now above the severe low pressure threshold, the low tire pressure warning light should turn off a few minutes later.

If this light still illuminates while driving after adjusting the tire pressure, a tire may have significant damage and a fast leak that causes the tire to lose air rapidly. If you have a flat tire, replace it with a spare tire as soon as possible.

When a spare tire is mounted or a wheel rim is replaced without the original pressure sensor/transmitter being transferred, the low tire pressure warning light will illuminate steadily after blinking for approximately one minute. This indicates the TPMS is unable to monitor all four road wheels. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer as soon as possible for tire and sensor replacement and/or system resetting.

When a tire is repaired with liquid sealant, the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may not operate properly. If a liquid sealant is used, we recommend that you contact your nearest SUBARU dealer or other qualified service shop as soon as possible. Make sure to replace the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter when replacing the tire. You may reuse the wheel if there is no damage to it and if the sealant residue is properly cleaned off. If the light illuminates steadily after blinking for approximately one minute, we recommend that you promptly contact a SUBARU dealer to have the system inspected.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not place metal film or any metal parts in the cargo area. This may cause poor reception of the signals from the tire pressure sensors, and the tire pressure monitoring system will not function properly.

■ TPMS mode setting

Before driving your vehicle, make sure that the TPMS mode is set to the most appropriate one based on the loading condition of the vehicle.

Set a mode under the following conditions.

- when the vehicle is stationary
- when the ignition switch is in the "ON" position

– CONTINUED –

There are three types of TPMS mode settings.

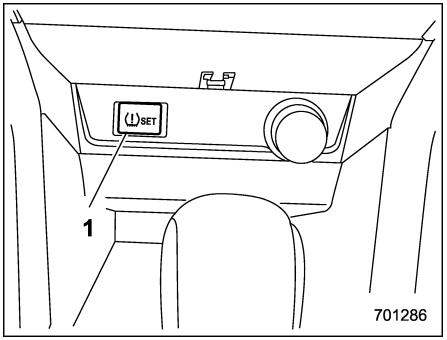
▼ Normal type meter display

P1:	Normal mode	
P2:	Loading mode	
P3:	Towing mode	

▼ Liquid-crystal type meter display

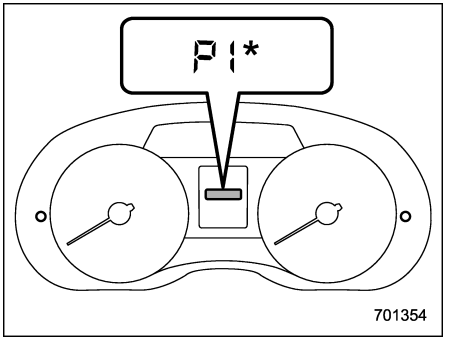
TPMS1:	Normal mode	
TPMS2:	Loading mode	
TPMS3:	Towing mode	

▼ TPMS mode selection



1) TPMS set switch

1. When the trip meter is displayed in the combination meter, press and hold the TPMS set switch (for approximately 3 seconds) located near the front power supply socket. The current TPMS mode will be displayed in the trip meter display, and the TPMS mode can be changed.



*: Normal type meter display: P1
Liquid-crystal type meter display: TPMS1

2. Briefly press the TPMS set switch to change the mode. The mode will change in the following sequence.

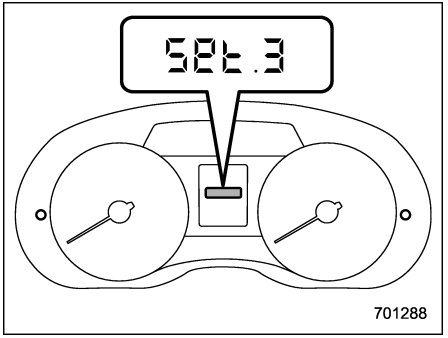
Normal type meter display:

P1 → P2 → P3

Liquid-crystal type meter display:

TPMS1 → TPMS2 → TPMS3

3. When the desired mode is displayed, press and hold the switch (for approximately 3 seconds) to confirm the setting. Once the setting is complete, the confirmation message will be displayed (for example, if you select P3 (normal type meter display)/TPMS3 (liquid-crystal type meter display), “set.3” will be displayed).



After the TPMS mode is displayed, the trip meter will appear again.

NOTE

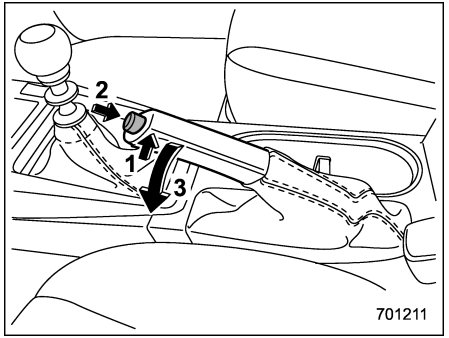
If no operations are performed while the TPMS mode selection is activated,

the display will return to the trip meter after approximately 10 seconds.
Change the TPMS mode according to the specified pressure shown on the tire inflation pressure label.

Parking your vehicle

■ Parking brake

To set the parking brake, depress the brake pedal firmly and hold it down until the parking brake lever is fully pulled up.



To release the parking brake, perform the following procedure.

1. Pull the lever up slightly.
2. Press the release button.
3. Lower the lever while keeping the button pressed.

When the parking brake is set while the engine is running, the parking brake warning light illuminates. After starting the vehicle, be sure that the warning light has turned off before the vehicle is driven. Refer to “Brake system warning light (red)” ☞3-24.

⚠ CAUTION

Never drive while the parking brake is set because this will cause unnecessary wear on the brake linings. Before starting to drive, always make sure that the parking brake has been fully released.

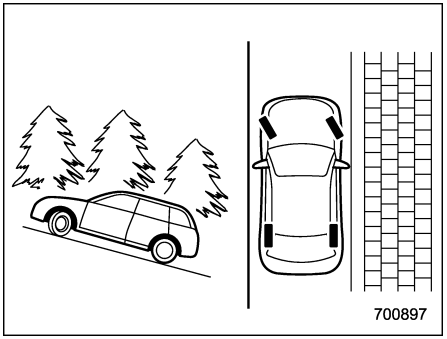
■ Parking tips

When parking your vehicle, always perform the following items.

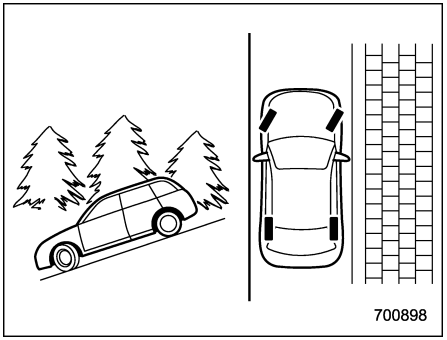
- Apply the parking brake.
- For MT models, put the shift lever in the “1” (1st) for upgrade or “R” (Reverse) for a downgrade.
- For CVT models, put the select lever in the “P” (Park) position.

Never rely on the mechanical friction of the transmission alone to hold the vehicle.

– CONTINUED –



When parking on a hill, always turn the steering wheel. When the vehicle is headed up the hill, the front wheels should be turned away from the curb.



When facing downhill, the front wheels should be turned into the curb.

⚠ WARNING

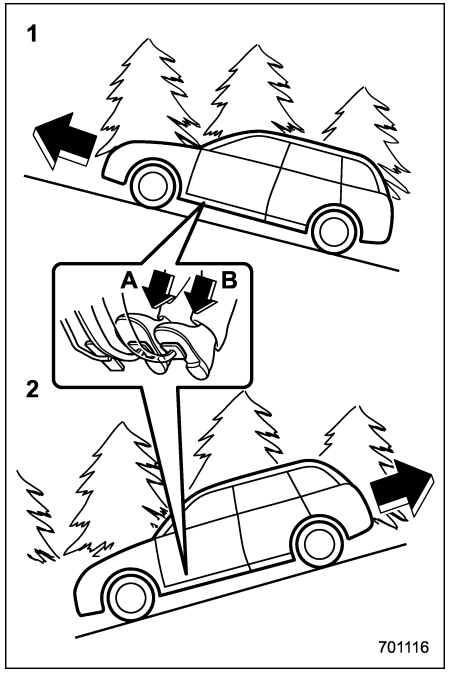
- **Never leave unattended children or pets in the vehicle. They could accidentally injure themselves or others through inadvertent operation of the vehicle. Also, on hot or sunny days, the temperature in a closed vehicle could quickly become high enough to cause severe or possibly fatal injuries to people.**
- **Do not park the vehicle over flammable materials such as dry grass, waste paper or rags, as they may burn easily if they come near hot engine or exhaust system parts.**
- **Be sure to stop the engine if you take a nap in the vehicle. If engine exhaust gas enters the passenger compartment, occupants in the vehicle could die from carbon monoxide (CO) contained in the exhaust gas.**

Hill start assist system

⚠ CAUTION

The Hill start assist system is a device only for helping the driver to START the vehicle on an uphill grade. To prevent accidents when the vehicle is parked on a slope, be sure to firmly set the parking brake. When setting the parking brake, make sure that the vehicle remains stationary when the clutch pedal (MT models) and brake pedal (both MT and CVT models) is released.

The Hill start assist system is a device to make the following vehicle operations easier.



1) Starting forward facing uphill
2) Starting backward facing downhill
A) Brake pedal (both MT models and CVT models)
B) Clutch pedal (MT models only)

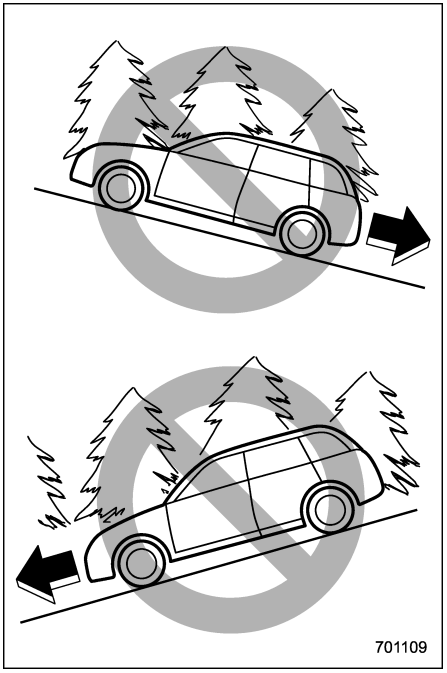
In both these cases, the Hill start assist system operates under the following conditions.

- when the clutch pedal is depressed while the brake pedal is also depressed (MT models)
- when the vehicle has stopped with the brake pedal depressed (CVT models)

Braking power is maintained temporarily (for approximately 2 seconds) by the Hill start assist system after the brake pedal is released. The driver is therefore able to start the vehicle in the same way as on a level grade, just using the clutch pedal (MT models only) and accelerator pedal (all models).

If the braking power of the Hill start assist system is insufficient after the brake pedal is released, apply more braking power by depressing the brake pedal again.

The Hill start assist system may not operate on slight grades. Also, the Hill start assist system does not operate in the following cases.



- when starting backward facing uphill
- when starting forward facing downhill
- while the parking brake is applied
- while the ignition switch is in the “ACC” or “LOCK”/“OFF” position
- while the Hill start assist warning light/

– CONTINUED –

Hill start assist OFF indicator light is illuminated

When starting in reverse and using the Hill start assist system, a braking effect may be felt even after the brake pedal has been released. However, this braking effect should disappear once the clutch pedal is released.

NOTE

A slight jolt may be felt when the vehicle begins to move forward after being reversed.

■ To activate/deactivate the Hill start assist system

⚠ CAUTION

While the Hill start assist system is deactivated, when starting on an uphill grade, braking power is not maintained if the brake pedal is released. Start on an uphill grade by using the parking brake.

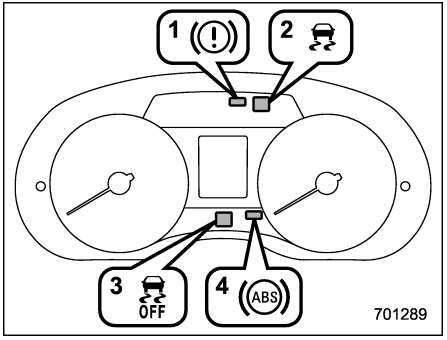
You can activate/deactivate the Hill start assist system according to the following procedure.

NOTE

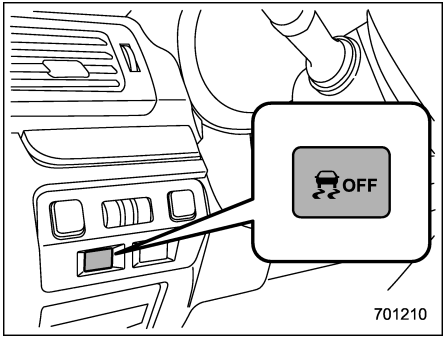
If an incorrect operation is performed, place the ignition switch in the "LOCK"/"OFF" position and then start over again.

▼ To deactivate

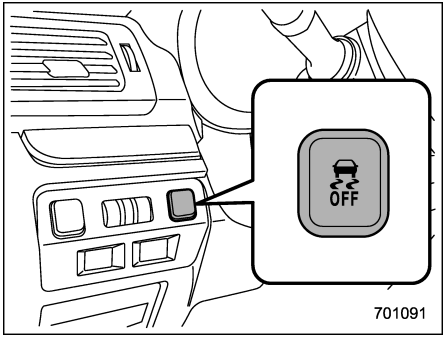
1. Park your vehicle in a flat and safe location and apply the parking brake.
2. Turn the ignition switch to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position.
3. Restart the engine.



4. Confirm the following items.
   (1) The Brake system warning light illuminates.
   (2) The Vehicle Dynamics Control warning light turns off.
   (3) The Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF indicator light turns off.
   (4) The ABS warning light turns off.

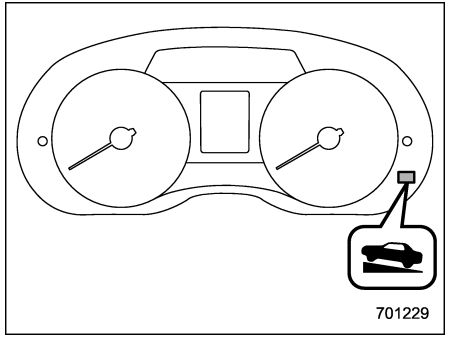


Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF switch (models with power rear gate)



Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF switch (models without power rear gate)

5. Press the Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF switch and hold it until the Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF indicator light on the combination meter illuminates for several seconds and then turns off.
6. Within 5 seconds after the Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF indicator light turns off, release the Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF switch.



Hill start assist OFF indicator light

7. Within 2 seconds after releasing the Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF switch, press the Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF switch once again. Then the Hill start assist OFF indicator light illuminates.
8. Turn the ignition switch to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position. The hill start assist system has now been deactivated.

NOTE

While the Hill start assist system is deactivated, the Hill start assist OFF indicator light illuminates continuously.

▼ To activate

When the procedure to deactivate the Hill start assist system is performed again, the system is activated. When the Hill start assist system is activated, the Hill start assist OFF indicator light turns off.

■ Hill start assist warning light/ Hill start assist OFF indicator light

Refer to "Hill start assist warning light/Hill start assist OFF indicator light" ☞3-26.

Cruise control (if equipped)

NOTE

For models with EyeSight system: Refer to the Owner's Manual supplement for the EyeSight system.

Cruise control enables you to maintain a constant vehicle speed without holding your foot on the accelerator pedal and it is operative when the vehicle speed is 40 km/h (25 mph) or more.

⚠ WARNING

Do not use the cruise control under any of the following conditions. These may cause loss of vehicle control.

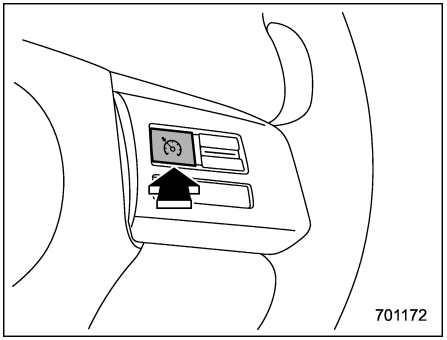
- **driving up or down a steep grade**
- **driving on slippery or winding roads**
- **driving in heavy traffic**
- **towing a trailer**

NOTE

Make sure the cruise control system is turned off when the cruise control is not in use to avoid unintentionally setting of the cruise control.

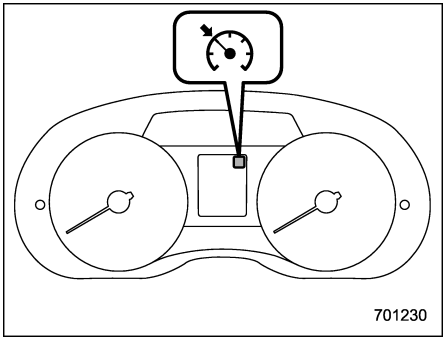
– CONTINUED –

■ To set cruise control



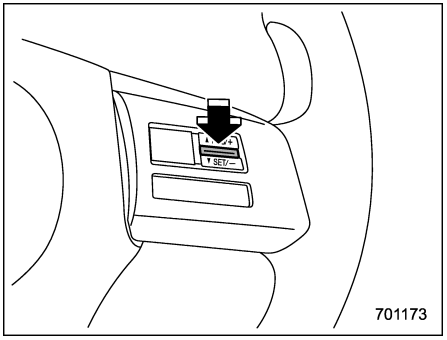
Cruise control main button

1. Press the cruise control main button.

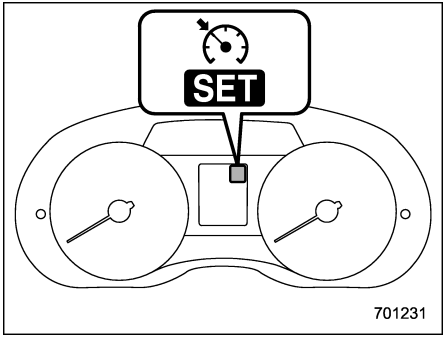


The cruise control indicator light on the combination meter will illuminate.

2. Depress the accelerator pedal until the vehicle reaches the desired speed.



3. Press the “RES/SET” switch to the “SET” side and release it. Then release the accelerator pedal.



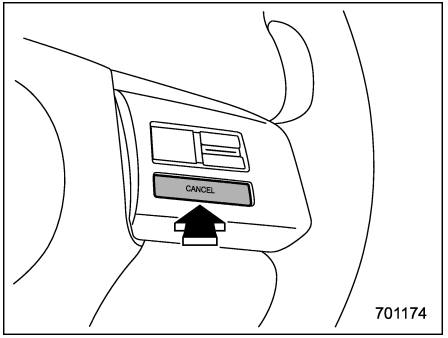
At this time, the cruise control set indicator light is illuminated in the combination meter.

The vehicle will maintain the desired speed.

Vehicle speed can be temporarily increased while driving with the cruise control activated. Simply depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate the vehicle. When the accelerator pedal is released, the vehicle will return to and maintain the previous cruising speed.

■ To temporarily cancel the cruise control

The cruise control can be temporarily canceled in the following ways.



- Press the “CANCEL” button.
- Press the X mode switch to activate the

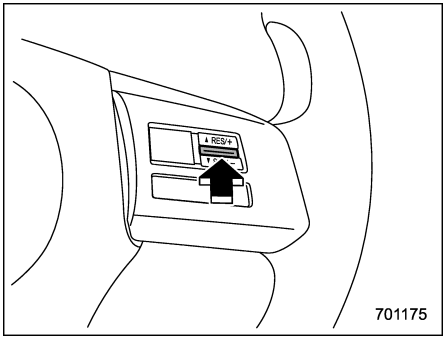
X mode (models with X mode)

- Depress the brake pedal.
- Depress the clutch pedal (MT models only).

⚠ WARNING

For CVT models, you can cancel the cruise control by shifting the select lever into the "N" position. However, do not shift the lever into the "N" position while driving except in case of emergency. If the select lever is shifted into the "N" position, the engine brake will no longer work. This could result in an accident.

The cruise control set indicator light in the combination meter turns off when the cruise control is canceled.



To resume the cruise control after it has been temporarily canceled and with vehicle speed of approximately 32 km/h (20 mph) or more, press the "RES/SET" switch to the "RES" side to return to the original cruising speed automatically.

The cruise control set indicator light in the combination meter will automatically illuminate at this time.

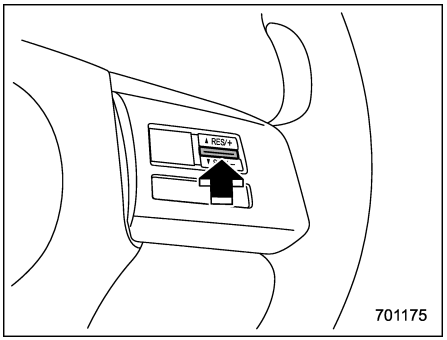
■ To turn off the cruise control

There are two ways to turn off the cruise control:

- Press the cruise control main button again.
- Turn the ignition switch to the "ACC" or "LOCK/OFF" position (but only when the vehicle is completely stopped).

■ To change the cruising speed

▼ To increase the speed (by the "RES/SET" switch)



Press the "RES/SET" switch to the "RES" side and hold it until the vehicle reaches the desired speed. Then, release the switch. The vehicle speed at that moment will be memorized and treated as the new set speed.

U.K. models:

When the difference between the actual vehicle speed and the set speed is less than 4 mph (6.8 km/h), the set speed can be increased 1 mph (1.6 km/h) each time by pressing the "RES/SET" switch to the "RES" side quickly.

– CONTINUED –

Except U.K. models:

When the difference between the actual vehicle speed and the set speed is less than 4.4 km/h (3 mph), the set speed can be increased 1 km/h (0.6 mph) each time by pressing the “RES/SET” switch to the “RES” side quickly.

▼ To increase the speed (by accelerator pedal)

1. Depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate the vehicle to the desired speed.
2. Press the “RES/SET” switch to the “SET” side once. Now the desired speed is set and the vehicle will keep running at that speed without depressing the accelerator pedal.

NOTE

- **U.K. models:**

If the difference between the actual vehicle speed when the switch is pressed and the speed last time you set is less than 4 mph (6.8 km/h), the vehicle speed will be lowered by 1 mph (1.6 km/h). This occurs because the cruise control system regards this operation as that intended to decrease the vehicle speed.

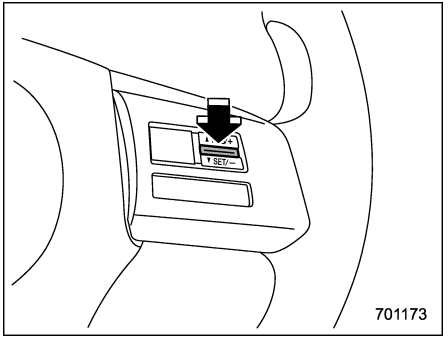
- **Except U.K. models:**

If the difference between the actual vehicle speed when the switch is pressed and the speed last time you set is less than 4.4 km/h (3 mph), the vehicle speed will be lowered by 1 km/h (0.6 mph). This occurs because the cruise control system regards this operation as that intended to decrease the vehicle speed.

- **Turbo models:**

If you depress the accelerator pedal while the Sport Sharp (S#) mode is selected, the select lever/gear position indicator may change from the “D” indication to the current gear position indication.

▼ To decrease the speed (by the “RES/SET” switch)



Press the “RES/SET” switch to the “SET” side and hold it until the vehicle reaches the desired speed. Then, release the switch. The vehicle speed at that moment will be memorized and treated as the new set speed.

U.K. models:

When the difference between the actual vehicle speed and the set speed is less than 4 mph (6.8 km/h), the set speed can be lowered 1 mph (1.6 km/h) each time by pressing the “RES/SET” switch to the “SET” side quickly.

Except U.K. models:

When the difference between the actual vehicle speed and the set speed is less

than 4.4 km/h (3 mph), the set speed can be lowered 1 km/h (0.6 mph) each time by pressing the “RES/SET” switch to the “SET” side quickly.

▼ To decrease the speed (by brake pedal)

1. Depress the brake pedal to release cruise control temporarily.
2. When the speed decreases to the desired speed, press the “RES/SET” switch to the “SET” side once. Now the desired speed is set and the vehicle will keep running at that speed without depressing the accelerator pedal.

■ Cruise control indicator light

Refer to “Cruise control indicator light” ☞3-34.

■ Cruise control set indicator light

Refer to “Cruise control set indicator light” ☞3-34.

Auto Start Stop system (if equipped)

The Auto Start Stop system is designed to automatically stop and restart the engine when the vehicle is stationary for a short period of time (while waiting for a traffic light or in a traffic jam, etc.) after the engine has warmed up, in order to reduce fuel consumption and exhaust emissions, as well as undesired idling noise.

■ System operation

⚠ CAUTION

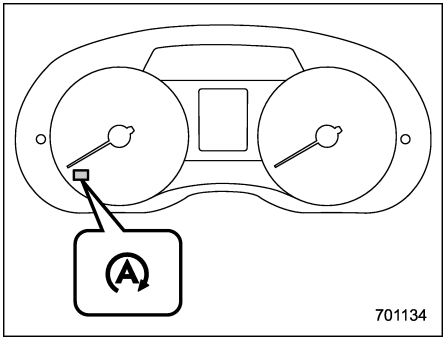
- **The Auto Start Stop system is designed to automatically stop and restart the engine for a short period of time during idling. Do not use the system when parking the vehicle normally.**
- **If the Auto Start Stop system operates when a trailer hitch connector is connected, we recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer. Continuing to drive the vehicle while using the system in this condition could result in lurching down downhill slopes or rolling back on downhill slopes, or could cause damage to the transmission.**

So that it can be used safely and comfortably, in addition to driver operations, the Auto Start Stop system is designed to constantly monitor the vehicle conditions as well as the environment inside and outside the vehicle, in order to control stopping and restarting of the engine. The engine can be automatically stopped by the system when all of the following conditions are met.

- when the vehicle has been driven once after the engine was started (If the vehicle is left continuously idling without being driven, the engine will not be stopped automatically. Also, the engine will not be stopped and restarted repeatedly while the vehicle is stationary.)
- the engine is sufficiently warmed up
- the vehicle battery is in good condition
- the engine hood is closed
- all doors are closed (including the rear gate)
- the driver’s seatbelt is fastened
- the rear window defogger is not in use
- the climate control function is not used or used with a negligible temperature difference between the setting temperature and the temperature inside the vehicle

– CONTINUED –

- the vehicle is at an altitude of less than approximately 1,500 m (4,900 ft)
- the outside temperature is higher than approximately −10°C (14°F)
- the Auto Start Stop warning light is not illuminated
- the malfunction indicator light (Check Engine light) is off
- the steering wheel is in the straight ahead position
- the steering wheel is not being operated
- the vehicle is not used for towing
- the vehicle is not stopped on a road that has a steep slope
- the hazard warning flasher is not in use
- negative pressure in the brake booster is sufficient
- the shift lever is in the “N” position (MT models)
- the clutch pedal is not depressed (MT models)
- the brake pedal is firmly depressed fully after it has been depressed to stop the vehicle (CVT models) (The system may not operate in some cases if the brake pedal is not fully depressed or if the brake is applied suddenly.)
- the select lever is in the “D” position (CVT models)
- the CVT fluid is sufficiently warmed up (CVT models)
- the temperature of the CVT fluid is not abnormally high (CVT models)
- The X mode is turned off (if equipped)
- The power rear gate is not being used (if equipped)



Auto Start Stop indicator light (green)

If the engine is temporarily stopped by the system, the Auto Start Stop indicator light on the combination meter will illuminate. This indicator light will turn off when the system restarts the engine.

NOTE

- **Vehicles that are equipped with the Auto Start Stop system are also equipped with a special high-performance battery. When replacing the vehicle battery, be sure to replace it with a genuine SUBARU battery (or equivalent) designed specifically for use in a vehicle equipped with the Auto Start Stop system. For details, we recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer.**
- **In the following cases, it may take some time for the Auto Start Stop system to operate.**
  - **– when the battery is discharged because the vehicle has not been used for a long period of time, etc.**
  - **– when the outside temperature is very high, or when it is very low**
  - **– when the battery terminals are disconnected after replacing the battery**

▼ MT models

⚠ CAUTION

Be sure to depress the clutch pedal firmly and operate the shift lever.

After depressing the brake pedal and stopping the vehicle, the engine will temporarily stop if you release the clutch pedal with the shift lever in the “N” position.

If the clutch pedal is fully depressed, the engine will be automatically restarted.

▼ **CVT models**

After depressing the brake pedal with the select lever in the “D” position and stopping the vehicle, if the brake pedal is further depressed, the engine will be automatically stopped.

If you release the brake pedal with the select lever in the “D” position, the engine will be automatically restarted.

▼ **Restarting the engine after it has been temporarily stopped by the Auto Start Stop system**

⚠ CAUTION

While the engine is temporarily stopped by the Auto Start Stop system, if the engine does not restart, even if you release the brake pedal (CVT models) or you fully depress the clutch pedal (MT models), we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by a SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.

NOTE

• When the engine has been restarted by the Auto Start Stop system, the voltage of the accessory power outlets will be reduced. Because of this, the power of any electrical appliances that are connected may be temporarily turned off.

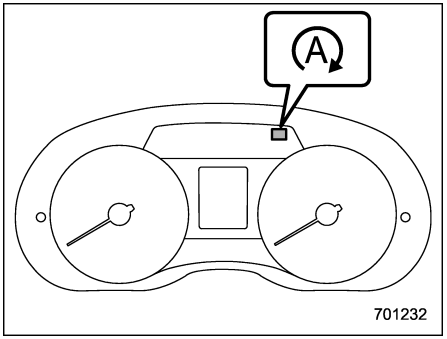
• If any of the operating conditions of the Auto Start Stop system are no longer met while either of the following occurs, the engine will not be restarted even if normal use is restored.

– Any door other than the driver’s door is left open for a period of time.

– The shift lever is left in any position other than the “N” position for a period of time (MT models).

If any one of the conditions for Auto Start Stop operation can no longer be met, the engine will be automatically restarted. However, in order to ensure safety, the engine will not be automatically restarted if either of the following operations is performed, even if you release the brake pedal (CVT models) or fully depress the clutch pedal (MT models).

- the engine hood is opened
- the driver’s seat seatbelt is unfastened
- the driver’s door is opened



Auto Start Stop warning light (yellow)

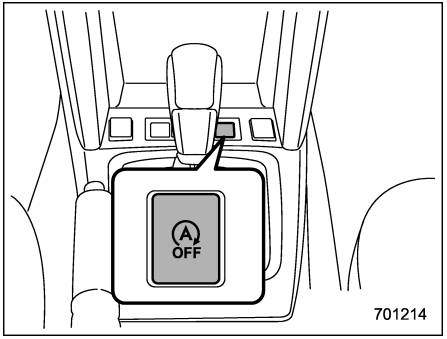
When the engine is temporarily stopped by the system, the Auto Start Stop warning light will illuminate if any of the previous operations are performed.

Also, in the following cases, the length of time that the engine is temporarily stopped by the Auto Start Stop system may be shorter.

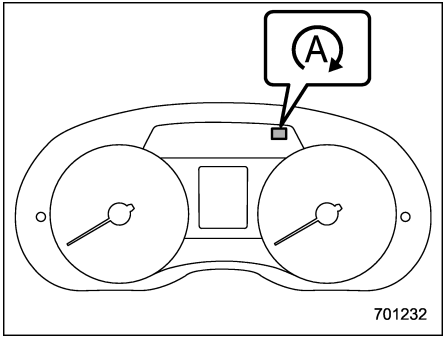
- when the outside temperature is high, or when it is low (because the air conditioner can no longer maintain the set temperature)
- when consumption of electricity by electrical components is high

– CONTINUED –

▼ **Auto Start Stop OFF switch**



Auto Start Stop OFF switch



Auto Start Stop OFF indicator light (yellow)

If the Auto Start Stop OFF switch is pressed, operation of the Auto Start Stop system will be disabled. The Auto Start Stop OFF indicator light on the combination meter will then illuminate. If the switch is pressed once more, the Auto Start Stop system will turn on again. The Auto Start Stop OFF indicator light will then turn off.

While the engine is temporarily stopped by the system, if the Auto Start Stop OFF switch is pressed and held, the engine will be restarted even if you do not release the brake pedal (CVT models) or the clutch pedal is not fully depressed (MT models).

NOTE

• If the engine is restarted when the Auto Start Stop system is not operational and the ignition switch has been turned to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position, the Auto Start Stop system will turn on again.

• Be sure to turn the ignition switch to the "LOCK"/"OFF"position when leaving the vehicle. Failure to do so could result in the battery discharging.

■ Displaying the Auto Start Stop system status

Approximate indications of the time that the engine has been stopped by the Auto Start Stop system and/or the amount of fuel saved can be displayed on the information display or the multi function display. For details, refer to "Auto Start Stop time (models with Auto Start Stop system)" ☞3-41 or "Basic screens" ☞3-47.

■ System warning

So that it can be used safely and comfortably, the Auto Start Stop system is designed to constantly monitor the vehicle conditions as well as the environment inside and outside the vehicle in addition to driver operations, and to provide various warnings to the driver via the warning light and/or indicator light illuminating or flashing and a buzzer sounding. For details about the warning light and indicator light, refer to "Auto Start Stop warning light/Auto Start Stop OFF indicator light (yellow)" ☞3-36 and "Auto Start Stop indicator light (green)" ☞3-37.

▼ **Warning buzzer**

If either of the following operations is performed while the engine is temporarily stopped by the Auto Start Stop system, a buzzer will sound to notify the driver that the engine is currently stopped.

• any door except the driver's door is opened

• the shift lever is placed in any position except the "N" position (MT models)

In this case, the buzzer will stop sounding when the following operations are performed.

- the corresponding door is closed
- the shift lever is returned to the “N” position (MT models)

The buzzer will also sound when either of the following operations is performed while the engine is stopped by the Auto Start Stop system.

- the engine hood is opened
- the driver’s seatbelt is unfastened
- the driver’s door is opened

When this occurs, the buzzer will stop sounding when the following operations are performed.

- the engine is restarted by normal operation (refer to “Preparing to drive” ☞7-6)
- the ignition switch is turned to the “LOCK”/“OFF” position

▼ Display of warning messages (models with multi function display)

If a warning message is displayed on the multi function display while the vehicle is being driven, a malfunction may have occurred in the Auto Start Stop system. In this case, the Auto Start Stop warning light will illuminate or flash. We recommend that you have your vehicle inspected at a SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.

New vehicle break-in driving – the first 1,600 km (1,000 miles) 8-2
Fuel economy hints 8-2
Engine exhaust gas (carbon monoxide)..... 8-2
Catalytic converter 8-3
Diesel particulate filter (diesel engine models) 8-4
Periodic inspections 8-5
Driving in foreign countries 8-5
Driving in a foreign country in which the vehicular lane is different to your country..... 8-5
Driving tips for AWD models..... 8-8
On-road and off-road driving..... 8-10
Winter driving..... 8-12
Operation during cold weather..... 8-12
Driving on snowy and icy roads 8-14
Corrosion protection 8-15
Snow tires 8-15
Tire chains 8-15
Rocking the vehicle 8-16
Loading your vehicle..... 8-16
Roof molding and load carrier (if equipped)..... 8-17
Roof rails (if equipped) 8-18
Trailer towing 8-19
Maintenance 8-19
Towing weight 8-19
Trailer hitches..... 8-20
When you do not tow a trailer 8-20
Trailer safety chains..... 8-20
Side mirrors 8-21
Trailer lights 8-21
Tires..... 8-21
Trailer towing tips 8-21
Additional information for Europe 8-24

New vehicle break-in driving – the first 1,600 km (1,000 miles)

The performance and long life of your vehicle are dependent on how you handle and care for your vehicle while it is new. Follow these instructions during the first 1,600 km (1,000 miles):

- For petrol engine models, do not allow the engine speed to exceed 4,000 rpm except in an emergency.
- For diesel engine models, do not allow the engine speed to exceed 3,500 rpm except in an emergency.
- Do not drive at one constant engine or vehicle speed for a long time, either fast or slow.
- Avoid starting suddenly and rapid acceleration, except in an emergency.
- Avoid hard braking, except in an emergency.

The same break-in procedures should be applied to an overhauled engine, newly mounted engine or when brake pads or brake linings are replaced with new ones.

Fuel economy hints

The following suggestions will help to save your fuel.

- Select the proper gear position for the speed and road conditions.
- Avoid sudden acceleration or deceleration. Always accelerate gently until you reach the desired speed. Then try to maintain that speed for as long as possible.
- Do not pump the accelerator pedal and avoid racing the engine.
- Avoid unnecessary engine idling.
- Keep the engine properly tuned.
- Keep the tires inflated to the correct pressure shown on the tire placard, which is located under the door latch on the driver's side. Low pressure will increase tire wear and fuel consumption.
- Use the air conditioner only when necessary.
- Keep the front and rear wheels in proper alignment.
- Avoid carrying unnecessary luggage or cargo.

Engine exhaust gas (carbon monoxide)

⚠ WARNING

- **Never inhale engine exhaust gas. Engine exhaust gas contains carbon monoxide, a colorless and odorless gas which is dangerous, or even lethal, if inhaled.**
- **Always properly maintain the engine exhaust system to prevent engine exhaust gas from entering the vehicle.**
- **Never run the engine in a closed space, such as a garage, except for the brief time needed to drive the vehicle in or out of it.**
- **Avoid remaining in a parked vehicle for a lengthy time while the engine is running. If that is unavoidable, then use the ventilation fan to force fresh air into the vehicle.**
- **Always keep the front ventilator inlet grille free from snow, leaves or other obstructions to ensure that the ventilation system always works properly.**
- **If at any time you suspect that**

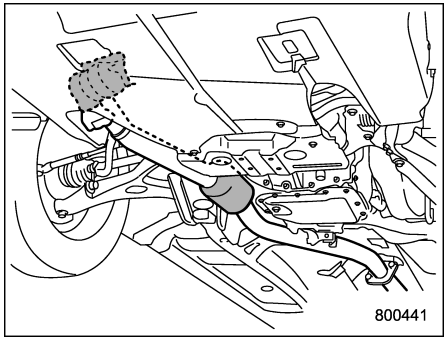
exhaust fumes are entering the vehicle, have the problem checked and corrected as soon as possible. If you must drive under these conditions, drive only with all windows fully open.

- **Keep the rear gate closed while driving to prevent exhaust gas from entering the vehicle.**

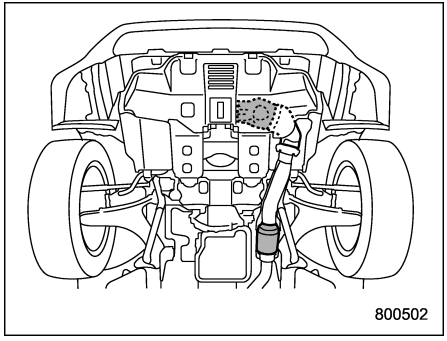
NOTE

Due to the expansion and contraction of the metals used in the manufacture of the exhaust system, you may hear a crackling sound coming from the exhaust system for a short time after the engine has been shut off. This sound is normal.

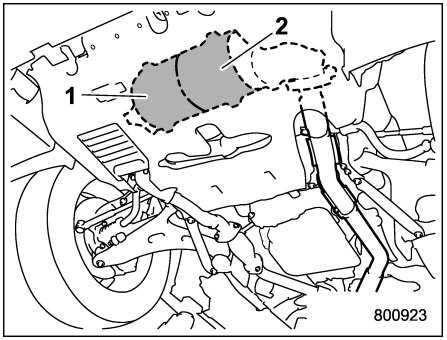
Catalytic converter



Non-turbo models



Turbo petrol engine models



Diesel engine models

1) Catalytic converter
2) Diesel particulate filter

The catalytic converter is installed in the exhaust system. It serves as catalyst to reduce HC, CO and NOx in exhaust gases, thus providing cleaner exhaust.

To avoid damage to the catalytic converter:

- For petrol engine models, use only unleaded petrol. Even a small amount of leaded fuel will damage the catalytic converter.
- For diesel engine models, use only diesel fuel that conforms to the specification of EN590 or an equivalent.
- Never start the engine by pushing or pulling the vehicle.

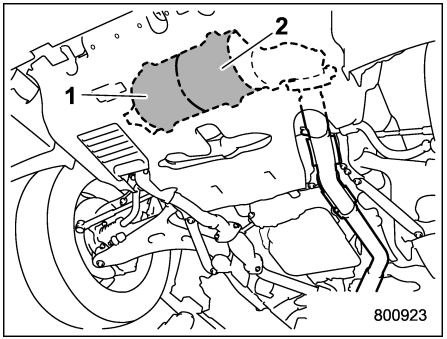
– CONTINUED –

- Avoid racing the engine.
- Never turn off the ignition switch while the vehicle is moving.
- Keep your engine tuned-up. If you feel the engine running rough (misfiring, backfiring or incomplete combustion), we recommend that you have your vehicle checked and repaired by an authorized SUBARU dealer.
- Do not apply undercoating or rust prevention treatment to the heat shield of catalytic converter and the exhaust system.
- Do not drive with an extremely low fuel level.

⚠ WARNING

- **Avoid fire hazards. Do not drive or park the vehicle anywhere near flammable materials (e.g. grass, paper, rags or leaves), because the catalytic converter operates at very high temperatures.**
- **Keep everyone and flammable materials away from the exhaust pipe while the engine is running. The exhaust gas is very hot.**

Diesel particulate filter (diesel engine models)

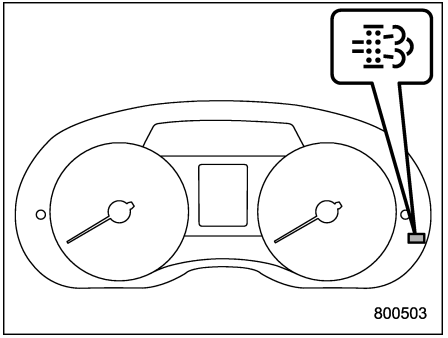


1) Catalytic converter
2) Diesel particulate filter

The diesel particulate filter is a device that eliminates particulate matter in the exhaust gas of a diesel engine.

In most cases, the accumulated soot is automatically burned in the filter while driving. However, accumulated soot in the filter is not burned if you drive the vehicle under the following conditions.

- when the vehicle is continuously driven at 15 km/h (9 mph) or less
- when the vehicle is driven without sufficient preheating or the vehicle is repeatedly driven for only a short period of time
- when the vehicle is idling for a long time



The diesel particulate filter warning light will illuminate when the accumulated particulate matter exceeds the specified limit. When the warning light illuminates, refer to “Diesel particulate filter warning light (diesel engine models)” ☞3-35.

⚠ WARNING

- **Avoid fire hazards. Do not drive or park the vehicle anywhere near flammable materials (e.g., grass, paper, rags or leaves), because the diesel particulate filter operates at very high temperatures.**

- **Keep everyone and flammable materials away from the diesel particulate filter and exhaust pipe while the engine is running. The exhaust gas is very hot.**

NOTE

• While the soot is burning in the diesel particulate filter, the driveability, engine revolutions, engine sound and smell of emission gas may change.

• If any service or maintenance is necessary for the diesel particulate filter, it should be performed by a well-trained expert. In some cases, the work requires maintenance of the on-board computer system using a special tool. Otherwise, the diesel particulate filter warning light will not operate properly. Therefore, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer for service or maintenance of the diesel particulate filter. Fully trained mechanics are on standby at the SUBARU dealer to utilize the special tools and spare parts.

Periodic inspections

To keep your vehicle in the best condition at all times, always have the recommended maintenance services listed in the maintenance schedule performed at the specified time or mileage intervals.

Driving in foreign countries

When planning to use your vehicle in another country:

- Confirm the availability of the correct fuel. Refer to “Fuel” ☞7-3.
- Comply with all regulations and requirements of each country.

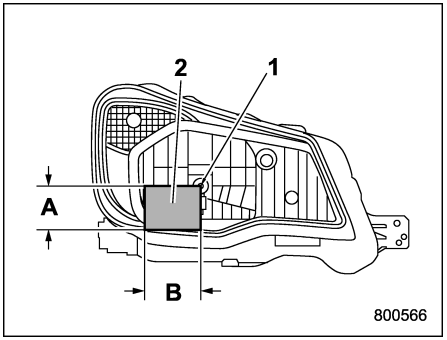
■ Driving in a foreign country in which the vehicular lane is different to your country

When you drive in a foreign country in which the vehicular lane (left-hand traffic or right-hand traffic) is different from your country, to avoid blinding the oncoming driver, you need to block a part of the headlight lenses.

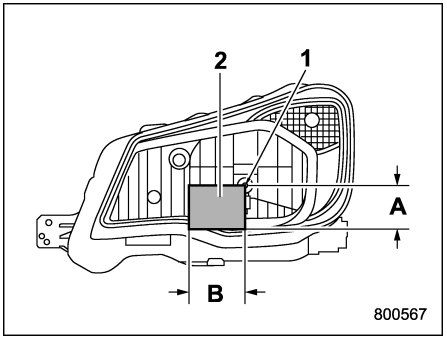
We recommend that you consult a SUBARU dealer concerning whether the headlight of your vehicle is designed for left-hand traffic or right-hand traffic. Refer to the following method when you attach lightproof adhesive tape to the headlight lenses.

– CONTINUED –

▼ **When you drive a vehicle that is designed for left-hand traffic in right-hand traffic countries (models with halogen light)**

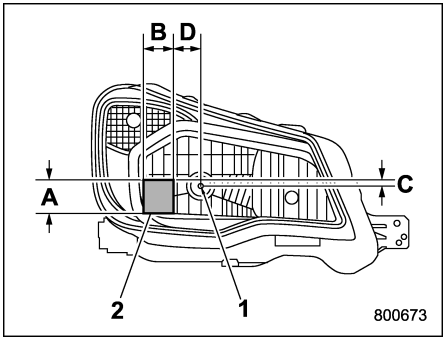


Right side headlight
1) Bulb center
2) Lightproof adhesive tape
A) 25 mm (0.98 in)
B) 32 mm (1.26 in)

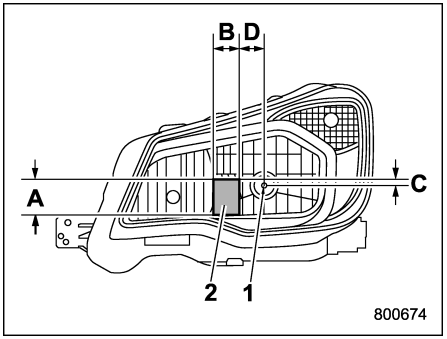


Left side headlight
1) Bulb center
2) Lightproof adhesive tape
A) 25 mm (0.98 in)
B) 32 mm (1.26 in)

▼ **When you drive a vehicle that is designed for left-hand traffic in right-hand traffic countries (models with HID light)**

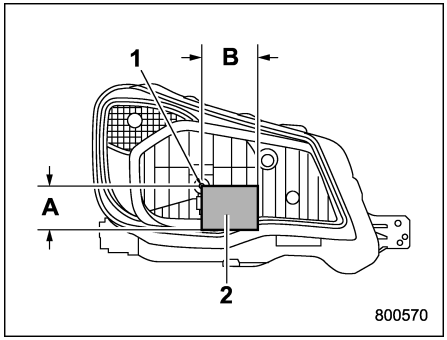


Right side headlight
1) Bulb center
2) Lightproof adhesive tape
A) 30.5 mm (1.20 in)
B) 23 mm (0.91 in)
C) 3.5 mm (0.14 in)
D) 32 mm (1.26 in)

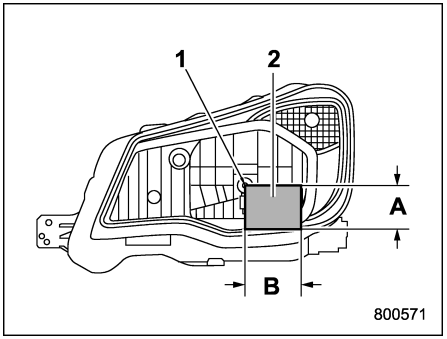


Left side headlight
1) Bulb center
2) Lightproof adhesive tape
A) 30.5 mm (1.20 in)
B) 23 mm (0.91 in)
C) 3.5 mm (0.14 in)
D) 32 mm (1.26 in)

▼ When you drive a vehicle that is designed for right-hand traffic in left-hand traffic countries (models with halogen light)



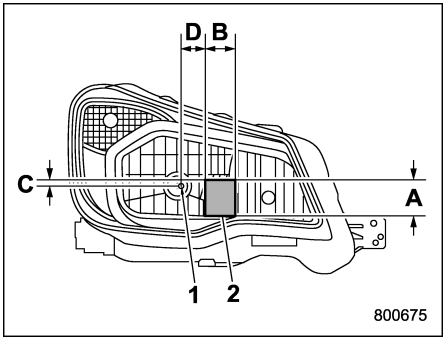
Right side headlight
1) Bulb center
2) Lightproof adhesive tape
A) 25 mm (0.98 in)
B) 32 mm (1.26 in)



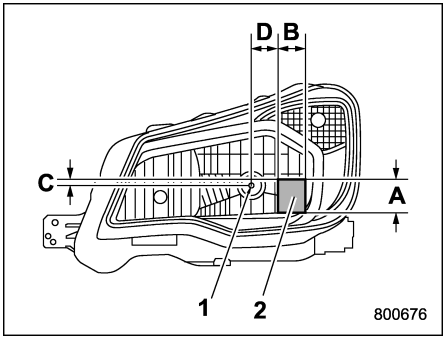
Left side headlight
1) Bulb center
2) Lightproof adhesive tape
A) 25 mm (0.98 in)
B) 32 mm (1.26 in)

– CONTINUED –

▼ **When you drive a vehicle that is designed for right-hand traffic in left-hand traffic countries (models with HID light)**



Right side headlight
1) Bulb center
2) Lightproof adhesive tape
A) 30.5 mm (1.20 in)
B) 23 mm (0.91 in)
C) 3.5 mm (0.14 in)
D) 32 mm (1.26 in)



Left side headlight
1) Bulb center
2) Lightproof adhesive tape
A) 30.5 mm (1.20 in)
B) 23 mm (0.91 in)
C) 3.5 mm (0.14 in)
D) 32 mm (1.26 in)

Driving tips for AWD models

⚠ WARNING

- **Always maintain a safe driving speed according to the road and weather conditions in order to avoid having an accident on a sharp turn, during sudden braking or under other similar conditions.**
- **Always use the utmost care in driving – overconfidence because you are driving an All-Wheel Drive vehicle could easily lead to a serious accident.**
- **When replacing or installing tire(s), all four tires must be the same for the following items.**
  (a) Size
  (b) Circumference
  (c) Speed symbol
  (d) Load index
  (e) Construction
  (f) Manufacturer
  (g) Brand (tread pattern)
  (h) Degrees of wear

  For items (a) to (d), you must

obey the specification that is printed on the tire placard. The tire placard is located on the bottom of the driver's door pillar.

If all four tires are not the same in items (a) to (h), there is a possibility that it may lead to serious mechanical damage to the drive train of your car and affect the following factors.

— Ride

— Handling

— Braking

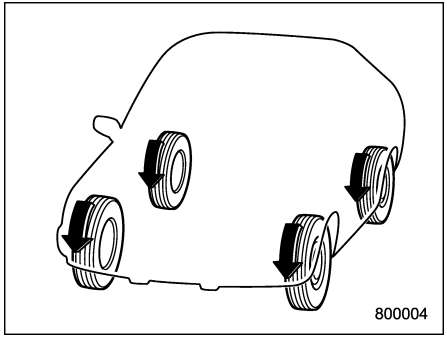
— Speedometer/Odometer calibration

— Clearance between the body and the tires

It also may be dangerous and lead to loss of vehicle control, and it can lead to an accident.

⚠ CAUTION

If you use a temporary spare tire to replace a flat tire, be sure to use the original temporary spare tire stored in the vehicle. Using other sizes may result in severe mechanical damage to the drive train of your vehicle.



All-Wheel Drive distributes the engine power to all four wheels. AWD models provide better traction when driving on slippery, wet or snow-covered roads and when moving out of mud, sand or dirt.

For safety purpose as well as to avoid damaging the AWD system, you should keep the following tips in mind:

- An AWD vehicle is better able to climb steeper roads under snowy or slippery conditions than a front wheel drive vehicle. There is little difference in handling, however, during extremely sharp turns or sudden braking. Therefore, when driving down a slope or turning corners, be sure to reduce your speed and maintain an ample distance from other vehicles.
- Always check the cold tire pressure before starting to drive. The recommended tire pressure is provided on the tire placard, which is located under the door latch on the driver's side.
- Tire chains should always be placed on the front wheels only.
- Frequent driving of an AWD vehicle under hard-driving conditions such as steep hills or dusty roads will necessitate more frequent replacement of the following items than that specified in "Maintenance schedule" ☞11-3.
  - Engine oil
  - Brake fluid
  - Rear differential gear oil
  - Manual transmission oil (MT models)
  - Continuously variable transmission fluid (CVT models)
  - Front differential gear oil (CVT models)
- There are some precautions that you must observe when towing your vehicle. For detail information, refer to "Towing"

– CONTINUED –

☞9-14.

On-road and off-road driving

⚠ WARNING

- **In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seatbelt. You the driver and all your passengers should fasten the seatbelts before starting to drive in order to minimize the chance of serious injury or death.**
- **Do not make sharp turns and quick maneuvers unless absolutely unavoidable. Such actions are dangerous as you may lose control, possibly resulting in a rollover which could cause death or serious injury.**
- **Always maintain a safe driving speed according to the road and weather conditions in order to avoid having an accident on a sharp turn, during sudden braking or under other similar conditions.**
- **Whenever strong crosswinds are present, slow down sufficiently to maintain control of your vehicle. Remember that your vehicle, with its higher profile and center of gravity, is more likely to be affected by crosswinds than ordinary passenger cars.**
- **Always use the utmost care in driving – overconfidence because you are driving an All-Wheel Drive model could easily lead to a serious accident.**

Your vehicle is classified as a utility vehicle. Utility vehicles feature a higher ground clearance which enables them to be used for wide applications including off-road driving. But please keep in mind that your vehicle is neither a conventional off-road vehicle nor an all-terrain vehicle. A higher center of gravity in relation to the tread width as compared with ordinary passenger cars makes vehicles of this type more likely to roll over. In reality, utility vehicles have a significantly higher roll-over rate than other types of vehicles. The high ground clearance of this vehicle is a real advantage, giving you a better view of the road and allowing you to anticipate problems earlier. However, remember that your utility vehicle is not designed for high-speed cornering comparable to ordinary passenger cars and that your vehicle could roll over if you make a sharp turn at high speed.

If you take your SUBARU off-road, certain

common sense precautions such as the following should be taken:

- Make certain that you and all of your passengers are wearing seatbelts.
- Carry some emergency equipment, such as a towing rope or chain, a shovel, wheel blocks, first aid kit and cell phone or citizens band radio.
- Drive carefully. Do not take unnecessary risks by driving in dangerous areas or over rough terrain.
- Slow down and employ extra caution at all times. When driving off-road, you will not have the benefit of marked traffic lanes, banked curves, traffic signs and the like.
- Do not drive across steep slopes. Instead, drive either straight up or straight down the slopes. A vehicle can much more easily tip over sideways than it can end over end. Avoid driving straight up or down slopes that are too steep.
- Avoid sharp turning maneuvers, especially at higher speeds.
- Do not grip the inside or spokes of the steering wheel. A bad bump could jerk the wheel and injure your hands. Instead drive with your fingers and thumbs on the outside of the rim.
- If driving through water, such as when crossing shallow streams, first check the depth of the water and the bottom of the stream bed for firmness and ensure that the bed of the stream is flat. Drive slowly and cross the stream without stopping. The water should be shallow enough that it does not reach the vehicle's undercarriage. Water entering the engine air intake or the exhaust pipe or water splashing onto electrical parts may damage your vehicle and may cause it to stall. Never attempt to drive through rushing water; regardless of its depth, it can wash away the ground from under your tires, resulting in possible loss of traction and even vehicle rollover.
- Always check your brakes for effectiveness immediately after driving in sand, mud or water. Do this by driving slowly and stepping on the brake pedal. Repeat that process several times to dry out the brake discs and brake pads.
- Do not drive or park over or near flammable materials such as dry grass or fallen leaves, as they may burn easily. The exhaust system is very hot while the engine is running and right after engine stops. This could create a fire hazard.
- After driving through tall grass, mud, rocks, sand, rivers, etc., check that there is no grass, bush, paper, rags, stones, sand, etc. adhering to or trapped on the underbody. Clear off any such matter from the underbody. If the vehicle is used with these materials trapped or adhering to the underbody, a mechanical breakdown or fire could occur.
- Secure all cargo carried inside the vehicle and make certain that it is not piled higher than the seatbacks. During sudden stops or jolts, unsecured cargo could be thrown around in the vehicle and cause injury. Do not pile heavy loads on the roof. Those loads raise the vehicle's center of gravity and make it more prone to tip over.
- If you must rock the vehicle to free it from sand or mud, depress the accelerator pedal slightly and move the select lever back and forth between"1"/"D" and "R" repeatedly. Do not race the engine. For the best possible traction, avoid spinning the wheels when trying to free the vehicle.
- When the road surface is extremely slippery, you can obtain better traction by starting the vehicle with the transmission in 2nd than 1st (CVT models with manual mode and MT models).
- Never equip your vehicle with tires larger than those specified in this manual.
- Wash the vehicle's underbody after off-road driving. Suspension components are particularly prone to dirt buildup, so they need to be washed thoroughly.
- Frequent driving of an AWD model

– CONTINUED –

under hard-driving conditions such as rough roads or off roads will necessitate more frequent replacement of the following items than that specified in “Maintenance schedule” ☞11-3.

– Engine oil
– Brake fluid
– Rear differential gear oil
– Manual transmission oil (MT models)
– Continuously variable transmission fluid (CVT models)
– Front differential gear oil (CVT models)

Remember that damage done to your SUBARU while operating it off-road and not using common sense precautions such as those listed above is not eligible for warranty coverage.

Winter driving

■ Operation during cold weather

Carry some emergency equipment, such as tire chains, a window scraper, a bag of sand, flares, a small shovel, and jumper cables.

Check the battery and cables. Cold temperatures reduce battery capacity. The battery must be in good condition to provide enough power for cold winter starts.

It normally takes longer to start the engine in very cold weather conditions. Use an engine oil of a suitable grade and viscosity for cold weather. Using heavy summer oil will make it harder to start the engine.

Keep the door locks from freezing by squirting them with deicer or glycerin.

Forcing a frozen door open may damage or separate the rubber weather strips around the door. If the door is frozen, use hot water to melt the ice, and afterwards thoroughly wipe the water away.

Use a windshield washer fluid that contains an antifreeze solution. Do not use engine antifreeze or other substitutes because they may damage the paint of the vehicle.

SUBARU Windshield Washer Fluid contains 58.5% methyl alcohol and 41.5% surfactant, by volume. Its freezing temperature varies according to how much it is diluted, as indicated in the following table.

Washer Fluid Concentration	Freezing Temperature
30%	**−12°C (10.4°F)**
50%	**−20°C (−4°F)**
100%	**−45°C (−49°F)**

In order to prevent freezing of washer fluid, check the freezing temperatures in the table above when adjusting the fluid concentration to the outside temperature.

If you fill the reservoir tank with a fluid with a different concentration from the one used previously, purge the old fluid from the piping between the reservoir tank and washer nozzles by operating the washer for a certain period of time. Otherwise, if the concentration of the fluid remaining in the piping is too low for the outside temperature, it may freeze and block the nozzles.

⚠ CAUTION

Adjust the washer fluid concentration appropriately for the outside temperature. If the concentration is inappropriate, sprayed washer fluid may freeze on the windshield and obstruct your view, and the fluid may freeze in the reservoir tank.

▼ Before driving your vehicle

Before entering the vehicle, remove any snow or ice from your shoes because that could make the pedals slippery and driving dangerous.

While warming up the vehicle before driving, check that the accelerator pedal, brake pedal, and all other controls operate smoothly.

Clear away ice and snow that has accumulated under the fenders to avoid making steering difficult. During severe winter driving, stop when and where it is safe to do so and check under the fenders periodically.

▼ Parking in cold weather

Do not use the parking brake when parking for long periods in cold weather since it could freeze in that position. Instead, observe the following.

1. Place the shift lever in "1" or "R" for MT models, or the select lever in "P" for CVT models.
2. Use tire stops under the tires to prevent the vehicle from moving.

When the vehicle is parked in snow or when it snows, raise the wiper blades off the glass to prevent damage to them.

When the vehicle has been left parked after use on roads heavily covered with snow, or has been left parked during a snowstorm, icing may develop on the brake system, which could cause poor braking action. Check for snow or ice buildup on the suspension, disc brakes and brake hoses underneath the vehicle.

If there is caked snow or ice, remove it, being careful not to damage the disc brakes and brake hoses and ABS harness.

⚠ WARNING

Snow can trap dangerous exhaust gases under your vehicle. Keep snow clear of the exhaust pipe and from around your vehicle if you park the vehicle in snow with the engine running.

▼ Refueling in cold weather

Petrol engine models:

To help prevent moisture from forming in the fuel system and the risk of its freezing, use of an antifreeze additive in the fuel tank is recommended during cold weather. Use only additives that are specifically designed for this purpose. When an antifreeze additive is used, its effect lasts longer if the tank is refilled whenever the fuel level reaches half empty.

If your SUBARU is not going to be used for an extended period, it is best to have the fuel tank filled to capacity.

Diesel engine models:

For information about refueling in cold weather, refer to "Fuel requirements for diesel engine models" ☞7-3.

▼ Opening rear gate (models with power rear gate)

⚠ CAUTION

Before operating the power rear gate, check that there is no frost or snow between the power rear gate and the vehicle body. If you notice frost or snow etc. on the power rear gate, remove it. If you forcibly operate the power rear gate with

– CONTINUED –

frost or snow, it may cause a malfunction.

■ Driving on snowy and icy roads

To prevent skidding and slipping, avoid sudden braking, abrupt acceleration, high-speed driving, and sharp turning when driving on snowy or icy roads.

Always maintain ample distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you to avoid the need for sudden braking.

To supplement the foot brake, use the engine brake effectively to control the vehicle speed. (Shift into a lower gear when necessary.)

Avoid shifting down abruptly. Such behavior can cause the wheels to lock, possibly leading to loss of vehicle control.

An anti-lock brake system (ABS) enhances your vehicle's braking performance on snowy and icy roads. For information about braking on slippery surfaces, refer to "ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)" ☞7-30 and "Vehicle Dynamics Control system" ☞7-32.

⚠ WARNING

Do not use the cruise control on slippery roads such as snowy or icy roads. This may cause loss of vehicle control.

⚠ CAUTION

Avoid prolonged continuous driving in snowstorms. Snow will enter the engine's intake system and may hinder the airflow, which could result in engine shutdown or even breakdown.

▼ Wiper operation when snowing

Before driving in cold weather, make sure the wiper blades are not frozen to the windshield or rear window.

If the wiper blades are frozen to the windshield or rear window, perform the following procedure.

- To thaw the windshield wiper blades, use the defroster and set the temperature for maximum warmth until the wiper blades are completely thawed. Refer to "Defrosting" ☞4-10.
- If your vehicle is equipped with a wiper deicer, use it. It is helpful to thaw the windshield wiper blades. Refer to "Defogger and deicer" ☞3-108.
- To thaw the rear wiper blade, use the rear window defogger. Refer to "Defogger and deicer" ☞3-108.

When driving in snow, if frozen snow starts to stick on the surface of the windshield despite wiper operation, use the defroster and set the temperature for maximum warmth. After the windshield gets warmed enough to melt the frozen snow on it, wash it away using the windshield washer. Refer to "Windshield washer" ☞3-103.

Snow stuck on the wiper arm prevents the wiper from working effectively. If snow is stuck on the wiper arm, pull off the road to a safe place, then remove it. If you stop the vehicle at road side, use the hazard warning flasher to alert other drivers. Refer to "Hazard warning flasher" ☞3-8.

We recommend use of non-freezing type wiper blades (winter blades) during the seasons you could have snow and freezing temperatures.

Blades of this type give superior wiping performance in snowy conditions. Be sure to use blades that are suitable for your vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

During high-speed driving, non-freezing type wiper blades may not perform as well as standard wiper blades. If this happens, reduce the

vehicle speed.

NOTE

When the season requiring non-freezing type wiper blades is over, replace them with standard wiper blades.

■ Corrosion protection

Refer to "Corrosion protection" ☞10-4.

■ Snow tires

⚠ WARNING

- **When replacing original tires with winter (snow) tires, all four tires must be the same for the following items.**
  (a) Size
  (b) Circumference
  (c) Speed symbol
  (d) Load index
  (e) Construction
  (f) Manufacturer
  (g) Brand (tread pattern)
  (h) Degrees of wear

  For items (a) to (d), you must obey the specification that is printed on the tire placard. The tire placard is located on the bottom of the driver's door pillar.

  If all four tires are not the same in items (a) to (h), there is a possibility that it may lead to serious mechanical damage to the drive train of your car and affect the following factors.
  — Ride
  — Handling
  — Braking
  — Speedometer/Odometer calibration
  — Clearance between the body and the tires

  It also may be dangerous and lead to loss of vehicle control, and it can lead to an accident.
- **Do not use a combination of radial, belted bias or bias tires since it may cause dangerous handling characteristics and lead to an accident.**

In winter, it may be possible to enhance performance through use of tires designed specifically for winter driving conditions. If you choose to install winter tires on your vehicle, be sure to use the correct tire size and type. All four tires must be of the same size, construction, brand and load index and you should never mix radial, belted bias or bias tires since this may result in dangerous handling characteristics. Remember to drive with care at all times regardless of the type of tires on your vehicle.

When using winter tires (speed symbol Q, T or H) never exceed 160 km/h (99 mph), 190 km/h (118 mph) or 210 km/h (130 mph), respectively.

■ Tire chains

If it is necessary to use the tire chains for driving on snowy grades or icy roads, observe the following precautions:

- Put the chains on the front wheels only.
- Use only chains that are of the correct size for your tires so as not to damage the vehicle body or suspension. We recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer for information about the chains that you can use.
- Do not put a tire chain on the temporary spare tire.
- When driving with tire chains, drive at speeds below 30 km/h (19 mph).

Always use the utmost care when driving

– CONTINUED –

with tire chains – overconfidence because you are driving with tire chains could easily lead to a serious accident.

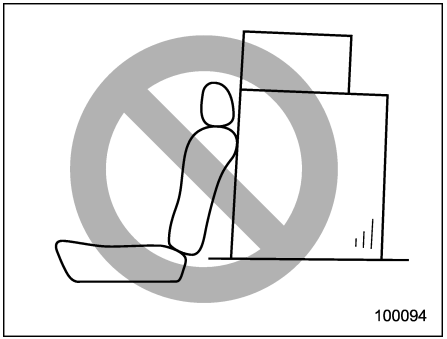
■ Rocking the vehicle

If you must rock the vehicle to free it from snow, sand, or mud, depress the accelerator pedal slightly and move the shift lever/select lever back and forth between “1”/“D” and “R” repeatedly. Do not race the engine. For the best possible traction, avoid spinning the wheels when trying to free the vehicle.

When the road surface is extremely slippery, you can obtain better traction by starting the vehicle with the transmission in 2nd than 1st (MT models and CVT models with manual mode).

If your vehicle is a CVT model with manual mode, for information about holding the transmission in the 2nd position, refer to “Selection of manual mode” ☞7-20.

Loading your vehicle



⚠ WARNING

- **Never stack luggage or other cargo higher than the top of the seatback because it could tumble forward and injure passengers in the event of a sudden stop or accident. Keep luggage or cargo low, as close to the floor as possible.**
- **Never allow passengers to ride on a folded rear seatback or in the cargo area. Doing so may result in serious injury.**
- **When you carry something inside the vehicle, secure it whenever you can to prevent it from being thrown around inside the vehicle during sudden stops, sharp turns or in an accident.**
- **Do not pile heavy loads on the roof. These loads raise the vehicle’s center of gravity and make it more prone to tip over.**
- **Secure lengthy items properly to prevent them from shooting forward and causing serious injury during a sudden stop.**
- **Do not place anything on the extended cargo area cover. Such items could tumble forward in the event of a sudden stop or a collision. This could cause serious injury.**

⚠ CAUTION

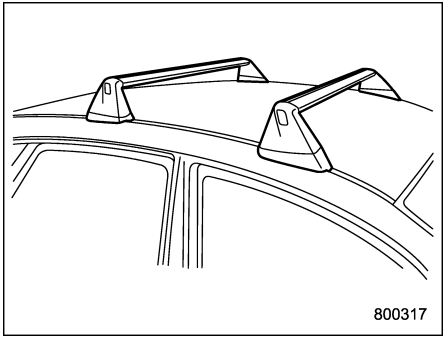
- **Do not carry spray cans, containers with flammable or corrosive liquids or any other dangerous items inside the vehicle.**
- **Do not close the rear gate with cargo protruding from the cargo area. The cargo may be damaged. In models with power rear gate, the rear gate may open via reverse function.**

- **In models with power rear gate, be careful not to allow collision between the rear gate and the cargo when you are loading cargo on the roof. Otherwise, the rear gate will hit the cargo when opening and may cause damage to both the cargo and the rear gate.**

NOTE

For better fuel economy, do not carry unneeded cargo.

■ Roof molding and load carrier (if equipped)



⚠ CAUTION

- **For cargo carrying purposes, the roof moldings must be used together with a load carrier kit and the appropriate carrying attachments. Otherwise, damage to the roof or paint or a dangerous road hazard due to loss of cargo could result.**
- **When using the load carrier kit, make sure that the total weight of the load carrier kit, carrying attachments and cargo does not exceed the maximum load limit. Overloading may cause damage to the vehicle and create a safety hazard.**

Cargo can be carried after securing the load carrier kit to the roof moldings and installing the appropriate carrying attachments. When installing the load carrier kit, follow the manufacturer's instructions.

The maximum load limit of the cargo, load carrier kit and carrying attachments must not exceed **80 kg (176 lbs)**. Place the heaviest load at the bottom, nearest the roof, and evenly distribute the cargo. Always properly secure all cargo.

▼ Installing carrying attachments on the load carrier

When installing any carrying attachments such as a bike carrier, ski carrier, kayak carrier, cargo basket, etc. on the load carrier, follow the manufacturer's instructions and make sure that the attachments are securely fixed to the load carrier. Use only attachments designed specifically for the load carrier. A set of the load carrier is designed to carry loads (cargo and attachments) of not more than **75 kg (165 lbs)**. Before operating the vehicle, make sure that the cargo is properly secured on the attachments.

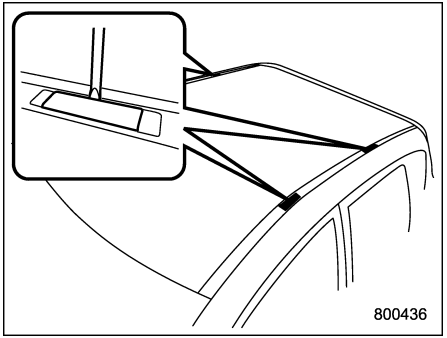
NOTE

Remember that the vehicle's center of gravity is altered with the weight of the load on the roof, thus affecting the driving characteristics.

Drive carefully. Avoid rapid starts, hard cornering and abrupt stops. Crosswind effects will be increased.

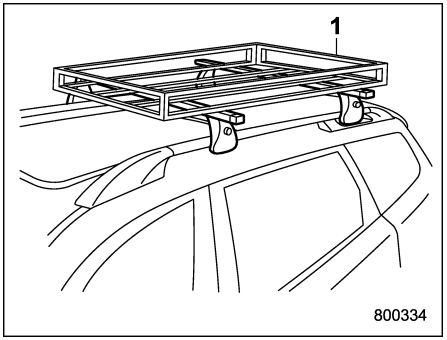
– CONTINUED –

▼ **Removal and installation of the load carrier**



Each of the two roof moldings has two mounting points for the load carrier kit. Each mounting point is fitted with a cover. Use a flat-head screwdriver to remove the covers. When installing the load carrier kit on the roof moldings, follow the manufacturer's instructions.

■ Roof rails (if equipped)



1) Roof rack

Luggage can be carried on the roof after securing the roof rack to the roof rails. When installing the roof rack on the roof rails, follow the manufacturer's instructions. The roof rails are designed to carry loads (luggage and roof rack) of no more than **80 kg (176 lbs)**.

⚠ CAUTION

- **When using the roof rack, make sure that the total carry load of the roof rack and luggage does not exceed 80 kg (176 lbs). Overloading may cause damage to the vehicle.**
- **For cargo carrying purposes, the roof rails must be used together with the roof rack. The roof rails must never be used alone to carry cargo. Otherwise, damage to the roof or paint, or a dangerous road hazard due to loss of cargo could result.**

NOTE

Remember that the vehicle's center of gravity is altered with the weight of the load on the roof, thus affecting driving characteristics.

Drive carefully. Avoid rapid starts, hard cornering and abrupt stops. Crosswind effects will be increased.

Trailer towing

⚠ WARNING

- **Use only the ball mount that is suitable for the trailer hitch. Use the hitch only as a weight carrying hitch. Do not use with any type of weight distributing hitch.**
- **The standard bumper beam must be installed after you remove the trailer hitch. We recommend that you consult a SUBARU dealer for purchase of a standard bumper beam if you do not have the original.**
- **Safety performance is decreased and there is increased risk of injury to passengers in the case of an accident if the trailer hitch or a standard bumper beam is not installed. One of them must always be installed on the vehicle.**
- **If a trailer hitch is installed, it is not possible to install the rear towing hook.**

Your vehicle is designed and intended to be used primarily as a passenger-carrying vehicle. Towing a trailer puts additional loads on your vehicle's engine, drive train, brakes, tires and suspension and has an adverse effect on fuel economy.

In some countries, there are some regulations which you have to observe when towing a trailer. If you do decide to tow a trailer, your safety and satisfaction depend upon proper use of correct equipment and cautious operation of your vehicle. We recommend that you seek the advice of your SUBARU dealer to assist you in purchasing a hitch and other necessary towing equipment appropriate for your vehicle. In addition, be sure to follow the instructions on correct installation and use provided by the trailer and other towing equipment manufacturers.

SUBARU assumes no responsibility for injuries or vehicle damage that result from trailer towing equipment, or from any errors or omissions in the instructions accompanying such equipment or for your failure to follow the proper instructions.

NOTE

For the model with Auto Start Stop system:

Auto Start Stop system will not operate when towing a trailer. Refer to "Auto Start Stop system" ☞7-49.

■ Maintenance

If you use your vehicle to tow a trailer, more frequent maintenance will be required due to the additional load. Refer to "Maintenance schedule" ☞11-3.

Under no circumstances should a trailer be towed with a new vehicle or a vehicle with any new powertrain component (engine, transmission, differential, wheel bearings, etc.) for the first 1,600 km (1,000 miles) of driving.

■ Towing weight

Before towing a trailer, we recommend that you confirm the towing capacity and ball coupling load with your nearest SUBARU dealer, the vehicle registration documents or the hitch installation manual and make sure your trailer is within the towing capacity.

The total trailer weight (trailer weight with brakes plus its cargo weight) must never exceed the towing capacity.

Remember that the ball coupling load will increase the load on the vehicle. Both the maximum permissible weight (MPW) and maximum permissible rear axle weight (rear MPAW) must not be exceeded.

– CONTINUED –

⚠ WARNING

Never exceed the maximum towing weight. Exceeding the maximum towing weight could cause personal injury and/or vehicle damage.

▼ **Non-turbo models and diesel engine models**

The stated trailer weights are only valid for elevations up to 1,000 m (3,250 ft) above sea level. At higher altitudes, the engine loses power as the elevation increases, resulting in a reduction of vehicle towing performance. Under these conditions, the "Maximum combined weight" should be reduced by 10% per 1,000 m (3,250 ft) of increased altitude. Please consider weight before driving.

NOTE

The "Maximum combined weight" is the sum of the "Maximum permissible weight" (MPW) and the "Maximum trailer weight".

■ Trailer hitches

The use of a genuine SUBARU trailer hitch is recommended. Genuine SUBARU hitches are available from your SUBARU dealer.

Regularly check that the hitch mounting bolts and nuts are tightened securely.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not modify the vehicle exhaust system, brake system, or other system when installing a hitch or other trailer towing equipment.

■ When you do not tow a trailer

⚠ CAUTION

The housing should be kept dirt and corrosion-free at the points of contact. The surfaces only require cleaning with a cloth. Grease or other lubricants should never be used.

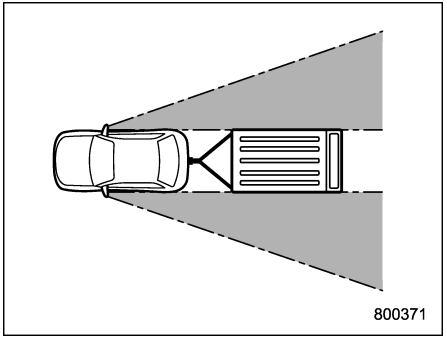
- If the hitch ball is a detachable type, the dummy should be inserted while the ball is uninstalled to prevent dirt.
- When the ball is not used, store the ball in the case or put the cap on.

■ Trailer safety chains

In case the trailer hitch connector or hitch ball should break or become disconnected, the trailer could get loose and create a traffic safety hazard.

For safety, always connect the towing vehicle and trailer with trailer safety chains. Two chains should be used in total, one for the right side and one for the left side trailer tongues. Pass the chains crossing each other under the trailer tongue to prevent the trailer from dropping onto the ground in case the trailer tongue should disconnect from the hitch ball. Allow sufficient slack in the chains taking tight-turn situations into account; however, be careful not to let them drag on the ground.

■ Side mirrors



Many countries have regulations requiring special outside mirrors when towing a trailer. After hitching a trailer to your vehicle, check that the standard side mirrors provide a good rearward field of view without significant blind spots. If significant blind spots occur with the vehicle's standard side mirrors, use additional outside mirrors that conform with regulations.

■ Trailer lights

Connection of trailer lights to your vehicle's electrical system requires modifications to the vehicle's lighting circuit to increase its capacity and accommodate wiring changes. To ensure the trailer lights are connected properly, we recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer. Check for proper operation of the turn signals and the brake lights each time you connect a trailer to your vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

Direct splicing or other improper connection of trailer lights may damage your vehicle's electrical system and cause a malfunction of your vehicle lighting system.

■ Tires

Make sure that all the tires on your vehicle are inflated to the pressure under towing conditions as shown on the tire placard located on the door pillar on the driver's side. Trailer tire condition, size, load rating and proper inflation pressure should be in accordance with the trailer manufacturer's specifications.

⚠ WARNING

Never tow a trailer when the temporary spare tire is used. The temporary spare tire is not designed to sustain the towing load. Use of the temporary spare tire when towing can result in failure of the spare tire and/or less stability of the vehicle and may lead to an accident.

■ Trailer towing tips

⚠ WARNING

- **Never exceed 80 km/h (50 mph) or legal towing speed limit, whichever is lower. Exceeding the speed limit could cause loss of vehicle stability and/or could lead to an accident.**
- **When towing a trailer, steering, stability, stopping distance and braking performance will be different when compared to normal operation. You should never drive at excessive speeds but always employ extra caution when towing a trailer. You should also keep the following tips in mind.**

⚠ CAUTION

Diesel engine models only:
The vehicle speed may decrease when climbing up a slope or during continuous high-load driving while towing a trailer. Therefore, please

– CONTINUED –

use extra caution when climbing up slopes while towing a trailer (for example, never attempt to pass vehicles while driving uphill, etc.). This control system is necessary for maintaining the ability of the vehicle cooling performance and does not indicate a malfunction. The vehicle speed performance while towing a trailer will return to normal when the load of the vehicle is decreased and the cooling performance returns to normal.

If your vehicle is equipped with SI-DRIVE, and when towing a trailer on an uphill slope, do not drive in the Intelligent (I) mode. It is recommend that you drive in the Sport (S) mode, or you may drive in the Sport Sharp (S#) mode (if equipped).
However, it is possible to tow a trailer in any mode of the SI-DRIVE on a downhill slope.

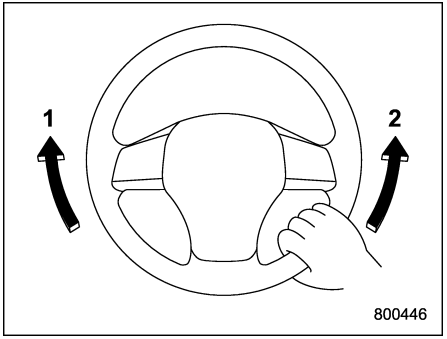
▼ Before starting out on a trip

- Be sure to check regulations concerning the maximum speed or driving restrictions for vehicles towing trailers. If you are driving across several countries, check each country's requirement before leaving home, because regulations may vary.
- Check that the vehicle and vehicle-to-hitch mounting are in good condition. If any problems are apparent, do not tow the trailer.
- Check that the vehicle rests horizontally with the trailer attached. If the vehicle is tipped sharply up at the front and down at the rear, check the drawbar weight and the weight on the rear axle do not exceed the maximum permissible rear axle weight.
- Check that the tire pressures are correct.
- Check that the vehicle and trailer are connected properly. Confirm that:
  – the trailer tongue is connected properly to the hitch ball.
  – the trailer lights connector is connected properly and trailer's brake lights illuminate when the vehicle's brake pedal is depressed, and that the trailer's turn signal lights flash when the vehicle's turn signal lever is operated.
  – the safety chains are connected properly.
  – all cargo in the trailer is secured safely in position.
  – the side mirrors provide a good rearward field of view without a significant blind spot.

▼ Driving with a trailer

- You should allow for considerably more stopping distance when towing a trailer. Avoid sudden braking because it may result in skidding or jackknifing and loss of control.
- Avoid abrupt starts and sudden accelerations. For MT models, always start out in first gear and release the clutch pedal at moderate engine revolution.
- Avoid uneven steering, sharp turns and rapid lane changes.
- Slow down before turning. Make a longer than normal turning radius because the trailer wheels will be closer than the vehicle wheels to the inside of the turn. In a tight turn, the trailer could hit your vehicle.
- Sufficient time should be taken to learn the "feel" of the vehicle/trailer combination before starting out on a trip. In an area free of traffic, practice turning, stopping and backing up.
- Crosswinds will adversely affect the handling of your vehicle and trailer, causing sway. Crosswinds can be due to weather conditions or the passing of large trucks or buses. If swaying occurs, firmly grip the steering wheel and promptly begin decelerating your vehicle at a gradual pace.

● When passing other vehicles, considerable distance is required because of the added weight and length caused by attaching the trailer to your vehicle.



1) Left turn
2) Right turn

● Backing up with a trailer is difficult and takes practice. When backing up with a trailer, never accelerate or steer rapidly. When turning back, grip the bottom of the steering wheel with one hand and turn it to the left for a left turn, and turn it to the right for a right turn.

● If the ABS warning light illuminates while the vehicle is in motion, stop towing the trailer. We recommend that you have repairs performed immediately by your nearest SUBARU dealer.

▼ Driving on grades

● Before going down a steep hill, slow down and shift into lower gear (if necessary, use 1st gear) in order to utilize the engine braking effect and prevent overheating of your vehicle's brakes. Do not make sudden downshifts.

● When driving uphill in hot weather, the air conditioner may turn off automatically to protect the engine from overheating.

● When driving uphill in hot weather, pay attention to the following indicators because the engine and transmission are relatively prone to overheating.

– Coolant temperature high warning light

– AT OIL TEMP warning light (CVT models)

● If any of the following conditions occur, immediately turn off the air conditioner and stop the vehicle in the nearest safe location. Refer to "If you park your vehicle in case of an emergency" ☞9-2 and "Engine overheating" ☞9-13.

– Coolant temperature high warning light illuminates. Refer to "Coolant temperature low indicator light/Coolant temperature high warning light" ☞3-18.

– AT OIL TEMP warning light illuminates (CVT models). Refer to "AT OIL TEMP warning light (CVT models)" ☞3-20.

● For CVT models, avoid using the accelerator pedal to stay stationary on an uphill slope instead of using the parking brake or foot brake. That may cause the transmission fluid to overheat.

● For CVT models, place the select lever as follows.

Uphill slopes: "D" position

Downhill slopes: A low-speed gear position to use engine braking (models with manual mode)/"L" position (models with "L" position)

▼ Parking on a grade

Always block the wheels under both vehicle and trailer when parking. Apply the parking brake firmly. You should not park on a hill or slope. If parking on a hill or slope cannot be avoided, you should take the following steps:

1. Apply the brakes and hold the pedal down.
2. Have someone place wheel blocks under both the vehicle and trailer wheels.
3. When the wheel blocks are in place, release the regular brakes slowly until the blocks absorb the load.
4. Apply the regular brakes and then apply the parking brake; slowly release the regular brakes.

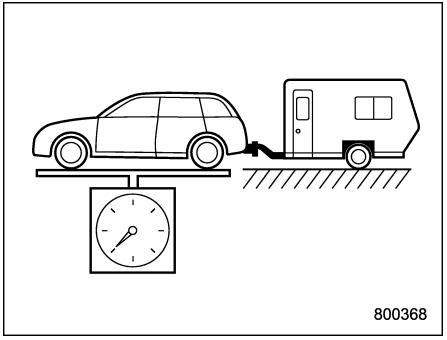
– CONTINUED –

5. Shift into 1st or reverse gear (MT models) or “P” position (CVT models) and shut off the engine.

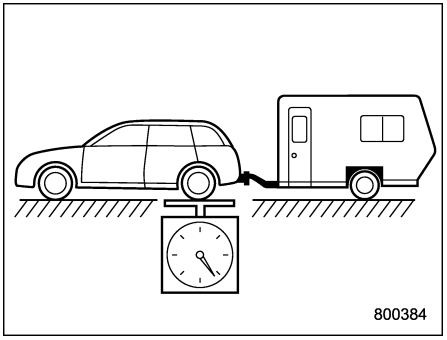
■ Additional information for Europe

The following information represents the European statutory and regulatory requirements of EEC 1230/2012.

▼ Maximum permissible vehicle weight (MPW) and maximum permissible rear axle weight (rear MPAW) for trailer towing



MPW



Rear MPAW

Model			MPW at towing (kg)	Rear MPAW at towing (kg)
Petrol engine models	Non-turbo models	6MT	2,065	1,175
		CVT	2,065	1,175
	Turbo models	CVT	2,160	1,175
Diesel engine models		6MT	2,160	1,175
		CVT	2,160	1,175

6MT: 6-speed manual transmission
CVT: Continuously variable transmission

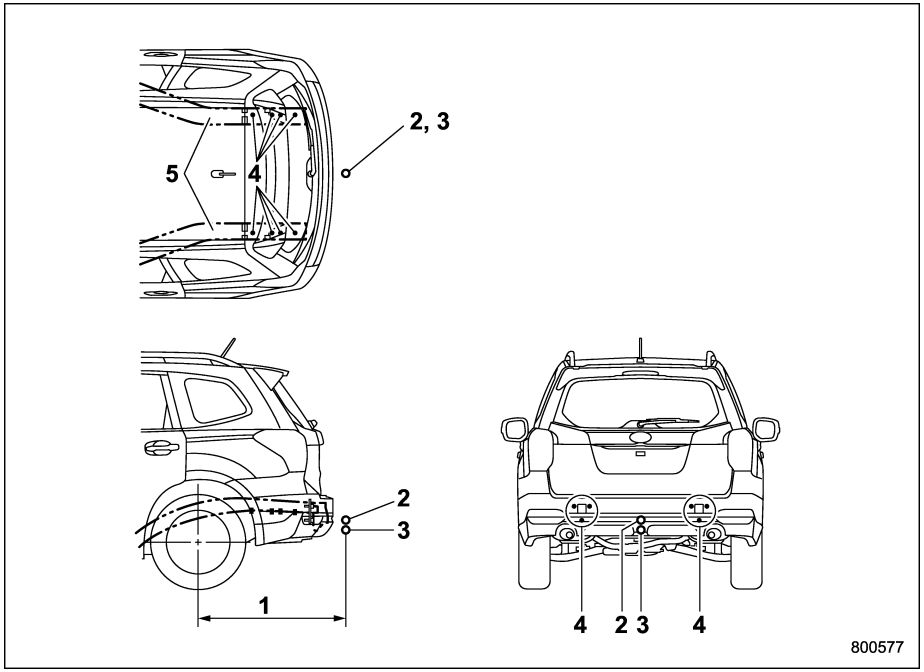
▼ **The technically permissible maximum mass at the coupling point (ball coupling load)**

80 kg

▼ **Mounting points of the coupling device**

The mounting points of the coupling on the towing vehicle are shown in the diagram.

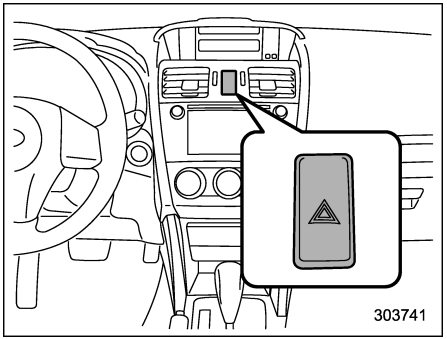
– CONTINUED –



1) Maximum permissible rear overhang for the coupling point: 1,091 mm (43 in)
2) Coupling (models with self levelizer)
3) Coupling (models without self levelizer)
4) Fixing points: Four places under the rear frame and three places on the rear side of the rear frame for each side
5) Rear frame

If you park your vehicle in case of an emergency 9-2
Temporary spare tire (if equipped) 9-2
Maintenance tools 9-3
Screwdriver and wheel nut wrench 9-4
Under the rear floor 9-4
Flat tires 9-5
Changing flat tire 9-5
Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) (if equipped) 9-9
Jump starting 9-10
Battery Precautions! 9-10
Precautions when jump starting! 9-11
How to jump start 9-11
Engine overheating 9-13
If steam is coming from the engine compartment 9-13
If no steam is coming from the engine compartment 9-13
Towing 9-14
Towing and tie-down hooks 9-14
Using a flat-bed truck 9-16
Towing with all wheels on the ground 9-17
Access key – if access key does not operate properly 9-17
Locking and unlocking 9-18
Switching power 9-18
Starting engine 9-18
Rear gate – if the rear gate cannot be opened 9-19
Models with double locking system 9-20
Power rear gate - if power rear gate does not operate properly 9-20
When the power rear gate is deactivated 9-20
When the rear gate cannot be unlocked 9-21
When the rear gate cannot be closed 9-21
Running out of fuel (diesel engine models) 9-22
If your vehicle is involved in an accident 9-23

If you park your vehicle in case of an emergency



The hazard warning flasher should be used in day or night to warn other drivers when you have to park your vehicle under emergency conditions.

Avoid stopping on the road. It is best to safely pull off the road if a problem occurs.

The hazard warning flasher can be activated regardless of the ignition switch position.

Turn on the hazard warning by pushing the hazard warning flasher switch. Turn it off by pushing the switch again.

NOTE

When the hazard warning flasher is on, the turn signals do not work.

Temporary spare tire (if equipped)

⚠ WARNING

- **Never tow a trailer when the temporary spare tire is used. The temporary spare tire is not designed to sustain the towing load. Use of the temporary spare tire when towing can result in failure of the spare tire and/or less stability of the vehicle and may lead to an accident.**
- **When a spare tire is mounted or a wheel rim is replaced without the original pressure sensor/transmitter being transferred, the low tire pressure warning light will illuminate steadily after blinking for approximately one minute. This indicates the tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) is unable to monitor all four road wheels. Contact your SUBARU dealer as soon as possible for tire and sensor replacement and/or system resetting.**

⚠ CAUTION

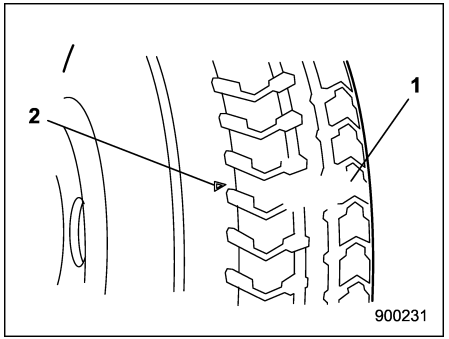
- **Never use any temporary spare tire other than the original. Using other sizes may result in severe mechanical damage to the drive train of your vehicle.**
- **Always conform to the following instructions when using the temporary spare tire. Otherwise, a seriously dangerous situation may occur.**

The temporary spare tire is smaller and lighter than a conventional tire and is designed for emergency use only. Remove the temporary spare tire and reinstall the conventional tire as soon as possible because the spare tire is designed only for temporary use.

Check the inflation pressure of the temporary spare tire periodically to keep the tire ready for use. For the correct pressure, refer to "Tires" ☞12-12.

When using the temporary spare tire, note the following.

- Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).
- Do not put a tire chain on the temporary spare tire. Because of the smaller tire size, a tire chain will not fit properly.
- Do not use two or more temporary spare tires at the same time.
- Do not drive over obstacles. This tire has a smaller diameter, so road clearance is reduced.



1) Tread wear indicator bar
2) Indicator location mark

- When the wear indicator appears on the tread, replace the tire.
- The temporary spare tire must be used only on a rear wheel. If a front wheel tire gets punctured, replace the wheel with a rear wheel and install the temporary spare tire in place of the removed rear wheel.

Maintenance tools

Your vehicle is equipped with the following maintenance tools:

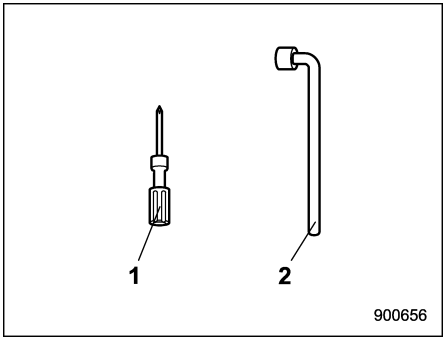
- Jack
- Jack handle
- Screwdriver
- Towing hook (eye bolt)
- Wheel nut wrench

NOTE

This jack complies with the Machinery Directive 2006/42/EC. A copy of the original Declaration of Conformity is found in chapter 13.

– CONTINUED –

■ Screwdriver and wheel nut wrench



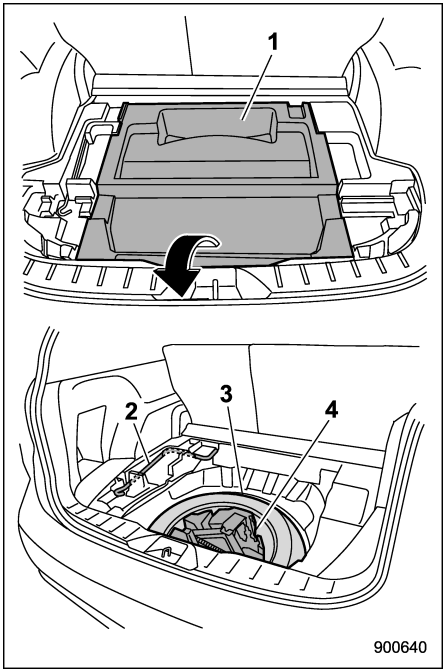
1) Screwdriver
2) Wheel nut wrench

The screwdriver, wheel nut wrench, etc. are stored in your vehicle.

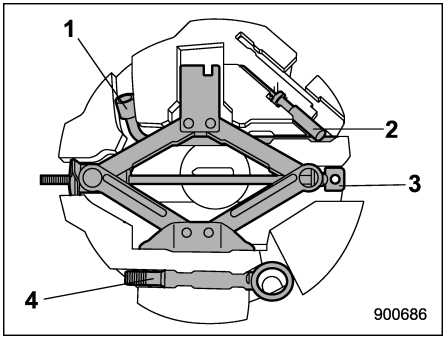
The tools can also be stored in the tool bucket.

■ Under the rear floor

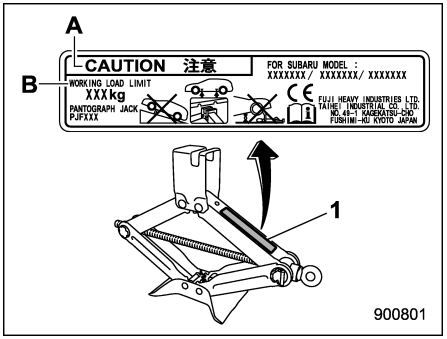
The jack, jack handle and towing hook are stored as shown in the following illustrations.



1) Under-floor storage compartment (if equipped) (Refer to “Under-floor storage compartment” ☞6-17.)
2) Jack handle
3) Spare tire
4) Tool bucket



1) Wheel nut wrench
2) Screwdriver
3) Jack
4) Towing hook (eye bolt)



Example of jack label
1) Jack label
A) CAUTION
B) WORKING LOAD LIMIT

NOTE

• For how to use the jack, refer to "Flat tires" ☞9-5.
• The following items may be different depending on the model.
– The shape of the storage compartment
– The locations of some maintenance tools

Flat tires

If you have a flat tire while driving, never brake suddenly; keep driving straight ahead while gradually reducing speed. Then slowly pull off the road to a safe place.

■ Changing flat tire

▼ Safety precautions

⚠ WARNING

• Do not jack up the vehicle on an incline or a loose road surface. The jack can come out of the jacking point or sink into the ground and this can result in a serious accident.
• Use only the jack provided with your vehicle. The jack supplied with the vehicle is designed only for changing a tire. Never get under the vehicle while supporting the vehicle with this jack.
• Always turn off the engine before raising the flat tire off the ground using the jack. Never swing or push the vehicle supported with the jack. The jack can come out of the jacking point due to a jolt and this can result in a serious accident.

▽ Australia and New Zealand models

⚠ WARNING

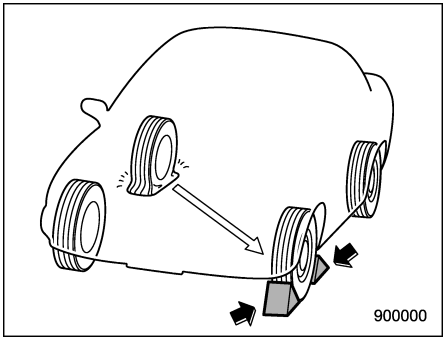
For Australia and New Zealand, the following instructions are supplied by the Australian/New Zealand Standard™ (AS/NZS 2693:2007). Be sure to obey the following instructions for your safety.
• That the jack should be used on level firm ground wherever possible.
• That it is recommended that the wheels of the vehicle be chocked, and that no person should remain in a vehicle that is being jacked.
• That no person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a

– CONTINUED –

jack.

▼ Procedure

1. Park on a hard, level surface, whenever possible, then stop the engine.
2. Set the parking brake securely and shift the shift lever in reverse (MT models) or the select lever in the “P” (Park) position (CVT models).
3. Turn on the hazard warning flasher and have everyone get out of the vehicle.

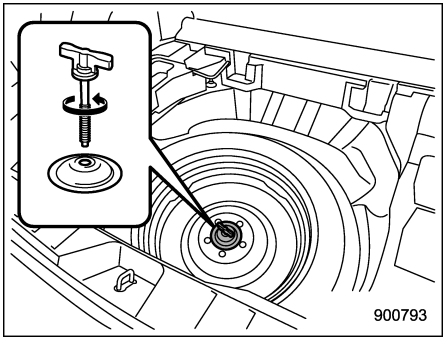


4. Put wheel blocks at the front and rear of the tire diagonally opposite the flat tire.
5. Take out the jack, jack handle and wheel nut wrench.

Refer to “Maintenance tools” ☞9-3.

NOTE

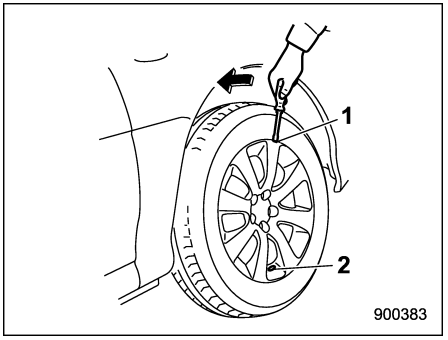
Make sure that the jack is well lubricated before using it.



6. Turn the attaching bolt counterclockwise, then take the spare tire out.

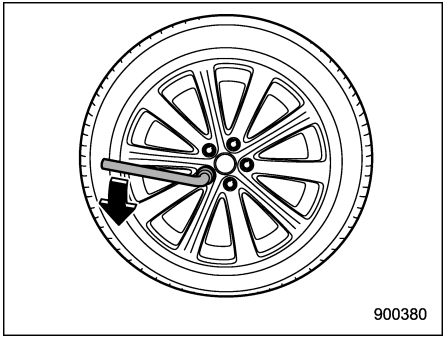
NOTE

If the spare tire provided in your vehicle is a temporary spare tire, read carefully “Temporary spare tire” ☞9-2 and strictly follow the instructions.

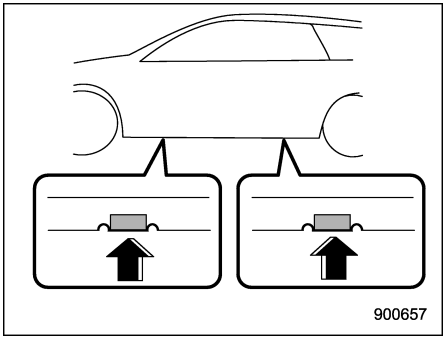


1) Notch
2) Valve hole

7. If your vehicle has wheel covers, insert a flat-head screwdriver into the notch part on the opposite side of the valve hole to remove the wheel cover.

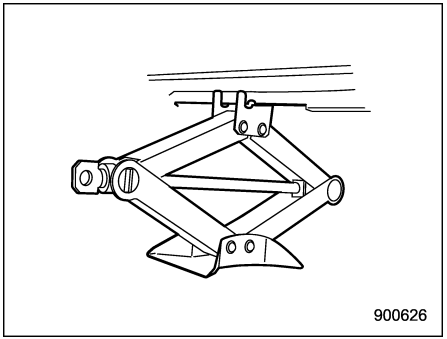


8. Loosen the wheel nuts using the wheel nut wrench but do not remove the nuts.

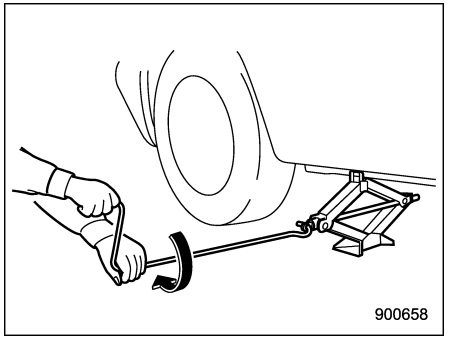


Jack-up points

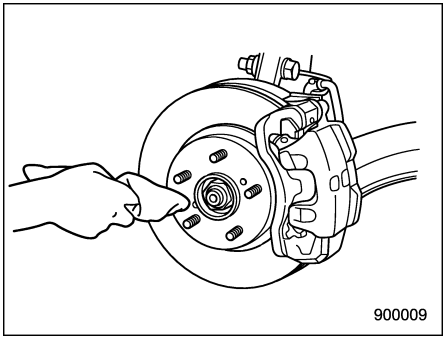
9. Place the jack under the side sill at the front or rear jack-up point closest to the flat tire.

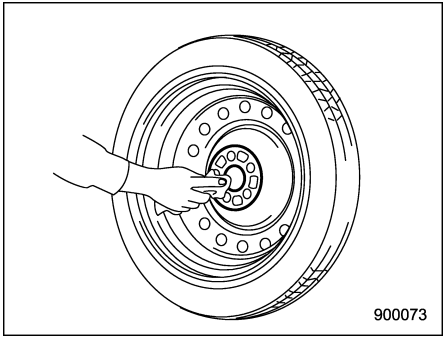


Turn the jackscrew by hand until the jack head engages firmly into the jack-up point.



10. Insert the jack handle into the jack-screw, and turn the handle until the tire clears the ground. Do not raise the vehicle higher than necessary.
11. Remove the wheel nuts and the flat tire.





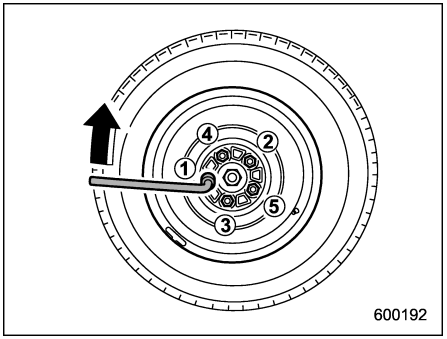
12. Before putting the spare tire on, clean the mounting surface of the wheel and hub with a cloth.
13. Put on the spare tire. Replace the wheel nuts. Tighten them by hand.

– CONTINUED –

⚠ WARNING

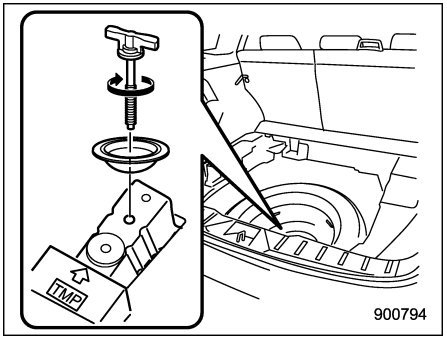
Do not use oil or grease on the wheel studs or nuts when the spare tire is installed. This could cause the nuts to become loose and lead to an accident.

14. Turn the jack handle counterclockwise to lower the vehicle.

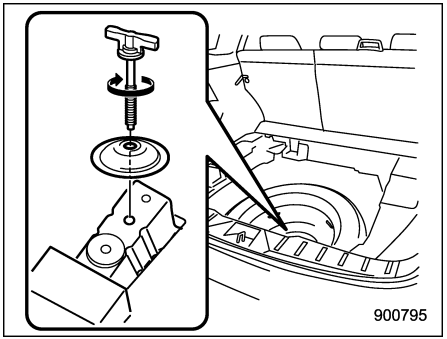


15. Use the wheel nut wrench to securely tighten the wheel nuts to the specified torque, following the tightening order in the illustration.

For the wheel nut tightening torque, refer to “Tires” ☞12-12. Never use your foot on the wheel nut wrench or a pipe extension on the wrench because you may exceed the specified torque. Have the wheel nut torque checked at the nearest automotive service facility.

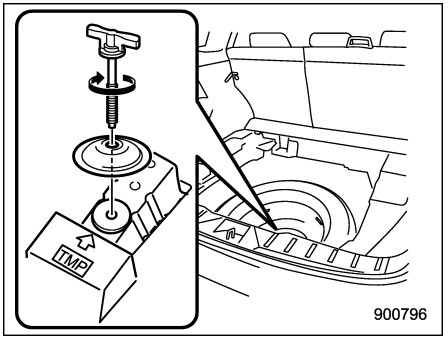


Except Australia models

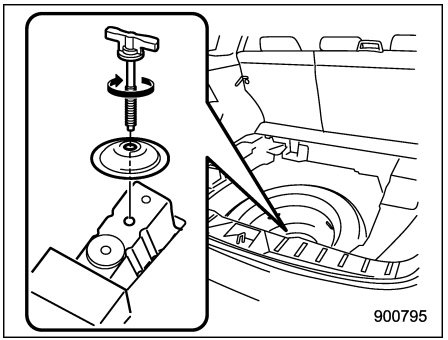


Australia models

16. Store the flat tire in the spare tire compartment. Be sure to place the spacer in the manner shown in the illustration, and then tighten the bolt in the front side of the bracket.



Except Australia models



Australia models

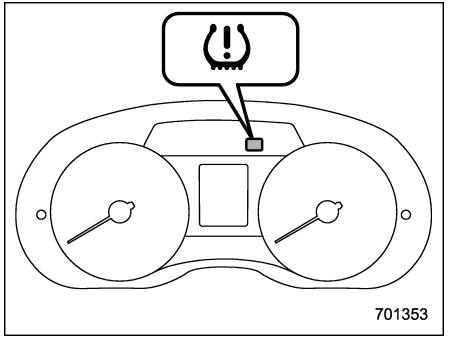
17. When storing the spare tire after

repairing a flat tire, be sure to place the spacer in the manner shown in the illustration, and then tighten the bolt in the rear side (except Australia models)/in the front side (Australia models) of the bracket.

⚠ WARNING

Never place a flat tire or tire changing tools in the passenger compartment after changing a flat tire. In a sudden stop or collisions, loose equipment could strike occupants and cause injury. Store the tire and all tools in the proper place.

■ Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) (if equipped)



The tire pressure monitoring system provides the driver with a warning message by sending a signal from a sensor that is installed in each wheel when a tire pressure is severely low relative to the selected TPMS mode.

The tire pressure monitoring system will activate only when the vehicle is driven at speeds above 40 km/h (25 mph). Also, this system may not react immediately to a sudden drop in tire pressure (for example, a blow-out caused by running over a sharp object).

⚠ WARNING

If the low tire pressure warning light illuminates while driving, never brake suddenly and keep driving straight ahead while gradually reducing speed. Then slowly pull off the road to a safe place. Otherwise an accident involving serious vehicle damage and serious personal injury could occur.

Check the pressure for all four tires and adjust the pressure according to the most appropriate one of three (normal, loading, towing) COLD tire pressure values shown on the tire placard located on the door pillar on the driver's side. If this light still illuminates while driving after adjusting the tire pressure, a tire may have significant damage and a fast leak that causes the tire to lose air rapidly. If you have a flat tire, replace it with a spare tire as soon as possible.

When a spare tire is mounted or a wheel rim is replaced without the original pressure sensor/transmitter being transferred, the low tire pressure warning light will illuminate steadily after blinking for approximately one minute. This indicates

– CONTINUED –

the TPMS is unable to monitor all four road wheels. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer as soon as possible for tire and sensor replacement and/or system resetting.

When a tire is repaired with liquid sealant, the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may not operate properly. If a liquid sealant is used, we recommend that you contact your nearest SUBARU dealer or other qualified service shop as soon as possible. Make sure to replace the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter when replacing the tire. You may reuse the wheel if there is no damage to it and if the sealant residue is properly cleaned off.

If the light illuminates steadily after blinking for approximately one minute, we recommend that you promptly contact a SUBARU dealer to have the system inspected.

Jump starting

■ Battery Precautions!

⚠ WARNING

Read these instructions carefully:

To ensure safe and correct handling of your battery, read the following precautions carefully before using the battery or inspecting it.

Wear eye protection:

Always wear eye protection when working near your vehicle's battery. Battery fluid contains sulfuric acid, so it can cause blindness if splashed into your eyes. Also, batteries emit highly flammable, explosive hydrogen gas. Eye protection is vital for protection in the event that this gas ignites.

Battery fluid contains sulfuric acid:

Since battery fluid contains sulfuric acid, be sure to wear eye protection and protective gloves when inspecting your vehicle's battery. Avoid tipping the battery and subjecting it to shocks since this could cause fluid to spill.

Under no circumstances allow battery fluid to make contact with your skin, eyes, or clothing since this can cause blindness and burns. If battery fluid splashes onto your skin, eyes or clothing, wash it away immediately with plenty of water. If battery fluid splashes into your eyes, seek medical attention immediately.

If battery fluid is accidentally swallowed, immediately drink a large amount of milk or water, and seek medical attention immediately.

Battery fluid is corrosive. If it splashes onto your vehicle's paintwork or fabrics, wash it away immediately with plenty of water.

Keep children away:

Batteries must be handled only by persons who are aware of the potential hazards. Take particular care to keep children away from your vehicle's battery. Improper handling

can cause blindness and burns.

Keep flames away:

Before working on or near your vehicle's battery, extinguish all cigarettes, matches, and lighters. Also, keep the battery away from flammable items and electrical sparks. Since batteries emit highly flammable, explosive hydrogen gas, any flames or sparks in the vicinity could cause an explosion.

When working near your vehicle's battery, take care that metal tools do not short-circuit the battery's (+) and (−) terminals or connect the battery's (+) terminal to the vehicle's body. A short circuit could create electrical sparks and lead to an explosion.

To prevent electrical sparks, all rings, wristwatches, and other metal accessories must be taken off before work is carried out on or near the battery.

Prevent explosions:

While being charged, batteries emit highly flammable, explosive hydrogen gas. To prevent an explosion, charge your vehicle's battery in a well ventilated area and keep flames away.

■ Precautions when jump starting!

WARNING

- **Never attempt jump starting if the discharged battery is frozen. It could cause the battery to burst or explode.**
- **Be sure the jumper cables and clamps on them do not have loose or missing insulation.**

  Do not jump start unless cables in suitable condition are available.
- **A running engine can be dangerous. Keep your fingers, hands, clothing, hair and tools away from the cooling fan, belts and any other moving engine parts. Removing rings, watches and ties is advisable.**
- **Jump starting is dangerous if it done incorrectly. If you are unsure about the proper procedure for jump starting, consult a competent mechanic.**

CAUTION

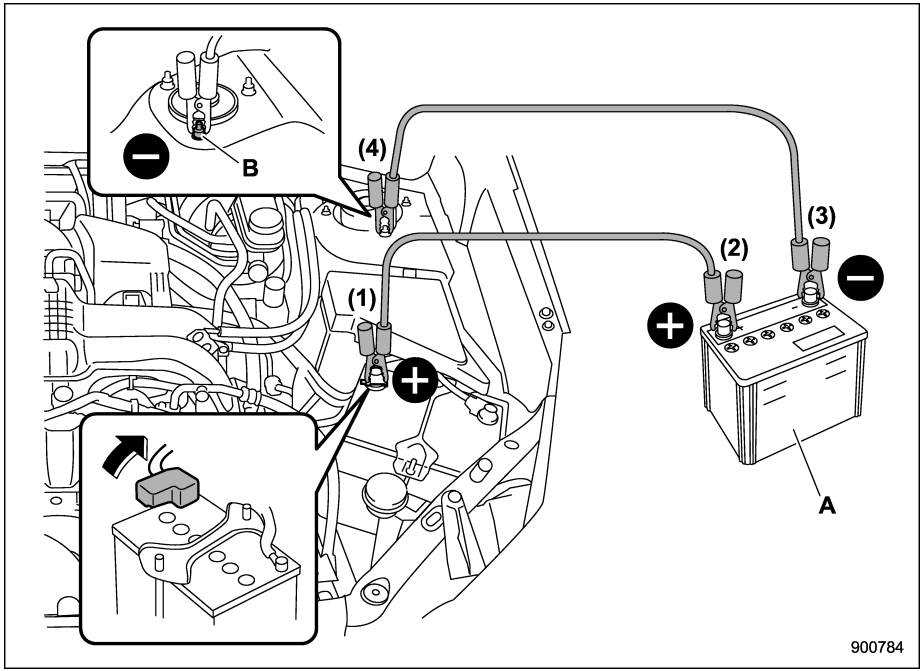
The battery used for boosting must be 12 V. Do not jump start unless you are sure that the booster battery is correct.

When your vehicle does not start due to a run down (discharged) battery, the vehicle may be jump started by connecting your battery to another battery (called the booster battery) with jumper cables.

■ How to jump start

1. Make sure the booster battery is 12 volts and the negative terminal is grounded.
2. If the booster battery is in another vehicle, do not let the two vehicles touch.
3. Turn off all unnecessary lights and accessories.
4. Connect the jumper cables exactly in the sequence illustrated.

– CONTINUED –



A) Booster battery
B) Strut mounting nut

(1) Connect one jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal on the discharged battery.
(2) Connect the other end of the jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the booster battery.
(3) Connect one end of the other cable to the negative (−) terminal of the booster battery.
(4) Connect the other end of the cable to the strut mounting nut.

Make sure that the cables are not near any moving parts and that the cable clamps are not in contact with any other metal.

5. Start the engine of the vehicle with the booster battery and run it at moderate speed. Then start the engine of the vehicle that has the discharged battery.

6. When finished, carefully disconnect the cables in exactly the reverse order.

Engine overheating

⚠ WARNING

Never attempt to remove the radiator cap until the engine has been shut off and has fully cooled down. When the engine is hot, the coolant is under pressure. Removing the cap while the engine is still hot could release a spray of boiling hot coolant, which could burn you very seriously.

If the engine overheats, safely pull off the road and stop the vehicle in a safe location.

■ If steam is coming from the engine compartment

- Turn off the engine and get everyone away from the vehicle until it cools down.
- We recommend that you contact an authorized SUBARU dealer.

■ If no steam is coming from the engine compartment

1. Keep the engine running at idling speed.
2. Open the engine hood to ventilate the engine compartment. Refer to “Engine hood” ☞11-11.

Confirm that the cooling fan is turning. If the fan is not turning, immediately turn off the engine and contact your authorized dealer for repair.

3. After the coolant temperature high warning light that has blinked or illuminated in **RED** turns off, turn off the engine. For details about the warning light, refer to “Coolant temperature low indicator light/ Coolant temperature high warning light” ☞3-18.
4. After the engine has fully cooled down, check the coolant level in the reserve tank. If the coolant level is below the “LOW” mark, add coolant up to the “FULL” mark.

NOTE

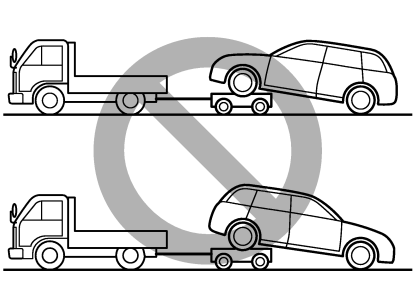
For details about how to check the coolant level or how to add coolant, refer to “Engine coolant” ☞11-21.

5. If there is no coolant in the reserve tank, add coolant to the reserve tank. Then remove the radiator cap and fill the radiator with coolant.

If you have to remove the radiator cap from a hot radiator, first wrap a thick cloth around the radiator cap, then turn the cap counterclockwise slowly without pressing down until it stops. Release the pressure from the radiator. After the pressure has been fully released, remove the cap by pressing down and turning it.

Towing

If towing is necessary, it is best done by your SUBARU dealer or a commercial towing service. Observe the following procedures for safety.



900487

⚠ WARNING

Never tow AWD models (both CVT and MT) with the front wheels raised off the ground while the rear wheels are on the ground, or with the rear wheels raised off the ground while the front wheels are on the ground. This will cause the vehicle to spin away due to the operation or deterioration of the center differential.

■ Towing and tie-down hooks

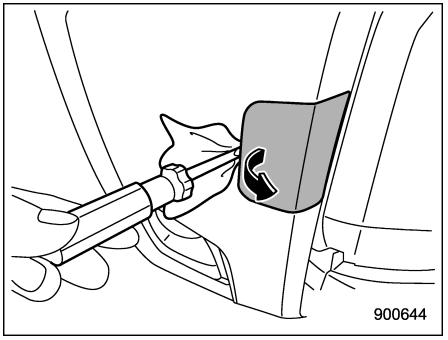
The towing hooks should be used only in an emergency (e.g., to free a stuck vehicle from mud, sand or snow).

⚠ CAUTION

- **Use only the specified towing hook and tie-down hook. Never use suspension parts or other parts of the body for towing or tie-down purposes.**
- **To prevent deformation to the front bumper and the towing hook, do not apply excessive lateral load to the towing hook.**

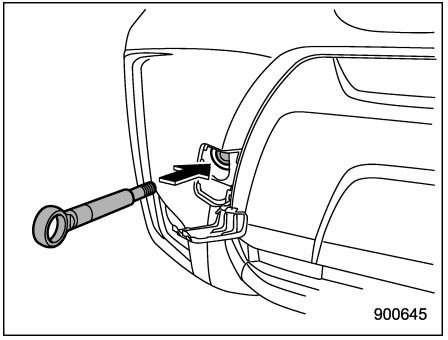
Front towing hook:

1. Take the towing hook, screwdriver and jack handle out of the cargo area.



900644

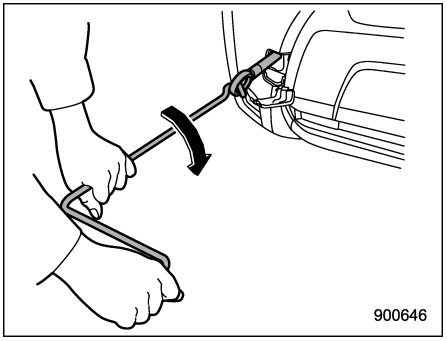
2. Cover the tip of a flat-head screwdriver with vinyl tape or cloth so that it will not scratch the bumper. Insert the flat-head screwdriver into the cutout of the cover and pry open the cover.



900645

3. Screw the towing hook into the thread

hole until its thread can no longer be seen.



4. Tighten the towing hook securely using the jack handle.

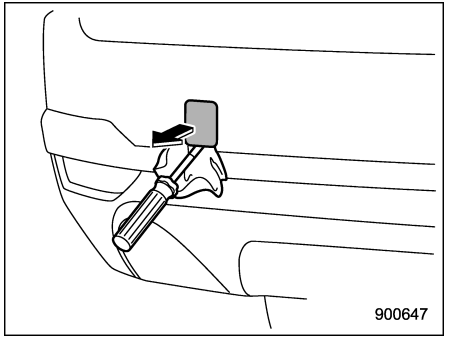
After towing, remove the towing hook from the vehicle and return it to its storage position.
Fit the towing hook cover on the bumper.

⚠ WARNING

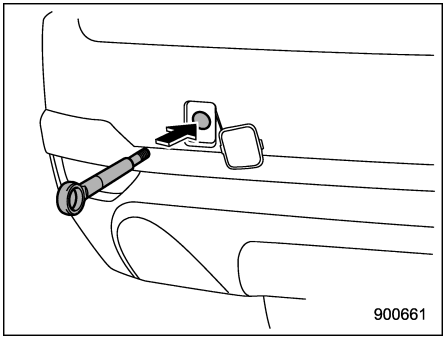
- **Do not use the towing hook except when towing your vehicle.**
- **Be sure to remove the towing hook after towing. Leaving the towing hook mounted on the vehicle could interfere with proper operation of the SRS airbag system in a frontal collision.**

Rear towing hook:

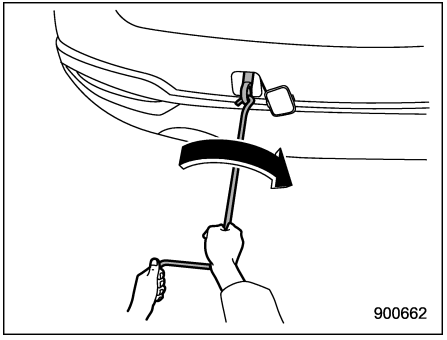
1. Take the towing hook, screwdriver and jack handle out of the cargo area.



2. Pry off the cover on the rear bumper using a screwdriver, and you will find a threaded hole for attaching the towing hook.



3. Screw the towing hook into the threaded hole until its thread can no longer be seen.



4. Tighten the towing hook securely using the jack handle.

– CONTINUED –

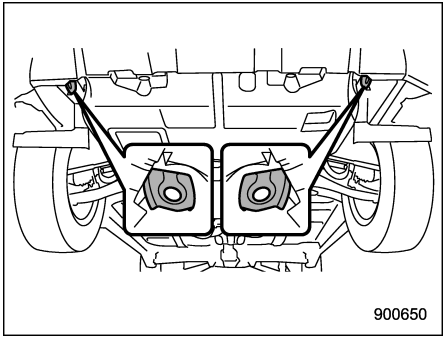
After towing, remove the towing hook from the vehicle and return it to its storage position.

Fit the towing hook cover on the bumper.

⚠ WARNING

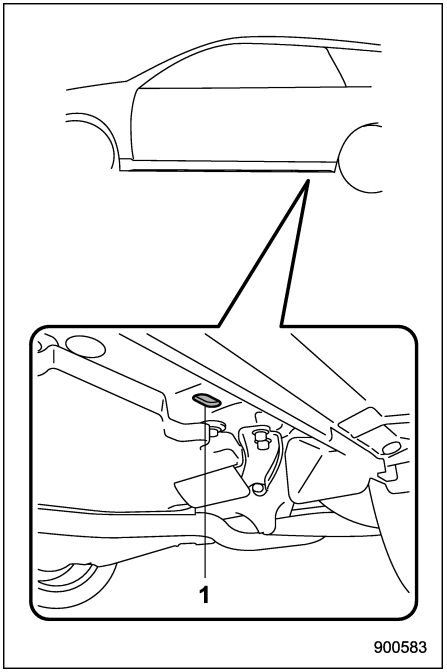
Do not use the towing hook except when towing your vehicle.

Front tie-down hooks:



The front tie-down hooks are located between each of the front tires and the front bumper.

Rear tie-down holes:



1) Rear tie-down hole

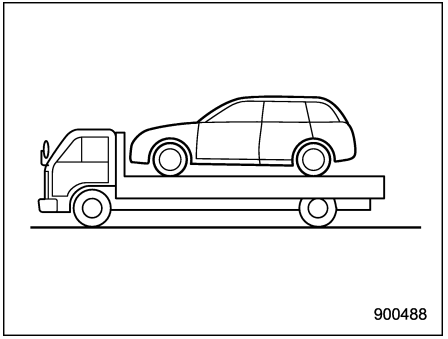
The rear tie-down holes are located near each of the jack-up reinforcements.

There is a plug in each rear tie-down hole. To use the rear tie-down holes, remove the plugs. After using the rear tie-down holes, return the plugs to their original places.

⚠ WARNING

Use the rear tie-down holes only for downward anchoring. If they are used to anchor the vehicle in any other direction, cables may slip out of the holes, possibly causing a dangerous situation.

■ Using a flat-bed truck



This is the best way to transport your vehicle. Use the following procedures to ensure safe transportation.

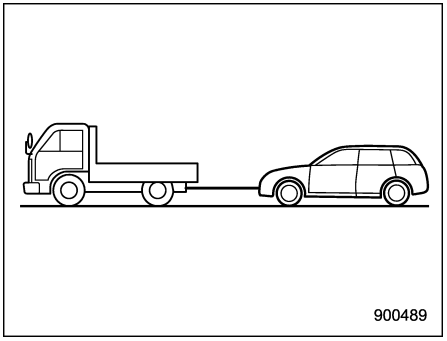
1. Shift the select lever into the “P” position for CVT models or the shift lever

into “1st” for MT models.

2. Apply the parking brake firmly.

3. Secure the vehicle onto the carrier properly with safety chains. Each of safety chain should be equally tightened and care must be taken not to pull the chains so tightly that the suspension bottoms out.

■ Towing with all wheels on the ground



1. Release the parking brake and put the transmission in neutral.

2. The ignition switch should be in the “ON” position while the vehicle is being towed.

3. Take up slack in the towline slowly to prevent damage to the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

- **Never turn the ignition switch to the “LOCK”/“OFF” position while the vehicle is being towed because the steering wheel and the direction of the wheels will be locked.**
- **Remember that the brake booster and power steering do not function when the engine is not running. Because the engine is turned off, it will take greater effort to operate the brake pedal and steering wheel.**

⚠ CAUTION

- **If transmission failure occurs, transport your vehicle on a flat-bed truck.**
- **For CVT models, the traveling speed must be limited to less than 30 km/h (20 mph) and the traveling distance to less than 50 km (31 miles). For greater speeds and distances, transport your vehicle on a flat-bed truck.**

Access key – if access key does not operate properly

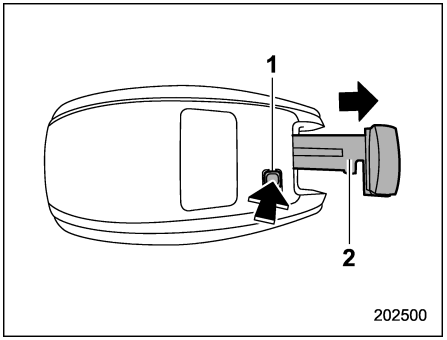
⚠ CAUTION

Keep metallic objects, magnetic sources and signal transmitters away from the area between the access key and the push-button ignition switch. They may interfere with the communication between the access key and the push-button ignition switch.

If the locking/unlocking procedures, power switch procedures or engine start procedures cannot be operated because of strong radio signals in the surrounding area or low battery condition of the access key, perform the following procedure. When the battery of the access key is discharged, replace it with a new one. Refer to “Replacing battery of access key” ☞11-57.

– CONTINUED –

■ Locking and unlocking



1) Release button
2) Mechanical key

While pressing the release button of the access key, take out the mechanical key.

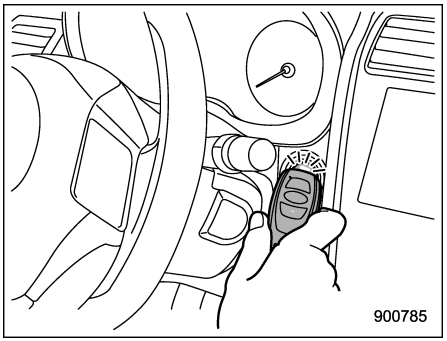
Lock or unlock the driver's door with the mechanical key according to the procedure described in "Locking and unlocking from the outside with key" ☞2-4.

NOTE

After locking or unlocking, be sure to reinsert the mechanical key into the access key.

■ Switching power

1. Apply the parking brake.
2. Shift the shift lever into neutral (MT models) or the select lever into the "P" position (CVT models).
3. Depress the clutch pedal (MT models) or brake pedal (CVT models).



4. Hold the access key with the buttons facing you, and touch the push-button ignition switch with it.

When the communication between the access key and the vehicle is completed, a chime (ding) will sound, and the operation indicator on the push-button ignition switch illuminates in green. At the same time, the status of the push-button ignition switch changes to either of the following.

- When the keyless access with push-button start system is deactivated: "ACC"
- Under other conditions: "ON"

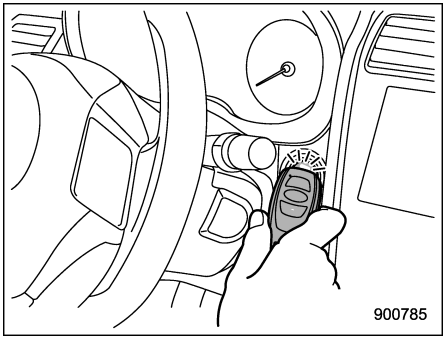
5. When the keyless access with push-button start system is deactivated, press the push-button ignition switch with the clutch pedal (MT models) or brake pedal (CVT models) released. The status of the push-button ignition switch then changes to "ON".

NOTE

If the power does not switch even though the above procedure was followed precisely, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.

■ Starting engine

1. Apply the parking brake.
2. Shift the shift lever into neutral (MT models) or the select lever into the "P" position (CVT models).
3. Depress the brake pedal.
4. Depress the clutch pedal (MT models).



5. Hold the access key with the buttons facing you, and touch the push-button ignition switch with it.

When the communication between the access key and the vehicle is completed, a chime (ding) will sound, and the operation indicator on the push-button ignition switch illuminates in green. At the same time, the push-button ignition switch turns to the “ACC” or “ON” position.

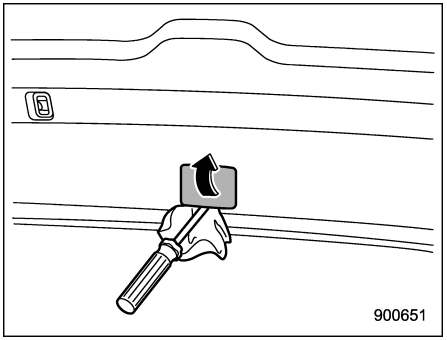
6. Within 5 seconds after the operation indicator illuminates in green, while depressing the brake pedal (all models) and the clutch pedal (MT models), press the push-button ignition switch.

NOTE

If the engine does not start even though the above procedure was followed precisely, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.

Rear gate – if the rear gate cannot be opened

In the event that you cannot open the rear gate by operating the rear gate opener, you can open it from inside the cargo area.

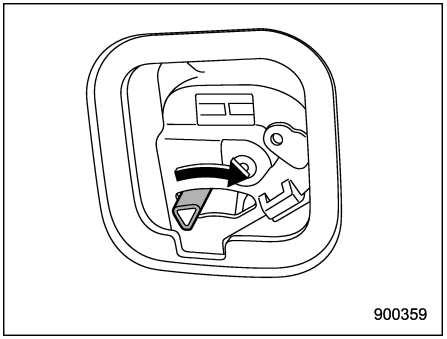


1. Remove the access cover at the bottom-center of the rear gate trim.
2. Locate the rear gate open lever behind the rear gate trim panel.

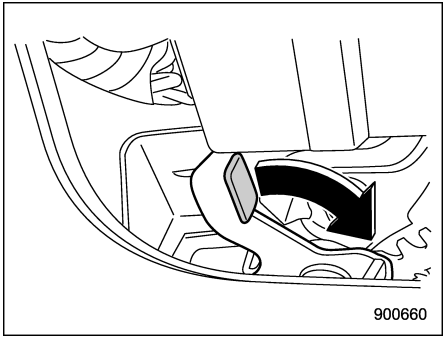
⚠ CAUTION

Never operate the rear gate open lever with your fingers because doing so may cause an injury. Always use a flat-head screwdriver or a similar tool.

– CONTINUED –



Models without power rear gate



Models with power rear gate

3. To open the rear gate, turn the lever to the right position using a flat-head screwdriver or a similar tool.

■ Models with double locking system

NOTE

For models with the double locking system, the rear gate open lever is still shielded with an anti-theft cover. So, remove the anti-theft cover using a Phillips screwdriver to access the rear gate open lever.

Power rear gate - if power rear gate does not operate properly

■ When the power rear gate is deactivated

NOTE

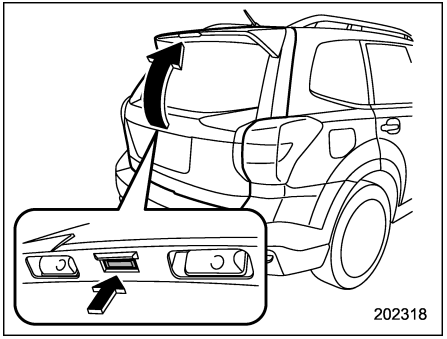
• After deactivating automatic opening and closing, the rear gate may open or close automatically, moving little by little. This movement is to prevent the rear gate from quickly opening and closing and it will continue for approximately 15 seconds but it is not a malfunction.

• While the power rear gate is temporarily deactivated, if it is struck by body parts or objects and sustains a strong impact, the temporary deactivation may be canceled. The purpose of this is to absorb the impact of the collision and it is not a malfunction. In this case, the rear gate will not open or close automatically.

If the power rear gate senses a malfunction, an electronic chirp will sound and automatic opening and closing will be deactivated. The rear gate will automatically open or close depending on the degree it is open to at this time.

In order for the rear gate to open and close automatically, carry out the following operation. If the rear gate does not open and close automatically after carrying out this operation, we recommend that you have the vehicle checked at a SUBARU dealer.

▼ **When the rear gate is closed**



1. Press and hold the rear gate opener button. If the rear gate does not open, perform the procedure described in “Rear gate – if the rear gate cannot be opened” ☞9-19.
2. Gently close the rear gate by hand until it reaches the half-shut position.
3. Press and hold either of the power rear gate buttons.

▼ **When the rear gate is stuck at the fully open position or does not fully close**

1. Gently close the rear gate by hand until it reaches the half-shut position. If the rear gate does not close, perform the procedure described in “Rear gate – if the rear gate cannot be opened” ☞9-19.
2. Press and hold either of the power rear gate buttons.

■ When the rear gate cannot be unlocked

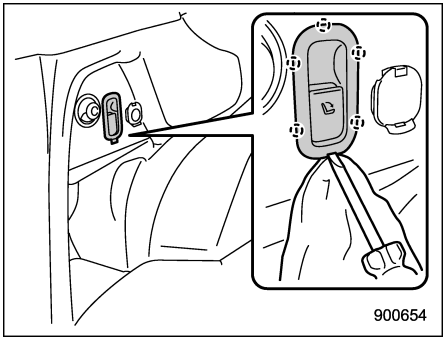
Perform the procedure described in “Rear gate – if the rear gate cannot be opened” ☞9-19.

■ When the rear gate cannot be closed

⚠ CAUTION

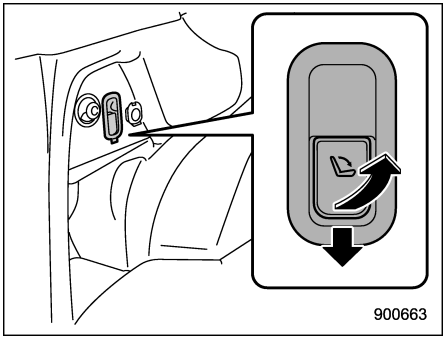
- **On areas which are not flat, such as hills, do not conduct any of the following actions. The rear gate may close suddenly and hit someone’s head, face or catch fingers and body parts in it, resulting in injury.**
- **Even while conducting the following actions on a flat surface, be careful not to be injured by getting caught in or hit by the rear gate.**
- **After closing the rear gate by the following methods, we recommend that you have the vehicle checked at a SUBARU dealer.**

If the rear gate cannot be closed due to a flat battery, etc., while the rear gate is stopped midway, it can be closed by the following methods.

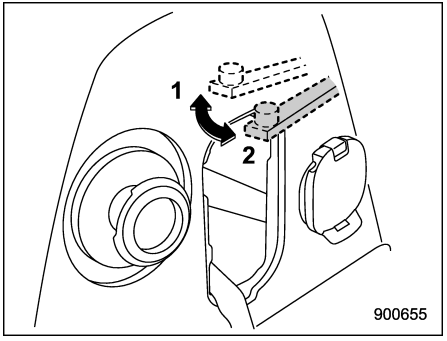


1. Release the fitting on the left side rear seat release latch.

– CONTINUED –



2. After pushing the rear seat release latch down once, remove the latch.



1) Unlock
2) Lock

3. Using a flat-head screw driver, push the lever inwards for temporary deactivation of the rear gate.

Running out of fuel (diesel engine models)

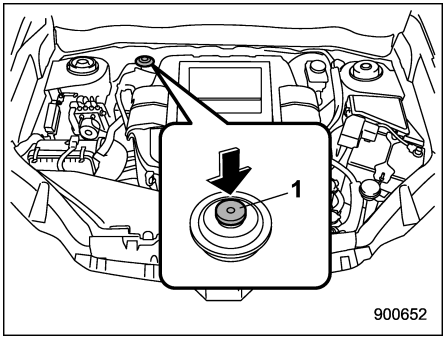
⚠ CAUTION

- **Do not try to start the engine before refueling and operating the priming pump. Doing so could damage the engine and fuel system.**
- **Do not operate the starter motor for more than 30 seconds total. Doing so could overheat the starter motor and discharge the vehicle battery.**

Perform the following procedure to restart the engine.

1. Refuel your vehicle.

For the fuel requirements and refueling procedure, refer to “Fuel” ☞7-3.



1) Priming pump

2. Operate the priming pump located in the front passenger's side of the engine compartment by depressing the pumping knob until you feel strong resistance to bleed the trapped air from the fuel system.

3. Try to start the engine within 15 seconds of starter motor operation.

If the engine does not start, perform step 2 once again and restart the engine within 15 seconds of starter motor operation.

If the engine still does not start the second time, we recommend that you contact your nearest SUBARU dealer for assistance.

4. After starting the engine, depress the accelerator pedal lightly until the engine runs smoothly. Also, confirm that all warning and indicator lights have turned off. The fuel injection system automatically lowers the idle speed as the engine warms up.

If your vehicle is involved in an accident

⚠ CAUTION

If your vehicle is involved in an accident, be sure to inspect the ground under the vehicle before restarting the engine. If you find that fuel has leaked on the ground, do not try to restart the engine. The fuel system has been damaged and is in need of repair. Immediately contact the nearest automotive service facility. We recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer.

Your vehicle has a fuel pump shut off system. To minimize the risk of fire due to fuel leakage when the engine stalls or an airbag inflates upon collision, the system stops supplying fuel to the engine.

Perform the following procedures to restart the engine after the system is activated.

Models without "keyless access with push-button start system":

1. Turn the ignition switch to the "LOCK" or "ACC" position.
2. Restart the engine.

– CONTINUED –

Models with "keyless access with push-button start system":

1. Turn the push-button ignition switch to the "ACC" or "OFF" position.
2. Restart the engine.

Exterior care **10-2**
Washing 10-2
Waxing and polishing 10-3
Cleaning aluminum wheels 10-4
Corrosion protection **10-4**
Most common causes of corrosion 10-4
To help prevent corrosion 10-4
Cleaning the interior **10-5**
Seat fabric 10-5
Leather seat materials 10-5
Synthetic leather upholstery 10-6
Climate control panel, audio panel, instrument panel, console panel, switches, combination meter, and other plastic surfaces 10-6
Monitor (if equipped) 10-6
Select lever (luster black type) (if equipped) 10-7

Exterior care

■ Washing

The best way to preserve your vehicle's beauty is frequent washing. Wash the vehicle at least once a month to avoid contamination by road grime.

Wash dirt off with a wet sponge and plenty of lukewarm or cold water. Do not wash the vehicle with hot water and in direct sunlight.

Salt, chemicals, insects, tar, soot, tree sap, and bird droppings should be washed off by using a light detergent, as required. If you use a light detergent, make certain that it is a neutral detergent. Do not use strong soap or chemical detergents. All cleaning agents should be promptly flushed from the surface and not allowed to dry there. Rinse the vehicle thoroughly with plenty of lukewarm water. Wipe the remaining water off with a chamois or soft cloth.

▼ Safety precautions

⚠ CAUTION

- **When washing the vehicle, the brakes may get wet. As a result, the brake stopping distance will be longer. To dry the brakes, drive the vehicle at a safe speed while lightly depressing the brake pedal to heat up the brakes.**
- **Do not wash the engine compartment and area adjacent to it. If water enters the engine air intake or electrical parts, it will cause engine trouble or a malfunction of the power steering.**
- **Do not use organic solvents when washing the surface of the bulb assembly cover. However, if a detergent with organic solvents is used to wash the surface, completely rinse off the detergent with water. Otherwise, the surface may be damaged.**
- **Models with automatic rain sensing windshield wipers: When washing the vehicle, turn off the wiper. If the wiper switch is in the "AUTO" position, the wipers may operate unexpectedly while washing the vehicle and cause injury.**
- **Since your vehicle is equipped with a rear wiper, automatic carwash brushes could become tangled around it, damaging the wiper arm and other components. Ask the automatic carwash operator not to let the brushes touch the wiper arm or to fix the wiper arm on the rear window glass with adhesive tape before operating the machine.**

NOTE

When having your vehicle washed in an automatic car wash:

- **Make sure beforehand that the car wash is of suitable type.**
- **When washing a vehicle equipped with automatic rain sensing windshield wipers, make sure that the wiper is turned off. If the wiper switch is in the "AUTO" position, the wipers may operate unexpectedly while washing the vehicle and the wiper blades could be damaged.**

▼ Washing the underbody

Chemicals, salts and gravel used for deicing road surfaces are extremely corrosive, accelerating the corrosion of underbody components, such as the exhaust system, fuel and brake lines, brake cables, floor pan and fenders, and suspension.

Thoroughly flush the underbody and in-

side of the fenders with lukewarm or cold water at frequent intervals to reduce the harmful effects of such agents.

Mud and sand adhering to the underbody components may accelerate their corrosion.

After driving off-road or on muddy or sandy roads, wash the mud and sand off the underbody.

Carefully flush the suspension and axle parts, as they are particularly prone to mud and sand buildup. Do not use a sharp-edged tool to remove caked mud.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Be careful not to damage brake hoses, sensor harnesses, and other parts when washing suspension components.**
- **Be careful not to flush the engine bottom for a long time. It may cause damage of some electrical parts.**

▼ Using a warm water washer

- Keep a good distance of 30 cm (12 in) or more between the washer nozzle and the vehicle.
- Do not wash the same area continuously.
- If a stain will not come out easily, wash by hand. Some warm water washers are of the high temperature, high pressure type, and they can damage or deform the resin parts such as moldings, or cause water to leak into the vehicle.

■ Waxing and polishing

Always wash and dry the vehicle before waxing and polishing.

Use a good quality polish and wax and apply them according to the manufacturer's instructions. Wax or polish when the painted surface is cool.

Be sure to polish and wax the chrome trim, as well as the painted surfaces. Loss of wax on a painted surface leads to loss of the original luster and also quickens the deterioration of the surface. It is recommended that a coat of wax be applied at least once a month, or whenever the surface no longer repels water.

If the appearance of the paint has diminished to the point where the luster or tone cannot be restored, lightly polish the surface with a fine-grained compound. Never polish just the affected area, but include the surrounding area as well. Always polish in only one direction. A No. 2000 grain compound is recommended. Never use a coarse-grained compound. Coarser grained compounds have a smaller grain-size number and could damage the paint. After polishing with a compound, coat with wax to restore the original luster. Frequent polishing with a compound or an incorrect polishing technique will result in removing the paint layer and exposing the undercoat. When in doubt, we recommend that you always contact your SUBARU dealer or an auto paint specialist.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not use any agents with organic solvents on the surface of the bulb assembly cover. However, if a polish or wax with organic solvents is applied to the cover surface, completely wipe off the polish or wax. Otherwise, the cover surface may be damaged.

NOTE

Be careful not to block the windshield washer nozzles with wax when waxing the vehicle.

– CONTINUED –

■ Cleaning aluminum wheels

- Promptly wipe the aluminum wheels clean of any kind of grime or agent. If dirt is left on too long, it may be difficult to clean off.
- Do not use soap containing grit to clean the wheels. Be sure to use a neutral cleaning agent, and later rinse thoroughly with water. Do not clean the wheels with a stiff brush or expose them to a high-speed washing device.
- Clean the vehicle (including the aluminum wheels) with water as soon as possible when it has been splashed with sea water, exposed to sea breezes, or driven on roads treated with salt or other agents.

Corrosion protection

Your SUBARU has been designed and built to resist corrosion. Special materials and protective finishes have been used on most parts of the vehicle to help maintain fine appearance, strength, and reliable operation.

■ Most common causes of corrosion

The most common causes of corrosion are:

1. The accumulation of moisture retaining dirt and debris in body panel sections, cavities, and other areas.
2. Damage to paint and other protective coatings caused by gravel and stone chips or minor accidents.

Corrosion is accelerated on the vehicle when:

1. It is exposed to road salt or dust control chemicals, or used in coastal areas where there is more salt in the air, or in areas where there is considerable industrial pollution.
2. It is driven in areas of high humidity, especially when temperatures range just above freezing.
3. Dampness in certain parts of the vehicle remains for a long time, even though other parts of the vehicle may be dry.
4. High temperatures will cause corrosion to parts of the vehicle which cannot dry quickly due to lack of proper ventilation.

■ To help prevent corrosion

Wash the vehicle regularly to prevent corrosion of the body and suspension components. Also, wash the vehicle promptly after driving on any of the following surfaces:

- roads that have been salted to prevent them from freezing in winter
- mud, sand, or gravel
- coastal roads

After the winter has ended, it is recommended that the underbody be given a very thorough washing.

Before the beginning of winter, check the condition of underbody components, such as the exhaust system, fuel and brake lines, brake cables, suspension, steering system, floor pan, and fenders. If any of them are found to be rusted, they should be given an appropriate rust prevention treatment or should be replaced. We recommend that you contact your

SUBARU dealer to perform this kind of maintenance and treatment if you need assistance.

Repair chips and scratches in the paint as soon as you find them.

Check the interior of the vehicle for water and dirt accumulation under the floor mats because that could cause corrosion. Occasionally check under the mats to make sure the area is dry.

Keep your garage dry. Do not park your vehicle in a damp, poorly ventilated garage. In such a garage, corrosion can be caused by dampness. If you wash the vehicle in the garage or put the vehicle into the garage when wet or covered with snow, that can cause dampness.

If your vehicle is operated in cold weather and/or in areas where road salts and other corrosive materials are used, the door hinges and locks and hood latch should be inspected and lubricated periodically.

Cleaning the interior

Use a soft, damp cloth to clean the climate control panel, audio equipment, instrument panel, center console, combination meter panel, and switches. (Do not use organic solvents.)

■ Seat fabric

Remove loose dirt, dust or debris with a vacuum cleaner. If the dirt is caked on the fabric or hard to remove with a vacuum cleaner, use a soft brush then vacuum it.

Wipe the fabric surface with a tightly wrung cloth and dry the seat fabric thoroughly. If the fabric is still dirty, wipe using a solution of mild soap and lukewarm water then dry thoroughly.

If the stain does not come out, try a commercially-available fabric cleaner. Use the cleaner on a hidden place and make sure it does not affect the fabric adversely. Use the cleaner according to its instructions.

⚠ CAUTION

When cleaning the seat, do not use benzine, paint thinner, or any similar materials. Doing so could damage the surface and cause the color to deteriorate.

■ Leather seat materials

The leather used by SUBARU is a high quality natural product which will retain its distinctive appearance and feel for many years with proper care.

Allowing dust or road dirt to build up on the surface can cause the material to become brittle and to wear prematurely. Regular cleaning with a soft, moist, natural fiber cloth should be performed monthly, taking care not to soak the leather or allow water to penetrate the stitched seams.

A mild detergent suitable for cleaning woolen fabrics may be used to remove difficult dirt spots, rubbing with a soft, dry cloth afterwards to restore the luster. If your SUBARU is to be parked for a long time in bright sunlight, it is recommended that the seats and head restraints be covered, or the windows shaded, to prevent fading or shrinkage.

Minor surface blemishes or bald patches may be treated with a commercial leather

– CONTINUED –

spray lacquer. You will discover that each leather seat section will develop soft folds or wrinkles, which is characteristic of genuine leather.

■ Synthetic leather upholstery

The synthetic leather material used on the SUBARU may be cleaned using mild soap or detergent and water, after first vacuuming or brushing away loose dirt. Allow the soap to soak in for a few minutes and wipe off with a clean, damp cloth. Commercial foam-type cleaners suitable for synthetic leather materials may be used when necessary.

⚠ CAUTION

Strong cleaning agents such as solvents, paint thinners, window cleaner or fuel must never be used on leather or synthetic interior materials. Doing so could damage the surface and cause the color to deteriorate.

■ Climate control panel, audio panel, instrument panel, console panel, switches, combination meter, and other plastic surfaces

Use a soft, damp cloth to clean the climate control panel, audio equipment, instrument panel, center console, combination meter panel, and switches.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Do not use organic solvents such as paint thinners or fuel, or strong cleaning agents that contain those solvents. Doing so could damage the surface and cause the color to deteriorate.**
- **Do not use chemical solvents that contain silicone on the vehicle audio system, electrical components of the air-conditioner or any switches. If silicone adheres to these parts, it may cause damage to electrical components.**

■ Monitor (if equipped)

To clean the navigation/multi function display monitor, wipe it with a silicone cloth or with a soft cloth. If the monitor is extremely dirty, clean it with a soft cloth moistened with neutral detergent then carefully wipe off any remaining detergent.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Do not spray neutral detergent directly onto the monitor. Doing so could damage the monitor's components.**
- **Do not wipe the monitor with a hard cloth. Doing so could scratch the monitor.**
- **Do not use cleaning fluid that contains thinner, fuel, or any other volatile substance. Such cleaning fluid could erase the lettering on the switches at the bottom of the monitor.**

■ Select lever (luster black type) (if equipped)

The select lever has a special treatment surface panel attached. If the panel gets stained, wipe it off with a clean, soft cloth.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not scratch it with a hard brush or rub it hard with a rough cloth. Doing so could cause scratch to the surface.

Maintenance schedule 11-3
Maintenance precautions..... 11-7
Before checking or servicing in the engine compartment..... 11-7
When checking or servicing in the engine compartment (petrol engine models)..... 11-8
When checking or servicing in the engine compartment while the engine is running..... 11-8
Maintenance tips 11-9
When replacing parts 11-9
Removing and reinstalling clips..... 11-9
Engine hood 11-11
Engine compartment overview..... 11-12
Non-turbo petrol engine models..... 11-12
Turbo petrol engine models 11-13
Turbo diesel engine models..... 11-14
Engine oil..... 11-15
Engine oil consumption (petrol engine models)..... 11-15
Checking the oil level 11-15
Changing the oil and oil filter..... 11-18
Recommended grade and viscosity 11-19
Synthetic oil..... 11-19
Cooling system 11-20
Cooling fan, hose and connections..... 11-20
Engine coolant..... 11-21
Air cleaner element..... 11-22
Replacing the air cleaner element..... 11-23
Spark plugs (petrol engine models) 11-26
Drive belts 11-26
Manual transmission oil 11-26
Recommended grade and viscosity..... 11-26
Continuously variable transmission fluid 11-27
Front differential gear oil (CVT models) and rear differential gear oil..... 11-27
Recommended grade and viscosity..... 11-27
Power steering fluid (models with hydraulic power steering system)..... 11-27
Checking the fluid level..... 11-27
Recommended fluid..... 11-28
Brake fluid..... 11-28
Checking the fluid level..... 11-28
Recommended brake fluid 11-29
Clutch fluid (MT models)..... 11-29
Checking the fluid level..... 11-29
Brake booster 11-30
Brake pedal 11-30
Checking the brake pedal free play 11-30
Checking the brake pedal reserve distance..... 11-31
Clutch pedal (MT models) 11-31
Checking the clutch function..... 11-31
Checking the clutch pedal free play..... 11-31
Hill start assist system..... 11-32
Replacement of brake pad and lining 11-32
Breaking-in of new brake pads and linings 11-32
Parking brake stroke 11-33
Tires and wheels..... 11-33
Types of tires..... 11-33
Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) (if equipped) 11-34

Tire inspection 11-35
Tire pressures and wear 11-35
Wheel balance 11-37
Wear indicators 11-38
Tire rotation direction mark 11-38
Tire rotation 11-39
Tire replacement 11-39
Wheel replacement 11-40
Wheel covers (if equipped) 11-40
Aluminum wheels (if equipped) 11-41
Windshield washer fluid 11-41
Adding the windshield washer fluid 11-41
Windshield washer fluid 11-42
Replacement of wiper blades 11-42
Windshield wiper blade assembly 11-43
Windshield wiper blade rubber (type A and type B) 11-44
Rear window wiper blade assembly 11-45
Rear window wiper blade rubber 11-45
Battery 11-47
Battery Precautions! 11-47
Fuses 11-48
Installation of accessories 11-50
Replacing bulbs 11-50
Headlights (models with HID headlights) 11-50
Headlights (models without HID headlights) 11-51
Front turn signal light and position light 11-52
Front fog light and daytime running light (if equipped) 11-53
Side turn signal light (if equipped) 11-54
Rear combination lights 11-54
License plate light 11-55
Other bulbs 11-56
Replacing battery 11-56
Replacing battery of access key 11-57
Replacing battery of transmitter 11-58

Maintenance schedule

To keep your vehicle in proper operating condition and to assure peak performance at all times, the recommended maintenance service should be performed in accordance with the maintenance schedule.

NOTE

• The frequency of scheduled inspection and maintenance services as set forth is minimal. However, it may be necessary that they be performed more frequently depending on road conditions, weather, atmospheric conditions and vehicle usage. These conditions may differ from one country to another. Therefore there may be special requirement in your country. We recommend that you ask your authorized SUBARU dealer for the actual maintenance schedule applied to your vehicle.
• For models with a multi function display, you can set a reminder to be displayed when a scheduled maintenance item is almost due. For details, refer to "Maintenance settings" ☞3-77.

Continue periodic maintenance beyond 120,000 km (75,000 miles) or 96 months by returning to the third column of the maintenance schedule and adding 120,000 km (75,000 miles) or 96 months to the column headings.

Symbols used:
R: Replace
I: Inspect, and then adjust, correct or replace if necessary.
P: Perform
(I): Recommended service for safe vehicle operation

MAINTENANCE ITEM		MAINTENANCE INTERVAL (Number of months or km (miles), whichever occurs first)									REMARKS
		Months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	
		× 1,000 km	15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120	
		× 1,000 miles	9	19	28	38	47	56	66	75	
1	Engine oil		**R**	**R**	**R**	**R**	**R**	**R**	**R**	**R**	See NOTE 1)
2	Engine oil filter		**R**	**R**	**R**	**R**	**R**	**R**	**R**	**R**	See NOTE 1)

– CONTINUED –

MAINTENANCE ITEM				MAINTENANCE INTERVAL (Number of months or km (miles), whichever occurs first)								REMARKS
		Months		12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	
		× 1,000 km		15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120	
		× 1,000 miles		9	19	28	38	47	56	66	75	
3	Drive belt	Petrol engine models		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	
		Diesel engine models		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	**Replace every 160,000 km (100,000 miles)**
4	Cooling system, hoses and connections				I		I		I		I	
5	Replace engine coolant (SUBARU Super Coolant or equivalent)			1st replacement: **132 months (11 years)/220,000 km (137,500 miles)** From the 2nd replacement: **72 months (6 years)/120,000 km (75,000 miles)**								
6	Fuel system, lines and connections				I		I		I		I	See NOTE 2)
7	Fuel filter	Petrol engine models	For Europe*								R	Replace every 120,000 km (75,000 miles)
			For General						R			Replace every 90,000 km (56,000 miles)
		Diesel engine models					R				R	
8	Air cleaner element			I	I	R	I	I	R	I	I	Replace every 45,000 km (28,000 miles)
9	Spark plugs	Petrol engine models								R		Replace every 105,000 km (66,000 miles)
10	Transmission/differential (front & rear) lubricants (gear oil)				I		R		I		R	See NOTE 3)

*: Excluding Russia models or Israel models

MAINTENANCE ITEM		MAINTENANCE INTERVAL (Number of months or km (miles), whichever occurs first)								REMARKS
		Months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	
		× 1,000 km	15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120	
		× 1,000 miles	9	19	28	38	47	56	66	75	
11	Continuously variable transmission fluid			**I**		**I**		**I**		**I**	See NOTE 4)
12	Brake fluid			**R**		**R**		**R**		**R**	See NOTE 5)
13	Disc brake pads and discs/Front and rear axle boots and axle shaft joint portions		**I**	**I**	**I**	**I**	**I**	**I**	**I**	**I**	See NOTE 2)
14	Brake lining and drums (including parking brake linings and drums)			**I**		**I**		**I**		**I**	See NOTE 2)
15	Inspect brake lines and check operation of parking and service brake system			**P**		**P**		**P**		**P**	See NOTE 2)
16	Clutch system			**I**		**I**		**I**		**I**	Adjust pedal free play at 1,600 km (1,000 miles)
17	Steering and suspension system			**I**		**I**		**I**		**I**	See NOTE 2)
18	Front and rear wheel bearing									**(I)**	
19	Air filter element for the climate control system (except for CIS and Israel)		**I**	**R**	**I**	**R**	**I**	**R**	**I**	**R**	See NOTE 6)
20	Air filter element for the climate control system (for CIS and Israel)		Replace every 12 months or 12,000 km (7,500 miles) whichever occurs first								See NOTE 6)

– CONTINUED –

NOTE

1) When the vehicle is used under severe driving conditions mentioned in the following examples*, the engine oil and oil filter should be changed more frequently.
2) When the vehicle is used under severe driving conditions mentioned in the following examples*, inspection should be performed at every 15,000 km (9,000 miles) or 12 months whichever occurs first.
3) When the vehicle is frequently operated under severe driving conditions, such as towing a trailer or driving on sand, replacement of differential gear oil (front and rear) and manual transmission gear oil should be performed more frequently.
4) When the vehicle is used under the severe driving conditions mentioned in the following examples*, the continuously variable transmission fluid should be changed every 45,000 km (28,000 miles).
5) When the vehicle is used under following areas, change fluid every 15,000 km (9,000 miles) or 12 months whichever occurs first.
(1) High humidity areas
(2) Mountainous areas
6) When the vehicle is used under severe driving conditions mentioned in the following examples*, the air cleaner element and air filter should be replaced more frequently.

* Examples of severe driving conditions:
(1) Operating in extremely cold weather (items 1, 2 and 17 only)
(2) Towing a trailer (items 1, 2, 10, 11, 13 and 15 only)
(3) Repeated short trips (items 1, 2, 13 and 14 only)
(4) Driving in dusty roads (items 8, 13, 14, 17, 19 and 20 only)
(5) Driving in rough and/or muddy roads (items 13, 14, 17, 19 and 20 only)
(6) Driving in areas using road salt or other corrosive materials (items 6, 13, 14, 15 and 17 only)
(7) Living in coastal areas (items 6, 13, 14, 15 and 17 only)

Maintenance precautions

When maintenance and service are required, it is recommended that all work be done by an authorized SUBARU dealer.

If you perform maintenance and service by yourself, you should familiarize yourself with the information provided in this section on general maintenance and service for your SUBARU.

Incorrect or incomplete service could cause improper or unsafe vehicle operation. Any problems caused by improper maintenance and service performed by you are not eligible for warranty coverage.

⚠ WARNING

- **Always select a safe area when performing maintenance on your vehicle.**
- **Always be very careful to avoid injury when working on the vehicle. Remember that some of the materials in the vehicle may be hazardous if improperly used or handled, for example, battery acid.**
- **Your vehicle should only be serviced by persons fully competent to do so. Serious personal injury may result to persons not experienced in servicing vehicles.**
- **Always use the proper tools and make certain that they are well maintained.**
- **Never get under the vehicle supported only by a jack. Always use safety stands to support the vehicle.**
- **Never keep the engine running in a poorly ventilated area, such as a garage or other closed areas.**
- **Do not smoke or allow open flames around the fuel or battery. This will cause a fire.**
- **Because the fuel system is under pressure, we recommend that you have your SUBARU dealer perform the replacement of the fuel filter.**
- **Wear adequate eye protection to guard against getting oil or fluids in your eyes. If something does get in your eyes, thoroughly wash them out with clean water.**
- **Do not tamper with the wiring of the SRS airbag system or seatbelt pretensioner system, or attempt to take its connectors apart, as that may activate the system or it can render it inoperative when it should be operative. NEVER use a circuit tester for this wiring. If your SRS airbag or seatbelt pretensioner needs service, we recommend that you consult your nearest SUBARU dealer.**

■ Before checking or servicing in the engine compartment

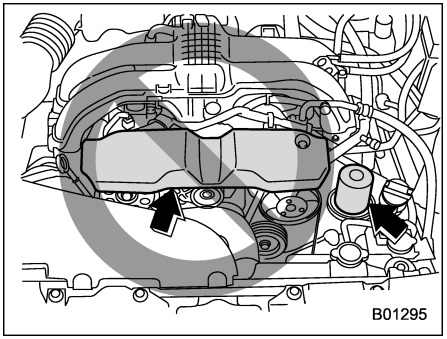
⚠ WARNING

- **Always stop the engine and set the parking brake firmly to prevent the vehicle from moving.**
- **Always let the engine cool down. Engine parts become very hot when the engine is running and remain hot for some time after the engine has stopped.**
- **Do not spill engine oil, engine coolant, brake fluid or any other fluid on hot engine components. This may cause a fire.**
- **Always remove the key from the ignition switch. When the ignition switch is in the "ON" position, the cooling fan may operate suddenly even when the engine**

– CONTINUED –

is stopped. If your body or clothes come into contact with a rotating fan, that could result in serious injury.

■ When checking or servicing in the engine compartment (petrol engine models)



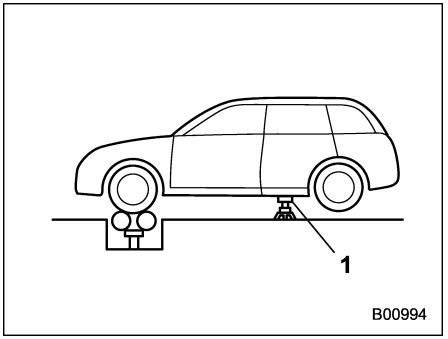
⚠ CAUTION

- **For models with the drive belt cover, do not contact the cover while checking the components in the engine compartment. Doing so may cause your hand to slip off the drive belt cover and result in an injury.**
- **Do not touch the oil filter until the engine has cooled down completely. Doing so may result in a burn or other injury. Note that the oil filter becomes very hot when the engine is running and remains hot for some time after the engine has stopped.**

■ When checking or servicing in the engine compartment while the engine is running

⚠ WARNING

A running engine can be dangerous. Keep your fingers, hands, clothing, hair and tools away from the cooling fan, drive belt and any other moving engine parts. Removing rings, watches and ties is advisable.



1) Safety stand

For any maintenance and inspection performed on AWD models which requires a running engine and wheels turning, jack up all four wheels or use free rollers to prevent the vehicle from moving. Never race the engine or brake suddenly.

Maintenance tips

■ When replacing parts

For information about replacement parts for maintenance, we recommend that you contact any authorized SUBARU dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

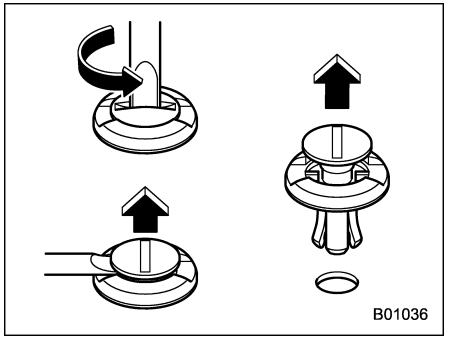
■ Removing and reinstalling clips

Some clips and fender linings must be removed before replacing the air cleaner elements or specific bulbs.

▼ Removing clips

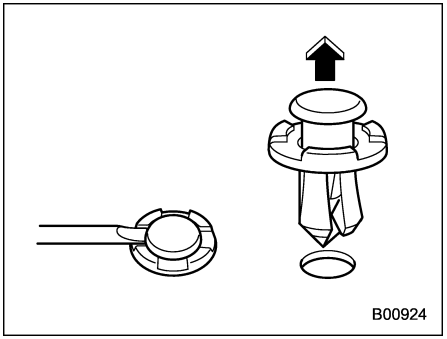
There are several types of clips used for your vehicle.

▽ **Type A clips**



1. Turn the clips counterclockwise using a flat-head screwdriver until the center portion of the clip is raised.
2. Remove the clips with a flat-head screwdriver using leverage.
3. Remove the entire clip by pulling it up.

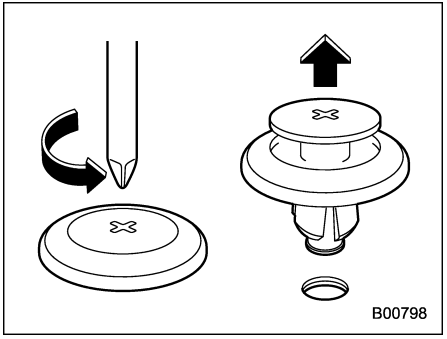
▽ **Type B clips**



1. Pull out the center portion of the clip using a flat-head screwdriver as shown in the illustration.
2. Pull the protruded center portion to remove the entire body of the clip.

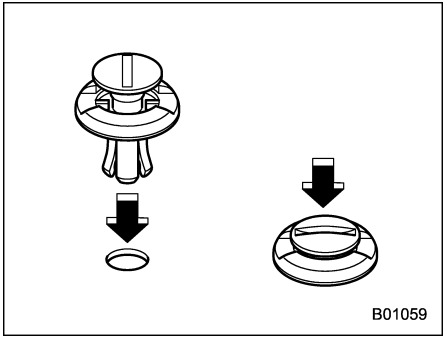
– CONTINUED –

▽ **Type C clips**

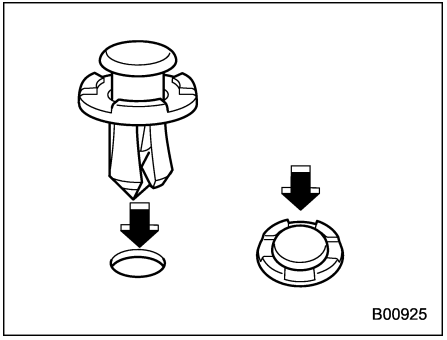


1. Turn the clip counterclockwise using a Phillips screwdriver until the center portion of the clip is raised.
2. Remove the entire clip by pulling it up.

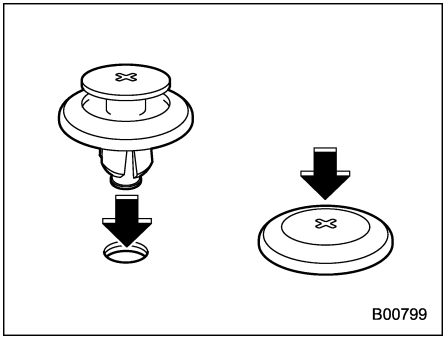
▼ **Reinstalling clips**



Type A clips



Type B clips



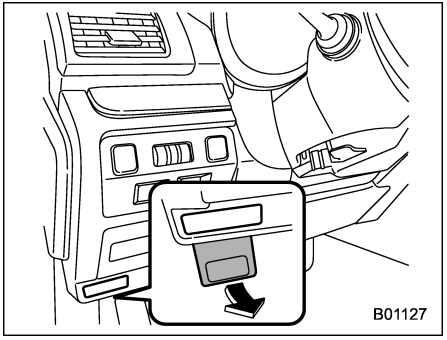
Type C clips

Insert the clip without the center portion first and then push the center portion of the clip into the hole.

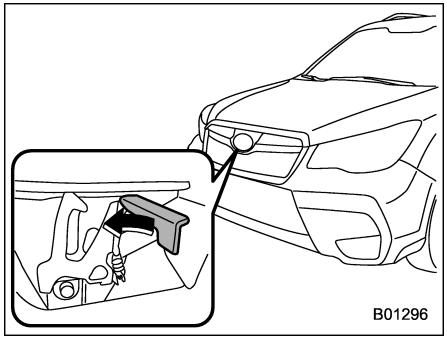
Engine hood

To open the hood:

1. If the wiper blades are lifted off the windshield, return them to their original positions.



2. Pull the hood lock release knob under the instrument panel.



3. Release the secondary hood release by moving the lever between the front grille and the hood toward the left.
4. Lift up the hood.

To close the hood:

1. Lower the hood to a height of approximately 15 cm (5.9 in) above its closed position and then let it drop.
2. After closing the hood, be sure the hood is securely locked.

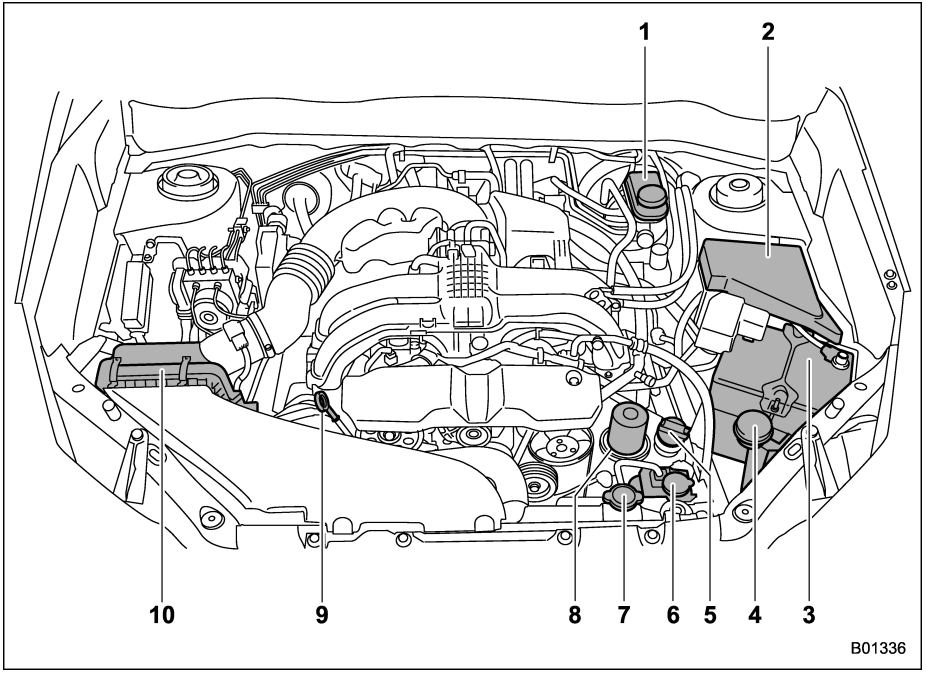
If this does not close the hood, release it from a slightly higher position. Do not push the hood forcibly to close it. It could deform the metal.

⚠ WARNING

Always check that the hood is properly locked before you start driving. If it is not, it might fly open while the vehicle is moving and block your view, which may cause an accident and serious bodily injury.

Engine compartment overview

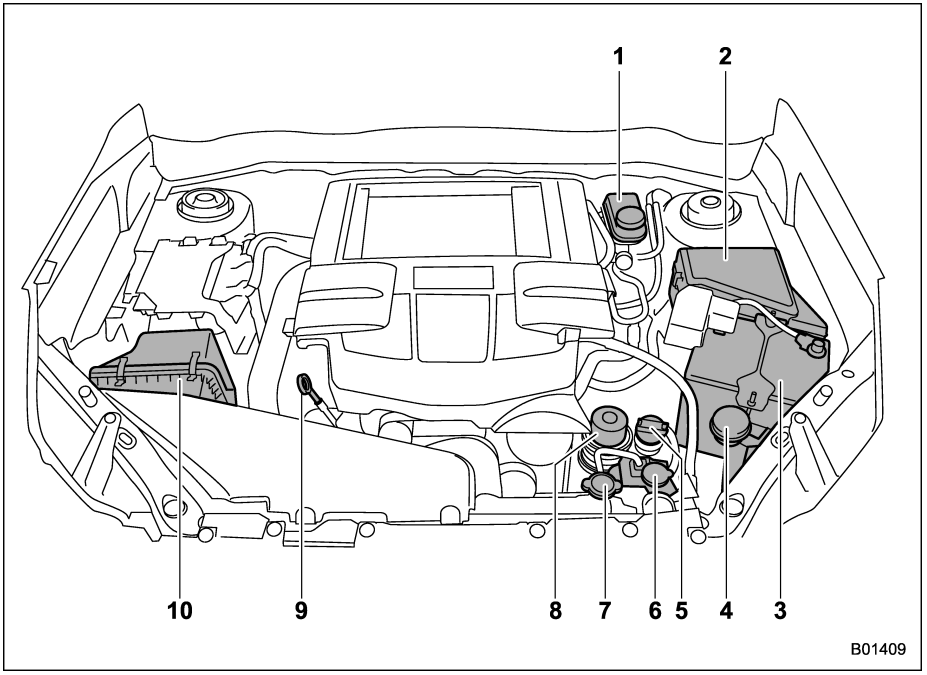
■ Non-turbo petrol engine models



The illustration above is for left-hand drive models. The location of item No. 1 (Brake and clutch fluid reservoir) for right-hand drive models is the opposite of that shown here.

1) Brake fluid reservoir/Clutch fluid reservoir (MT) (page 11-28)
2) Fuse box (page 11-48)
3) Battery (page 11-47)
4) Windshield washer tank (page 11-41)
5) Engine oil filler cap (page 11-15)
6) Engine coolant reservoir (page 11-21)
7) Radiator cap (page 11-21)
8) Engine oil filter (page 11-18)
9) Engine oil level gauge (page 11-15)
10) Air cleaner case (page 11-22)

■ Turbo petrol engine models

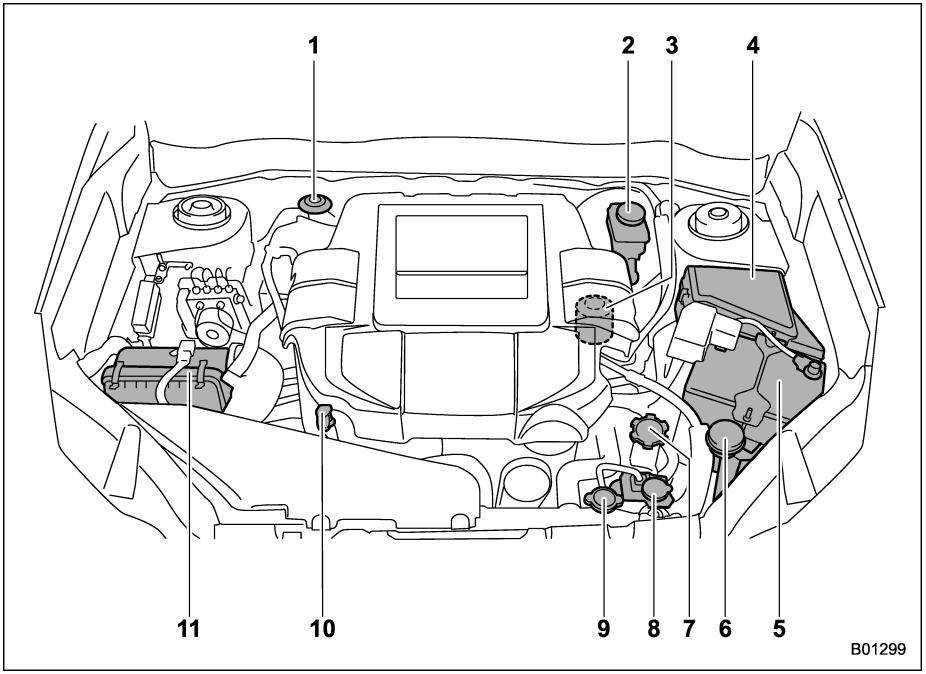


The illustration above is for left-hand drive models. The location of item No. 1 (Brake fluid reservoir) for right-hand drive models is the opposite of that shown here.

1) Brake fluid reservoir (page 11-28)
2) Fuse box (page 11-48)
3) Battery (page 11-47)
4) Windshield washer tank (page 11-41)
5) Engine oil filler cap (page 11-15)
6) Engine coolant reservoir (page 11-21)
7) Radiator cap (page 11-21)
8) Engine oil filter (page 11-18)
9) Engine oil level gauge (page 11-15)
10) Air cleaner case (page 11-22)

– CONTINUED –

■ Turbo diesel engine models



The illustration above is for a left-hand drive model. The locations of item No. 1 (priming pump) and No. 2 (brake and clutch fluid reservoir) for a right-hand drive model are the opposite of those shown here.

1) Priming pump (page 9-22)
2) Brake fluid reservoir/Clutch fluid reservoir (MT) (page 11-28)
3) Engine oil filter (page 11-18)
4) Fuse box (page 11-48)
5) Battery (page 11-47)
6) Windshield washer tank (page 11-41)
7) Engine oil filler cap (page 11-15)
8) Engine coolant reservoir (page 11-21)
9) Radiator cap (page 11-20)
10) Engine oil level gauge (page 11-15)
11) Air cleaner case (page 11-22)

Engine oil

■ Engine oil consumption (petrol engine models)

Some engine oil will be consumed while driving. Under the following conditions, oil consumption can be increased and thus require refilling between maintenance intervals:

- When the engine is new and within the break-in period
- When the engine oil is of lower quality
- When the incorrect oil viscosity is used
- When engine braking is employed
- When the engine is operated at high engine speeds
- When the engine is operated under heavy loads
- When towing a trailer
- When the engine idles for long periods of time
- When the vehicle is operated in stop and go and/or heavy traffic situations
- When the vehicle is used under severe thermal conditions
- When the vehicle accelerates and decelerates frequently

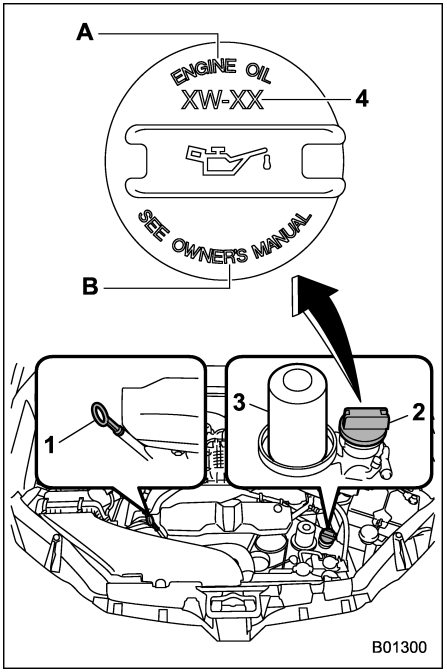
Under these or similar conditions, you should check your oil at least every 2nd fuel fill-up and change your engine oil more frequently.

If your oil consumption rate is greater than 1 liter every 2,000 km (1 US qt every 1,200 miles, 1 Imp qt every 1,413 miles), we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer who may perform a test under controlled conditions.

■ Checking the oil level

▼ Petrol engine models

1. Park the vehicle on a level surface and stop the engine. If you check the oil level just after stopping the engine, wait a few minutes for the oil to drain back into the oil pan before checking the level.



1) Oil level gauge
2) Oil filler cap
3) Oil filter
4) Oil grade
   5W-30: Turbo models
   0W-20: Non-turbo models

A) ENGINE OIL

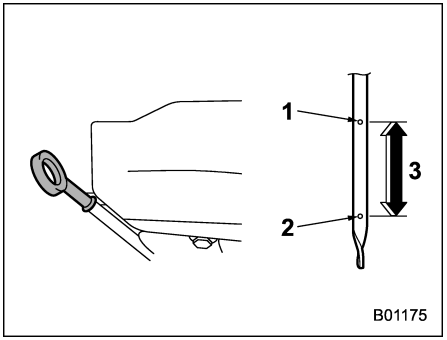
– CONTINUED –

B) SEE OWNER'S MANUAL

⚠ CAUTION

If the level gauge is not pulled out easily, twist the level gauge right and left, then pull it out. Otherwise, you may be injured accidentally straining yourself.

2. Pull out the level gauge, wipe it clean, and insert it again.
3. Be sure the level gauge is correctly inserted until it stops.



1) Full level
2) Low level
3) Approximately 1.0 liter (1.1 US qt, 0.9 Imp qt) from low level to full level

4. Pull out the oil level gauge again.
5. Check the oil levels on both sides of the level gauge. The engine oil level must be judged by the lowest of the two levels. If the oil level is below the low level mark, add oil so that the full level is reached.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Be careful not to touch the engine oil filter when removing the oil filler cap. Doing so may result in a burn, a pinched finger, or may cause some other injury.**
- **Use only engine oil with the recommended grade and viscosity.**
- **Be careful not to spill engine oil when adding it. If oil touches the exhaust pipe, it may cause a bad smell, smoke, and/or a fire. If engine oil gets on the exhaust pipe, be sure to wipe it off.**

To add engine oil, remove the engine oil filler cap and slowly pour engine oil through the filler neck. After pouring oil into the engine, you must use the level gauge to confirm that the oil level is correct.

NOTE

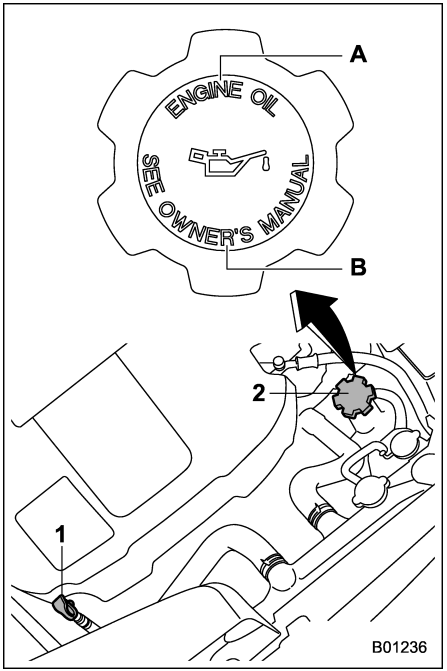
To prevent overfilling the engine oil, do not add any additional oil above the full level when the engine is cold.

▼ Diesel engine models

NOTE

For diesel engine models, make sure to check the engine oil level 5 minutes after the engine stops. Waiting any longer will prevent accurate oil level measurement.

1. Park the vehicle on a level surface.
2. Keep the engine idling until the idle speed stabilizes. When starting the engine from the completely cold state, continue warming up the engine until it reaches the normal operating temperature range, as notified by the turning off of the coolant temperature low indicator light that has illuminated in blue on the combination meter. After that, stop the engine and wait for 5 minutes.

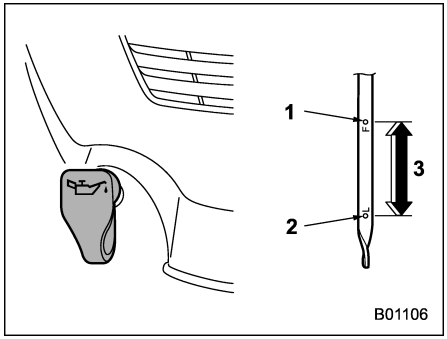


1) Engine oil level gauge
2) Engine oil filler cap
A) ENGINE OIL
B) SEE OWNER'S MANUAL

CAUTION

If the level gauge is not pulled out easily, twist the level gauge right and left, then pull it out. Otherwise, you may be injured accidentally straining yourself.

3. Pull out the level gauge, wipe it clean, and insert it again.
4. Be sure the level gauge is correctly inserted until it stops with the graphic symbol "" on its top appearing as shown in the illustration.



1) Full level
2) Low level
3) Approximately 1.0 liter (1.1 US qt, 0.9 Imp qt) from low level to full level

5. Pull out the level gauge again and check the oil level on it. If it is below the low level, it is necessary to add engine oil to bring the level up to the full level.

CAUTION

- **Use only engine oil with the recommended grade and viscosity.**
- **Be careful not to spill engine oil when adding it. If oil touches the exhaust pipe, it may cause a bad smell, smoke, and/or a fire. If engine oil gets on the exhaust pipe, be sure to wipe it off.**

NOTE

To prevent overfilling the engine oil, do not add any additional oil above the full level.

6. To add engine oil, remove the engine oil filler cap and slowly pour engine oil through the filler neck.
7. Restart the engine and keep the engine idling until the idle speed stabilizes.
8. Stop the engine. After 5 minutes, check the oil level again.

– CONTINUED –

■ Changing the oil and oil filter

Change the oil and oil filter according to the maintenance schedule.

The engine oil and oil filter must be changed more frequently than listed in the maintenance schedule, when short trips are frequently made, when towing a trailer, or when driving in extremely cold weather.

NOTE

• Changing the engine oil and oil filter should be performed by a well-trained expert. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer for changing the engine oil and oil filter. Fully trained mechanics are on standby at a SUBARU dealer to utilize the special tools, spare parts and recommended oil for this work, and also, used oils are properly disposed of.

• For diesel engine models, the engine oil replacement data that is stored in the on-board computer should be reset using a special tool every time engine oil and the oil filter are replaced. If the data is not reset, the diesel particulate filter warning light does not operate properly. To reset the data of the on-board computer without a special tool, see the following topic.

▼ Resetting the oil replacement data (diesel engine models)

NOTE

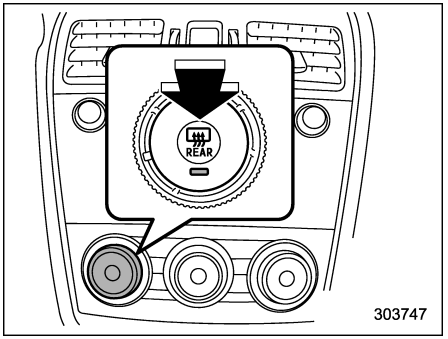
If the resetting procedure was unsuccessful, repeat steps 1) through 5) after performing the following items.

– Wait for 30 seconds with engine idling.

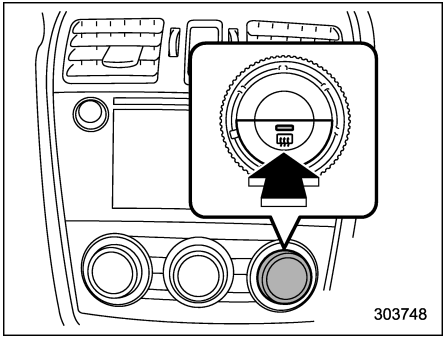
– Turn the engine off, and restart the engine after waiting 15 seconds.

After engine oil and the oil filter have been replaced, the oil replacement data should be reset. To reset the data without a special tool, perform the following procedures.

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Start the engine, and keep it in idling.
3. For MT models, release the clutch pedal.
4. With depressing the brake pedal, perform the following steps.
   (1) Press the rear window defogger switch to ON.



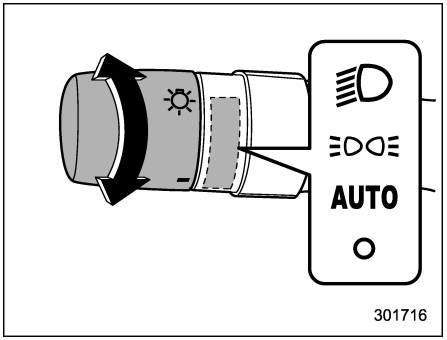
Type A climate control system



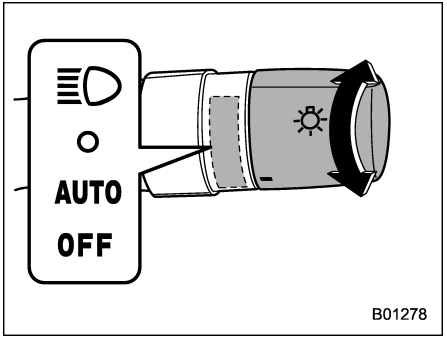
Type B or type C climate control system

(2) Turn the headlight switch to the following position.
– "≡DC≡" position (except Australia models)

– "O" position (Australia models)



Except Australia models

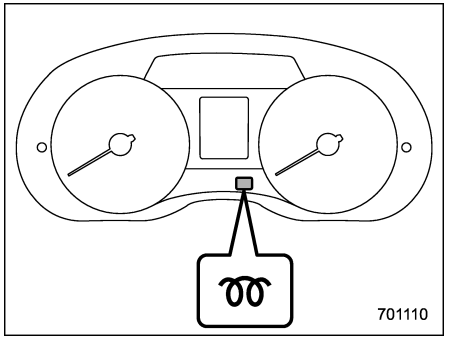


Australia models

(3) Press the rear window defogger switch to OFF.
(4) Turn the headlight switch to the following position.
– "O" position (except Australia models)
– "OFF" position (Australia models)
(5) Repeat steps 1) through 4) once more, and go to next step.
(6) Release the brake pedal.

NOTE

Each step between (1) through (6) must be operated within 4 seconds.



Preheating indicator light

5. Preheating indicator light will blink approximately 5 seconds when the data was reset successfully.

■ Recommended grade and viscosity

⚠ CAUTION

Use only engine oil with the recommended grade and viscosity.

Refer to "Engine oil" ☞12-4.

NOTE

Engine oil viscosity (thickness) affects fuel economy. Oils of lower viscosity provide better fuel economy. However, in hot weather, oil of higher viscosity is required to properly lubricate the engine.

■ Synthetic oil

You can use synthetic engine oil that meets the same requirements given for conventional engine oil. When using synthetic oil, you must use oil of the same classification, viscosity and grade shown in this Owner's Manual. Refer to "Engine oil" ☞12-4. Also, you must follow the oil and filter changing intervals shown in the maintenance schedule. Refer to "Maintenance schedule" ☞11-3.

– CONTINUED –

NOTE

Synthetic oil of the grade and viscosity noted in chapter 12 is the recommended engine oil for optimum engine performance. Conventional oil may be used with no detriment to engine durability or driveability.

Cooling system

⚠ WARNING

Never attempt to remove the radiator cap until the engine has been shut off and has cooled down completely. Since the coolant is under pressure, you may suffer serious burns from a spray of boiling hot coolant when the cap is removed.

⚠ CAUTION

- **The cooling system has been filled at the factory with a high quality, corrosion-inhibiting, year-around coolant which provides protection against freezing down to −36°C (−33°F). Make sure to always use genuine SUBARU Super Coolant or an equivalent (non-amine type coolant).**
- **If the coolant requires water dilution, be sure to use soft water (or clear and drinkable water) and to follow the required dilution ratio.**
- **Mixing with a different coolant and/or hard water may result in problems including, but not limited to, shortened engine component life, cooling system clogging, coolant leaks and engine damage from overheating. Therefore, never mix different kinds of coolant and/or hard water even if freezing temperatures are not expected.**
- **Do not splash the engine coolant over painted parts. The alcohol contained in the engine coolant may damage the paint surface.**

■ Cooling fan, hose and connections

Your vehicle employs an electric cooling fan which is thermostatically controlled to operate when the engine coolant reaches a specific temperature.

If the radiator cooling fan does not operate even when the coolant temperature high warning light blinks or illuminates in RED, the cooling fan circuit may be defective. Refer to “Coolant temperature low indicator light/Coolant temperature high warning light” ☞3-18.

Check the fuse and replace it if necessary. Refer to “Fuses” ☞11-48 and “Fuse panel

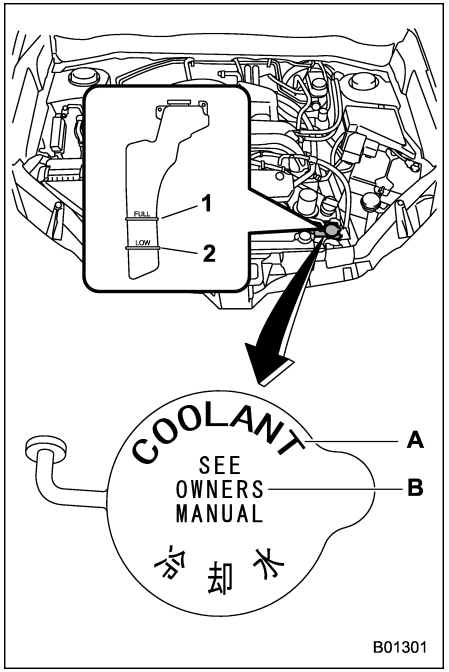
located in the engine compartment” ☞12-16.

If the fuse is not blown, we recommend that you have the cooling system checked by your SUBARU dealer.

If frequent addition of coolant is necessary, there may be a leak in the engine cooling system. It is recommended that the cooling system and connections be checked for leaks, damage, or looseness.

■ Engine coolant

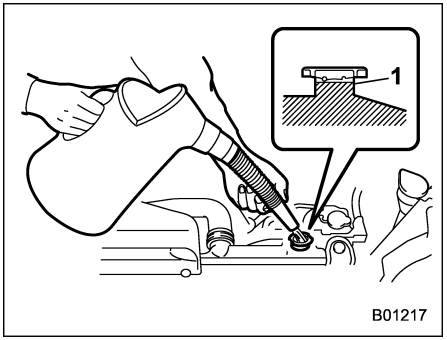
▼ Checking the coolant level



1) “FULL” level mark
2) “LOW” level mark
A) COOLANT
B) SEE OWNER’S MANUAL

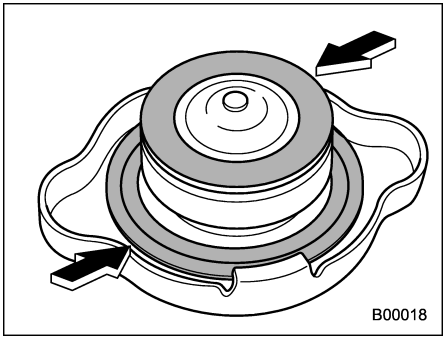
Check the coolant level at each fuel stop.

1. Check the coolant level on the outside of the reservoir while the engine is cool.
2. If the level is close to or lower than the “LOW” level mark, add coolant up to the “FULL” level mark. If the reserve tank is empty, remove the radiator cap and refill coolant up to just below the filler neck as shown in the following illustration.



1) Fill up to this level

– CONTINUED –



3. After refilling the reserve tank and the radiator, reinstall the cap and check that the rubber gaskets inside the radiator cap are in the proper position.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Be careful not to spill engine coolant when adding it. If coolant touches the exhaust pipe, it may cause a bad smell, smoke, and/or a fire. If engine coolant gets on the exhaust pipe, be sure to wipe it off.**
- **Do not splash the engine coolant over painted parts. The alcohol contained in the engine coolant may damage the paint surface.**

▼ Changing the coolant

It may be difficult to change the coolant. We recommend that you have the coolant changed by your SUBARU dealer if necessary.

The coolant should be changed according to the maintenance schedule in the "Maintenance schedule" ☞11-3.

Air cleaner element

The air cleaner element functions as a filter screen. When the element is perforated or removed, engine wear will be excessive and engine life shortened.

It is not necessary to clean or wash the air cleaner element.

⚠ WARNING

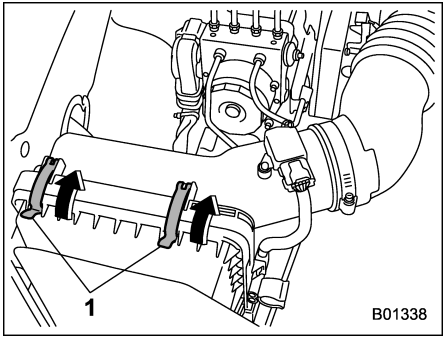
Do not operate the engine with the air cleaner element removed. The air cleaner element not only filters intake air but also stops flames if the engine backfires. If the air cleaner element is not installed when the engine backfires, you could be burned.

⚠ CAUTION

When replacing the air cleaner element, we recommend that you use a genuine SUBARU air cleaner element. If it is not used, there is the possibility of causing a negative effect to the engine.

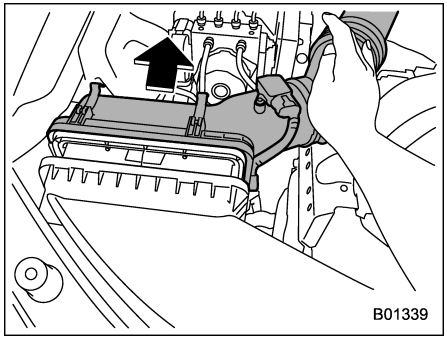
■ Replacing the air cleaner element

▼ Non-turbo models

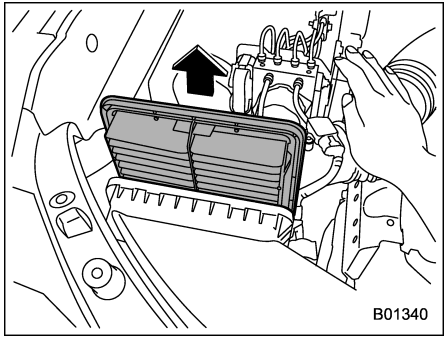


1) Clip

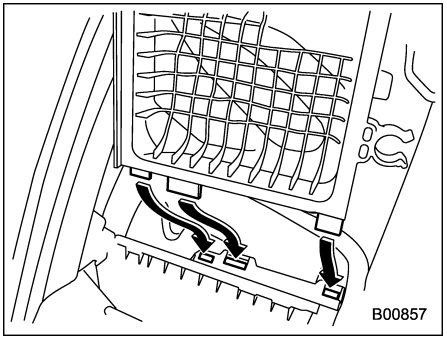
1. Unsnap the two clips holding the air cleaner case (front).



2. Open the air cleaner case (rear).



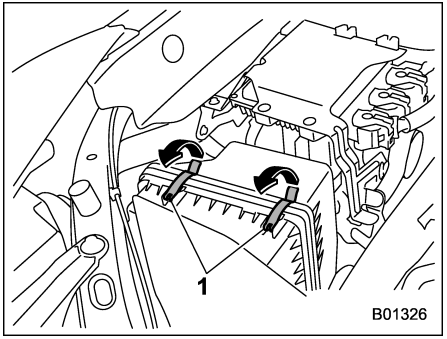
3. Remove the air cleaner element.
4. Clean the inside of the air cleaner case (both front and rear) with a damp cloth and install a new air cleaner element.



5. To install the air cleaner case (rear), insert the three projections on the air cleaner case (rear) into the slits on the air cleaner case (front).
6. Install in the reverse order of removal.

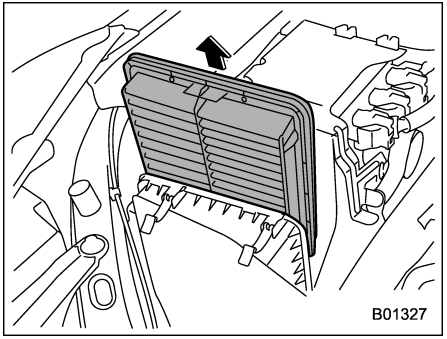
– CONTINUED –

▼ **Turbo petrol engine models**

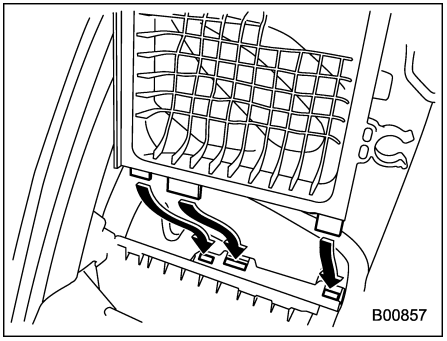


1) Clip

1. Unsnap the two clips holding the air cleaner case (rear).

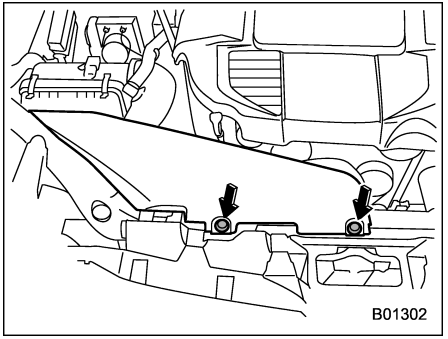


2. Open the air cleaner case and remove the air cleaner element.
3. Clean the inside of the air cleaner case (both front and rear) with a damp cloth and install a new air cleaner element.

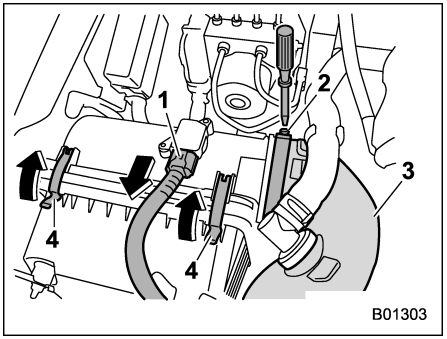


4. To install the air cleaner case (rear), insert the three projections on the air cleaner case (rear) into the slits on the air cleaner case (front).
5. Install in the reverse order of removal.

▼ **Diesel engine models**



1. Use a screwdriver to undo the clips on the air intake duct, then remove the air intake duct.

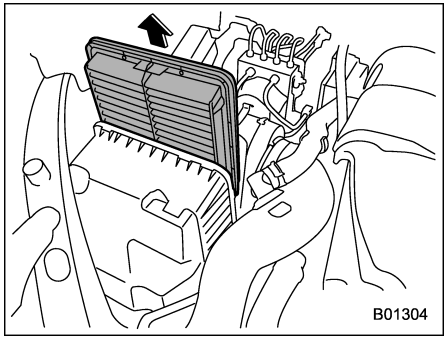


1) Connector
2) Clamp
3) Air intake boot
4) Clip

2. Unplug the connector that is attached to the top of the air cleaner case.

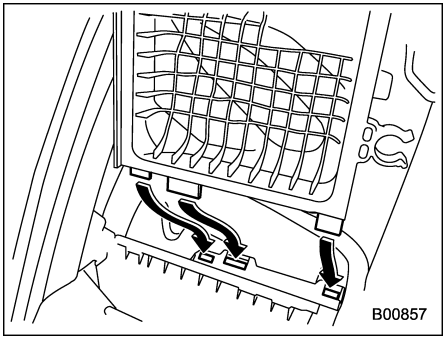
3. Loosen the screw of the clamp and pull the air intake boot out of the air cleaner case.

4. Unsnap the two clips holding the air cleaner case (front).



5. Open the air cleaner case (rear) and remove the air cleaner element.

6. Clean the inside of the air cleaner case (both front and rear) with a damp cloth and install a new air cleaner element.



7. To install the air cleaner case (rear), insert the three projections on the air cleaner case (rear) into the slits on the air cleaner case (front).

8. Install in the reverse order of removal.

Spark plugs (petrol engine models)

It may be difficult to replace the spark plugs. We recommend that you have the spark plugs replaced by your SUBARU dealer.

The spark plugs should be replaced according to the maintenance schedule. Refer to “Maintenance schedule” ☞11-3.

NOTE

For the recommended spark plugs, refer to “Electrical system” ☞12-12.

Drive belts

It is unnecessary to check the deflection of the drive belt periodically because your engine is equipped with an automatic belt tension adjuster. However, replacement of the belt should be done according to the maintenance schedule in the “Maintenance schedule” ☞11-3. We recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer for replacement.

If the drive belt is loose, cracked or worn, contact your SUBARU dealer.

Manual transmission oil

It is not necessary to check the transmission oil level. Check that there are no cracks, damage or leakage. However, the oil inspection should be performed according to the maintenance schedule in the “Maintenance schedule” ☞11-3. We recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer for details.

■ Recommended grade and viscosity

Each oil manufacturer has its own base oils and additives. Never use different brands together. For details, refer to “Manual transmission, front differential and rear differential gear oil” ☞12-8.

Continuously variable transmission fluid

There is no fluid level gauge. It is unnecessary to check the continuously variable transmission fluid level. However, if necessary, we recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer for inspection.

Front differential gear oil (CVT models) and rear differential gear oil

There is no oil level gauge. To check the gear oil level, we recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer.

■ Recommended grade and viscosity

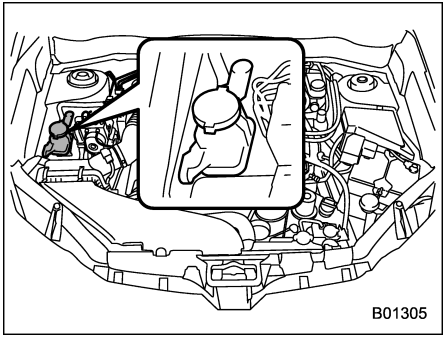
Each oil manufacturer has its own base oils and additives. Never use different brands together. For details, refer to "Manual transmission, front differential and rear differential gear oil" ☞12-8.

⚠ CAUTION

Using a differential gear oil other than the specified oil may cause occurrences of rattling noises while idling and poor fuel consumption.

Power steering fluid (models with hydraulic power steering system)

■ Checking the fluid level

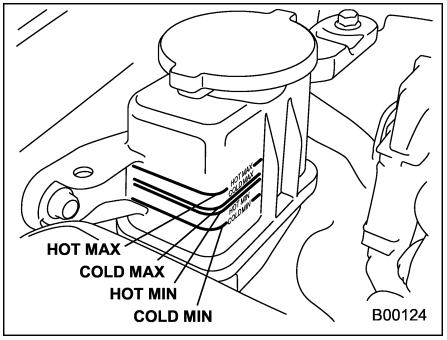


The power steering fluid expands greatly as its temperature rises; the fluid level differs according to fluid temperature. Therefore, the reservoir tank has two different checking ranges for hot and cold fluids.

Check the power steering fluid level monthly.

1. Park the vehicle on a level surface, and stop the engine.

– CONTINUED –



2. Check the fluid level of the reservoir tank.

When the fluid is hot after the vehicle has been run: Check that the oil level is between “HOT MIN” and “HOT MAX” on the surface of the reservoir tank.

When the fluid is cool before the vehicle is run: Check that the oil level is between “COLD MIN” and “COLD MAX” on the surface of the reservoir tank.

3. If the fluid level is lower than the applicable “MIN” line, add the recommended fluid as necessary to bring the level between the “MIN” and “MAX” line.

If the fluid level is extremely low, it may indicate possible leakage. We recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer for an inspection.

⚠ WARNING

Be careful not to burn yourself because the fluid may be hot.

⚠ CAUTION

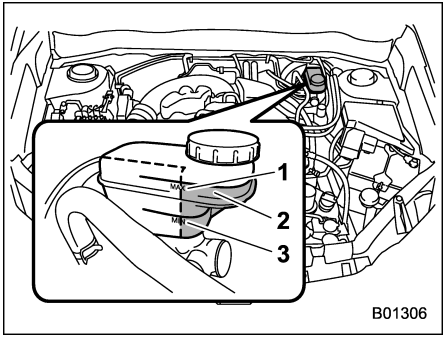
- **When power steering fluid is being added, use only clean fluid, and be careful not to allow any dirt into the tank. And never use different brands together.**
- **Be careful not to spill power steering fluid when adding it. If power steering fluid touches the exhaust pipe, it may cause a bad smell, smoke, and/or a fire. If power steering fluid gets on the exhaust pipe, be sure to wipe it off.**

■ Recommended fluid

Refer to “Fluids” ☞12-10.

Brake fluid

■ Checking the fluid level



1) “MAX” level line
2) The fluid level must be checked in this area.
3) “MIN” level line

Check the fluid level monthly.

Check the fluid level on the outside of the reservoir. Because this reservoir is used for both the brake and clutch systems and has chambers for each system, be sure to check the fluid level for the brake system at the **front part of the reservoir** (shaded area in the illustration). If the level is below “MIN”, add the recommended brake fluid to “MAX”.

Use only brake fluid from a sealed container.

⚠ WARNING

- **Never let brake fluid contact your eyes because brake fluid can be harmful to your eyes. If brake fluid gets in your eyes, immediately flush them thoroughly with clean water. For safety, when performing this work, wearing eye protection is advisable.**
- **Brake fluid absorbs moisture from the air. Any absorbed moisture can cause a dangerous loss of braking performance. For vehicles with manual transmission, the brake fluid in the brake fluid reservoir is also used as the clutch fluid for the clutch system. Therefore, moisture-absorbed brake fluid may interfere with the proper operation of the clutch system.**
- **If the vehicle requires frequent refilling, there may be a leak. If you suspect a problem, we recommend that you have the vehicle checked at your SUBARU dealer.**

⚠ CAUTION

- **When adding brake fluid, be careful not to allow any dirt into the reservoir.**
- **Never splash the brake fluid over painted surfaces or rubber parts. Alcohol contained in the brake fluid may damage them.**
- **Be careful not to spill brake fluid when adding it. If brake fluid touches the exhaust pipe, it may cause a bad smell, smoke, and/or a fire. If brake fluid gets on the exhaust pipe, be sure to wipe it off.**

■ Recommended brake fluid

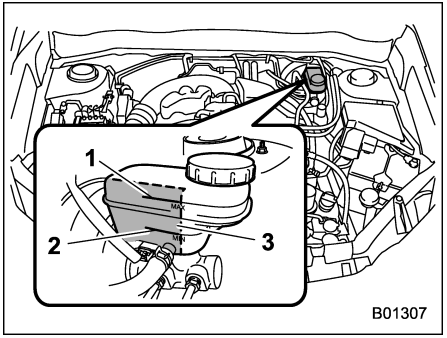
Refer to “Fluids” ☞12-10.

⚠ CAUTION

Never use different brands of brake fluid together. Also, avoid mixing DOT 3 and DOT 4 brake fluids even if they are the same brand.

Clutch fluid (MT models)

■ Checking the fluid level



1) “MAX” level line
2) “MIN” level line
3) The fluid level must be checked in this area.

Check the fluid level monthly.

Check the fluid level on the outside of the reservoir. Because this reservoir is used for both the brake and clutch systems and has chambers for each system, be sure to check the fluid level for the clutch system at the **inboard side of the reservoir** (shaded area in the illustration). If the level is below “MIN”, add the recommended brake fluid (clutch fluid) to “MAX”.

Use only brake fluid (clutch fluid) from a sealed container.

– CONTINUED –

NOTE

The fluid level for the clutch system must be checked at the inboard side of the reservoir. It cannot be checked at the outboard side of the reservoir.

Brake booster

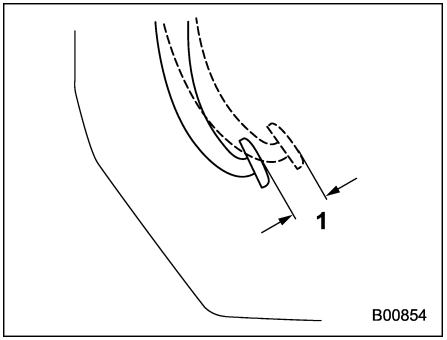
If the brake booster does not operate as described in the following, we recommend that you have it checked by your SUBARU dealer.

1. With the engine off, depress the brake pedal several times, applying the same pedal force each time. The distance the pedal travels should not vary.
2. With the brake pedal depressed, start the engine. The pedal should move slightly down to the floor.
3. With the brake pedal depressed, stop the engine and keep the pedal depressed for 30 seconds. The pedal height should not change.
4. Start the engine again and run for approximately 1 minute then turn it off. Depress the brake pedal several times to check the brake booster. The brake booster operates properly if the pedal stroke decreases with each depression.

Brake pedal

Check the brake pedal free play and reserve distance according to the maintenance schedule.

■ Checking the brake pedal free play

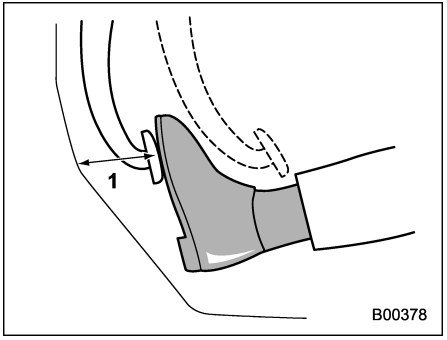


1) 0.5 – 2.7 mm (0.02 – 0.11 in)

Stop the engine and firmly depress the brake pedal several times. Then, check the amount of free play by pulling up the brake pedal with a force of less than 10 N (1 kgf, 2 lbf).

If the free play is not within proper specification, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.

■ Checking the brake pedal reserve distance



1) Left-hand drive models:
More than 65 mm (2.56 in)
Right-hand drive models:
More than 85 mm (3.35 in)

Depress the pedal with a force of approximately 294 N (30 kgf, 66 lbf) and measure the distance between the upper surface of the pedal pad and the floor.

When the measurement is smaller than the specification, or when the pedal does not operate smoothly, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.

Clutch pedal (MT models)

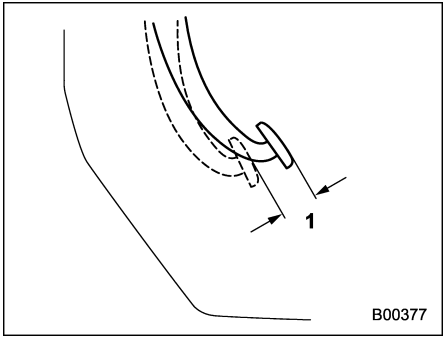
Check the clutch pedal free play and reserve distance according to the maintenance schedule.

■ Checking the clutch function

Check the clutch engagement and disengagement.

1. With the engine idling, check that there are no abnormal noises when the clutch pedal is depressed, and that shifting into 1st or reverse feels smooth.
2. Start the vehicle by releasing the pedal slowly to check that the engine and transmission smoothly couple without any sign of slippage.

■ Checking the clutch pedal free play



1) 4.0 – 11.0 mm (0.16 – 0.43 in)

Lightly depress the clutch pedal down with your finger until you feel resistance, and check the free play.

If the free play is not within proper specification, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.

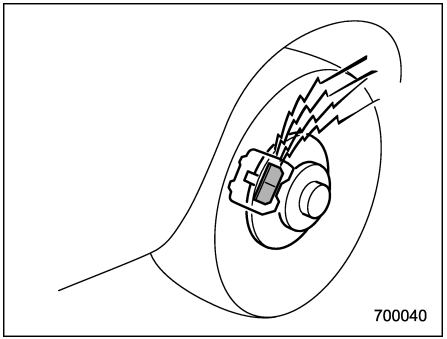
Hill start assist system

Ensure that the Hill start assist system operates properly under the following circumstances.

1. Stop the vehicle on an uphill grade by depressing the brake pedal (all models) and clutch pedal (MT models only), with the engine running.
2. Make sure that the vehicle does not move backward for several seconds after the brake pedal is released.
3. Then make sure the vehicle starts climbing the grade by following the normal starting procedures.

If the Hill start assist system does not operate as described above, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.

Replacement of brake pad and lining



The disc brakes have audible wear indicators on the brake pads. If the brake pads wear close to their service limit, the wear indicator makes a very audible scraping noise when the brake pedal is applied.

If you hear this scraping noise each time you apply the brake pedal, we recommend that you have the brake pads serviced by your SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.

⚠ CAUTION

If you continue to drive despite the scraping noise from the audible brake pad wear indicator, it will result in the need for costly brake rotor repair or replacement.

■ Breaking-in of new brake pads and linings

When replacing the brake pad or lining, we recommend that you use only genuine SUBARU parts. After replacement, the new parts must be broken in as follows:

▼ Brake pad and lining

While maintaining a speed of 50 to 65 km/h (30 to 40 mph), step on the brake pedal lightly. Repeat this five or more times.

▼ Parking brake lining

1. Drive the vehicle at a speed of approximately 35 km/h (22 mph).
2. With the parking brake release button pushed in, pull the parking brake lever SLOWLY and GENTLY. [Pulling with a force of approximately 150 N (15 kgf, 33 lbf).]
3. Drive the vehicle for approximately 200 meters (220 yards) in this condition.
4. Wait 5 to 10 minutes for the parking brake to cool down. Repeat this procedure.
5. Check the parking brake stroke. If the

parking brake stroke is out of the specified range, adjust it by turning the adjusting nut located on the parking brake lever.

Parking brake stroke:
7 – 8 notches / 200 N (20.4 kgf, 45 lbf)

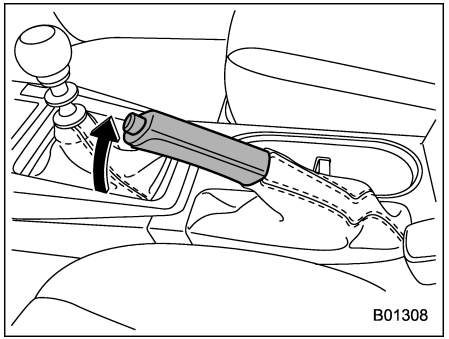
⚠ WARNING

A safe location and situation should be selected for break-in driving.

⚠ CAUTION

Pulling the parking brake lever too forcefully may cause the rear wheels to lock. To avoid this, be certain to pull the lever up slowly and gently.

Parking brake stroke



Check the parking brake stroke according to the maintenance schedule. When the parking brake is properly adjusted, braking power is fully applied by pulling the lever up 7 to 8 notches gently but firmly (approximately 200 N [20.4 kgf, 45 lbf]). If the parking brake lever stroke is not within the specified range, we recommend that you have the brake system checked and adjusted at your SUBARU dealer.

Tires and wheels

■ Types of tires

You should be familiar with type of tires present on your vehicle.

▼ All season tires

All season tires are designed to provide an adequate measure of traction, handling and braking performance in year-round driving including snowy and icy road conditions. However all season tires do not offer as much traction performance as winter (snow) tires in heavy or loose snow or on icy roads.

All season tires are identified by “ALL SEASON” and/or “M+S” (Mud & Snow) on the tire sidewall.

▼ Summer tires

Summer tires are high-speed capability tires best suited for highway driving under dry conditions.

Summer tires are inadequate for driving on slippery roads such as on snow-covered or icy roads.

If you drive your vehicle on snow-covered or icy roads, we strongly recommend the use of winter (snow) tires.

When installing winter tires, be sure to replace all four tires.

– CONTINUED –

▼ Winter (snow) tires

Winter tires are best suited for driving on snow-covered and icy roads. However winter tires do not perform as well as summer tires and all season tires on roads other than snow-covered and icy roads.

■ Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) (if equipped)

The tire pressure monitoring system provides the driver with a warning message by sending a signal from a sensor that is installed in each wheel when tire pressure is severely low. The tire pressure monitoring system will activate only when the vehicle is driven. Also, this system may not react immediately to a sudden drop in tire pressure (for example, a blow-out caused by running over a sharp object).

If you adjust the tire pressures in a warm garage and will then drive the vehicle in cold outside air, the resulting drop in tire pressures may cause the low tire pressure warning light to illuminate. To avoid this problem when adjusting the tire pressures in a warm garage, inflate the tires to pressures higher than those shown on the tire placard. Specifically, inflate them by an extra 6.9 kPa (0.07 kgf/cm^2, 1 psi) for every difference of 5.6°C (10°F) between the temperature in the garage and the temperature outside. By way of example, the following table shows the required tire pressures that correspond to various outside temperatures when the temperature in the garage is 15.6°C (60°F).

Example:

Tire size: P205/55R16 89V and P205/50R17 88V

Standard tire pressures:

Front: 230 kPa (2.3 kgf/cm^2, 33 psi)

Rear: 220 kPa (2.2 kgf/cm^2, 32 psi)

Garage temperature: 15.6°C (60°F)

Outside temperature	Adjusted pressure [kPa (kgf/cm^2, psi)]	
	Front	Rear
−1°C (30°F)	250 (2.5, 36)	240 (2.4, 35)
−12°C (10°F)	265 (2.65, 38)	255 (2.55, 37)
−23°C (−10°F)	280 (2.8, 40)	270 (2.7, 39)

If the low tire pressure warning light illuminates when you drive the vehicle in cold outside air after adjusting the tire pressures in a warm garage, re-adjust the tire pressures using the method described above. Then, increase the vehicle speed to at least 40 km/h (25 mph) and check to see that the low tire pressure warning light turns off a few minutes later. If the low tire pressure warning light does not turn off, the tire pressure monitoring system may not be functioning normally. In this event, we recommend that you go to a SUBARU dealer to have the system inspected as soon as possible.

While the vehicle is driven, friction between tires and the road surface causes the tires to warm up. After illumination of the low tire pressure warning light, any increase in the tire pressures caused by an increase in the outside air temperature or by an increase in the temperature in the tires can cause the low tire pressure warning light to turn off.

System resetting is necessary when the wheels are changed (for example, a switch to snow tires) and new TPMS valves are installed on the newly fitted wheels. We recommend that you have this work performed by a SUBARU dealer following wheel replacement.

It may not be possible to install TPMS valves on certain wheels that are on the market. Therefore, if you change the wheels (for example, a switch to snow tires), use wheels that have the same part number as the standard-equipment wheels. Without four operational TPMS valve/sensors on the wheels, the TPMS will not fully function and the warning light on the combination meter will illuminate

steadily after blinking for approximately one minute.

When a tire is replaced, adjustments are necessary to ensure continued normal operation of the tire pressure monitoring system. As with wheel replacement, therefore, we recommend that you have the work performed by a SUBARU dealer.

⚠ WARNING

If the low tire pressure warning light does not illuminate briefly after the ignition switch is turned ON or the light illuminates steadily after blinking for approximately one minute, we recommend that you have your Tire Pressure Monitoring System checked at a SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.

If this light illuminates while driving, never brake suddenly and keep driving straight ahead while gradually reducing speed. Then slowly pull off the road to a safe place. Otherwise an accident involving serious vehicle damage and serious personal injury could occur.

If this light still illuminates while driving after adjusting the tire pressure, a tire may have significant damage and a fast leak that causes the tire to lose air rapidly. If you have a flat tire, replace it with a spare tire as soon as possible.

When a spare tire is mounted or a wheel rim is replaced without the original pressure sensor/transmitter being transferred, the low tire pressure warning light will illuminate steadily after blinking for approximately one minute. This indicates the TPMS is unable to monitor all four road wheels. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer as soon as possible for tire and sensor replacement and/or system resetting. If the light illuminates steadily after blinking for approximately one minute, we recommend that you promptly contact a SUBARU dealer to have the system inspected.

■ Tire inspection

Check on a daily basis that the tires are free from serious damage, nails, and stones. At the same time, check the tires for abnormal wear.

We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer immediately if you find any problem.

NOTE

• When the wheels and tires strike curbs or are subjected to harsh treatment as when the vehicle is driven on a rough surface, they can suffer damage that cannot be seen with the naked eye. This type of damage does not become evident until time has passed. Try not to drive over curbs, potholes or on other rough surfaces. If doing so is unavoidable, keep the vehicle's speed down to a walking pace or less, and approach the curbs as squarely as possible. Also, make sure the tires are not pressed against the curb when you park the vehicle.

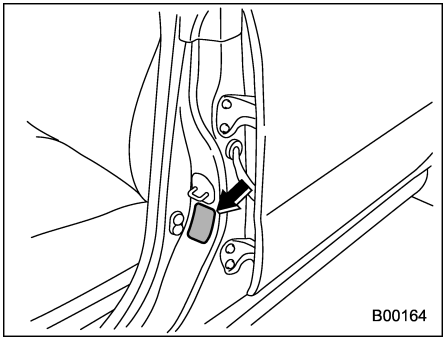
• If you feel unusual vibration while driving or find it difficult to steer the vehicle in a straight line, one of the tires and/or wheels may be damaged. We recommend that you drive slowly to the nearest authorized SUBARU dealer and have the vehicle inspected.

■ Tire pressures and wear

Maintaining the correct tire pressures helps to maximize the tires' service lives and is essential for good running performance. Check and, if necessary, adjust the pressure of each tire (including the spare) at least once a month (for example, during a fuel stop) and before any long

– CONTINUED –

journey.



Tire placard

The tire placard is located on the door pillar on the driver's side. Check the tire pressures when the tires are cold. Use a pressure gauge to adjust the tire pressures to the values shown on the tire placard.

Driving even a short distance warms up the tires and increases the tire pressures. Also, the tire pressures are affected by the outside temperature. It is best to check tire pressure outdoors before driving the vehicle.

When a tire becomes warm, the air inside it expands, causing the tire pressure to increase. Be careful not to mistakenly release air from a warm tire to reduce its pressure.

⚠ WARNING

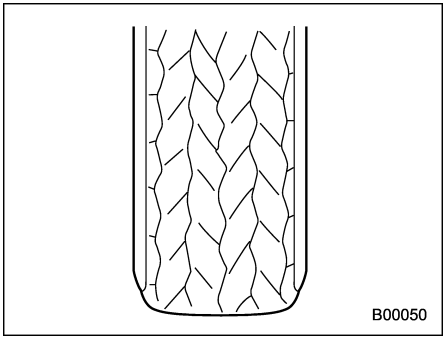
Do not let air out of warm tires to adjust pressure. Doing so will result in low tire pressure.

NOTE

- **The air pressure in a tire increases by approximately 30 kPa (0.3 kgf/cm^2, 4.3 psi) when the tire becomes warm.**
- **The tires are considered cold when the vehicle has been parked for at least 3 hours or has been driven less than 1.6 km (1 mile).**

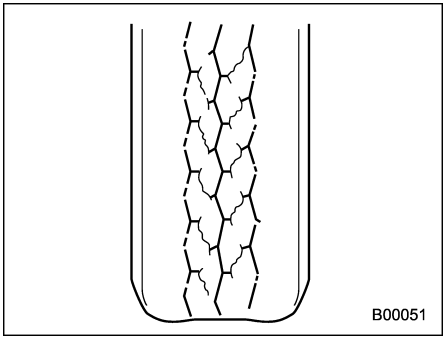
Incorrect tire pressures detract from controllability and ride comfort, and they cause the tires to wear abnormally.

- **Correct tire pressure** (tread worn evenly)



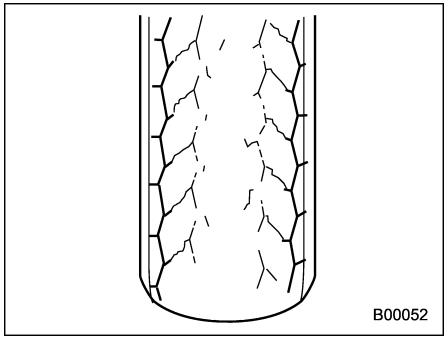
Roadholding is good, and steering is responsive. Rolling resistance is low, so fuel consumption is also lower.

• **Abnormally low tire pressure** (tread worn at shoulders)



Rolling resistance is high, so fuel consumption is also higher.

• **Abnormally high tire pressure** (tread worn in center)



Ride comfort is poor. Also, the tire magnifies the effects of road-surface bumps and dips, possibly resulting in vehicle damage.

If the tire placard shows tire pressures for the vehicle when fully loaded and for the vehicle when towing a trailer, adjust the tire pressures to the values that match current loading conditions.

⚠ WARNING

Driving at high speeds with excessively low tire pressures can cause the tires to deform severely and to rapidly become hot. A sharp increase in temperature could cause tread separation, and destruction of the tires. The resulting loss of vehicle control could lead to an accident.

■ Wheel balance

Each wheel was correctly balanced when your vehicle was new, but the wheels will become unbalanced as the tires become worn during use. Wheel imbalance causes the steering wheel to vibrate slightly at certain vehicle speeds and detracts from the vehicle's straight-line stability. It can also cause steering and suspension system problems and abnormal tire wear. If you suspect that the wheels are not correctly balanced, we recommend that you have them checked and adjusted by your SUBARU dealer. Also have them adjusted after tire repairs and after tire rotation.

⚠ CAUTION

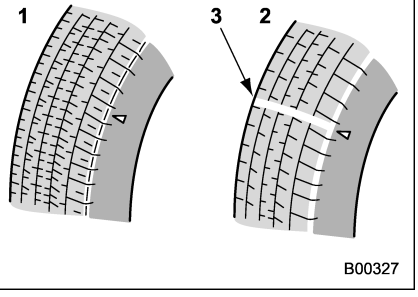
Loss of correct wheel alignment causes the tires to wear on one side and reduces the vehicle's running stability. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer if you notice abnormal tire wear.

– CONTINUED –

NOTE

The suspension system is designed to hold each wheel at a certain alignment (relative to the other wheels and to the road) for optimum straight-line stability and cornering performance.

■ Wear indicators



1) New tread
2) Worn tread
3) Tread wear indicator

Each tire incorporates a tread wear indicator, which becomes visible when the depth of the tread grooves decreases to 1.6 mm (0.063 in). A tire must be replaced when the tread wear indicator appears as a solid band across the tread.

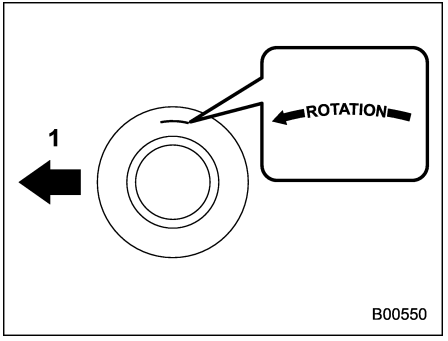
⚠ WARNING

When a tire's tread wear indicator becomes visible, the tire is worn beyond the acceptable limit and must be replaced immediately. With a tire in this condition, driving at high speeds in wet weather can cause the vehicle to hydroplane. The resulting loss of vehicle control can lead to an accident.

NOTE

For safety, inspect tire tread regularly and replace the tires before their tread wear indicators become visible.

■ Tire rotation direction mark

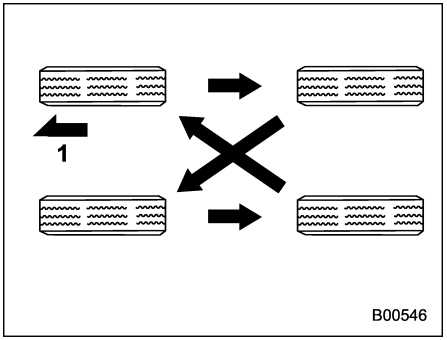


Example of tire rotation direction mark
1) Front

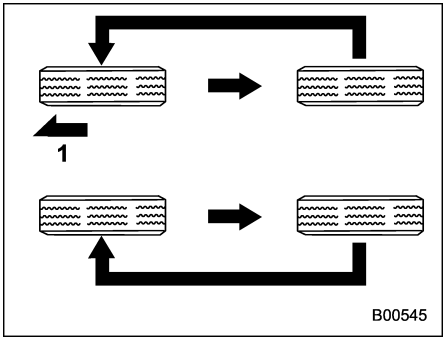
If the tire has the rotation direction specification, the tire rotation direction mark is placed on its sidewall.

When you install a tire that has the tire rotation direction mark, install the tire with the direction mark facing forward.

■ Tire rotation



Models equipped with 4 non-unidirectional tires
1) Front



Models equipped with unidirectional tires
1) Front

Tire wear varies from wheel to wheel. To maximize the life of each tire and ensure that the tires wear uniformly, it is best to rotate the tires every 10,000 km (6,200 miles). Move the tires to the positions shown in the illustration each time they are rotated.

Replace any damaged or unevenly worn tire at the time of rotation. After tire rotation, adjust the tire pressures and make sure the wheel nuts are correctly tightened.

After driving approximately 1,000 km (600 miles), check the wheel nuts again and retighten any nut that has become loose.

■ Tire replacement

The wheels and tires are important and integral parts of your vehicle's design; they cannot be changed arbitrarily. The tires fitted as standard equipment are optimally matched to the characteristics of the vehicle and were selected to give the best possible combination of running performance, ride comfort, and service life. It is essential for every tire to have a size and construction matching those shown on the tire placard and to have a speed symbol and load index matching those shown on the tire placard.

Using tires of a non-specified size detracts from controllability, ride comfort, braking performance, speedometer accuracy and odometer accuracy. It also creates incorrect body-to-tire clearances and inappropriately changes the vehicle's ground clearance.

All four tires must be the same in terms of manufacturer, brand (tread pattern), construction, and size. You are advised to replace the tires with new ones that are identical to those fitted as standard equipment.

For safe vehicle operation, SUBARU recommends replacing all four tires at the same time.

⚠ WARNING

- **When replacing or installing tire(s), all four tires must be the same for the following items.**
  - **(a) Size**
  - **(b) Circumference**
  - **(c) Speed symbol**
  - **(d) Load index**
  - **(e) Construction**
  - **(f) Manufacturer**
  - **(g) Brand (tread pattern)**
  - **(h) Degrees of wear**

– CONTINUED –

For items (a) to (d), you must obey the specification that is printed on the tire placard. The tire placard is located on the bottom of the driver's door pillar.

If all four tires are not the same in items (a) to (h), there is a possibility that it may lead to serious mechanical damage to the drive train of your car and affect the following factors.

— Ride

— Handling

— Braking

— Speedometer/Odometer calibration

— Clearance between the body and the tires

It also may be dangerous and lead to loss of vehicle control, and it can lead to an accident.

- **Use only radial tires. Do not use radial tires together with belted bias tires and/or bias-ply tires. Doing so can dangerously reduce controllability, resulting in an accident.**

■ Wheel replacement

When replacing wheels due, for example, to damage, make sure the replacement wheels match the specifications of the wheels that are fitted as standard equipment. Replacement wheels are available from SUBARU dealers.

⚠ WARNING

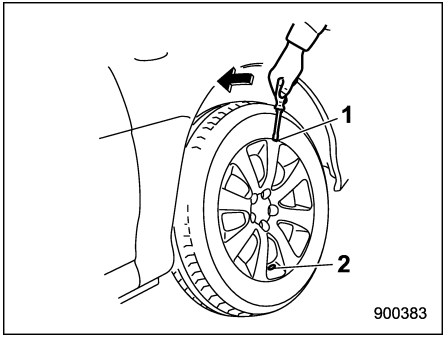
Use only those wheels that are specified for your vehicle. Wheels not meeting specifications could interfere with brake caliper operation and may cause the tires to rub against the wheel well housing during turns. The resulting loss of vehicle control could lead to an accident.

NOTE

When any of the wheels are removed and replaced for tire rotation or to change a flat tire, always check the tightness of the wheel nuts after driving approximately 1,000 km (600 miles). If any nut is loose, tighten it to the specified torque.

■ Wheel covers (if equipped)

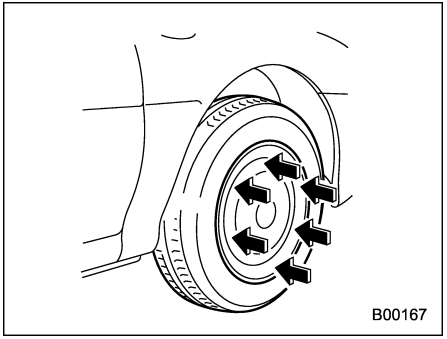
▼ Removing the wheel cover



1) Notch
2) Valve hole

Insert a flat-head screwdriver into the notch part on the opposite side of the valve hole to remove the wheel cover.

▼ **Installing the wheel cover**



Align the valve with the valve hole in the cover, then fit the cover on the wheel by tapping your hand evenly around the circumference of the cover.

Aluminum wheels (if equipped)

Aluminum wheels can be scratched and damaged easily. Handle them carefully to maintain their appearance, performance, and safety.

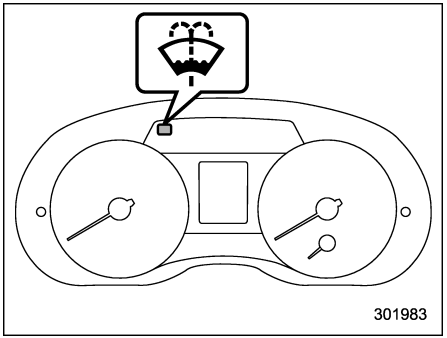
- When any of the wheels are removed and replaced for tire rotation or to change a flat, always check the tightness of the wheel nuts after driving approximately 1,000 km (600 miles). If any nut is loose, tighten it to the specified torque.
- Never apply oil to the threaded parts, wheel nuts, or tapered surface of the wheel.
- Never let the wheel rub against sharp protrusions or curbs.
- Be sure to fit tire chains on uniformly and completely around the tire, otherwise the chains may scratch the wheel.
- When wheel nuts, balance weights, or the center cap is replaced, we recommend that you replace them with genuine SUBARU parts designed for aluminum wheels.

Windshield washer fluid

■ Adding the windshield washer fluid

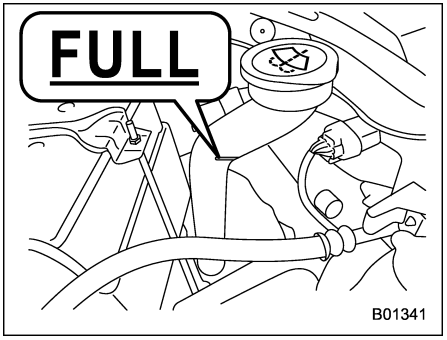
⚠ CAUTION

Never use engine coolant as washer fluid because it could cause paint damage.



When there is only a small amount of washer fluid remaining, the windshield washer fluid warning light will illuminate. When this occurs, refill the washer fluid as follows.

– CONTINUED –



Remove the washer tank filler cap, then add windshield washer fluid until it reaches the “FULL” mark on the tank.

■ Windshield washer fluid

Use windshield washer fluid. If windshield washer fluid is unavailable, use clean water.

In areas where water freezes in winter, use an anti-freeze type windshield washer fluid. SUBARU Windshield Washer Fluid contains 58.5% methyl alcohol and 41.5% surfactant, by volume. Its freezing temperature varies according to how much it is diluted, as indicated in the following table.

Washer Fluid Concentration	Freezing Temperature
30%	**−12°C (10.4°F)**
50%	**−20°C (−4°F)**
100%	**−45°C (−49°F)**

In order to prevent freezing of washer fluid, check the freezing temperatures in the table above when adjusting the fluid concentration to the outside temperature.

If you fill the reservoir tank with a fluid with a different concentration from the one used previously, purge the old fluid from the piping between the reservoir tank and washer nozzles by operating the washer for a certain period of time. Otherwise, if the concentration of the fluid remaining in the piping is too low for the outside temperature, it may freeze and block the nozzles.

⚠ CAUTION

Adjust the washer fluid concentration appropriately for the outside temperature. If the concentration is inappropriate, sprayed washer fluid may freeze on the windshield and obstruct your view, and the fluid may freeze in the reservoir tank.

Replacement of wiper blades

Grease, wax, insects, or other material on the windshield or the wiper blade results in jerky wiper operation and streaking on the glass. If you cannot remove the streaks after operating the windshield washer or if the wiper operation is jerky, clean the outer surface of the windshield (or rear window) and the wiper blades using a sponge or soft cloth with a neutral detergent or mild-abrasive cleaner. After cleaning, rinse the windshield and wiper blades with clean water. The windshield is clean if beads do not form when you rinse the windshield with water.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Do not clean the wiper blades with fuel or a solvent, such as paint thinner or benzine. This will cause deterioration of the wiper blades.**
- **While removing the wiper blades from the wiper arms, do not return the wiper arms to the original positions. Otherwise, the windshield surface may be scratched.**
- **When returning the raised wiper arms to the original positions,**

carefully return the wiper arms on the windshield by hand. You should not return the wiper arms to the windshield only by the return spring. Otherwise, the wiper arms may be deformed and/or the windshield surface may be scratched.

If you cannot eliminate the streaking even after following this method, replace the wiper blades using the following procedures.

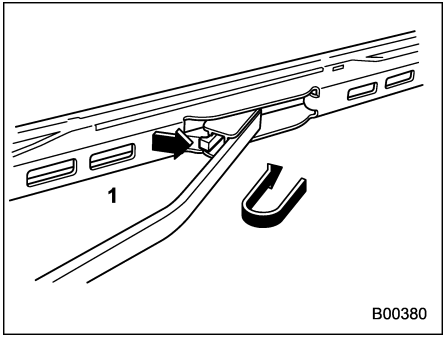
■ Windshield wiper blade assembly

NOTE

Do not lower the wiper arm while the wiper blade assembly is removed.

▼ Type A

1. Raise the wiper arm off the windshield.

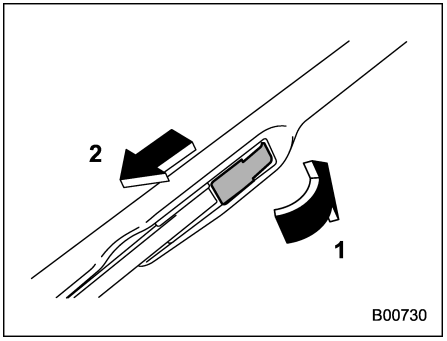


1) Stopper

2. Remove the wiper blade assembly by holding its pivot area and pushing it in the direction shown by the arrow while depressing the wiper blade stopper.
3. Install the wiper blade assembly to the wiper arm. Make sure that it locks in place.
4. Hold the wiper arm by hand and slowly lower it into position.

▼ Type B

1. Raise the wiper arm off the windshield.



1) Open the cover
2) Pull down the wiper blade

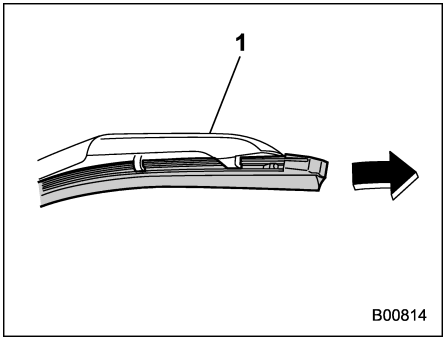
2. Remove the wiper blade assembly by opening the cover and pulling it down in the direction shown in the illustration.
3. Install the wiper blade assembly to the wiper arm. Make sure that it locks in place.
4. Hold the wiper arm by hand and slowly lower it into position.

– CONTINUED –

■ Windshield wiper blade rubber (type A and type B)

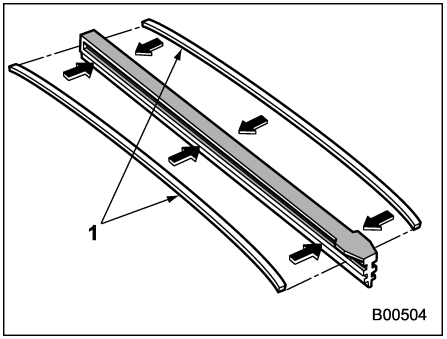
NOTE

The following illustrations show the replacement procedures of the blade rubber for a type A wiper blade assembly, however the replacement procedures are the same for a type B wiper blade assembly.



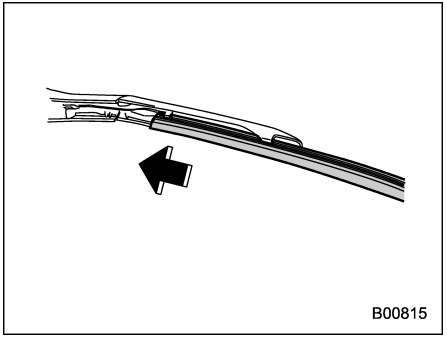
1) Support

1. Grasp the locked end of the blade rubber assembly and pull it firmly until the stoppers on the rubber are free of the support.

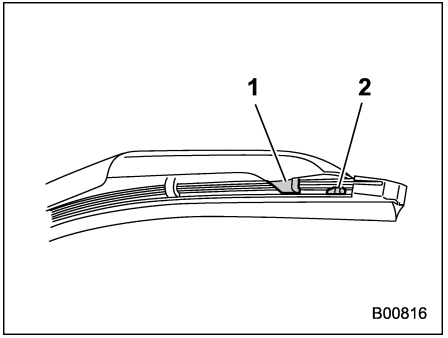


1) Metal spines

2. If the new blade rubber is not provided with two metal spines, remove the metal spines from the old blade rubber and install them in the new blade rubber.



3. Align the claws of the support with the grooves in the rubber and slide the blade rubber assembly into the support until it locks.

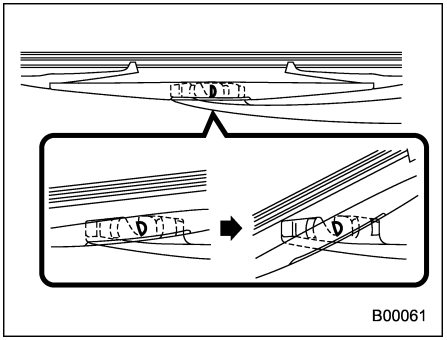


1) Claw
2) Stopper

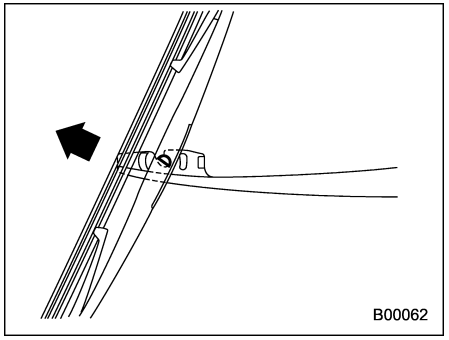
4. Be sure to position the claws at the end of the support between the stoppers on the rubber as shown. If the rubber is not retained properly, the wiper blade may scratch the windshield.

■ Rear window wiper blade assembly

1. Raise the wiper arm off the rear window.

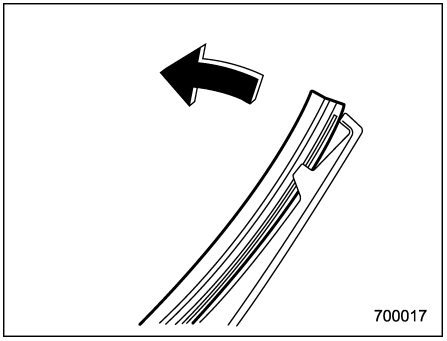


2. Turn the wiper blade assembly counterclockwise.



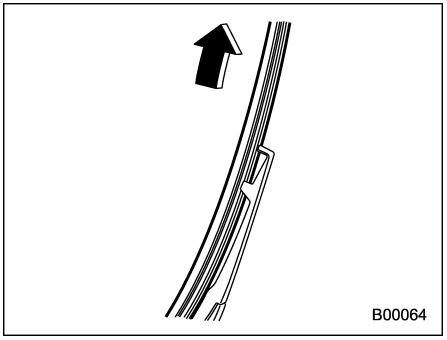
3. Pull the wiper blade assembly toward you to remove it from the wiper arm.
4. Install the wiper blade assembly to the wiper arm. Make sure that it locks in place.
5. Hold the wiper arm by hand and slowly lower it in position.

■ Rear window wiper blade rubber

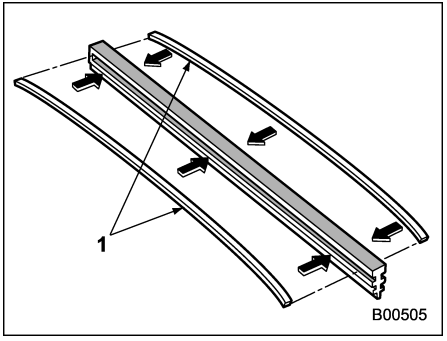


1. Pull out the end of the blade rubber assembly to unlock it from the plastic support.

– CONTINUED –

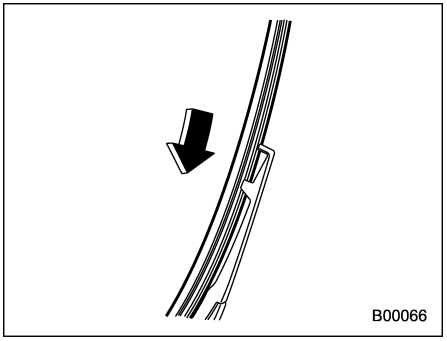


2. Pull the blade rubber assembly out of the plastic support.

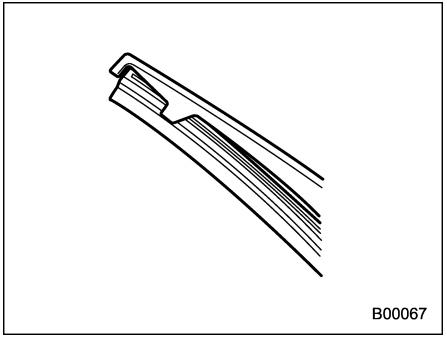


1) Metal spines

3. If the new blade rubber is not provided with two metal spines, remove the metal spines from the old blade rubber and install them in the new blade rubber.



4. Align the claws of the plastic support with the grooves in the blade rubber assembly, then slide the blade rubber assembly into place.



Securely retain both ends of the rubber with the stoppers on the plastic support ends. If the rubber is not retained properly, the wiper may scratch the rear window glass.

Battery

■ Battery Precautions!

WARNING

Read these instructions carefully:

To ensure safe and correct handling of your battery, read the following precautions carefully before using the battery or inspecting it.

Wear eye protection:

Always wear eye protection when working near your vehicle's battery. Battery fluid contains sulfuric acid, so it can cause blindness if splashed into your eyes. Also, batteries emit highly flammable, explosive hydrogen gas. Eye protection is vital for protection in the event that this gas ignites.

Battery fluid contains sulfuric acid:

Since battery fluid contains sulfuric acid, be sure to wear eye protection and protective gloves when inspecting your vehicle's battery. Avoid tipping the battery and subjecting it to shocks since this could cause fluid to spill.

Under no circumstances allow battery fluid to make contact with your skin, eyes, or clothing since this can cause blindness and burns. If battery fluid splashes onto your skin, eyes or clothing, wash it away immediately with plenty of water. If battery fluid splashes into your eyes, seek medical attention immediately.

If battery fluid is accidentally swallowed, immediately drink a large amount of milk or water, and seek medical attention immediately.

Battery fluid is corrosive. If it splashes onto your vehicle's paintwork or fabrics, wash it away immediately with plenty of water.

Keep children away:

Batteries must be handled only by persons who are aware of the potential hazards. Take particular care to keep children away from your vehicle's battery. Improper handling can cause blindness and burns.

Keep flames away:

Before working on or near your vehicle's battery, extinguish all cigarettes, matches, and lighters. Also, keep the battery away from flammable items and electrical sparks. Since batteries emit highly flammable, explosive hydrogen gas, any flames or sparks in the vicinity could cause an explosion.

When working near your vehicle's battery, take care that metal tools do not short-circuit the battery's (+) and (−) terminals or connect the battery's (+) terminal to the vehicle's body. A short circuit could create electrical sparks and lead to an explosion.

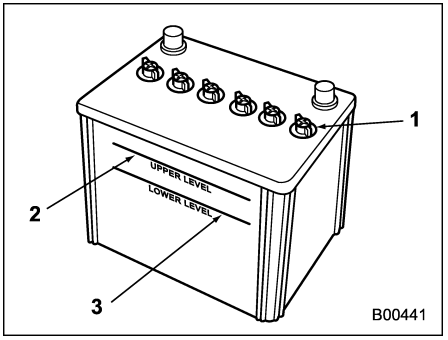
To prevent electrical sparks, all rings, wristwatches, and other metal accessories must be taken off before work is carried out on or near the battery.

Prevent explosions:

While being charged, batteries emit highly flammable, explosive hydro-

– CONTINUED –

gen gas. To prevent an explosion, charge your vehicle's battery in a well ventilated area and keep flames away.



1) Cap
2) Upper level
3) Lower level

It is unnecessary to periodically check the battery fluid level or periodically refill with distilled water.

However, if the battery fluid level is below the lower level, remove the cap. Fill to the upper level with distilled water.

⚠ CAUTION

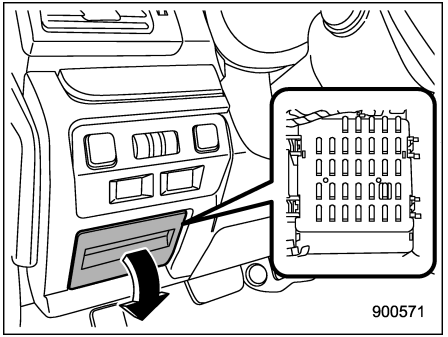
Never use more than 10 amperes when charging the battery because it will shorten battery life.

Fuses

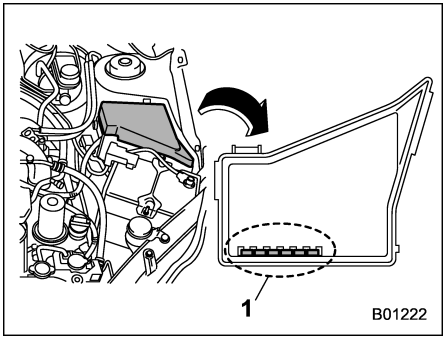
⚠ CAUTION

Never replace a fuse with one having a higher rating or with material other than a fuse because serious damage or a fire could result.

The fuses are designed to melt during an overload to prevent damage to the wiring harness and electrical equipment. The fuses are located in two fuse boxes.

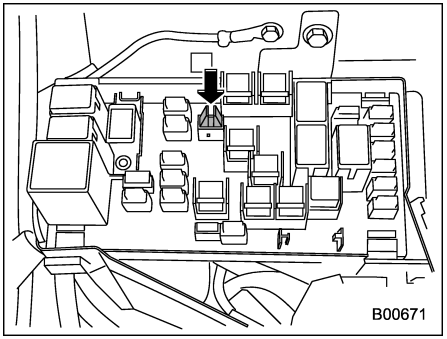


One is located under the instrument panel behind the fuse box cover on the driver's seat side. To remove the cover, pull it out.

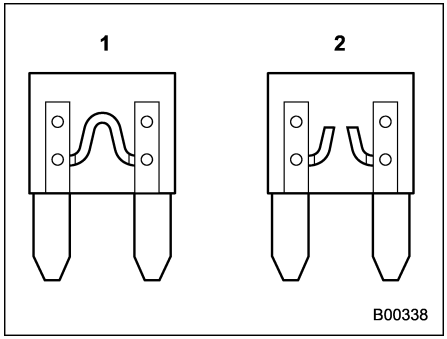


1) Spare fuses

The other one (main fuse box) is housed in the engine compartment. The spare fuses are stored in the fuse box cover.



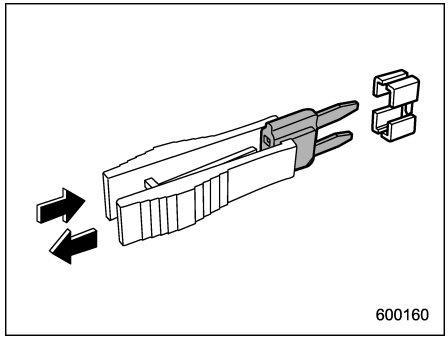
The fuse puller is stored in the main fuse box in the engine compartment.



1) Good
2) Blown

If any lights, accessories or other electrical controls do not operate, inspect the corresponding fuse. If a fuse has blown, replace it.

1. Turn the ignition switch to the “LOCK”/“OFF” position and turn off all electrical accessories.
2. Remove the cover.
3. Determine which fuse may be blown. Look at the back side of each fuse box cover and refer to “Fuses and circuits” ☞12-14.



4. Pull out the fuse with the fuse puller.
5. Inspect the fuse. If it has blown, replace it with a spare fuse of the same rating.
6. If the same fuse blows again, this indicates that its system has a problem. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer for repairs.

Installation of accessories

We recommend that you always consult your SUBARU dealer before installing fog lights or any other electrical equipment in your vehicle. Such accessories may cause the electronic system to malfunction if they are incorrectly installed or if they are not suited for the vehicle. We recommend that you install only genuine SUBARU accessories on your vehicle.

Also, we recommend that you always consult your SUBARU dealer before installing a radio in your vehicle.

Replacing bulbs

⚠ WARNING

Bulbs may become very hot while illuminated. Before replacing bulbs, turn off the lights and wait until the bulbs cool down. Otherwise, there is the risk of sustaining a burn injury.

⚠ CAUTION

Replace any bulb only with a new bulb of the specified wattage. Using a bulb of different wattage could result in a fire. For the specified wattage of each bulb, refer to "Bulb chart" ☞12-18.

Do not touch the glass portion of the light bulb with bare hands. When holding the glass portion is unavoidable, hold it using a clean dry cloth to avoid getting moisture and oils on the bulb. Also, if the bulb is scratched or dropped, it may blow out or crack.

■ Headlights (models with HID headlights)

⚠ WARNING

High-intensity-discharge (HID) bulbs are used for the low beams of the headlights. These HID bulbs use an extremely high voltage. To avoid the risk of an electric shock that could result in serious injury, observe the following precautions.

- **Do not replace any headlight bulbs (both low beam and high beam) by yourself.**
- **Do not remove/restore the headlight assemblies by yourself.**
- **Do not remove any headlight-assembly components by yourself.**

For replacement, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.

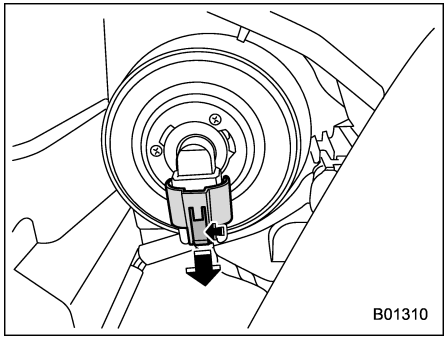
■ Headlights (models without HID headlights)

⚠ CAUTION

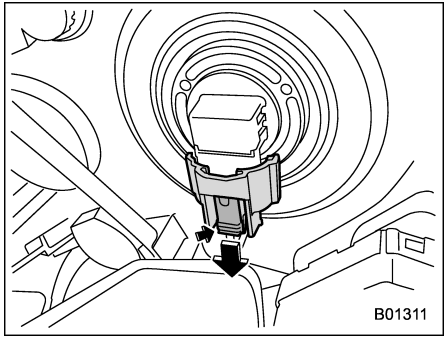
Halogen headlight bulbs become very hot while in use. If you touch the bulb surface with bare hands or greasy gloves, fingerprints or grease on the bulb surface will develop into hot spots, causing the bulb to break. If there are fingerprints or grease on the bulb surface, wipe them away with a soft cloth moistened with alcohol.

NOTE

• If headlight aiming is required, we recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer for proper adjustment of the headlight aim.
• It may be difficult to replace the bulbs. We recommend that you have the bulbs replaced by your SUBARU dealer if necessary.

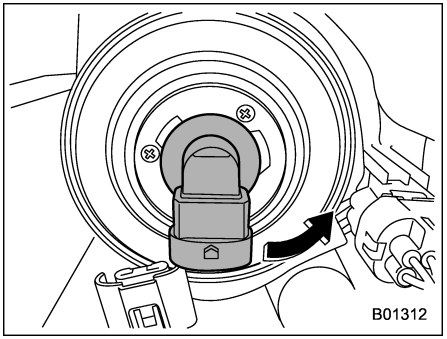


Low beam headlight

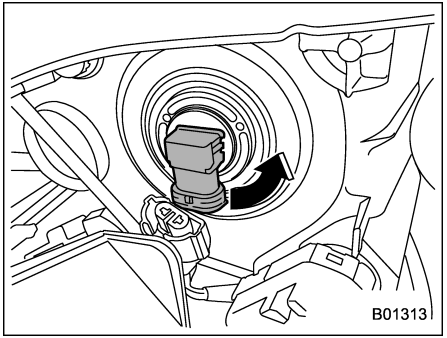


High beam headlight

1. Disconnect the electrical connector from the bulb.



Low beam headlight



High beam headlight

2. Remove the bulb from the headlight assembly by turning it counterclockwise.
3. Replace the bulb with new one. At this time, use care not to touch the bulb

– CONTINUED –

surface.

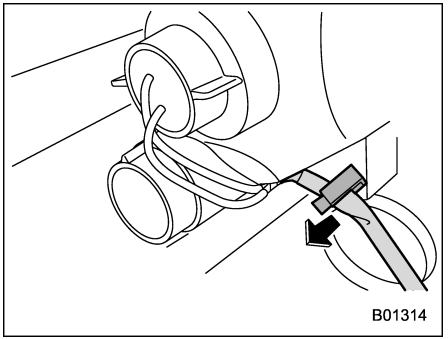
4. To install the bulb to the headlight assembly, turn it clockwise until it clicks.

5. Reconnect the electrical connector.

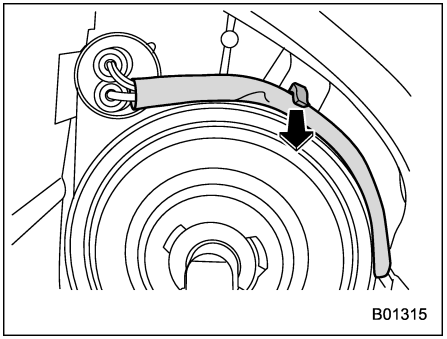
■ Front turn signal light and position light

NOTE

It may be difficult to replace the bulbs. We recommend that you have the bulbs replaced by your SUBARU dealer if necessary.

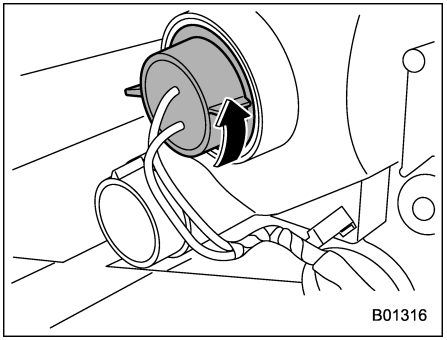


Front turn signal light

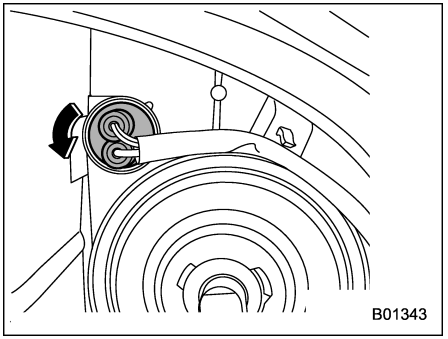


Position light

1. Remove the electrical connector from the clip.



Front turn signal light



Position light

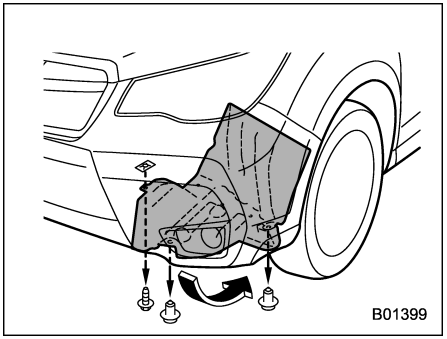
2. Turn the socket counterclockwise and pull it out.

3. Pull out the bulb from the socket and replace the bulb with a new one.

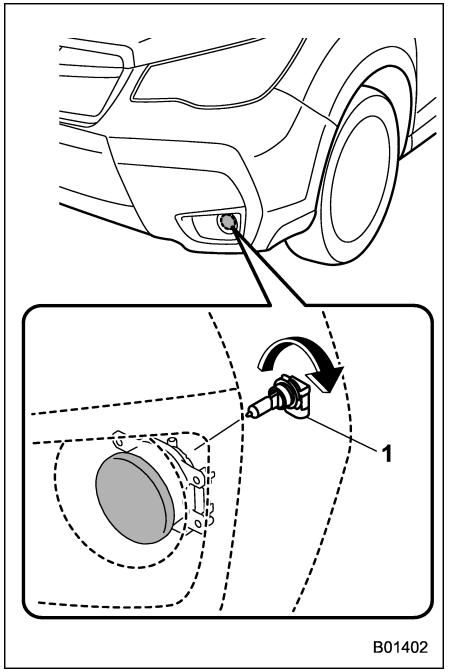
■ Front fog light and daytime running light (if equipped)

NOTE

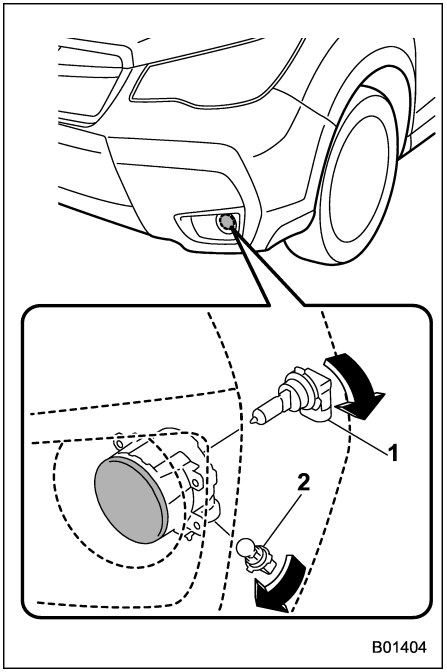
It may be difficult to replace the bulbs. We recommend that you have the bulbs replaced by your SUBARU dealer if necessary.



1. Remove the 3 clips and turn over the mud guard.
2. Disconnect the electrical connector from the bulb.

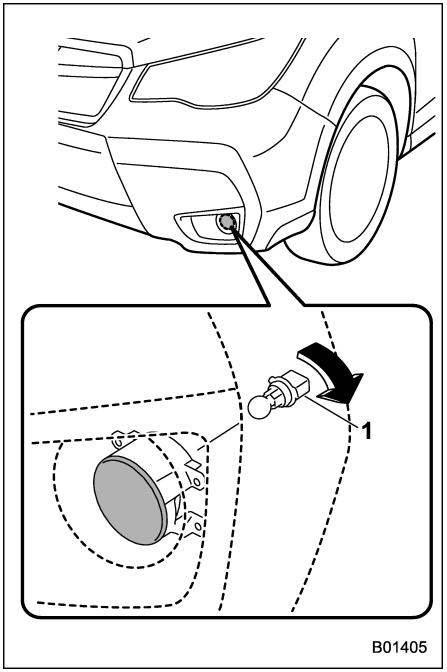


Type A
1) Fog light



Type B
1) Fog light
2) Daytime running light

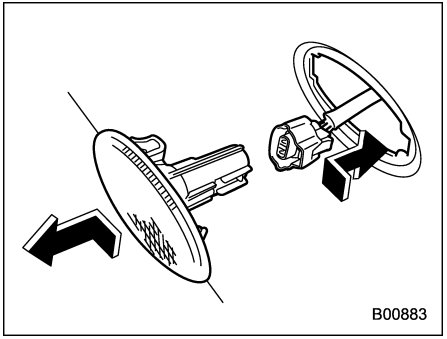
– CONTINUED –



Type C
1) Daytime running light

3. Remove the bulb by turning it counterclockwise.
4. Replace the bulb with a new one and set the new bulb by turning it clockwise.
5. After replacing the bulb, reattach the mud guard.

■ Side turn signal light (if equipped)

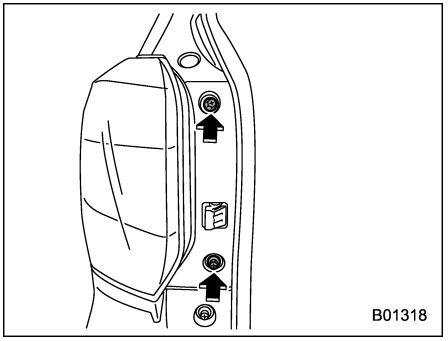


1. Push the lens of the side turn signal light forward and remove it.
2. Pull the connector out of the socket.

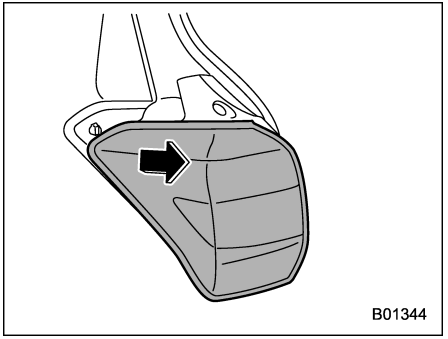
NOTE

The bulb is an integral part of the side turn signal light assembly. If the bulb fails, the whole side turn signal light assembly must be replaced.

■ Rear combination lights

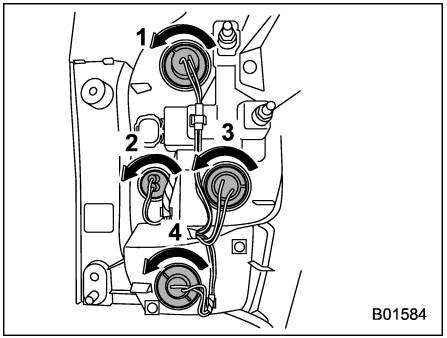


1. Using a Phillips screwdriver, remove the upper and lower screws that secure the rear combination light assembly.



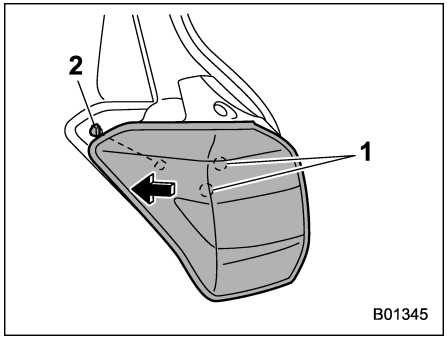
2. Slide the rear combination light as-

sembly rearward and remove it from the vehicle.



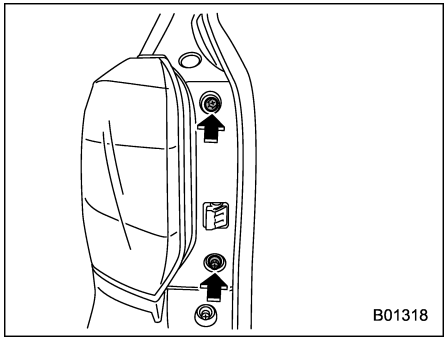
1) Brake/tail light
2) Back-up light
3) Rear turn signal light
4) Rear fog light (if equipped)

3. Remove the bulb socket from the rear combination light assembly by turning it counterclockwise.
4. Pull the bulb out of the bulb socket and replace it with a new one.
5. Set the bulb socket into the rear combination light assembly and turn it clockwise until it locks.



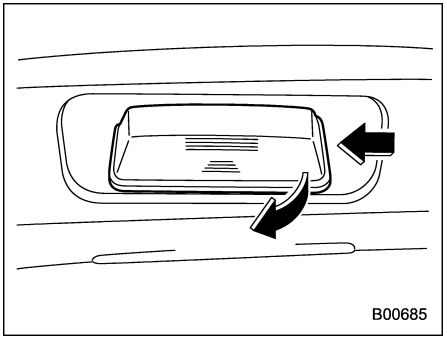
1) Guide pins
2) Clip

6. Put the rear combination light assembly into place while aligning the 2 guide pins and a catch with the guide holes and a clip on the vehicle.



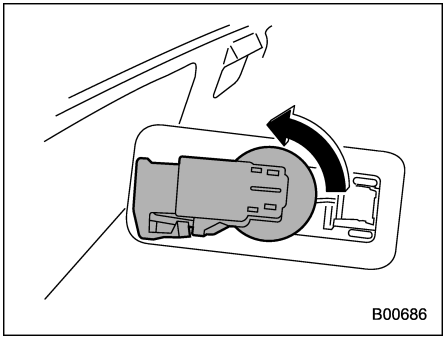
7. Tighten the upper and lower screws.

■ License plate light



1. To remove the right-hand side license plate light cover, insert a finger into the right side of the cover, and then press once to the left and pull it out. To remove the left-hand side license plate light cover, insert a finger into the left side of the cover, and then press once to the right and pull it out.

– CONTINUED –



2. Turn the bulb socket counterclockwise and pull out the socket.
3. Pull the bulb out of the socket.
4. Install a new bulb.
5. Reinstall the bulb socket and the license plate light cover.

■ Other bulbs

It may be difficult to replace the bulbs. We recommend that you have the bulbs replaced by your SUBARU dealer if necessary.

Replacing battery

The access key / transmitter battery may be discharged under the following conditions.

- The operation of the keyless access function is unstable
- The operating distance of the remote keyless entry system is unstable
- The transmitter does not operate properly when used within the standard distance

Replace the battery with a new one.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Do not let dust, oil or water get on or in the access key/transmitter when replacing battery.**
- **Be careful not to damage the printed circuit board in the access key/transmitter when replacing the battery.**
- **Be careful not to allow children to touch the battery and any removed parts; children could swallow them.**
- **Danger of explosion if battery is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or equivalent type.**
- **Batteries shall not be exposed to excessive heat such as sunshine, fire or the like.**

NOTE

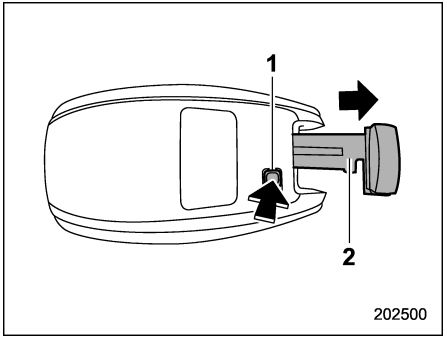
- **Replace only with the same or equivalent type of battery recommended by the manufacturer.**
- **Dispose of used batteries according to the local laws.**
- **Mount the battery in the correct orientation to prevent fluid leakage. Be careful not to bend the terminals. It may result in a malfunction.**
- **It is recommended that the battery should be replaced by a SUBARU dealer.**
- **Use a new battery.**
- **After replacing the battery, confirm that the access key/transmitter functions properly.**

■ Replacing battery of access key

CAUTION

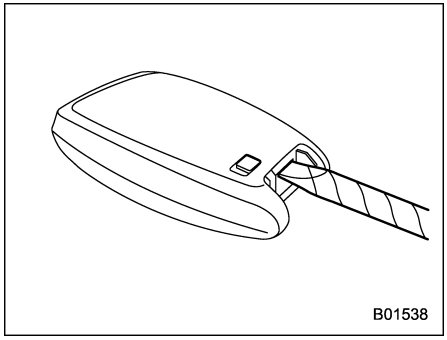
When removing or fitting the access key cover, make sure that the plastic part does not come off or become misaligned.

Battery: Button battery CR2032

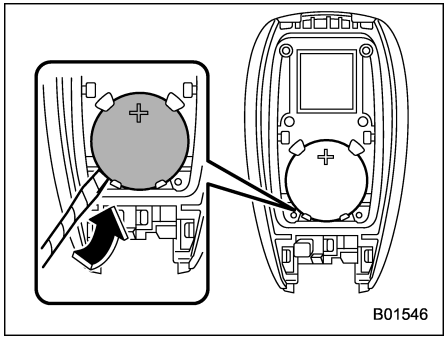


1) Release button
2) Mechanical key

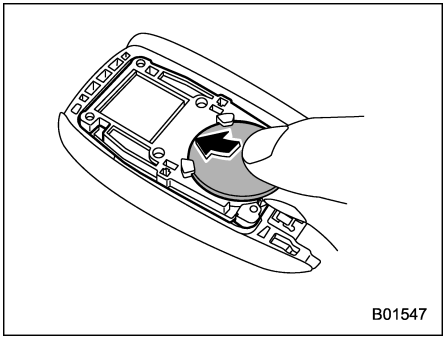
1. Take out the mechanical key.



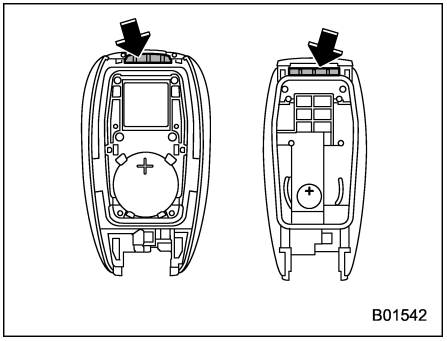
2. Wrap a flat-head screwdriver with vinyl tape or a cloth, and insert it in the gap to remove the cover.



3. Take out the battery using a flat-head screwdriver with vinyl tape or a cloth.



4. Insert a new battery with its positive (+) side facing upward as shown in the figure.

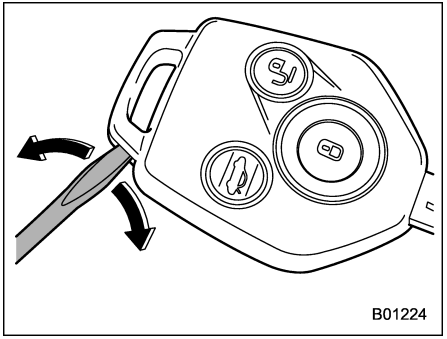


5. Attach the cover to the access key by fitting the projections and recesses together.

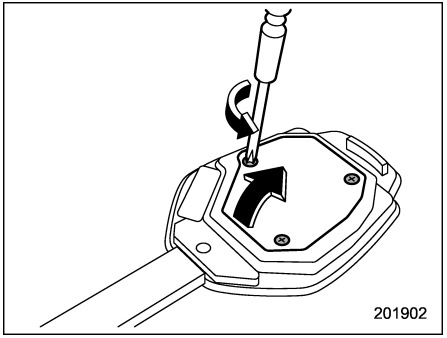
– CONTINUED –

■ Replacing battery of transmitter

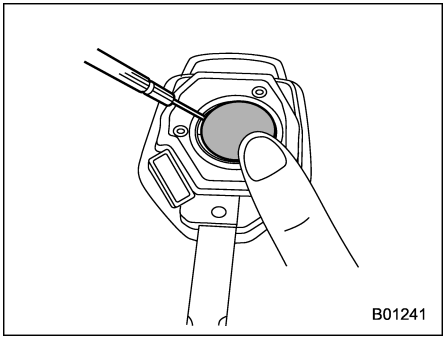
▼ Models without TPMS



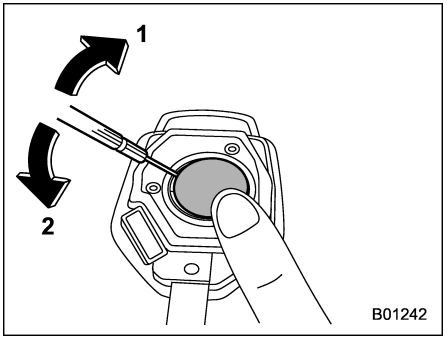
1. Open the key head using a flat-head screwdriver.



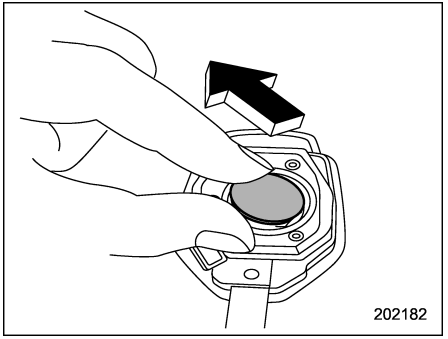
2. Remove the three screws and then remove the cover.



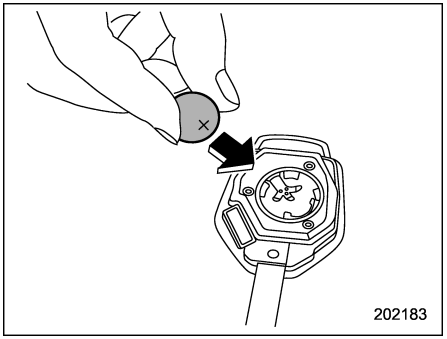
3. Create a gap between the battery and the case by pushing the battery gently with your finger as shown in the illustration. Then, insert a flat-head screwdriver that has been wrapped in insulating tape into the gap.



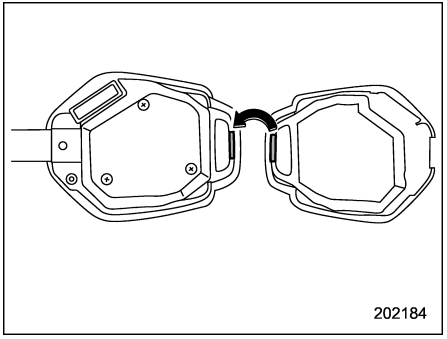
4. Move the flat-head screwdriver in the order shown in 1. and 2., and remove the battery, taking care not to damage the base panel or terminal.



5. Remove the old battery.



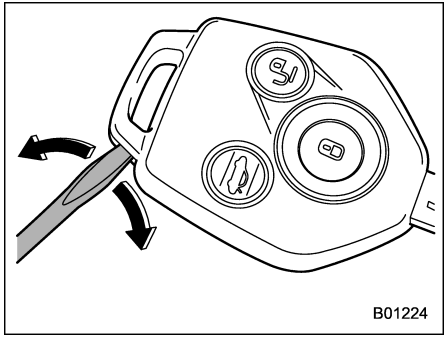
6. Fit a new battery (type **CR-1620** or equivalent) in the case with its positive (+) side facing upward.



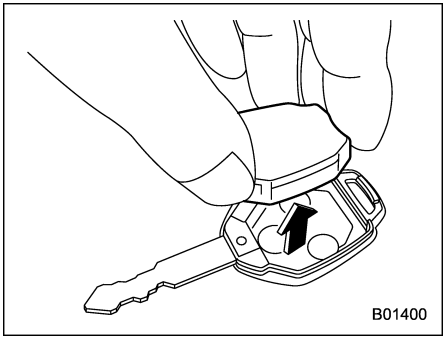
7. Put the case together by fitting the mating part of the button side into the hook on the key side.

After the battery is replaced, the transmitter must be synchronized with the remote keyless entry system's control unit. Press either the "🔓" or "🔒" button several times to synchronize the unit.

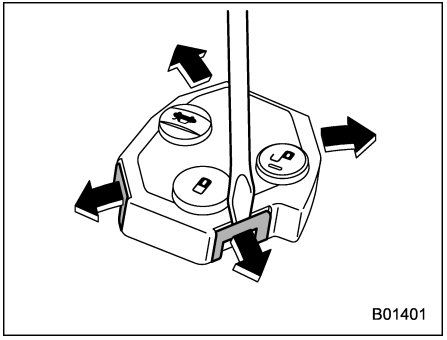
▼ Models with TPMS



1. Open the key head using a flat-head screwdriver.

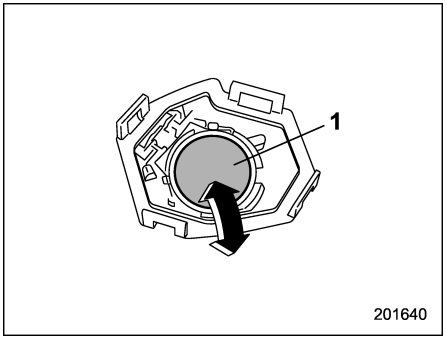


2. Remove the transmitter case from the key head.



3. Open the transmitter case by releasing the hooks.

– CONTINUED –



1) Negative (−) side facing up

4. Replace the old battery with a new battery (type **CR1620** or equivalent) making sure to install the new battery with the negative (−) side facing up.
5. Put together the transmitter case by fitting the hooks on the case.
6. Reinstall the transmitter case in the key head.
7. Refit the removed half of the key head.

After the battery is replaced, the transmitter must be synchronized with the remote keyless entry system's control unit. Press either the "🔒" or "🔓" button six times to synchronize the unit.

Specifications 12-2
- Dimensions 12-2
- Engine 12-3
- Fuel 12-3
- Engine oil 12-4
- Manual transmission, front differential and rear differential gear oil 12-8
- Fluids 12-10
- Engine coolant 12-11
- Electrical system 12-12
- Tires 12-12
- Temporary spare tires 12-12
- Wheel alignment 12-13
- Brake disc 12-13

Fuses and circuits 12-14
- Fuse panel located in the passenger compartment 12-14
- Fuse panel located in the engine compartment 12-16

Bulb chart 12-18

Vehicle identification 12-22

Specifications

The following specifications are subject to change without notice.

■ Dimensions

mm (in)

Item		Petrol engine models			Diesel engine models
		2.0 L non-turbo models	2.5 L models	2.0 L turbo models	
Overall length		4,595 (180.9)			
Overall width		1,795 (70.7)			
Overall height	Models with roof rails	1,735 (68.3)			
	Models without roof rails	1,715 (67.5)*2 1,685 (66.3)*3			
Wheel base		2,640 (103.9)			
Tread	Front	1,545 (60.8)			
	Rear	1,550 (61.0)			
Ground clearance*1		220 (8.7)			

*1: Measured with vehicle empty
*2: Models with shark fin type roof antenna
*3: Models with monopole roof antenna

■ Engine

Engine model	Petrol engine			Diesel engine
	FB20 (2.0 L, DOHC, non-turbo)	FB25 (2.5 L, DOHC, non-turbo)	FA20 (2.0 L, DOHC, turbo)	EE20 (2.0 L, DOHC, turbo)
Engine type	Horizontally opposed, liquid cooled 4 cylinder, 4-stroke petrol engine			Horizontally opposed, liquid cooled 4 cylinder, 4-stroke diesel engine
Displacement cc (cu-in)	1,995 (121.7)	2,498 (152)	1,998 (121.9)	1,998 (121.9)
Bore × Stroke mm (in)	84.0 × 90.0 (3.31 × 3.54)	94.0 × 90.0 (3.7 × 3.5)	86.0 × 86.0 (3.39 × 3.39)	86.0 × 86.0 (3.39 × 3.39)
Compression ratio	10.5 : 1	10.0 : 1	10.6 : 1	15.2 : 1
Firing order	1 – 3 – 2 – 4			1 – 3 – 2 – 4

■ Fuel

Model			Fuel requirement	Fuel tank capacity
Non-turbo models	Australia models		**Unleaded petrol** with Research Octane number **90 or higher**	60 liters (15.9 US gal, 13.2 Imp gal)
	Other models	2.0 L models	**Unleaded petrol** with Research Octane number **95 or higher**[*1]	
		2.5 L models	**Unleaded petrol** with Research Octane number **90 or higher**	
Turbo petrol engine models			**Unleaded petrol** with Research Octane number **95 or higher**	
Diesel engine models			**Diesel fuel** with a specification of **EN590 or an equivalent**	

*1: If the specified grade fuel is not available, refer to “Fuel” ☞7-3.

– CONTINUED –

■ Engine oil

For the checking, adding and replacing procedure or other details, refer to “Engine oil” ☞11-15.

NOTE

The procedure for changing the engine oil and oil filter should be performed by a properly-trained expert. It is recommended that you have this service performed by your SUBARU dealer.

▼ Approved engine oil

Always use the SUBARU approved engine oil. For further details, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.
If the approved engine oil is unavailable, use the alternative engine oil described on the next page.

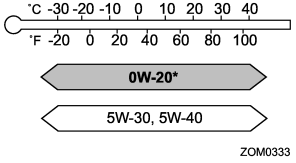
▼ Alternative engine oil

If the SUBARU approved oil is unavailable, the following alternative oil can be used.

NOTE

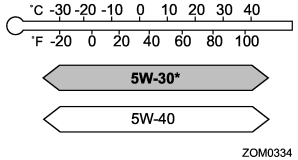
Each quantity indicated here is only a guideline. The necessary quantity for replacement may differ slightly depending on the temperature and other factors.

▽ Non-turbo models

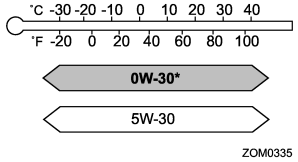
Oil grade	SAE viscosity No. and applicable temperature	Oil capacity
 ZOM0377 API classification SN with the words "RESOURCE CONSERVING" **or** ZOM0293 ILSAC GF-5, which can be identified with the ILSAC certification mark (Starburst mark) **or** ACEA specification A3 or A5	**0W-20*** engine oil is recommended for optimum engine performance and protection. 5W-30 or 5W-40 engine oil may be used if replenishment is needed.  ZOM0333 *: recommended	– Adding the oil from L to F level: 1.0 liter (1.1 US qt, 0.9 Imp qt) – Changing the oil and oil filter: 4.8 liters (5.1 US qt, 4.2 Imp qt)

– CONTINUED –

▽ **Turbo petrol engine models**

Oil grade	SAE viscosity No. and applicable temperature	Engine oil capacity
 ZOM0377 API classification SN with the words "RESOURCE CONSERVING" **or** ZOM0293 ILSAC GF-5, which can be identified with the ILSAC certification mark (Starburst mark) **or** ACEA specification A3 or A5	**5W-30*** engine oil is recommended for optimum engine performance and protection. 5W-40 engine oil may be used if replenishment is needed.  ZOM0334 *: recommended	· Adding the oil from L to F level: 1.0 liter (1.1 US qt, 0.9 Imp qt) · Changing the oil and oil filter: 5.1 liters (5.4 US qt, 4.6 Imp qt)

▽ **Diesel engine models**

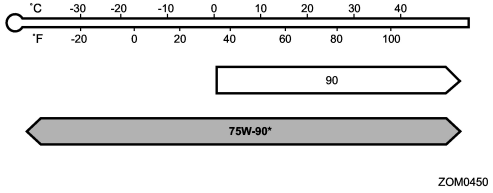
Oil grade	SAE viscosity No. and applicable temperature	Oil capacity
ACEA specification C2 or C3	**0W-30*** engine oil is recommended for optimum engine performance and protection. 5W-30 engine oil may be used if replenishment is needed.  *: recommended	– Adding the oil from L to F level: 1.0 liter (1.1 US qt, 0.9 Imp qt) – Changing the oil and oil filter: 5.9 liters (6.2 US qt, 5.2 Imp qt)

– CONTINUED –

■ Manual transmission, front differential and rear differential gear oil

Oil	Manual transmission oil	Front differential gear oil (CVT models)	
Oil grade	• SUBARU Extra MT*3 • API classification GL-5 (75W-90)*4	• SUBARU Extra MT*3 • API classification GL-5 (75W-90)	
Oil capacity*1	3.3 liters (3.5 US qt, 2.9 Imp qt)	Non-turbo models	1.35 liters (1.43 US qt, 1.19 Imp qt)
		Turbo petrol engine models	1.4 liters (1.5 US qt, 1.2 Imp qt)
		Diesel engine models	
Remarks*2	“Manual transmission oil” ☞11-26	“Front differential gear oil (CVT models) and rear differential gear oil” ☞11-27	

*1: The indicated oil quantity is only a guideline. The necessary quantity for replacement may differ slightly depending on the temperature and other factors. After refilling the gearbox with oil, the oil level should be checked.
*2: For more details about maintenance and service, refer to the indicated section.
*3: Equivalent to factory-filled oil.
*4: You may use this type of manual transmission oil. However, using this type of oil will detract from driveability and fuel efficiency.

Oil	Rear differential gear oil
Oil grade	API classification GL-5
SAE viscosity No. and applicable temperature	• 75W-90* • 90  *: Recommended
Oil capacity*1	0.8 liters (0.8 US qt, 0.7 Imp qt)
Remarks*2	“Front differential gear oil (CVT models) and rear differential gear oil” ☞11-27

*1: The indicated oil quantity is only a guideline. The necessary quantity for replacement may differ slightly depending on the temperature and other factors. After refilling the gearbox with oil, the oil level should be checked.
*2: For more details about maintenance and service, refer to the indicated section.

– CONTINUED –

■ Fluids

Fluid	Fluid type*1	Fluid capacity*2	Remarks*3
Continuously variable transmission fluid (CVT models)	We recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer.	**Non-turbo models:** 12.7 liters (13.4 US qt, 11.2 Imp qt)*4 12.2 liters (12.9 US qt, 10.7 Imp qt)*5 **Turbo petrol engine models:** 12.7 liters (13.4 US qt, 11.2 Imp qt)*6 12.4 liters (13.1 US qt, 10.9 Imp qt)*7 **Diesel engine models:** 12.7 liters (13.4 US qt, 11.2 Imp qt)	"Continuously variable transmission fluid" ☞11-27
Power steering fluid (if equipped)	· SUBARU ATF · IDEMITSU ATF HP · "Dexron III" Type Automatic Transmission Fluid	0.7 liters (0.7 US qt, 0.6 Imp qt)	·"Power steering" ☞7-27 ·"Power steering fluid (models with hydraulic power steering system)" ☞11-27
Brake fluid	FMVSS No. 116, fresh DOT 3 or DOT 4 brake fluid	–	"Brake fluid" ☞11-28
Clutch fluid (MT models)		–	"Clutch fluid (MT models)" ☞11-29

*1: Use one of the indicated types of fluid.
*2: The indicated fluid quantity is only a guideline. The necessary quantity for replacement may differ slightly depending on the temperature and other factors.
*3: For more details about maintenance and service, refer to the indicated section.
*4: Models with Auto Start Stop system
*5: Models without Auto Start Stop system
*6: Models with CVTF cooler
*7: Models without CVTF cooler

■ Engine coolant

Models					Coolant capacity	Coolant type
Petrol engine models	2.0 L non-turbo models	Models without valve heater	MT models		7.8 liters (8.2 US qt, 6.9 Imp qt)	SUBARU Super Coolant
			CVT models		8.0 liters (8.5 US qt, 7.0 Imp qt)	
		Models with valve heater	CVT models		8.1 liters (8.6 US qt, 7.1 Imp qt)	
			MT models	RHD models	7.9 liters (8.4 US qt, 7.0 Imp qt)	
				LHD models	7.8 liters (8.2 US qt, 6.9 Imp qt)	
	2.5 L models	Models without valve heater	RHD models		7.6 liters (8.0 US qt, 6.7 Imp qt)	
			LHD models		7.6 liters (8.0 US qt, 6.7 Imp qt)	
		Models with valve heater	LHD models		7.7 liters (8.1 US qt, 6.8 Imp qt)	
	Turbo models				8.9 liters (9.4 US qt, 7.8 Imp qt)	
Diesel engine models			MT models		8.3 liters (8.8 US qt, 7.3 Imp qt)	
			CVT models		8.2 liters (8.7 US qt, 7.2 Imp qt)	

The indicated coolant quantity is only a guideline. The necessary quantity for replacement may differ slightly depending on the temperature and other factors. For more details about maintenance and service, refer to “Cooling system” ☞11-20.

– CONTINUED –

■ Electrical system

Battery type and capacity (5HR)	Petrol engine models	Models without Auto Start Stop system	55D23L
		Models with Auto Start Stop system	Q-85
	Diesel engine models		S-95
Alternator	Petrol engine models	12V-130A	
	Diesel engine models	MT models	12V-150A
		CVT models	12V-170A
Spark plugs (petrol engine models)	Non-turbo models	SILZKAR7B11 (NGK)	
	Turbo models	ILKAR8H6 (NGK)	

■ Tires

For the tire specifications, see the tire pressure label located on the door pillar on the driver's side.

■ Temporary spare tires

Temporary spare tire size	T145/80D17	185/65R17
Temporary spare tire inflation pressure (recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	420 kPa (4.2 kgf/cm^2, 60 psi)	290 kPa (2.9 kgf/cm^2, 42 psi)
Wheel nut tightening torque	120 N·m (12 kgf·m, 89 lbf·ft)*1 *2	

*1: This torque is equivalent to applying approximately 40 to 50 kgf (88 to 110 lbf) at the end of the wheel nut wrench. If you have tightened the wheel nuts by yourself, have the tightening torque checked at the nearest automotive service facility as soon as possible.
*2: For the wheel nut tightening procedure, refer to "Changing flat tire" ☞9-5.

■ Wheel alignment

We recommend that you have your SUBARU dealer check or adjust the wheel alignment.

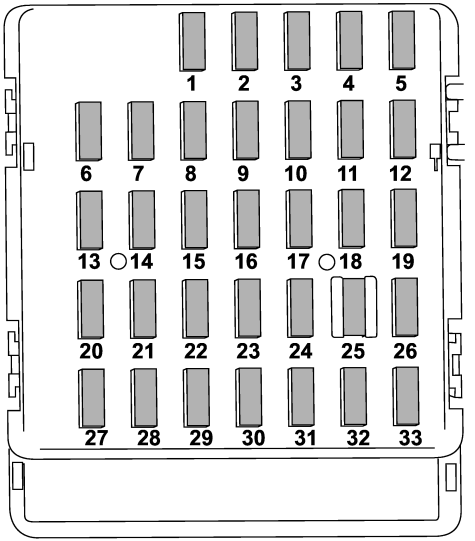
Item		Petrol engine models			Diesel engine models
		2.0 L non-turbo models	2.5 L models	2.0 L turbo models	
Toe	Front	0 mm (0 in), Toe angle (sum of both wheels): 0°			
	Rear	3 mm (0.12 in), Toe angle (sum of both wheels): 0°15′			
Camber	Front	0°00′			
	Rear	−1°00′			

■ Brake disc

If you need information on the usage limit value of brake discs and the method for measuring them, we recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer.

Fuses and circuits

■ Fuse panel located in the passenger compartment



C00123

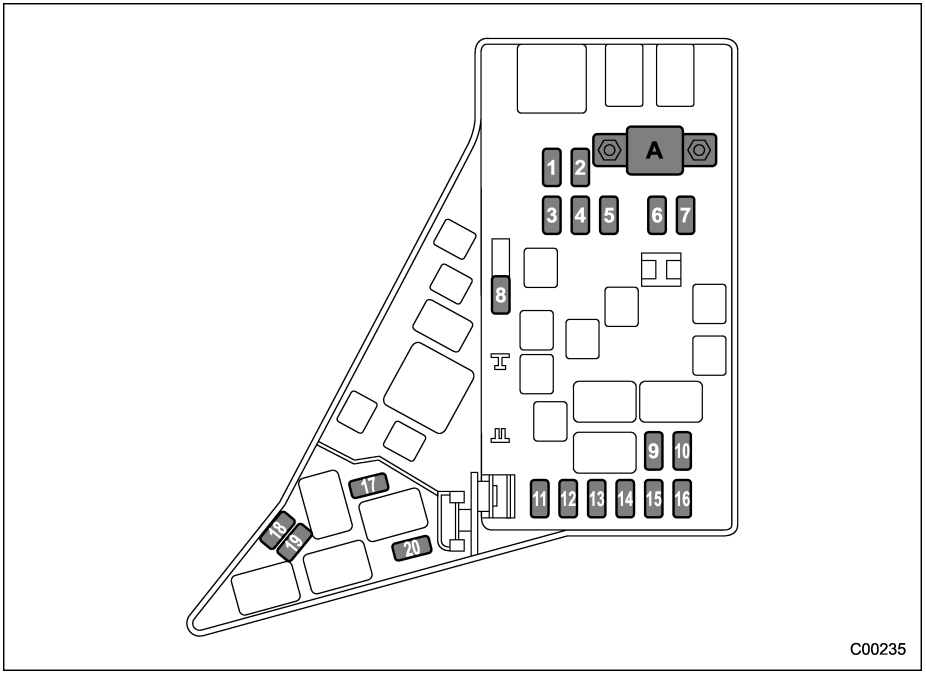
Fuse panel	Fuse rating	Circuit
1	20A	• Rear fog light • Trailer
2	Empty	
3	15A	• Door locking
4	10A	• Front wiper deicer relay
5	10A	• Combination meter • Clock
6	7.5A	• Remote control rear view mirrors
7	15A	• Integrated unit
8	15A	• Stop light
9	15A	• Front wiper deicer
10	7.5A	• Power supply (battery)
11	7.5A	• Turn signal unit
12	15A	• Transmission control unit • Engine control unit • Integrated unit
13	20A	• Accessory power outlet (center console)
14	15A	• Position light • Tail light • Rear combination light

Fuse panel	Fuse rating	Circuit
15	10A	• Keyless unit • Cargo area light
16	7.5A	• Illumination
17	15A	• Seat heaters
18	10A	• Back-up light
19	7.5A	• Daytime running light
20	10A	• Accessory power outlet (instrument panel)
21	7.5A	• Starter relay • Auto Start Stop control unit
22	10A	• Air conditioner • Rear window defogger relay coil
23	Empty	
24	10A	• Audio (models without Auto Start Stop system) • Navigation system (models without Auto Start Stop system)
25	15A	• SRS airbag system
26	7.5A	• Power window relay • Radiator main fan relay
27	15A	• Blower fan
28	15A	• Blower fan
29	15A	• Fog light

Fuse panel	Fuse rating	Circuit
30	Empty	
31	7.5A	• Auto air conditioner unit • Integrated unit
32	7.5A	• Clutch
33	7.5A	• ABS/Vehicle Dynamics Control unit

– CONTINUED –

■ Fuse panel located in the engine compartment

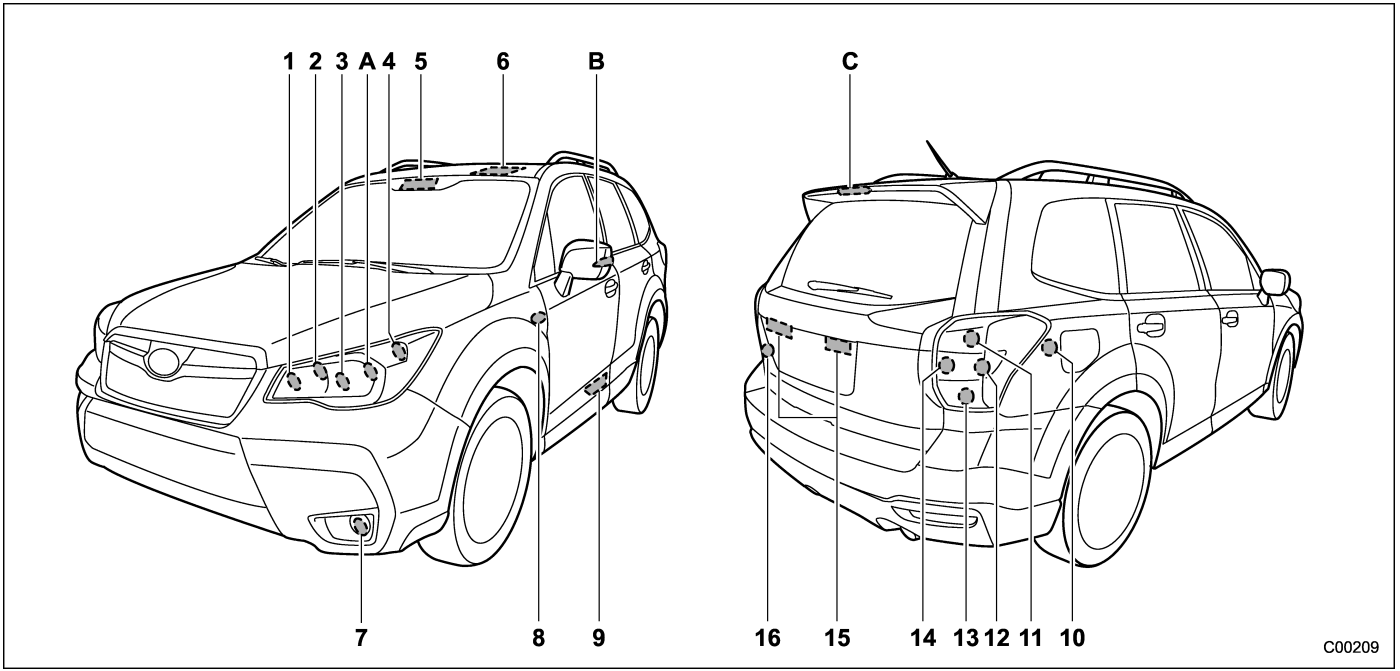


A) Main fuse

Fuse panel	Fuse rating	Circuit
1	30A	• ABS unit • Vehicle Dynamics Control unit
2	25A	• Main fan (cooling fan)
3	25A	• Sub fan (cooling fan)
4	Empty	
5	25A	• Audio
6	30A	• Headlight (low beam)
7	15A	• Headlight (high beam)
8	20A	• Back-up
9	15A	• Horn
10	25A	• Rear window defogger • Mirror heater
11	20A	• Fuel pump
12	20A	• Continuously variable transmission control unit
13	7.5A	• Engine control unit
14	15A	• Turn and hazard warning flasher
15	15A	• Tail and illumination relay
16	7.5A	• Alternator

Fuse panel	Fuse rating	Circuit
17	Empty	
18	Empty	
19	15A	• Headlight (low beam – right hand)
20	15A	• Headlight (low beam – left hand)

Bulb chart



NOTE

Lights A, B and C are the LED (Light Emitting Diode) type. We recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer for replacement.

		Wattage	Bulb No.*
1)	High beam headlight	12V-60W	HB3
2)	Front position light (if equipped)	12V-5W	W5W
3)	Low beam headlight		
	Models with HID light	12V-35W	D4R
	Models with halogen light	12V-55W	H11
4)	Front turn signal light	12V-21W	WY21W
5)	Map light	12V-8W	–
6)	Dome light	12V-8W	–
7)	Type A		
	Front fog light	12V-19W	H16
	Type B		
	Front fog light	12V-35W	H8
	Daytime running light	12V-13W	P13W
	Type C		
	Daytime running light	12V-13W	P13W
8)	Side turn signal light (if equipped)	12V-5W	–
9)	Door step light	12V-5W	W5W
10)	Cargo area light	12V-5W	–
11)	Brake/Tail light	12V-21/5W	W21/5W
12)	Rear turn signal light	12V-21W	WY21W
13)	Rear fog light (right-hand drive models) (if equipped)	12V-21W	W21/5W
14)	Back-up light	12V-16W	W16W
15)	Licence plate light	12V-5W	W5W
16)	Rear fog light (left-hand drive models) (if equipped)	12V-21W	W21/5W

– CONTINUED –

		Wattage	Bulb No.*
A)	Front position light (if equipped)	–	–
B)	Side turn signal light (if equipped)	–	–
C)	High mount stop light	–	–

*: ECE specification

WARNING

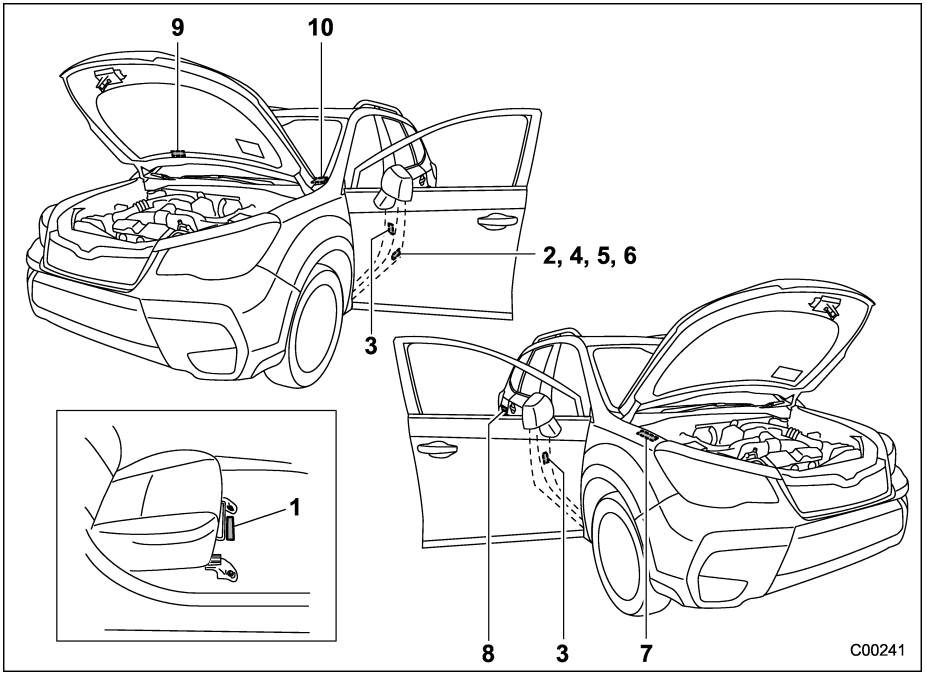
- **Bulbs may become very hot while illuminated. Before replacing bulbs, turn off the lights and wait until the bulbs cool down. Otherwise, there is a risk of sustaining a burn injury.**
- **For models with HID low beam headlights, observe the following precautions. Not doing so carries the risk of an electric shock that could result in serious injury because the HID bulbs use an extremely high voltage.**
  - **– Do not replace any headlight bulbs (both low beam and high beam) by yourself.**
  - **– Do not remove/restore the headlight assemblies by yourself.**
  - **– Do not remove any headlight-assembly components by yourself.**

  For replacement, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.

CAUTION

Replace any bulb only with a new bulb of the specified wattage. Using a bulb of different wattage could result in a fire.

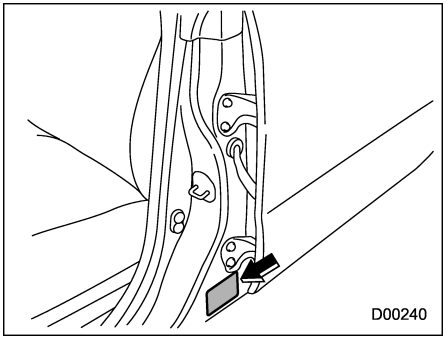
Vehicle identification



1) Vehicle identification number
2) ID label (Europe and Russia models)
3) Tire inflation pressure label
4) Year of manufacture label (Middle East models)
5) Model number label (General models)
6) Built date label (Australia models)
7) ADR compliance plate (Australia models)
8) Fuel label
9) Air conditioner label
10) Vehicle identification number plate

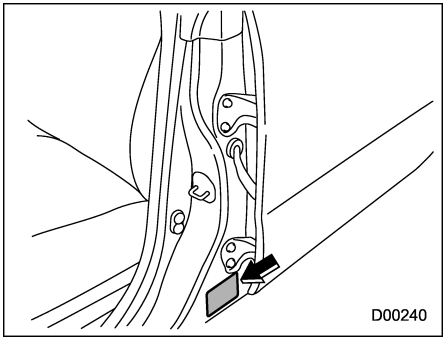
Year of manufacture and a country of origin (Middle East models only) 13-2
ID label (Russia models) 13-2
Speed limit, maximum torque and maximum power at rpm (Middle East models only) 13-2
Declaration of conformity in accordance with the radio and telecommunications terminal equipment directive 1999/5/EC 13-3
Transmitter for TPMS 13-3
Transmitter for the keyless entry system 13-4
Receiver for the keyless entry system 13-6
Access key 13-8
Immobilizer 13-10
LF Oscillator 13-15
Bluetooth® module 13-18
Technical information 13-19
Singapore models 13-19
Dominican Republic models 13-20
Taiwan models 13-21
Jamaica models 13-21
Brazil models 13-21
Declaration of conformity in accordance with the Machinery Directive 2006/42/EC 13-23
Jack 13-23

Year of manufacture and a country of origin (Middle East models only)



The calendar year when your vehicle was manufactured and a country of origin are indicated in the “Year of manufacture label” attached to the driver’s door jam.

ID label (Russia models)



The ID label is located on the left side center pillar as shown in the illustration.

Speed limit, maximum torque and maximum power at rpm (Middle East models only)

Model	2.5 L models
	CVT
Speed limit km/h	196
Maximum torque N·m (kgf·m)/rpm	235 (24.0) /4,100
Maximum power kW (PS)/rpm	126 (171) /5,800

- The performance data above is the numeric value measured according to the GSO-ISO-1585-2008 quality norm.
- The performance data above is the numeric value measured from petrol with an octane rating of 95 (Research Octane number).

Declaration of conformity in accordance with the radio and telecommunications terminal equipment directive 1999/5/EC

■ Transmitter for TPMS

SCHRADER ELECTRONICS

EC Directive: 1999/5/EC

Manufacturer: Schrader Electronics

Apparatus: Subaru HS Snap in 433 Mhz Transmitter

Applicable Documents: CEPT ERC REC 70-03 Annex 1, EN 60950, ETSI 301 489-3 & ETSI 300 220

I certify that the Apparatus conforms with the essential requirements of the 1999/5/EC Directive as defined in article 3 for the protection of the health and safety of the user and any other person, including the objectives with respect to safety requirements contained in Directive 73/23/EEC;

The protection requirements with respect to electromagnetic compatibility contained in Directive 89/336/EEC and in that the radio equipment is constructed so that it effectively uses the spectrum allocated to terrestrial/space communication and orbital resources so as to avoid harmful interference.

Subaru HS Snap in 433 Mhz Transmitter is based on PSA HS Snap in 433 Mhz Transmitter, They are identical in Enclosure, Antenna, PCB component and layout.They have identical RF and EMC characteristics .
This declaration of conformity has been issued under the sole responsibility of the manufacturer.

Signed on behalf of Schrader Electronics by

James Kyle, EMC & Approvals Coordinator
Date: 8/1/13

D00247

– CONTINUED –

■ Transmitter for the keyless entry system

▼ Without TPMS

CalsonicKansei
CalsonicKansei Corp.
2-1917, Nisshin-cho, Kita-ku, Saitama-shi, Saitama-ken
331-8501, Japan
TEL.: +81-48-660-4073 FAX.: +81-48-661-1026

DECLARATION of CONFORMITY

We, **CalsonicKansei Corp.** of the above address, hereby declare, at our sole responsibility, that the following product conforms to the Essential Requirements of the Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 1999/5/EC in accordance with the tests conducted to the appropriate requirements of the relevant standards, as listed herewith.

Product: Keyless Entry System (Transmitter)

Model/ Type Number: TF001

Directive and Standards used:
Radio: EN 300 220-1 V2.3.1 (2010-02)
EN 300 220-2 V2.3.1 (2010-02)
EMC : EN 301 489-1 V1.8.1(2008-04)
EN 301 489-3 V1.4.1 (2002-08)
Safety: EN 60065 :2002 + Amd.1 :2006
incl. EN60065:2002+Amd.11:2008

Year of affixing CE marking: 2011

Signature : Haruyoshi Hayashi

Name : Haruyoshi Hayashi

Position : Deputy General Manager
Electric Design Group

Date : August 27, 2011

CAUTION - Danger of explosion if battery is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or equivalent type.
CAUTION - Do not exposed to excessive heat such as sunshine, fire or the like.

D00222

▼ With TPMS

ALPS ELECTRIC CO., LTD. Engineering Headquarters
6-3-36, Nakazato, Furukawa, Osaki-city, Miyagi-pref, 989-6181, Japan
Phone +81 229-23-5111 Fax +81 229-23-5129

DECLARATION of CONFORMITY For

CE

Product: Keyless Entry System
(Hand unit)
Model: TWB1G762
Type: Transmitter

Supplied by
ALPS ELECTRIC CO.,LTD.
6-3-36, Nakazato, Furukawa, Osaki-city,
Miyagi-pref., JAPAN 989-6181

Technical Construction File held by
ALPS ELECTRIC CO.,LTD.
6-3-36, Nakazato, Furukawa, Osaki-city,
Miyagi-pref., JAPAN 989-6181

Notified Body - R&TTE Directive N/A

	Standard used for comply
R&TTE Directive (Article 3.1(a) Safety)	EN 60065: 2002 + Amd.1: 2006 + Amd.11: 2008 + Amd.2: 2010 +Amd.12: 2011
R&TTE Directive (Article 3.1(b) EMC)	EN 301 489-1 V1.9.2: 2011-09 EN 301 489-3 V1.4.1: 2002-08
R&TTE Directive (Article 3.2 Spectrum)	EN 300 220-1 V2.4.1 : 2012-05 EN 300 220-2 V2.4.1 : 2012-05

Means of Conformity
We declare under our sole responsibility that the Product (s) is conformity with the essential requirements and other relevant requirements of the Radio and Telecommunication Terminal Equipment (R&TTE) Directive (1999/5/EC).

Date of issue: May 16, 2013

Signature of Responsible Person:

T. Kinoshita

Toru Kinoshita
Group Manager
GROUP 5 ENGINEERING DEPT. M5

D00248

– CONTINUED –

■ Receiver for the keyless entry system

▼ Without TPMS

CalsonicKansei Corp.
2-1917, Nisshin-cho, Kita-ku, Saitama-shi, Saitama-ken
331-8501, Japan
TEL : +81-48-660-4073 FAX : +81-48-661-1026

DECLARATION of CONFORMITY

We, **CalsonicKansei Corp.** of the above address, hereby declare, at our sole responsibility, that the following product conforms to the Essential Requirements of the Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 1999/5/EC in accordance with the tests conducted to the appropriate requirements of the relevant standards, as listed herewith.

Product:	**Keyless Entry System (Receiver)**
Model/ Type Number:	**GSREU52**
Directive and Standards used:	**Radio: EN 300 220-1 V2.3.1 (2010-02)** **EN 300 220-2 V2.3.1 (2010-02)** **EMC : EN 301 489-1 V1.8.1(2008-04)** **EN 301 489-3 V1.4.1 (2002-08)** **Safety: EN 60065 :2002 + Amd.1 :2006** **incl. EN60065:2002+Amd.11:2008**

Year of affixing CE marking: 2011

Signature : Haruyoshi Hayashi

Name : Haruyoshi Hayashi

Position : Deputy General Manager
Electric Design Group

Date : August 27, 2011

D00223

▼ With TPMS

ALPS ALPS ELECTRIC CO., LTD. Engineering Headquarters
6-3-36, Nakazato, Furukawa, Osaki-city, Miyagi-pref, 989-6181, Japan
Phone +81 229-23-5111 Fax +81 229-23-5129

DECLARATION of CONFORMITY
For

CE

Product: TPMS/RKE Receiver
Model: TWD1G776
Type: Receiver

Supplied by
ALPS ELECTRIC CO.,LTD.
6-3-36, Nakazato, Furukawa, Osaki-city,
Miyagi-pref., JAPAN 989-6181

Technical Construction File held by
ALPS ELECTRIC CO.,LTD.
6-3-36, Nakazato, Furukawa, Osaki-city,
Miyagi-pref., JAPAN 989-6181

Notified Body - R&TTE Directive N/A

	Standard used for comply
R&TTE Directive (Article 3.1(a) Safety)	EN 60065: 2002 + Amd.1: 2006 + Amd.11: 2008 + Amd.2: 2010 +Amd.12: 2011
R&TTE Directive (Article 3.1(b) EMC)	EN 301 489-1 V1.9.2: 2011-09 EN 301 489-3 V1.4.1: 2002-08
R&TTE Directive (Article 3.2 Spectrum)	EN 300 220-1 V2.4.1 : 2012-05 EN 300 220-2 V2.4.1 : 2012-05

Means of Conformity
We declare under our sole responsibility that the Product (s) is conformity with the essential requirements and other relevant requirements of the Radio and Telecommunication Terminal Equipment (R&TTE) Directive (1999/5/EC).

Date of issue: May 16, 2013

Signature of Responsible Person:

T. Kinoshita

Toru Kinoshita
Group Manager
GROUP 5 ENGINEERING DEPT. M5

D00249

– CONTINUED –

■ Access key

The latest “DECLARATION of CONFORMITY” (DoC) is available at the following address:
http://www.globaldenso.com/en/products/oem/index.html

CE

English
Hereby, DENSO CORPORATION declares that this 13CZY/14AHB is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

Suomi
DENSO CORPORATION vakuuttaa täten että 13CZY/14AHB tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.

Nederlands
Hierbij verklaart DENSO CORPORATION dat het toestel 13CZY/14AHB in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.

Français
Par la présente DENSO CORPORATION déclare que l’appareil 13CZY/14AHB est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.

Svenska
Härmed intygar DENSO CORPORATION att denna 13CZY/14AHB står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.

Dansk
Undertegnede DENSO CORPORATION erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr 13CZY/14AHB overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

Deutsch
Hiermit erklärt DENSO CORPORATION, dass sich das Gerät 13CZY/14AHB in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.

Ελληνικά
ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ DENSO CORPORATION ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ 13CZY/14AHB ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.

Italiano
Con la presente DENSO CORPORATION dichiara che questo 13CZY/14AHB è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.

Español
Por medio de la presente DENSO CORPORATION declara que el 13CZY/14AHB cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.

Português
DENSO CORPORATION declara que este 13CZY/14AHB está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.

Malti
Hawnhekk, DENSO CORPORATION, jiddikjara li dan 13CZY/14AHB jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.

Eesti
Käesolevaga kinnitab DENSO CORPORATION seadme 13CZY/14AHB vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.

Magyar
Alulírott, DENSO CORPORATION nyilatkozom, hogy a 13CZY/14AHB megfelel a vonatkozó alapvetõ követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb elõírásainak.

Slovenčina
DENSO CORPORATION týmto vyhlasuje, že 13CZY/14AHB spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.

Český
DENSO CORPORATION tímto prohlašuje, že tento 13CZY/14AHB je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.

Slovenski
DENSO CORPORATION izjavlja, da je ta 13CZY/14AHB v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.

Lietuvių
Šiuo DENSO CORPORATION deklaruoja, kad šis 13CZY/14AHB atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.

Latviešu
Ar šo DENSO CORPORATION deklarē, ka 13CZY/14AHB atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.

Polski
Niniejszym DENSO CORPORATION oświadcza, że 13CZY/14AHB jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.

Íslenska
Hér með lýsir DENSO CORPORATION yfir því að 13CZY/14AHB er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.

Norsk
DENSO CORPORATION erklærer herved at utstyret 13CZY/14AHB er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

български
С настоящето, DENSO CORPORATION, декларира, че 13CZY/14AHB е в съответствие със съществените изисквания и другите приложими разпоредби на Директива 1999/5/EC.

Română
Prin prezenta, DENSO CORPORATION, declară că aparatul 13CZY/14AHB este in conformitate cu cerinţele esenţiale şi cu alte prevederi pertinente ale Directivei 1999/5/CE.

Црногорски језик
Ovim, DENSO CORPORATION, izjavljuje da ovaj 13CZY/14AHB je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

Српски/srpski
Ovim, DENSO CORPORATION, deklariše da je 13CZY/14AHB u skladu sa osnovnim zahtevima i ostalim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

Hrvatski
Ovim DENSO CORPORATION, izjavljuje da je 13CZY/14AHB u sklau s bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC i Pravilnika o RiTT opremi (NN 25/2012).

Shqip
Nepermjet kesaj, DENSO CORPORATION, deklaroj qe ky 13CZY/14AHB eshte ne pajtim me kerkesat thelbesore dhe dispozitat e tjera perkatese te Direktives 1999/5/EC.

– CONTINUED –

■ Immobilizer

▼ Models with “keyless access with push-button start system”

SUBARU

FUJI HEAVY INDUSTRIES LTD.
SUBARU ENGINEERING DIVISION
1-1 SUBARU-CHO OTA-SHI GUNMA 373-8555 JAPAN
Phone: +81 276-28-2771 Fax: +81 276-26-3069

R&TTE Declaration of Conformity

We,

Manufacturer's Name: Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd.
Manufacturer's Address: 1-1,Subaru-cho,Ota-shi,Gunma 373-8555 JAPAN

hereby declare under our sole responsibility that the product:

Product Name: Immobilizer
Product Model: SSPIMB02

to which this declaration relates is in conformity with the essential requirements and other relevant requirements of the R&TTE Directive (1999/5/EC). The product is compliant with the following standards and/or other normative documents:

-Health & safety requirements: EN60950-1
-EMC requirements EN301 489-1 & EN301 489-3
-Effective uses of radio spectrum: EN300 330-2

Supplementary information:

* CE mark	CE
* Member states intended for use	EU and EFTA

Date: May 13, 2015

Signature: Takashi Nishida

Takashi Nishida

D00379

English
Hereby, Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd., declares that this SSPIMB02 is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

Suomi
Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. vakuuttaa täten että SSPIMB02 tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.

Nederlands
Hierbij verklaart Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. dat het toestel SSPIMB02 in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.

Français
Par la présente Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. déclare que l'appareil SSPIMB02 est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.

Svenska
Härmed intygar Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. att denna SSPIMB02 står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.

Dansk
Undertegnede Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr SSPIMB02 overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

Deutsch
Hiermit erklärt Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd., dass sich das Gerät SSPIMB02 in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.

Ελληνικά
ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ SSPIMB02 ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.

Italiano
Con la presente Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. dichiara che questo SSPIMB02 è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.

Español
Por medio de la presente Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. declara que el SSPIMB02 cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.

Português
Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. declara que este SSPIMB02 está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.

Malti
Hawnhekk, Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd., jiddikjara li dan SSPIMB02 jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.

Eesti
Käesolevaga kinnitab Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. seadme SSPIMB02 vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.

Magyar
Alulírott, Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. nyilatkozom, hogy a SSPIMB02 megfelel a vonatkozó alapvetõ követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb elõírásainak.

– CONTINUED –

Slovenčina

Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. týmto vyhlasuje, že SSPIMB02 spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.

Český

Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. tímto prohlašuje, že tento SSPIMB02 je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.

Slovenski

Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. izjavlja, da je ta SSPIMB02 v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.

Lietuvių

Šiuo Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. deklaruoja, kad šis SSPIMB02 atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.

Latviešu

Ar šo Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. deklarē, ka SSPIMB02 atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.

Polski

Niniejszym Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. oświadcza, że SSPIMB02 jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.

Íslenska

Hér með lýsir Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. yfir því að SSPIMB02 er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.

Norsk

Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. erklærer herved at utstyret SSPIMB02 er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

Црногорски језик

Ovim, Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd., izjavljuje da ovaj SSPIMB02 je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

Shqip

Nepermjet kesaj, Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd., deklaroj qe ky SSPIMB02 eshte ne pajtim me kerkesat thelbesore dhe dispozitat e tjera perkatese te Direktives 1999/5/EC.

Hrvatski

Ovim Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd., izjavljuje da je SSPIMB02 u sklau s bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC i Pravilnika o RiTT opremi (NN 25/2012).

Српски/srpski

Ovim, Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd., deklariše da je SSPIMB02 u skladu sa osnovnim zahtevima i ostalim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

▼ **Models without "keyless access with push-button start system"**

English

Hereby, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., declares that this RI-38BFH is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

Suomi

Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. vakuuttaa täten että RI-38BFH tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.

Nederlands

Hierbij verklaart Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. dat het toestel RI-38BFH in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.

Français

Par la présente Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. déclare que l'appareil RI-38BFH est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.

Svenska

Härmed intygar Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. att denna RI-38BFH står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.

Dansk

Undertegnede Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr RI-38BFH overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

Deutsch

Hiermit erklärt Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., dass sich das Gerät RI-38BFH in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.

Ελληνικά

ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ RI-38BFH ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.

Italiano

Con la presente Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. dichiara che questo RI-38BFH è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.

Español

Por medio de la presente Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. declara que el RI-38BFH cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.

Português

Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. declara que este RI-38BFH está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.

Malti

Hawnhekk, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., jiddikjara li dan RI-38BFH jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.

Eesti

Käesolevaga kinnitab Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. seadme RI-38BFH vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.

Magyar

Alulírott, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. nyilatkozom, hogy a RI-38BFH megfelel a vonatkozó alapvetõ követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb elõírásainak.

– CONTINUED –

Slovenčina

Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. týmto vyhlasuje, že RI-38BFH spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.

Český

Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. tímto prohlašuje, že tento RI-38BFH je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.

Slovenski

Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. izjavlja, da je ta RI-38BFH v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.

Lietuvių

Šiuo Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. deklaruoja, kad šis RI-38BFH atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.

Latviešu

Ar šo Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. deklarē, ka RI-38BFH atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.

Polski

Niniejszym Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. oświadcza, że RI-38BFH jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.

Íslenska

Hér með lýsir Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. yfir því að RI-38BFH er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.

Norsk

Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. erklærer herved at utstyret RI-38BFH er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

български

С настоящето, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., декларира, че RI-38BFH е в съответствие със съществените изисквания и другите приложими разпоредби на Директива 1999/5/EC.

Română

Prin prezenta, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., declară că aparatul RI-38BFH este în conformitate cu cerinţele esenţiale şi cu alte prevederi pertinente ale Directivei 1999/5/CE.

Црногорски језик

Ovim, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., izjavljuje da ovaj RI-38BFH je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

Shqip

Nepermjet kesaj, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., deklaroj qe ky RI-38BFH eshte ne pajtim me kerkesat thelbesore dhe dispozitat e tjera perkatese te Direktives 1999/5/EC.

Hrvatski

Ovim Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., izjavljuje da je RI-38BFH u sklau s bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC i Pravilnika o RiTT opremi (NN 25/2012).

Српски/srpski

Ovim, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., deklariše da je RI-38BFH u skladu sa osnovnim zahtevima i ostalim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

The DECLARATION of CONFORMITY (DoC) is available at the following address:
http://www.tokai-rika.co.jp/pc/

CE

■ LF Oscillator

FUJI HEAVY INDUSTRIES LTD.
SUBARU ENGINEERING DIVISION
1-1 SUBARU-CHO OTA-SHI GUNMA 373-8555 JAPAN
Phone: +81 276-26-2771 Fax: +81 276-26-3069

R&TTE Declaration of Conformity

We,

Manufacturer's Name: Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd.
Manufacturer's Address: 1-1,Subaru-cho,Ota-shi,Gunma 373-8555 JAPAN

hereby declare under our sole responsibility that the product:

Product Name: LF Oscillator
Product Model: SSPLF02
to which this declaration relates is in conformity with the essential requirements and other relevant requirements of the R&TTE Directive (1999/5/EC). The product is compliant with the following standards and/or other normative documents:

-Health & safety requirements: EN60950-1
-EMC requirements EN301 489-1 & EN301 489-3
-Effective uses of radio spectrum: EN300 330-2

Supplementary information:

* CE mark	CE
* Member states intended for use	EU and EFTA

Date: May 13, 2015

Signature:
Takashi Nishida

D00380

LF Oscillator for models with "Keyless access with push-button start system"

– CONTINUED –

English
Hereby, Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd., declares that this SSPLF02 is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

Suomi
Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. vakuuttaa täten että SSPLF02 tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.

Nederlands
Hierbij verklaart Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. dat het toestel SSPLF02 in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.

Français
Par la présente Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. déclare que l'appareil SSPLF02 est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.

Svenska
Härmed intygar Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. att denna SSPLF02 står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.

Dansk
Undertegnede Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr SSPLF02 overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

Deutsch
Hiermit erklärt Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd., dass sich das Gerät SSPLF02 in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.

Ελληνικά
ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ SSPLF02 ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.

Italiano
Con la presente Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. dichiara che questo SSPLF02 è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.

Español
Por medio de la presente Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. declara que el SSPLF02 cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.

Português
Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. declara que este SSPLF02 está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.

Malti
Hawnhekk, Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd., jiddikjara li dan SSPLF02 jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.

Eesti
Käesolevaga kinnitab Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. seadme SSPLF02 vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.

Magyar
Alulírott, Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. nyilatkozom, hogy a SSPLF02 megfelel a vonatkozó alapvetõ követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb elõírásainak.

Slovenčina

Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. týmto vyhlasuje, že SSPLF02 spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.

Český

Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. tímto prohlašuje, že tento SSPLF02 je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.

Slovenski

Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. izjavlja, da je ta SSPLF02 v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.

Lietuvių

Šiuo Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. deklaruoja, kad šis SSPLF02 atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.

Latviešu

Ar šo Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. deklarē, ka SSPLF02 atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.

Polski

Niniejszym Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. oświadcza, że SSPLF02 jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.

Íslenska

Hér með lýsir Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. yfir því að SSPLF02 er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.

Norsk

Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. erklærer herved at utstyret SSPLF02 er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

Црногорски језик

Ovim, Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd., izjavljuje da ovaj SSPLF02 je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

Shqip

Nepermjet kesaj, Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd., deklaroj qe ky SSPLF02 eshte ne pajtim me kerkesat thelbesore dhe dispozitat e tjera perkatese te Direktives 1999/5/EC.

Hrvatski

Ovim Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd., izjavljuje da je SSPLF02 u sklau s bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC i Pravilnika o RiTT opremi (NN 25/2012).

Српски/srpski

Ovim, Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd., deklariše da je SSPLF02 u skladu sa osnovnim zahtevima i ostalim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

– CONTINUED –

Clarion
moves you ▪ connects you

Clarion Co., Ltd.
■ Headquarters & Technology Center
7-2 Shintoshin, Chuo-ku, Saitama-shi,
Saitama, 330-0081, Japan
TEL: +81-48-601-3700
■ Headquarters-Annex Office
Land Axis Tower 30F, 11-2, Shintoshin, Chuo-ku,
Saitama-shi, Saitama 330-6030, Japan
TEL: +81-48-601-3700

EC DECLARATION of CONFORMITY

Document No. 14DC-CT04

We **Clarion Co., Ltd.**
(manufacturer)
7-2, Shintoshin, Chuo-ku, Saitama-shi, Saitama 330-0081, Japan
(address)

declare under our sole responsibility that the product

DisplayAudio
Model: PF-3639, PF-3658, PF-3637, PF-3638, PF-3733,
PF-3659, PF-3734, PF-3737, PF-3738, PF-3758, PF-3739,
PF-3676,PF-3675, PF-3680, PF-3757, PF-3677, PF-3681,
(name, type or models, possibly sources and numbers of items)

to which this declaration relates is in conformity with the following standard(s) or other normative document(s)

EN 300 328 V1.8.1 (2012-16)
EN 55013:2001+A1:2003+A2:2006, EN 55020:2007+A11:2011
EN 301 489-1 V1.9.2 (2011-09)
EN 301 489-17 V2.2.1 (2012-09)
EN 60950-1:2006+Amd.11:2009+Amd.1:2010+Amd.12:2011
EN 62479: 2010
(title and/or number and date of issue of the standard(s) or other normative document(s))

(if applicable) following the provisions of Directive **1999/5/EC.**
Regarding EN 55013 and EN 55020, refer to the official Journal of EMC Directive.

Saitama Japan
13, June 2014
(Place and date of issue)

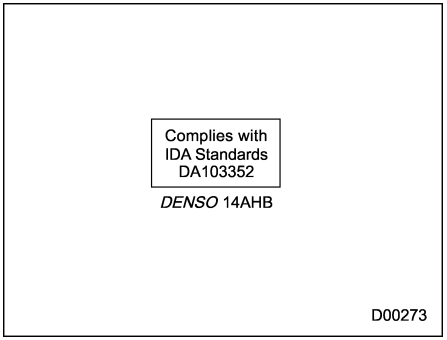
Teruo Niitsuma
Experimental Evaluation Department Manager
(name and signature or equivalent marking of authorized person)

D00321

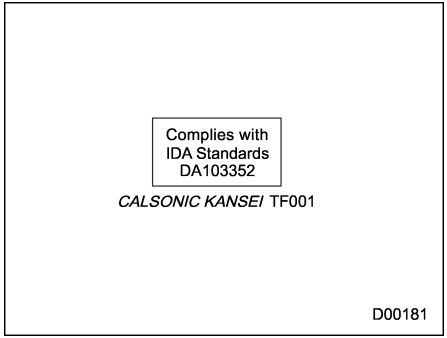
Technical information

■ Singapore models

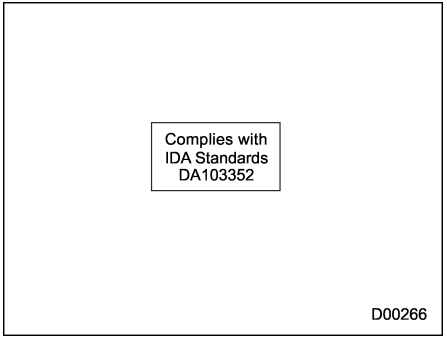
▼ Access key



▼ Remote keyless entry transmitter

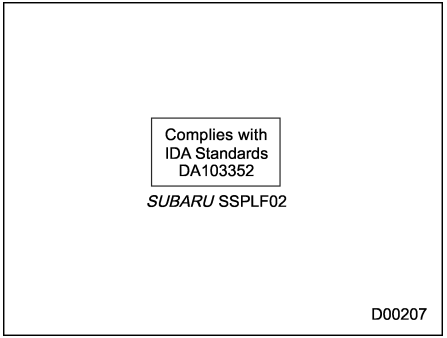


▼ Immobilizer

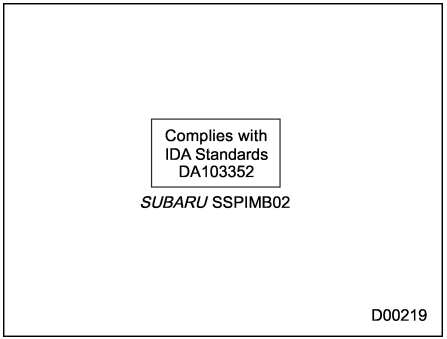


– CONTINUED –

▼ **Keyless access with push-button start system**



▼ **Push-button ignition switch**



■ Dominican Republic models

Immobilizer for models without "keyless access with push-button start system":

FCC ID: MOZRI-38BFH

⚠ CAUTION

FCC WARNING

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

NOTE

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

■ Taiwan models

▼ Immobilizer

第十二條
經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

第十四條
低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。
前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。
低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

500631

■ Jamaica models

▼ Immobilizer

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA, Equipment identifier is placed on the product.

■ Brazil models

▼ Immobilizer

Este equipamento está homologado pela ANATEL de acordo com os procedimentos regulamentados pela Resolução 242/2000 e atende aos requisitos técnicos aplicados.

Este equipamento opera em caráter secundário, isto é, não tem direito a proteção contra interferência prejudicial, mesmo de estações do mesmo tipo, e não pode causar interferência a sistemas operando em caráter primário.

D00282

– CONTINUED –

Modelo: RI-38BFH
ANATEL
0569-14-3559
(01)07898499100881
D00295

Declaration of conformity in accordance with the Machinery Directive 2006/42/EC

■ Jack

MANUFACTURERS DECLARATION
OF CONFORMITY

GOODMAN

For

CE

Pantagraph Car Jack

Models: PJF900 & PJF1000

Manufactured by
Taihei Industrial Co., Ltd.
No.49-1, Kagekatsu-Cho.
Fushimi-ku,
Kyoto 612-8307
Japan

Means of Conformity
The Product is in conformity with EC law as approximated by the following directives:
Machinery Directive 2006/42/EC based on Technical Documentation File No. 2185 Issue 1, Revision 0, August 2013

Standards used as guidance
Machinery Directive

ISO12100: 2010
Limited reference to EN 1494:2000/A1: 2008
Refer to complete listing in TF

Technical File compiled from manufacturers documentation and held in the EU, on behalf of the manufacturer by
TRaC Global Ltd
100 Frobisher Business Park,
Leigh Slinton Road, Malvern,
Worcestershire, WR14 1BX
United Kingdom

Signature of Responsible Person: **Mr. Masato Nasu**
President

MACHINE SERIAL No.

Date: **28th August 2013**

Certificate No. **TRA-015417-01 DofC Issue 1**

D00265

A
Abbreviation 2
ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) 7-30
Warning light 3-22
Access key 2-7
Warning light 3-27
Accessories 11-50
Accessory power outlet 6-9
Additional information for Europe 8-24
Air cleaner element 11-22
Air conditioner
Automatic climate control 4-6
Manual climate control 4-7
Air filtration system 4-12
Air flow mode 4-7
All-Wheel Drive warning light 3-26
Aluminum wheel 11-41
Cleaning 10-4
Antenna system 5-2
FM reception 5-2
Roof antenna 5-2
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 7-30
Appendix 5-107
Certification 5-107
Certification for MAROC models 5-108
Certification for Paraguay models 5-108
Certification for Russia and Kazakhstan models 5-108
Certification for UAE models 5-107
Armrest 1-8
Ashtray 6-11
AT OIL TEMP warning light 3-20
Audio set 5-3
Type A audio set (for Europe) 5-4
Type B audio set (except for Europe) 5-5
Type C audio set (for Australia) 5-6
Audio/visual remote controls 5-23
Steering switches 5-23
Auto Start Stop system 7-49
Indicator light 3-37
OFF indicator light 3-36
Warning light 3-36
Automatic headlight beam leveler 3-95
Warning light 3-27
Automatic rain sensing windshield wipers
Sensor 3-102
Sensor sensitivity control 3-102
Automatic/Emergency Locking Retractor (A/ELR) 1-14

B
Basic information before use 5-7
Connecting and disconnecting a USB memory/portable device 5-8
Entering letters and numbers/list screen operation 5-10
Initial screen 5-7
Loading and unloading a disc 5-8
Screen adjustment 5-12
Touch screen gestures 5-9
Touch screen operation 5-10
Basic operation 5-16
Some basics 5-16
Battery 11-47
Disposal and recycling 8

Drainage prevention function 2-5
Jump starting..... 9-10
Replacement (access key) 11-57
Replacement (transmitter) 11-58
Bluetooth® settings..... 5-73
Registering/connecting Bluetooth® device 5-73
Setting Bluetooth details 5-76
Booster seat..... 1-35
Bottle holder..... 6-8
Brake
Assist 7-29
Booster..... 7-29, 11-30
Fluid..... 11-28, 12-10
Pad and lining 11-32
Parking..... 7-41, 11-33
Pedal 11-30
System 7-29
Brake pedal
Free play 11-30
Reserve distance 11-31
Brake system 7-29
Warning light 3-24
Braking..... 7-28
Tips..... 7-28
Breaking-in of new brake pads and linings 11-32
Bulb
Chart..... 12-18
Replacing..... 11-50

C
Cargo area
Cover..... 6-14
Light 6-2
Tie-down hooks..... 6-16
Catalytic converter..... 8-3
Center
Console 6-6
Changing
Coolant 11-22
Flat tire 9-5
Oil and oil filter..... 11-18
Charge warning light..... 3-19
Checking
Brake pedal free play..... 11-30
Brake pedal reserve distance..... 11-31
Clutch function 11-31
Clutch pedal free play 11-31
Coolant level..... 11-21
Fluid level (brake fluid)..... 11-28
Fluid level (clutch fluid)..... 11-29
Fluid level (power steering fluid)..... 11-27
Fluid level (washer fluid)..... 11-41
Oil level (engine oil)..... 11-15
Child restraint systems..... 1-23
Installation of a booster seat 1-35
Installation with seatbelt 1-29
ISOFIX anchor bars..... 1-36
Top tether anchorages 1-38
Child safety 4
Locks..... 2-24

Chime
Key 3-5
Light 3-90
Seatbelt 3-14
Cigarette lighter 6-10
Cleaning
Aluminum wheels 10-4
Interior 10-5
Ventilation grille 4-11
Climate control system 4-3
Automatic 4-6
Manual 4-7
Clock 3-42, 3-43, 3-59, 3-74
Clutch
Fluid 11-29, 12-10
Pedal 11-31
Coat hook 6-12
Command list 5-104
Console 6-6
Continuously variable transmission (CVT) 7-18
Fluid 11-27, 12-10
Coolant 11-21, 12-11
Temperature high warning light 3-18
Temperature low indicator light 3-18
Cooling system 11-20
Corrosion protection 10-4
Cruise control 7-45
Indicator light 3-34
Set indicator light 3-34
Cup holder 6-7
Front passenger's 6-7
Rear passenger's 6-7

D

Daytime running light system 3-93
Declaration of conformity in accordance with the Machinery Directive 2006/42/EC 13-23
Declaration of conformity in accordance with the radio and telecommunications terminal equipment directive 1999/5/EC 13-3
Defogger 3-108
Defrosting 4-10
Deicer 3-108
Diesel fuel 7-3
Diesel particulate filter 8-4
Warning light 3-35
Differential gear oil
Front 11-27, 12-8
Rear 11-27, 12-8
Dimensions 12-2
Disc brake pad wear warning indicators 7-30
Dome light 6-2
Door
Locks 2-4
Open warning light 3-26
Double locking system 2-21
Double trip meter 3-10
Drive belts 11-26
Driving
All-Wheel Drive model 8-8
All-Wheel Drive warning light 3-26
Car phone/cell phone 7

Drinking 6
Drugs 6
Foreign countries 8-5
Pets 7
Snowy and icy roads 8-14
Tips 7-17, 7-24, 8-2, 8-8
Tired or sleepy 7
Winter 8-12

E

ECO gauge 3-12
Electrical system 12-12
Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD) system 7-31
Warning 3-24
Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR) 1-14
EN590 7-3
Engine
Compartment overview 11-12
Coolant 11-21, 12-11
Exhaust gas (carbon monoxide) 6, 8-2
Hood 11-11
Low oil level warning light 3-19
Oil 11-15, 12-4
Overheating 9-13
Starting & stopping 7-7, 7-11
Exterior care 10-2

F

Flat tires 9-5
Floor mat 6-11
Fluid level
Brake 11-28
Clutch 11-29
Continuously variable transmission 11-27
Power steering 11-27
Folding mirror switch 3-107
Front
Differential gear oil 11-27, 12-8
Seatbelt pretensioners 1-21
Turn signal light 11-52
Front fog light 3-97, 11-53
Bulb 11-53, 12-18
Indicator light 3-34
Switch 3-97
Front seats 1-2
Forward and backward adjustment 1-4
Head restraint adjustment 1-5
Power seat 1-5
Reclining 1-4
Seat height adjustment (driver's seat) 1-4
Fuel 7-3
Consumption indicator 3-37, 3-47
Economy hints 8-2
Filler lid and cap 7-4
Filter warning light 3-35
Gauge 3-11
Requirements 7-3, 12-3
Fuel filter warning light (diesel engine models) 3-35
Fuses 11-48
Fuses and circuits 12-14

G
Gear shift indicator 9, 7-15, 7-22
Glove box 6-5

H
Hazard warning flasher 3-8, 9-2
Head restraint adjustment
Front seat 1-5
Rear seat 1-8
Headlight
Beam leveler 3-95
Bulb replacing 11-50
Bulb wattage 12-18
Control switch 3-90
Flasher 3-93
Indicator light 3-34
Off delay 3-91
Washer 3-105
HID headlights 1, 11-50
High beam indicator light 3-34
High/low beam change (dimmer) 3-92
Hill descent control 7-35
Indicator light 3-34
Hill start assist 7-42, 11-32
OFF indicator light 3-26
To activate/deactivate 7-44
Warning light 3-26
Hook
Cargo tie-down 6-16
Coat 6-12
Convenient 6-13
Shopping bag 6-13
Towing and tie-down 9-14
Horn 3-110
Hose and connections 11-20

I
Ignition switch 3-4
Light 3-5
Illumination brightness control 3-94
Immobilizer 2-2
Indicator light 3-32
Indicator light
Auto Start Stop 3-37
Auto Start Stop OFF 3-36
Coolant temperature low 3-18
Cruise control 3-34
Cruise control set 3-34
Front fog light 3-34
Headlight 3-34
High beam 3-34
Hill descent control 3-34
Hill start assist OFF 3-26
Immobilizer 3-32
Preheating 3-35
Rear fog light 3-34
Rear seatbelt 3-15
Security (immobilizer) 3-32
Select lever/Gear position 3-33
Shift-up 3-33
SI-DRIVE 3-32
Turn signal 3-34

Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF 3-24
Vehicle Dynamics Control operation 3-23
X-mode..... 3-34
Information display 3-37
Inside mirror 3-106
Installation of accessories 5-3
Interior lights 6-2
ISOFIX anchor bars 1-36

J

Jack and jack handle..... 9-4
Jack-up point..... 9-5
Jump starting..... 9-10

K

Key 2-2
Number 2-2
Reminder chime..... 3-5
Replacement 2-3
Keyless access entry function..... 2-11
Keyless access with push-button start system 2-7
Disabling keyless access functions..... 2-15
Locking and unlocking doors 2-11
Opening rear gate..... 2-13
Warning chimes and warning light..... 3-27
When access key does not operate properly 9-17
Keyless entry system 2-18

L

Leather seat materials 10-5
License plate light..... 11-55
Light
Back-up 11-54
Cargo area 6-2
Control switch 3-90
Daytime running..... 3-93, 11-53
Dome..... 6-2
Fog (front) 3-97, 11-53
Fog (rear)..... 3-98, 11-54
Front position..... 3-90, 11-52
Ignition switch 3-5
License plate 11-55
Map..... 6-2
Rear combination 11-54
Stop..... 11-54
Stop light..... 11-54
Tail 11-54
Tail light..... 11-54
Turn signal 3-93, 11-52, 11-54
Loading your vehicle..... 8-16
Low fuel warning light 3-25
Low tire pressure warning light..... 3-20

M

Maintenance
Precautions 11-7
Schedule..... 11-3
Seatbelt..... 1-21
Tips 11-9
Tools..... 9-3
Malfunction indicator light (Check Engine light)..... 3-17

Manual
Climate control 4-7
Mode (continuously variable transmission) 7-20
Seat 1-4
Transmission 7-14
Transmission oil 11-26, 12-8
Map light 6-2
Media operation 5-42
AUX 5-67
Bluetooth audio 5-60
CD 5-42
iPod 5-53
USB memory 5-48
Meters and gauges 3-9
Mirror defogger 3-108
Mirrors 3-106
Multi function display 3-43

N
New vehicle break-in driving 8-2

O
Odometer 3-10
Oil filter 11-18
Oil level
Engine 11-15
Front differential gear 11-27
Manual transmission 11-26
Rear differential gear 11-27
Warning light 3-19
Oil pressure warning light 3-19
On-road and off-road driving 8, 8-10
Other settings 5-13
Outside
Mirror defogger 3-108
Mirrors 3-106
Temperature indicator 3-37
Overhead console 6-6
Overheating engine 9-13

P
Parking
Brake 7-41
Brake stroke 11-33
Tips 7-41
Periodic inspections 8-5
Petrol fuel 7-3
Phone operation (Hands-free system for cellular phones) 5-79
Calling on the Bluetooth phone 5-84
Quick reference 5-79
Receiving on the Bluetooth phone 5-91
Some basics 5-81
Talking on the Bluetooth phone 5-92
PIN Code Access 2-17
Power
Door locking switch 2-6
Outlets 6-9
Outside mirrors 3-106
Rear gate 2-29, 9-20
Seat 1-5
Steering 7-27

Steering fluid 11-27, 12-10
Steering warning light 3-26
Windows 2-24
Precautions against vehicle modification 1-23, 1-62
Preheating indicator light 3-35
Preparing to drive 7-6
Priming pump 9-22, 11-14
Push-button
Ignition switch 3-6
Starting and stopping engine 7-11

R

Radio operation 5-34
AM/FM radio 5-34
Rear
Combination lights 11-54
Differential gear oil 11-27, 12-8
Fog light switch 3-98
Gate 2-28, 9-19
Turn signal light 11-54
Rear differential
Oil temperature warning light 3-20
Rear fog light 3-98
Indicator light 3-34
Rear seat 1-7
Folding down 1-10
Head restraint adjustment 1-8
Reclining 1-12
Rear view camera 6-17
Rear window
Defogger 3-108
Wiper and washer switch 3-104
Wiper blades 11-45
Recommended
Brake fluid 12-10
Clutch fluid 11-29, 12-10
Continuously variable transmission fluid 12-10
Engine oil 12-4
Front differential gear oil 12-8
Manual transmission oil 12-8
Power steering fluid 12-10
Rear differential gear oil 12-8
Spark plugs 12-12
Refueling 7-4
Remote keyless entry system 2-18
Replacement
Brake pad and lining 11-32
Wiper blades 11-42
Replacing
Access key battery 11-57
Air cleaner element 11-23
Remote keyless entry transmitter battery 11-58
Replacing bulbs 11-50, 12-18
Back-up light 11-54
Brake/tail light 11-54
Daytime running light 11-53
Front fog light 11-53
Front position light 11-52
Front turn signal light 11-52
Headlight 11-50
License plate light 11-55
Rear combination light 11-54

Rear turn signal light 11-54
Side turn signal light 11-54
Stop light 11-54
Tail light 11-54
Rocking the vehicle 8-16
Roof molding and load carrier 8-17
Roof rails 8-18
Running out of fuel 9-22

S

Safety
Precautions when driving 3
Symbol 2
Warnings 2
Seat
Fabric 10-5
Front 1-2
Heater 1-6
Height adjustment 1-4
Power 1-5
Rear 1-7
Seatbelt 3, 1-13
Fastening 1-15
Maintenance 1-21
Pretensioners 1-21
Safety tips 1-13
Warning light and chime 3-14
Security
Immobilizer 2-2
Indicator light (immobilizer) 3-32
Select lever
Position indicator 3-33
Shift lock function 7-23
Setup 5-94
Phone settings 5-94
Shift-up indicator light 3-33
Shopping bag hook 6-13
SI-DRIVE 7-24
Indicator light 3-32
Skid suppression function 7-32
Snow tires 8-15, 11-34
Snowy and icy roads 8-14
Spark plugs 11-26, 12-12
Specifications 12-2
Speed limit, maximum torque and maximum power at rpm (Middle East models only) 13-2
Speedometer 3-10
SRS
Frontal airbag 1-49
SRS airbag (Supplemental Restraint System airbag) ... 3, 1-39
SRS airbag system
Monitors 1-60
Servicing 1-61
Warning light 3-16
Starting & stopping engine 7-7, 7-11
Steering wheel
Power 7-27
Tilt/telescopic 3-109
Stop light 11-54
Storage compartment 6-5
Sun shade 2-37

Sun visors 6-4
Sunroof 2-35
Supplemental Restraint System airbag (SRS) 1-39
Synthetic leather upholstery 10-6

T
Tachometer 3-11
Temperature warning light
AT OIL TEMP 3-20
Coolant 3-18
Rear differential oil 3-20
Temporary spare tire 9-2, 12-12
Tether (child restraint system) 1-38
Tie-down hooks 9-14
Tips for operating the audio/visual system 5-25
Operating information 5-25
Tire
Chains 8-15
Inspection 11-35
Pressures and wear 11-35
Replacement 11-39
Rotation 11-39
Size and pressure 12-12
Types 11-33
Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) 7-38, 9-9, 11-34
TPMS mode setting 7-39
Warning light 3-20
Tires and wheels 11-33
Tools 9-3
Top tether anchorages 1-38
Towing 9-14
All wheels on the ground 9-17
Flat-bed truck 9-16
Hooks 9-14
Weight 8-19
Traction control function 7-32
Trailer
Hitch 8-20
Towing 8-19
Towing tips 8-21
Trip meter 3-10
Turn signal
Indicator lights 3-34
Lever 3-93

U
Under-floor storage compartment 6-17
Useful information 5-32
STARLINK (for Europe) 5-32

V
Vanity mirror 6-5
Vehicle
Identification 12-22
Symbols 3
Vehicle Dynamics Control
OFF indicator light 3-24
OFF switch 7-34
Operation indicator light 3-23
System 7-32
Warning light 3-23
Ventilator 4-2

Voice command system operation 5-101
Voice command system 5-101

W
Warning and indicator lights 3-13
Warning chimes
Keyless access with push-button start system 3-27
Seatbelt 3-14
Warning light
ABS 3-22
Access key 3-27
All-Wheel Drive 3-26
AT OIL TEMP 3-20
Auto Start Stop 3-36
Automatic headlight beam leveler 3-27
Brake system 3-24
Charge 3-19
Coolant temperature high 3-18
Diesel particulate filter 3-35
Door open 3-26
Engine low oil level 3-19
Fuel filter 3-35
Hill start assist 3-26
Keyless access with push-button start system 3-27
Low fuel 3-25
Low tire pressure 3-20
Oil pressure 3-19
Over-rev 3-36
Power steering 3-26
Rear differential oil temperature 3-20
Seatbelt 3-14
SRS airbag system 3-16
Vacuum pump system 3-25
Vehicle Dynamics Control 3-23
Windshield washer fluid 3-25
Warranties 1
Washing 10-2
Waxing and polishing 10-3
Wear indicators 11-38
What to do if... 5-97
Troubleshooting 5-97
Wheel
Alignment 12-13
Aluminum 11-41
Balance 11-37
Covers 11-40
Nut tightening torque 9-5
Replacement 11-40
Windows 2-24
Windshield
Washer fluid 11-41
Wiper and washer switches 3-101
Wiper blades 11-43
Wiper deicer 3-108
Winter
Diesel 7-4
Driving 8-12
Tires 8-15, 11-34
Wiper and washer 3-99
Wiper deicer 3-108

X
X-mode..... 7-35
Indicator light..... 3-34

Y
Year of manufacture (Middle East models only) 13-2

GAS STATION REFERENCE

■ Fuel:

▼ Non-turbo petrol engine models

2.5 L models and Australia models:
Use only **unleaded petrol** with **90 Octane or higher**. This octane rating is the Research Octane number. For optimum engine performance and driveability, it is recommended that you use premium grade unleaded petrol.

Other models:
Use only **unleaded** petrol. The use of unleaded petrol with **95 Octane or higher** is recommended. This octane rating is the Research Octane number. If unleaded petrol with 95 Octane or higher is not available, unleaded petrol with 90 Octane or higher may be used.

▼ Turbo petrol engine models

Use only **unleaded petrol** with **95 Octane or higher**. This octane rating is the Research Octane number.

▼ Diesel engine models

Use only **diesel** fuel with a specification of **EN590 or an equivalent**.

■ Fuel capacity:

60 liters (15.9 US gal, 13.2 Imp gal)

■ Engine oil:

Always use the SUBARU approved engine oil. For further details, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer. If the approved engine oil is unavailable, use the alternative engine oil described as follows.

▼ Petrol engine models

Use only the following oils.
- API classification SN with the words “RESOURCE CONSERVING”
- or ILSAC GF-5, which can be identified with the ILSAC certification mark (Starburst mark)
- or ACEA specification A3 or A5

For the complete viscosity requirements, refer to “Engine oil” ☞12-4.

▼ Diesel engine models

Use only ACEA specification C2 or C3.

For the complete viscosity requirements, refer to “Diesel engine models” ☞12-7.

■ Engine oil capacity:

Non-turbo models: 4.8 liters (5.1 US qt, 4.2 Imp qt)
Turbo petrol engine models: 5.1 liters (5.4 US qt, 4.6 Imp qt)
Diesel engine models: 5.9 liters (6.2 US qt, 5.2 Imp qt)

The indicated oil quantity is only a guideline and is estimated based on a case when the engine oil is changed with an oil filter. After refilling the engine with oil, the oil level should be checked using an oil level gauge. For more details about maintenance and service, refer to “Engine oil” ☞11-15.

■ Cold tire pressure:

See the label located under the driver’s door latch.